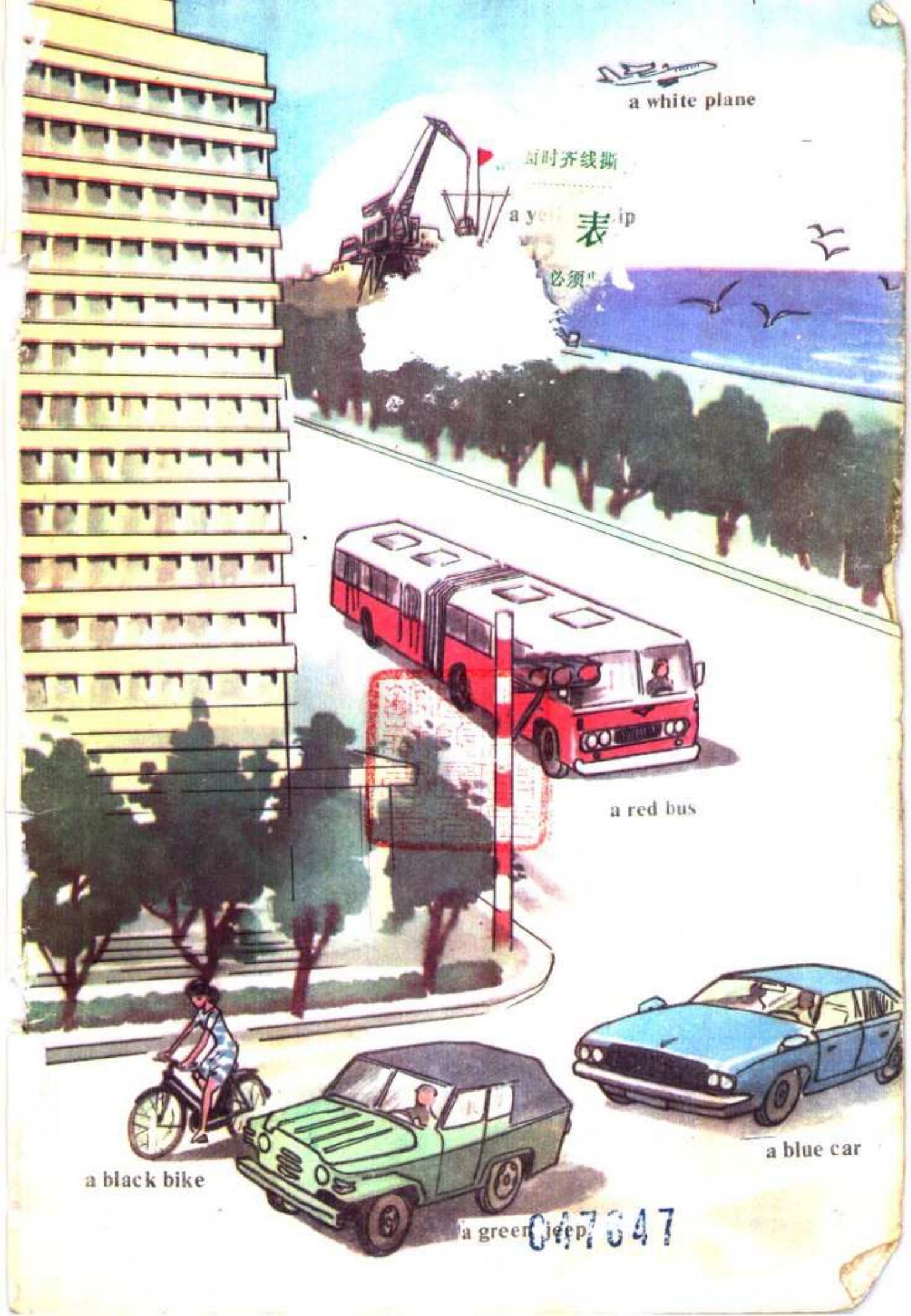
初级中学课本

英语

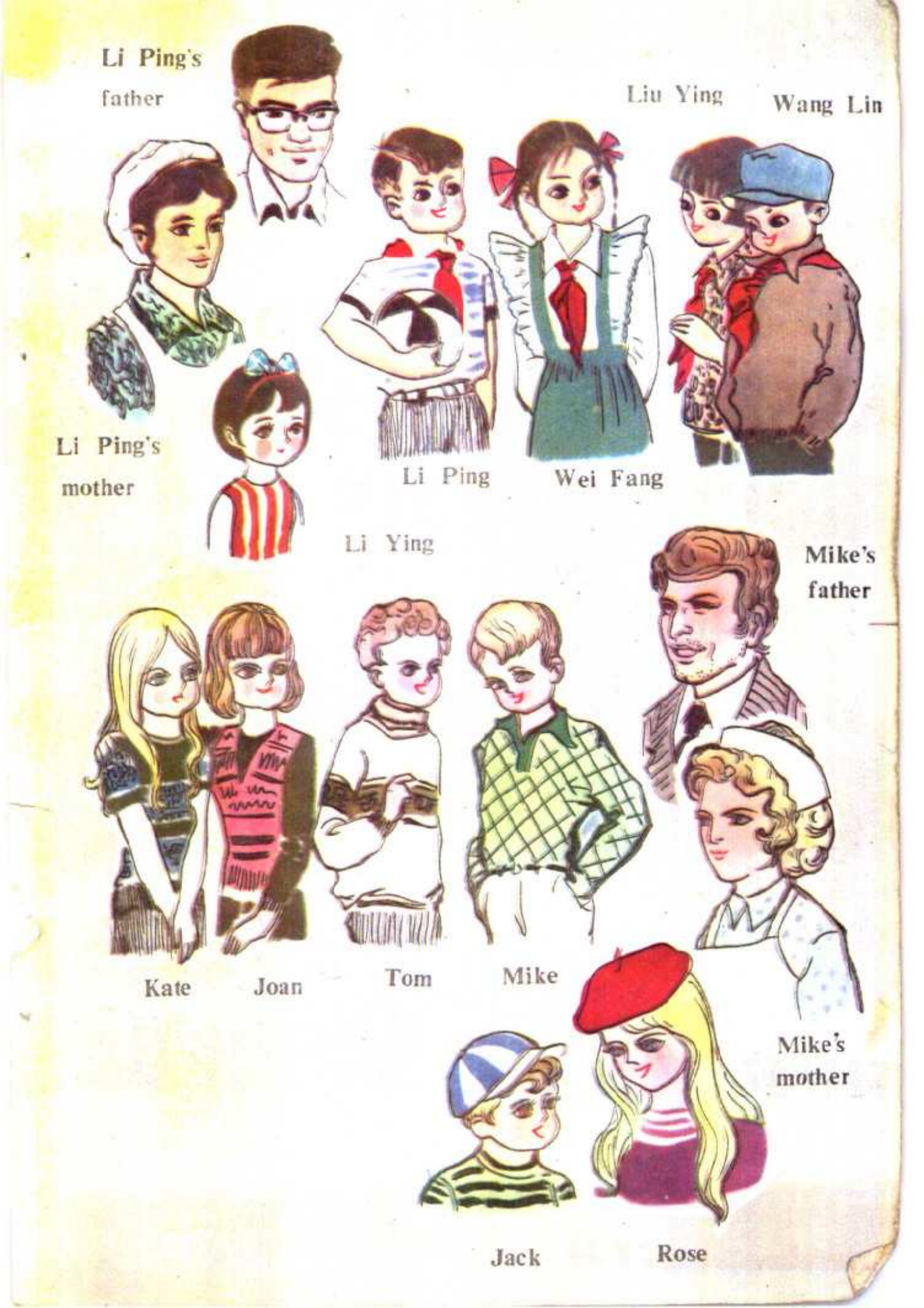
第一册

English 1

人民教育出版社



047647


Li Ping's father
Liu Ying
Wang Lin
Li Ping's mother
Li Ping
Wei Fang
Li Ying
Mike's father
Kate
Joan
Tom
Mike
Mike's mother
Jack
Rose

Where's Li Ying?

in the car

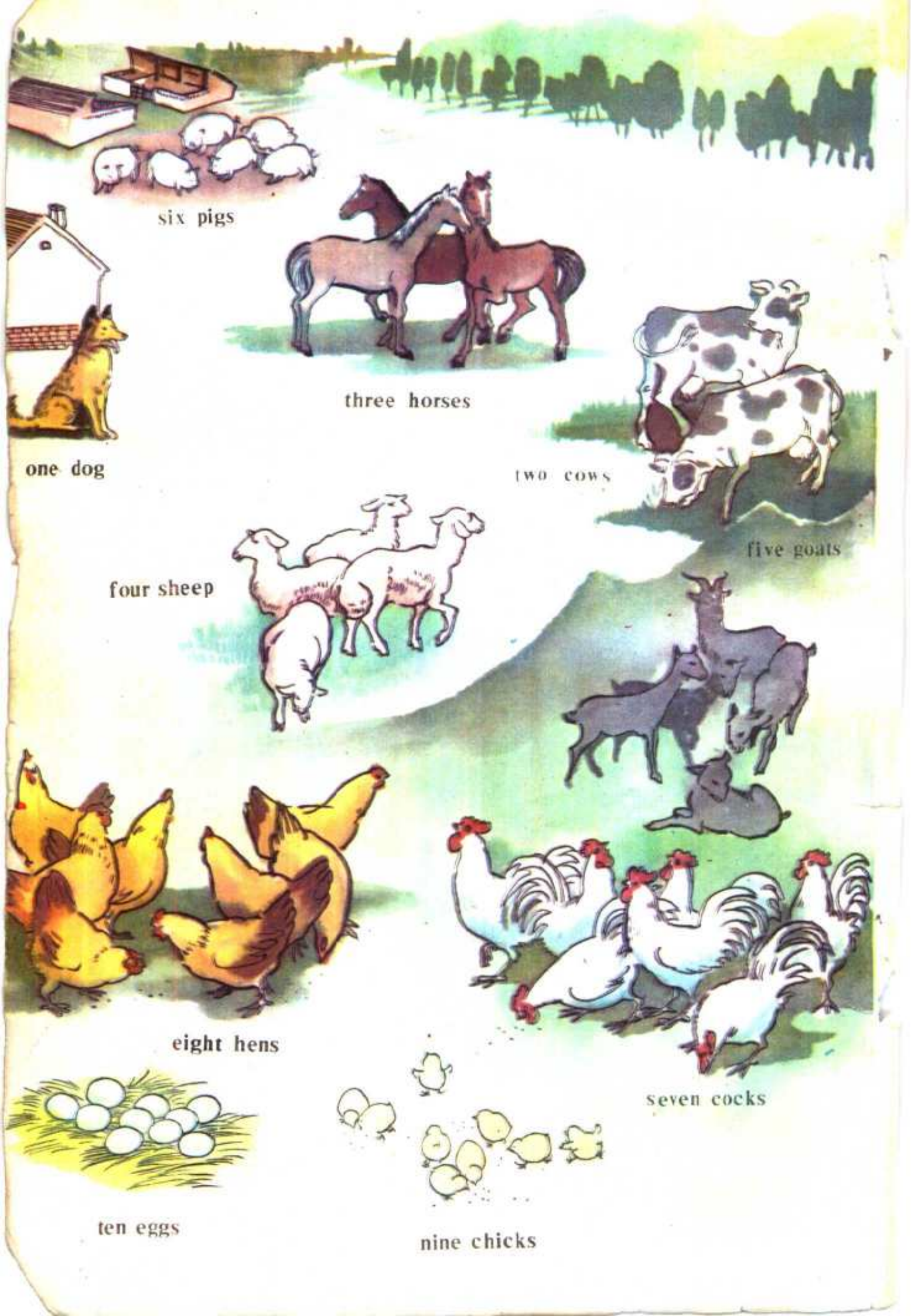
on the box

under the tree

near the house

behind the bus

in front of the blackboard


six pigs
one dog
three horses
two cows
five goats
four sheep
eight hens
seven cocks
ten eggs
nine chicks

说　明

初级中学课本英语是以《全日制十年制学校初中课本(试用本)英语》为基础，参考各地教师在试用期间提出的意见编订而成的。

本册由唐钧、刘道义、王美芳编订。斜体行书由孙全洁缮写。

北京外国语学院邓炎昌教授审订。

本册初稿曾蒙各省、市、自治区教育厅(局)组织部分高等师范院校和中学教师进行审阅，提出宝贵意见，谨致谢意。

BB231/0P 0V

The Alphabet

(字母表)

印刷体		书写体		印刷体		书写体	
大写	小写	大写	小写	大写	小写	大写	小写
A	a	*A*	*a*	N	n	*N*	*n*
B	b	*B*	*b*	O	o	*O*	*o*
C	c	*C*	*c*	P	p	*P*	*p*
D	d	*D*	*d*	Q	q	*Q*	*q*
E	e	*E*	*e*	R	r	*R*	*r*
F	f	*F*	*f*	S	s	*S*	*s*
G	g	*G*	*g*	T	t	*T*	*t*
H	h	*H*	*h*	U	u	*U*	*u*
I	i	*I*	*i*	V	v	*V*	*v*
J	j	*J*	*j*	W	w	*W*	*w*
K	k	*K*	*k*	X	x	*X*	*x*
L	l	*L*	*l*	Y	y	*Y*	*y*
M	m	*M*	*m*	Z	z	*Z*	*z*

CONTENTS

Lesson 1 1

Letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, G

Words: *face*, b*a*g, b*ee*, b*e*d

Lesson 2 5

Letters: H, I, J, K, L, M, N

Words: b*i*ke, chick

Lesson 3 9

Letters: O, P, Q, R, S, T

Words: r*o*se, d*o*g

Lesson 4 14

Letters: U, V, W, X, Y, Z

Words: st*u*dent, b*u*s

Lesson 5 (Revision) 19

The Alphabet

A Song: I Can Say My A B C

Lesson 6 23

Drills: 1. This is a book. That's a bag.

2. What's this (that)? It's a cake (an egg).

Pronunciation: f*a*ce, *a*pple, b*ee*, *e*gg; *p*en, *b*ed

Lesson 7 29

Drills: 1. It's a red bus.

2. Is this a jeep? Yes, it is.

3. Is it green? Yes, it is.

4. What colour is it? It's green.

Dialogue: What colour is this apple?

Pronunciation: bi*k*e, *i*s; i*t*, *d*og
Lesson 8 35
Drills: 1. This is my cup. It isn't your (his, her) cup.
2. Is that your chair? No, it isn't.
Dialogue: Is this your knife?
Pronunciation: no, not, student, cup, my; yes
Lesson 9 41
Drills: 1. These are apples. Those aren't apples. They're oranges.
2. The apples are here. The oranges are there.
Dialogue: It's a sheep.
Grammar: The Plural Number of Nouns (I)
Pronunciation: jee*ps*, do*gs*, b*ees*, coa*ts*, be*ds*, bus*es*, oran*ges*
Lesson 10 49
Drills: 1. What are these (those)? They're pigs (goats).
2. Are these horses white?
Yes, they are. (No, they aren't.)
3. Are these (those) chicks?
Dialogue: What colour are my shoes?
Pronunciation: look, *cow*; *K*ate, *c*ar, co*ck*, *g*oat, *h*en, *th*in, *th*ey
Lesson 11 56
Drills: 1. Kate's hair is long. Tom's trousers are new.

2. Is Kate's hair long or short?
It's long.
3. Whose room is this?
It's our room.
Whose books are those?
They're their books.
Dialogue: Hello, Mike.
Pronunciation: *hair*, *coat*, *horse*; *long*, *old*, *my*, *not*
Lesson 12 (Revision) 62
A Song: Ten Little Indian Boys
Lesson 13 66
Drills: 1. He's a boy. She's a girl.
He's twelve. He's tall.
2. Who's this man? He's Li Ping's father.
Who are these girls? They're Joan and Kate.
3. Is he a teacher?
Yes, he is. (No, he isn't.)
4. Are they sisters?
Yes, they are. (No, they aren't.)
Dialogue: Who's this baby?
Pronunciation: *girl*, *father*; *red*, *seat*, *is*, *she*
Lesson 14 75
Drills: 1. I'm a boy. You're a girl.
You're girls. We're students.
2. Are you a student?
Yes, I am. (No, I'm not.)

Are you students?
Yes, we are. (No, we aren't.)
3. What's your name? My name is ....
How old are you? I'm twelve.
4. What's your sister? She's a nurse.
Text: My Family
Grammar: 1. Personal and Possessive Pronouns
2. Verb *to be*
Pronunciation: *cake*, *am*, *he*, *these*, *ten*, *jeep*, *car*; *cock*, *face*, *chair*
Lesson 15 84
Drills: 1. Kate's bag is on the desk.
2. Where's Kate? She's near the window.
Where are her books? They're in the bag.
3. What's under the table?
There's a ball under it.
(There are some balls under it.)
Dialogue: Where's my cap?
Pronunciation: *like*, *in*, *no*, *not*, *all*; *he*
Lesson 16 90
Drills: 1. Is there a big tree beside the house?
Yes, there is. (No, there isn't.)
2. Are there any flowers in front of the house?
Yes, there are some.
(No, there aren't any.)
Text: Our Classroom
Pronunciation: *student*, *ruler*, *us*, *house*; *face*,

five, work, what, who

A Rhyme: Good, Better, Best

Lesson 17 (Revision) 98

A Song: Good Morning

Lesson 18 103

Drills: How many minutes are there in an hour?

There are sixty minutes in an hour.

Dialogue: How many people are there in your family?

Grammar: 1. There be

2. Cardinal Numbers

Pronunciation: glass, book; long, thin, they, tree, driver

A Rhyme: Twelve Good Hours in Every Day

Lesson 19 110

Drills: Come here, please.

Please open the window.

Let's read.

Dialogue: An English Class

Grammar: Parts of Speech

Pronunciation: Rules of reading summed up (vowels)

Lesson 20 117

Drills: 1. What time is it? It's six thirty.

2. We get up at six thirty in the morning.

Text: My Class

Grammar: Some Special Questions and Answers

Pronunciation: Rules of reading summed up

(consonants)
A Rhyme: Tick, Tock
Lesson 21 (Revision) ……125
A Song: Are You Sleeping?
Vocabulary ……130
Supplementary Readings: 1. A New Classmate……139
2. Grace and Joan ……140
Phonetic Signs ……143

LESSON ONE

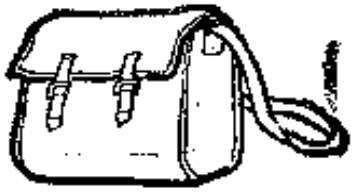
Lesson 1

LETTERS (字母)

A	a	A a
B	b	B b
C	c	C c
D	d	D d
E	e	E e
F	f	F f
G	g	G g

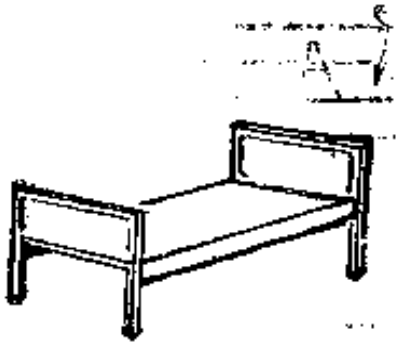
WORDS (单词)

A FACE
a face



A BAG
a bag

A BEE
a bee



A BED
a bed

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Say the letters from A to G (说出字母 A 至 G).
2. Compare these letters and read them out (比较并读出这些字母):

   B D　　B E　　F E　　G C

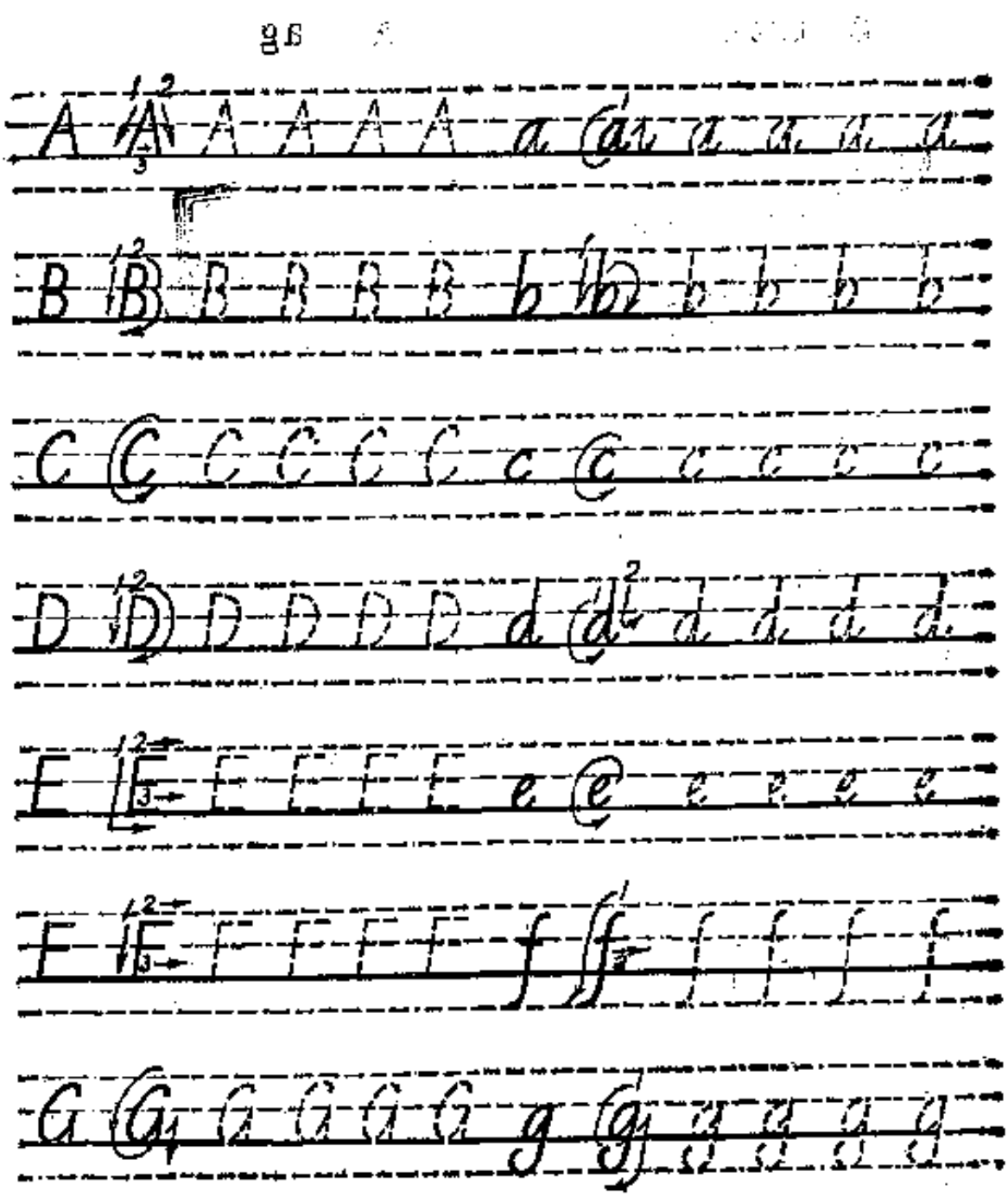
3. Read out these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

   f～*ace* → face　　b～*ag* → bag

   b～*ee* → bee　　b～*ed* → bed

4. Write out the English for these (写出这些图的英语名称):

5. Copy these (抄写):



a face a bag a bee a bed

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日 常 用 语)

Good morning (afternoon).
Good morning (afternoon).
What's your name?
My name is Li Ping.

LESSON TWO

Lesson 2

LETTERS (字母)

H	h	*H h*
I	i	*I i*
J	j	*J j*
K	k	*K k*
L	l	*L l*
M	m	*M m*
N	n	*N n*

WORDS (单词)

A BIKE
a bike

A CHICK
a chick

A CAKE
a cake

A HAND
a hand

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Say the letters from A to N (说出字母 A 至 N).
2. 1) Read out these capital letters and put in the small letters (读出这些大写字母，并填入小写字母):

   A_ G_ B_ F_ D_ E_ C_

   H_ K_ I_ L_ M_ J_ N_

   2) Read out these small letters and put in the capital letters (读出这些小写字母，并填入大写字母):

   n_ a_ j_ g_ b_ l_ f_

   i_ d_ e_ k_ c_ h_ m_

3. Compare these letters and read them out (比较并读出这些字母):

K E　F E　I J　M N　G C

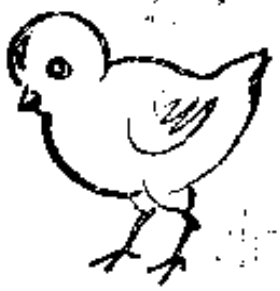
d a　h b　b d　c e　i j

4. Read out these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

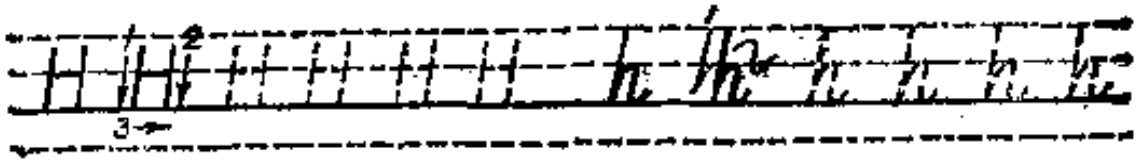
b～*ike* → bike　　ch～*ick* → chick

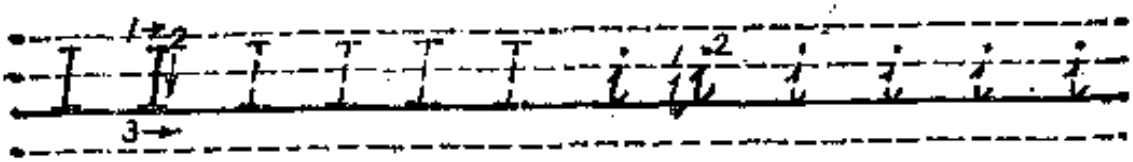
c～*ake* → cake　　h～*and* → hand

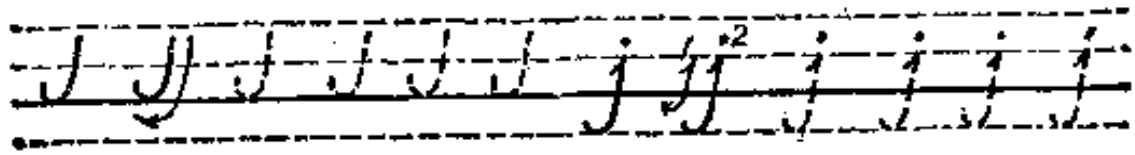
5. Write out the English for these (写出这些图的英语名称):



6. Copy these (抄写):







K k

L l

M m

N n

a bike a chick a cake a hand

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日常用语)

How are you?
Fine, thank you. And you?
I'm fine, too.

LESSON THREE

Lesson 3

LETTERS (字母)

O	o	O o
P	p	P p
Q	q	Q q
R	r	R r
S	s	S s
T	t	T t

WORDS (单词)

A ROSE

a rose

A DOG

a dog

A JEEP

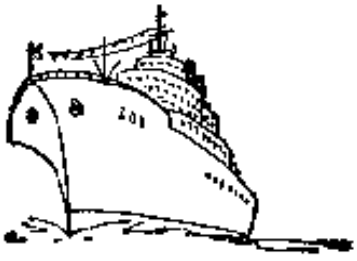
a jeep

A PEN

a pen

A KNIFE

a knife



A SHIP

a ship

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Say the letters from A to T (说出字母 A 至 T).
2. Compare these letters and read them out (比较并读出这些字母):

   K R　T I　L I　N H　O Q

   d p　h k　g q　n h　s c
3. Read out these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

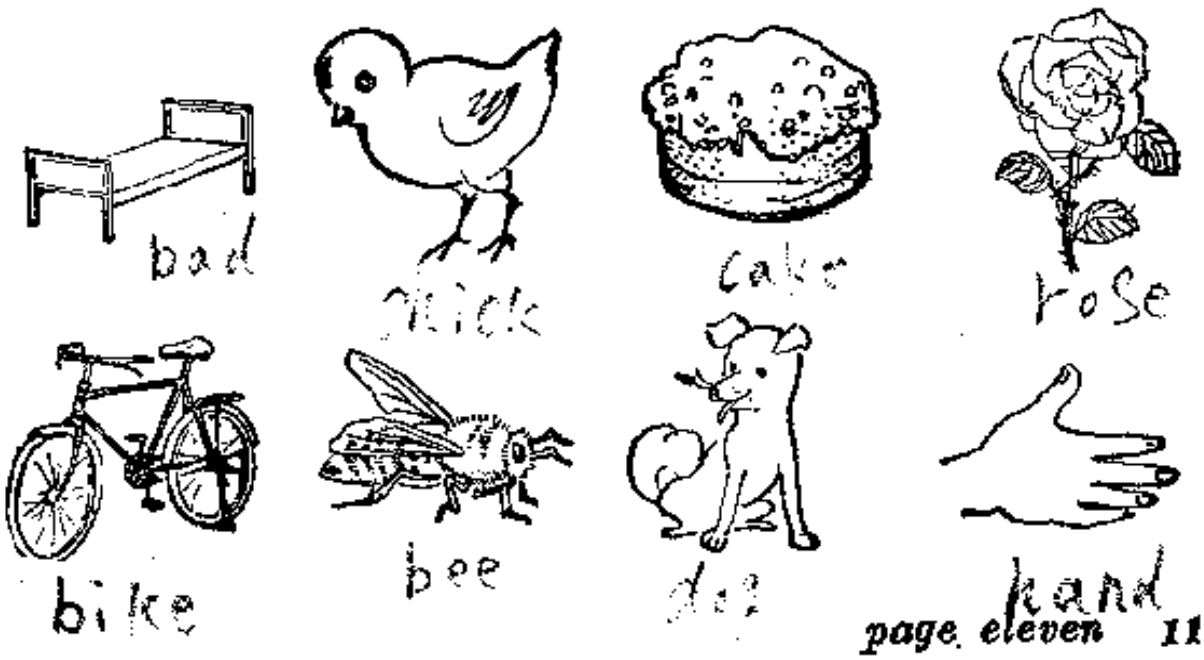
   r～*ose* → rose　　d～*og* → dog

   j～*ee*～p → jeep　　p～*en* → pen

   kn～*ife* → knife　　sh～*ip* → ship
4. Put in the missing letters and read out these words (填入所缺的字母，并读出这些单词):

   f_ce　b_g　b_e_　b_d　b_ke　ch_ck

   c_ke　h_nd　j_ _p　p_n　kn_fe　sh_p
5. Write out the English for these (写出这些图的英语名称):



6. Copy these (抄写):

O O O O O O o o o o o o

P P P P P P p p p p p p

Q Q Q Q Q Q q q q q q q

R R R R R R r r r r r r

S S S S S S s s s s s s

T T T T T T t t t t t t

a rose a dog a jeep

a pen a knife a ship

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日 常 用 语)

Hello, Wei Fang!
Hello, Li Ping!
Let's go to school.
All right.

LESSON FOUR

Lesson 4

LETTERS (字母)

U u

V v

W w

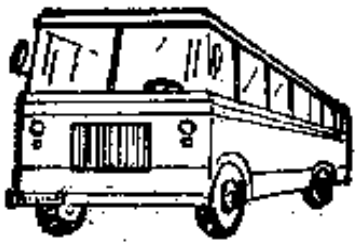
X x

Y y

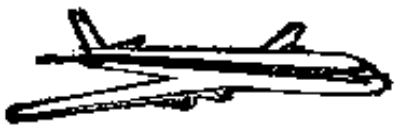
Z z

WORDS (单词)

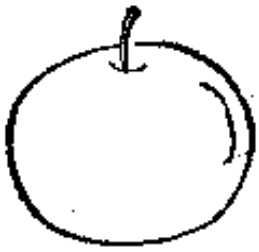
A STUDENT
a student



A BUS
a bus



A PLANE
a plane



AN APPLE
an apple

A SHEEP
a sheep

AN EGG
an egg

A COAT　　AN ORANGE

a coat　　an orange

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Say the letters from A to Z (说出字母 A 至 Z).

2. 1) Read out these capital letters and put in the small letters (读出这些大写字母，并填入小写字母):

   O__ U__ Q__ W__ Y__ S__

   T__ P__ V__ R__ X__ Z__

   2) Read out these small letters and put in the capital letters (读出这些小写字母，并填入大写字母):

   u__ t__ c__ v__ s__ x__

   n__ p__ q__ w__ z__ y__

3. Compare these letters and read them out (比较并读出这些字母):

   M W　V U　Y V　R B　Q D　Z S

   n u　q p　d b　t f　w m　r v

4. Read out these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

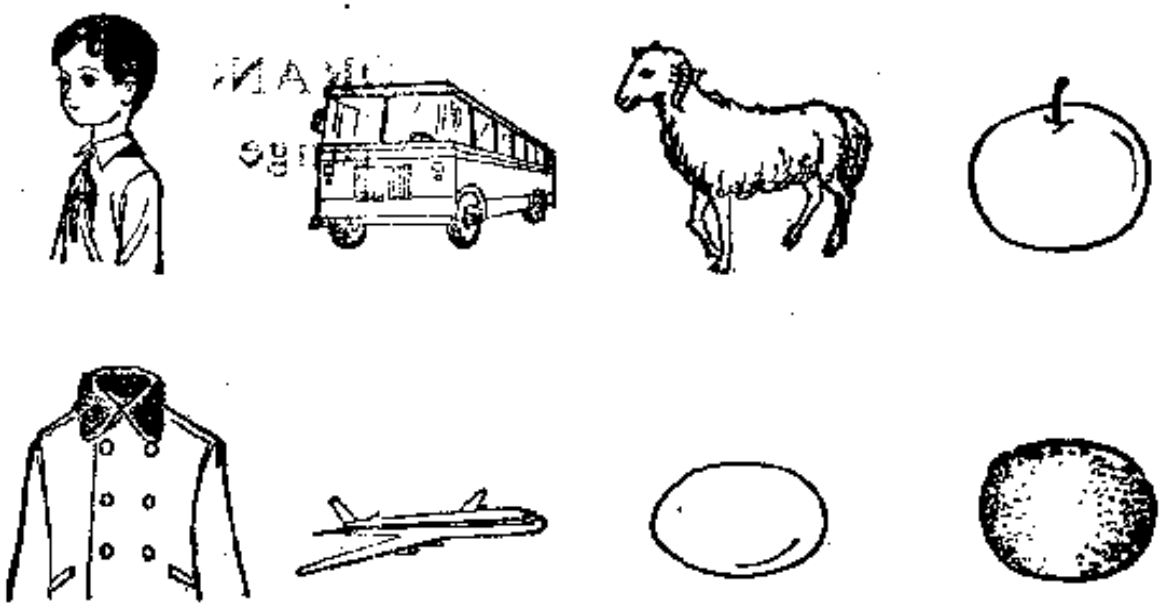
   st*u*~dent → student　　b~*u*s → bus

pl～*ane* → plane　　*a*p～ple → apple

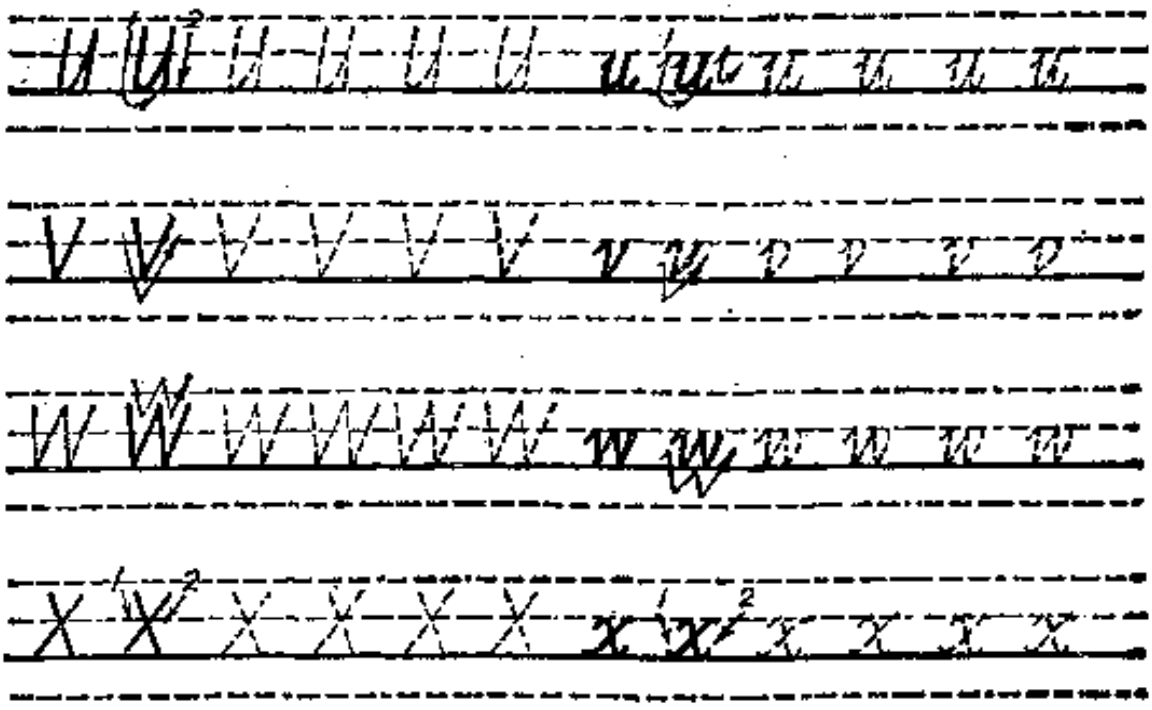
sh～*ee*～p → sheep　　b～*e*d → bed

c～*oa*～t → coat　　d～og → dog

5. Write out the English for these (写出这些图的英语名称):



6. Copy these (抄写):



Y Y Y Y Y Y y y y y y y

Z Z Z Z Z Z z z z z z z

a student a bus a plane an apple

a sheep an egg a coat an orange

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日常用语)

Are you Li Ping?
Yes, I am.
Are you in Class One?
No. I'm in Class Two.

LESSON FIVE

Lesson 5

(Revision)

The Alphabet

Aa Bb Cc Dd

Ee Ff Gg Hh

Ii Jj Kk Ll

Mm Nn Oo Pp

Qq Rr Ss Tt

Uu Vv Ww Xx

Yy Zz

A SONG (一首歌)

I Can Say My A B C

E $\frac{2}{4}$

1	1	|	5	5	|	6	6	|	5	–	|
A	B		C	D		E	F		G		
a	b		c	d		e	f		g		
4	4	|	3	3	|	2	2	|	1	–	|
H	I		J	K		L	M		N		
h	i		j	k		l	m		n		
5	5	|	4	–	|	3	3	|	2	–	|
O	P		Q			R	S		T		
o	p		q			r	s		t		
5	5	|	4	4	|	3	3	|	2	–	|
U	V		W	–		X	Y		Z		
u	v		w	–		x	y		z		
1	3	|	5	–	|	6	i	|	5	–	|
X	Y		Z}			Now	you		see,		
x	y		z}								
4	4	|	3	3	|	2	2	|	1	–	||
I	can		say	my		A	B		C.		

WORDS (单词) (Lessons 1—4)

a *art.* 一(个, 件, ……)
face *n.* 脸
bag *n.* 提包, 口袋, 书包
bee *n.* 蜜蜂
bed *n.* 床

* * *

bike *n.* 自行车
chick *n.* 小鸡
cake *n.* 蛋糕, 饼, 糕
hand *n.* 手

* * *

rose *n.* 玫瑰花
dog *n.* 狗
jeep *n.* 吉普车
pen *n.* 钢笔
knife *n.* 小刀
ship *n.* 轮船

* * *

student *n.* 学生
bus *n.* 公共汽车
plane *n.* 飞机
an *art.* 一(个, 件, ……)
apple *n.* 苹果
sheep *n.* 羊, 绵羊
egg *n.* 蛋
coat *n.* 外套, 上衣
orange *n.* 橙子, 桔子

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Read out these groups of letters(读出这几组字母):

A a	Hh Jj Kk
E e	Bb Cc Dd Gg Pp Tt Vv
I i	Yy
O o	
U u	Qq Ww
	Ff Ll Mm Nn Ss Xx Zz
	Rr

2. Read out these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

A a { face cake plane
bag hand apple

E e { bee jeep sheep
bed pen egg

I i { bike knife
chick ship

O o { rose coat
dog orange

U u { student
bus

3. Compare these letters and read them out (比较并读出这些字母):

C G O Q B P F E D P

M N W M B R U V C D

c e c o d b p q v y

j i f t w m u n h n

4. Give the English for these (把这些词译成英语):

1) 自行车 吉普车 公共汽车 轮船 飞机

2) 钢笔 小刀 书包 床 上衣

3) 苹果 橙子 蛋 蛋糕

4) 玫瑰花 蜜蜂 小鸡 狗 绵羊

5) 学生 脸 手

5. Say the alphabet and write it out (说出并写出字母表).

LESSON SIX

Lesson 6

DRILLS (句型练习)

A

This is a book.
That's a bag.

that's = that is

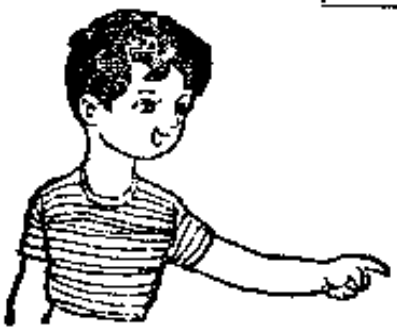
This is a pen.
That's a pencil.

This is a desk.
That's a chair.

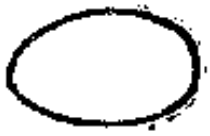
B

What's this?
It's a cake.

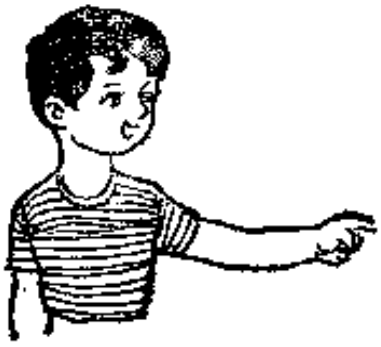
what's = what is
it's = it is



What's that?
It's an egg.



What's this?
It's an apple.



What's that?
It's an orange.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS (单词和习惯用语)

this *pron.* & *adj.* 这，这个
is *v.* 是
book *n.* 书
that *pron.* & *adj.* 那，那个
pencil *n.* 铅笔
desk *n.* 课桌，书桌
chair *n.* 椅子
what *pron.* & *adj.* 什么
it *pron.* 它

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION (语音和语调)

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) a　face　cake　plane
　　apple　bag　that　hand
　ee　bee　jeep　sheep
　e　egg　bed　pen　desk
　p　pen　pencil　plane
　　jeep　ship　sheep
　b　bed　bike　bus　book

2) th～is → this　　th～at → that
　b～oo～k → book　　ch～air → chair

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

1) 'This is a ↘book.
　'That's a ↘ bag.

2) 'What's ↘this?　　It's a ↘cake.
　'What's ↘that?　　It's an ↘egg.

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):

f__ce	c__ke	b__g	h__nd
b___	sh___p	__gg	d__sk
b__ke	kn__fe	__t	ch__ck
r__se	d__g	st__dent	b__s

2. Put in the missing words (填入所缺的单词):

1) This is a ___.

2) That is a ___.

3) This ___ ___ ___.

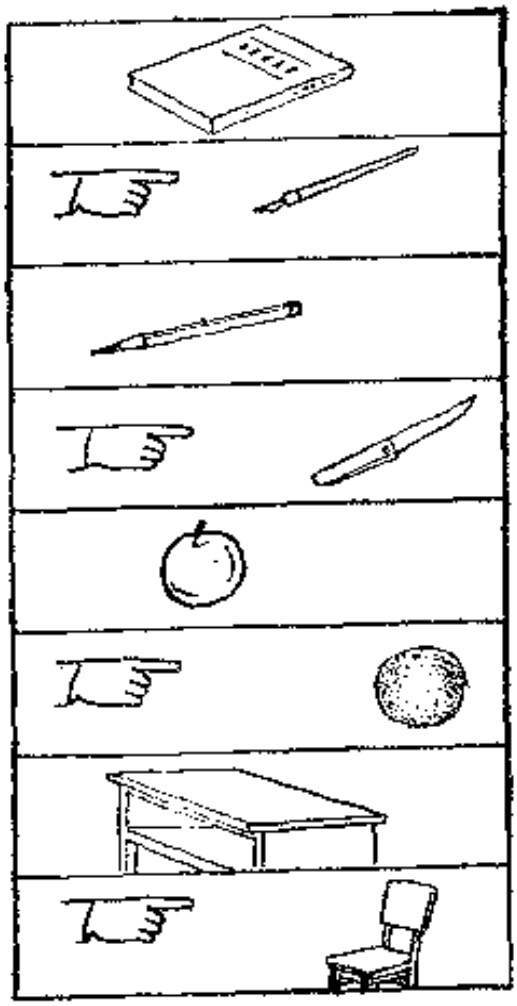
4) That ___ ___ ___.

5) ___ ___ an ___.

6) ___ ___ an ___.

7) ___ ___ ___ ___.

8) ___ ___ ___ ___.

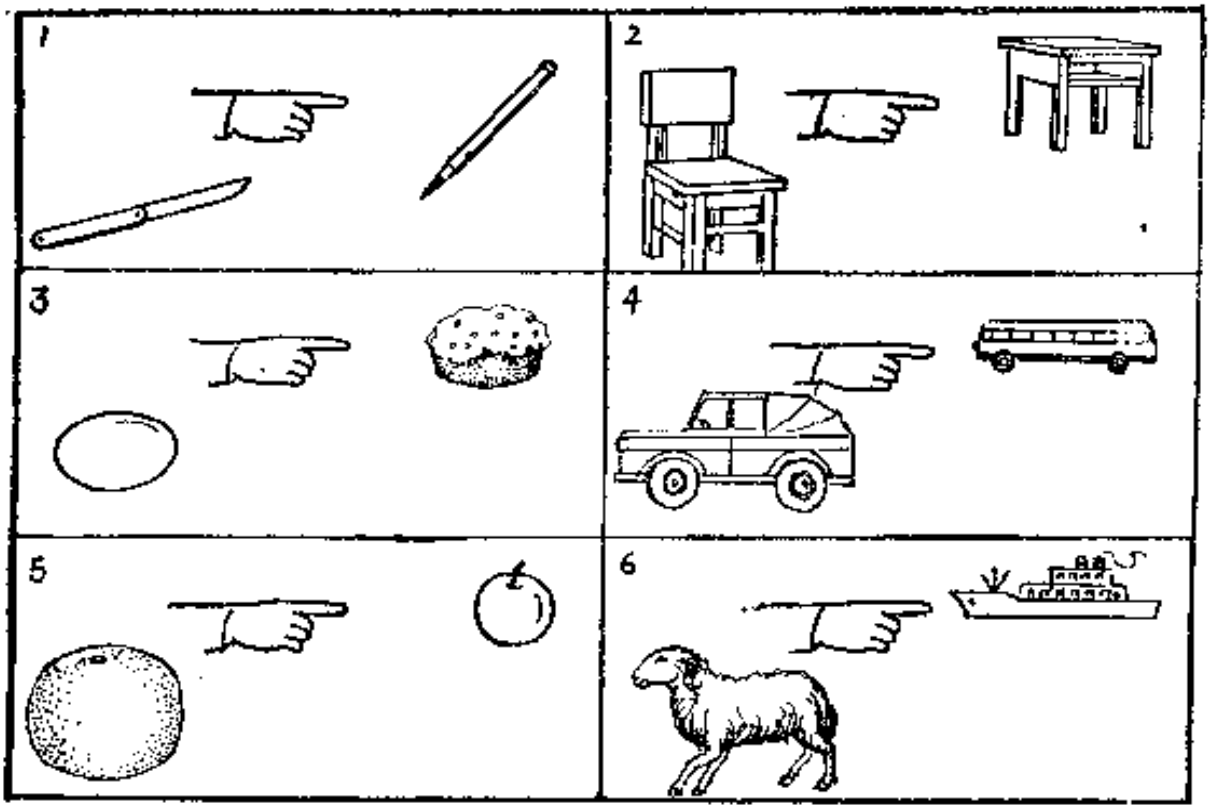


3. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

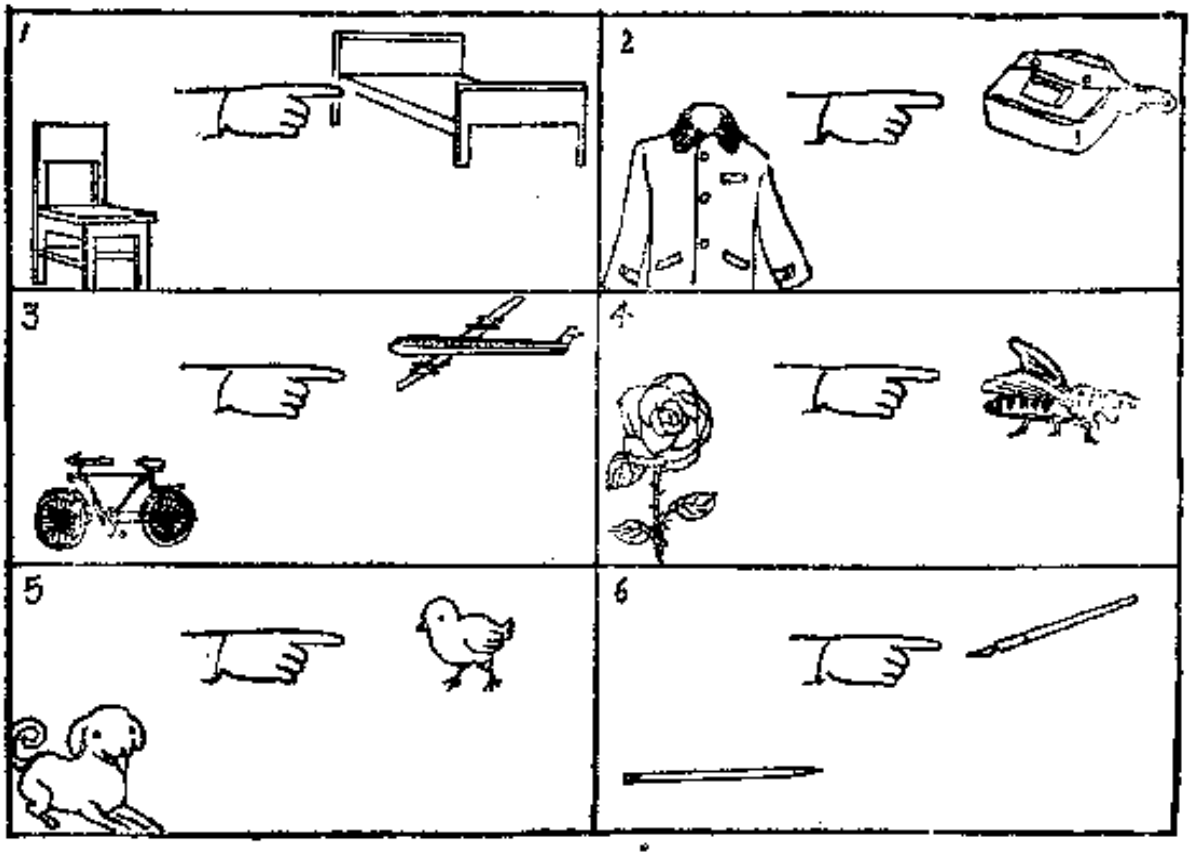
Model (示范): Picture 1(图 1)

This is a knife.

That's a pencil.



4. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):



Model (示范): Picture 1 (图 1)

What's this?

It's a chair.

What's that?

It's a bed.

5. Copy these (抄写):

a book a pencil a desk a chair

This is a book. That's a bag.

What's this? It's a cake.

What's that? It's an egg.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日常用语)

School is over.

Let's go home.

Good-bye!

Bye-bye!

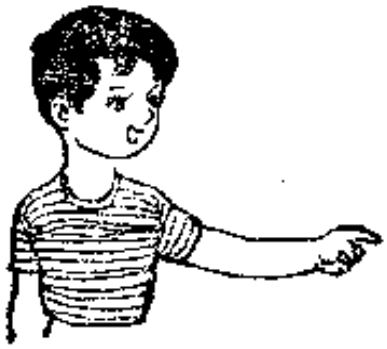
LESSON SEVEN

Lesson 7

DRILLS (句型练习)

A

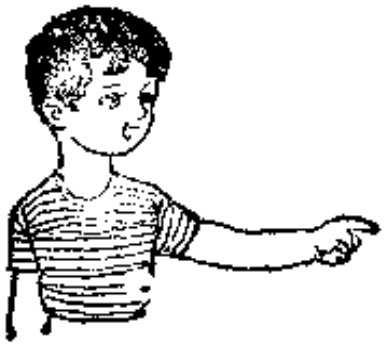
What's this?
It's a bus.
It's a red bus.



What's that?
It's a car.
It's a blue car.

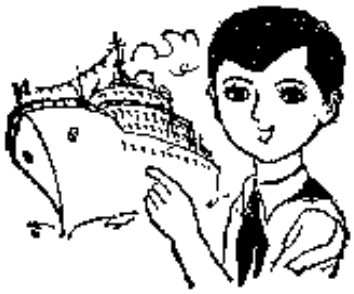
B

Is this a jeep?
Yes, it is.
Is it green?
Yes, it is.

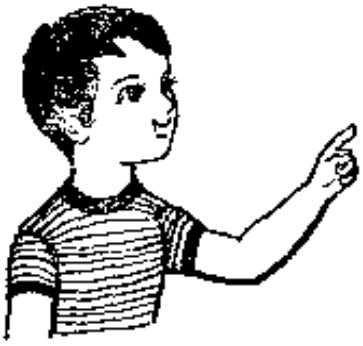


Is that a bike?
Yes, it is.
Is it black?
Yes, it is.

C



Is this a ship?
Yes, it is.
What colour is it?
It's yellow.



Is that a plane?
Yes, it is.
What colour is it?
It's white.

DIALOGUE (对话)

A: What colour is this apple?
B: It's red.
A: What colour is that banana?
B: It's yellow.

A: What colour is an orange?

B: Why, it's orange. An orange is orange.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS (单词和习惯用语)

red *adj.* 红色的
car *n.* 汽车,小汽车
blue *adj.* 蓝色的
yes *adv.* 是,是的
green *adj.* 绿色的
black *adj.* 黑色的
colour *n.* 颜色
yellow *adj.* 黄色的
white *adj.* 白色的

* * *

banana *n.* 香蕉
why *interj.* 怎么啦(表示惊讶)
orange *adj.* 橙色的,桔色的

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION (语音和语调)

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1)	i	b*i*k*e*	kn*i*f*e*	wh*i*t*e*	
		*i*s	th*i*s	sh*i*p	ch*i*ck
	t	i*t*	wha*t*	coa*t*	s*t*uden*t*
	d	*d*og	*d*esk	re*d*	han*d*

2) bl~ue → blue　　gr~ee~n → green
bl~ack → black　　yel~low → yellow

2. Read aloud these phrases and sentences (朗读这些词组和句子):

1) a 'red ↗bus　　a ↘red bus

a 'blue ↗car　　a ↘blue car

2) Is 'this a ↗jeep?　　↘Yes, it ↘is.

Is it ↗green?　　↘Yes, it ↘is.

Is 'that a ↗plane?　　↘Yes, it ↘is.

'What ↘colour is it?

It's ↘white.

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):

							B	
							L	
Y			C		L			R
				R				
L		B	L		C	K		
L				N			R	
				G	R			N
W	H		T				D	

2. Turn these into questions and then give answers (把这些句子变为问句，然后回答):

Model (示范): This is a green jeep. ⟶

Is this a jeep? Yes, it is.

Is it green? Yes, it is.

1) This is a black car.

2) That is a yellow banana.

3) This is an orange coat.

4) That is a white sheep.

5) This is a blue bike.

6) That is a red rose.

3. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

A. Model (示范): Picture 1 (图 1)

Is this a bus?

Yes, it is.

Is that a car?

Yes, it is.

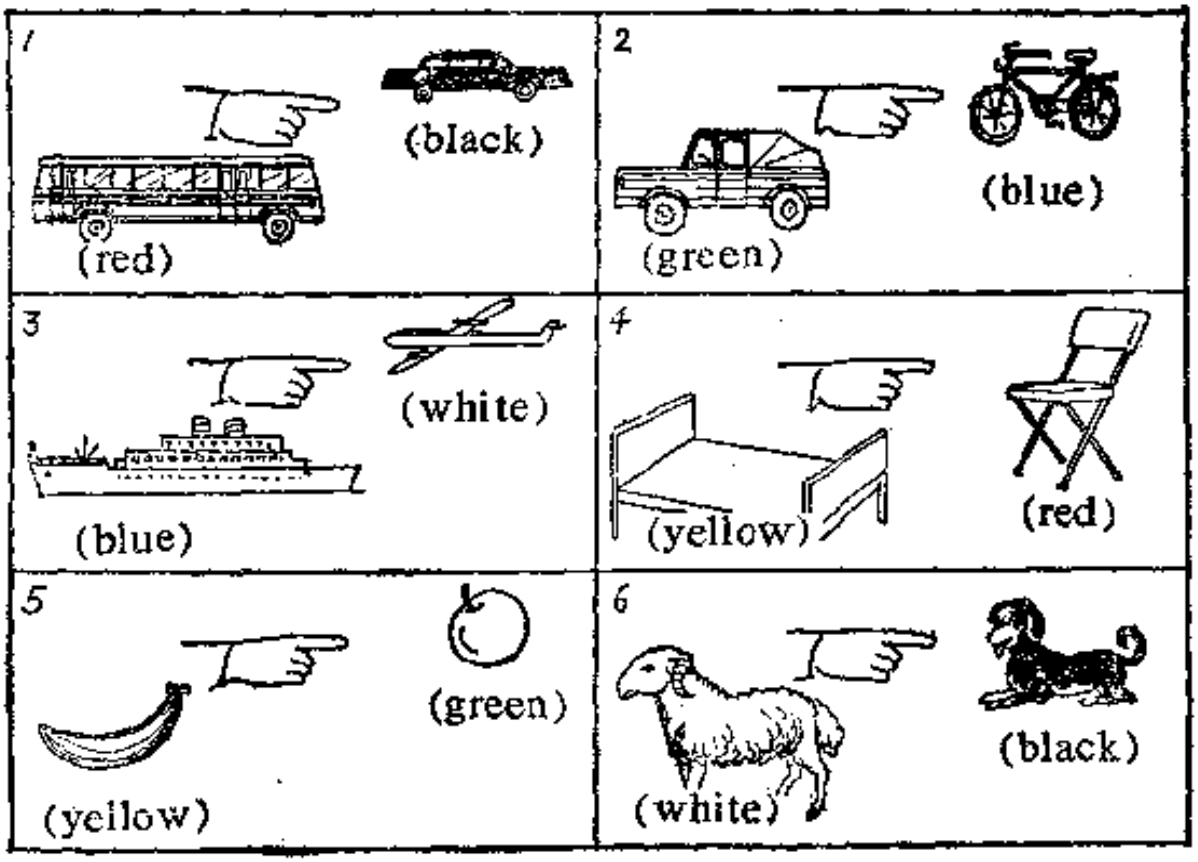
B. Model (示范): Picture 1 (图 1)

What colour is this bus?

It's red.

What colour is that car?

It's black.



4. Copy these (抄写):

green yellow white black

a blue car a red bus

Is this a ship? Yes, it is.

What colour is it? It's yellow.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日 常 用 语)

Stand up, please.

Sit down, please.

LESSON EIGHT

Lesson 8

DRILLS (句型练习)

A

This is my cup.
It isn't your cup.
My cup is white.
Your cup is yellow.

That isn't his bike.
It's her bike.
His bike is black.
Her bike is green.

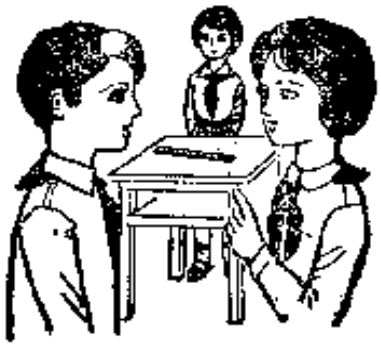
isn't = is not

B

Is this your desk?
Yes, it is.

Is that your chair?
No, it isn't.
It's his chair.

Is this your rubber?
Yes, it is.



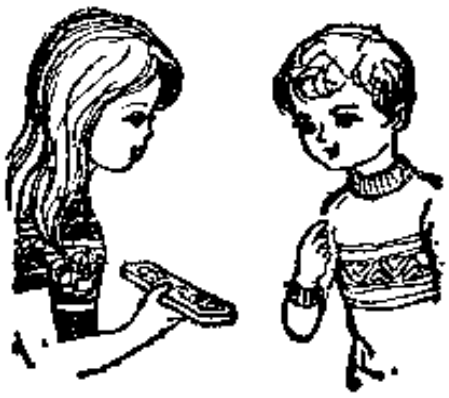
Is that your ruler?
No, it isn't.
It's her ruler.

DIALOGUE (对话)

Tom: Kate!
Kate: Yes?
Tom: Is this your knife?
Kate: No, it isn't.

* * *

Kate: Tom! Is this your pencil-box?
Tom: Yes, it is. Thank you.
Kate: That's all right.



WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS (单词和习惯用语)

my *pron.* 我的
cup *n.* 小茶杯
not *adv.* 不
your *pron.* 你的，你们的
his *pron.* 他的
her *pron.* 她的
no *adv.* 不，不是
rubber *n.* 橡皮
ruler *n.* 尺

* * *

Tom 汤姆(男名)
Kate 凯特(女名)
pencil-box *n.* 铅笔盒
thank *v.* 谢谢
you *pron.* 你，你们
all right 行了；好吧
That's all right. 没什么(这里表示"不用谢")。

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION (语音和语调)

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) o　no　rose
　　not　dog　box　Tom
　u　student
　　blue　ruler
　　cup　bus　rubber
　y　my　why
　y　yes　you　your　yellow

2) th～ank → thank　　r～ight → right
　rub～ber → rubber　　pen～cil → pencil

2. Read aloud these phrases and sentences (朗读这些词组和句子):

1) my ↗cup ↘my cup
your ↗desk ↘your desk
his ↗chair ↘his chair
her ↗ruler ↘her ruler

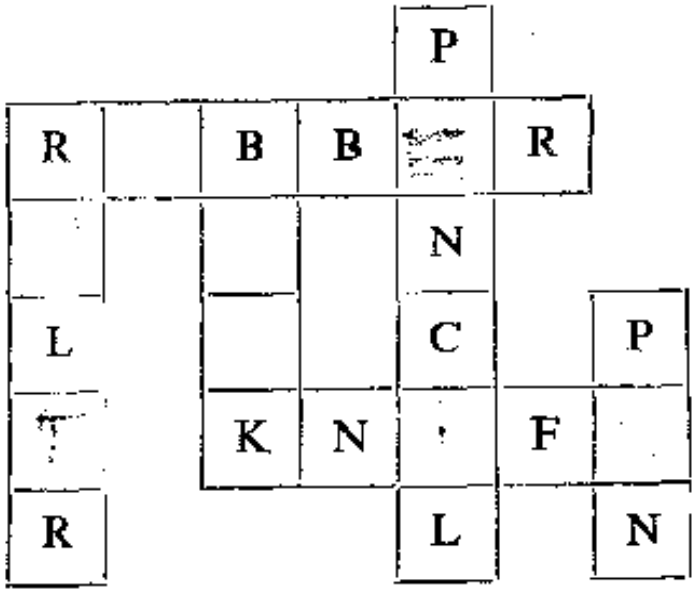
2) ˈThis is ↘my cup. It ˈisn't ↘your cup.
ˈMy ˈcup is ↘white. ˈYour ˈcup is ↘yellow.
Is ˈthat ↗your chair? ↘No, it ↘isn't.
It's ↘his chair.

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):

a_ _le	ye_ _ow	ru_ _er	e_ _
bi_e	boo_	than_	des_
b_ _	j_ _p	sh_ _p	gr_ _n
y_s	r_d	p_n	b_d
chi_ _	bla_ _		

2. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):



3. Turn these into questions and then give negative answers (把这些句子变为问句,然后做出否定回答):

Model (示范): This is my cup. (your)⟶

Is this your cup?

No, it isn't.

1) This is my desk. (your)

2) That is his chair. (her)

3) This is her rubber. (his)

4) That is your ruler. (my)

5) This is her book. (his)

6) That is his bed. (your)

4. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

A. Model (示范): Picture 1 (图1)

This is my bag.

It isn't your bag.

My bag is red.

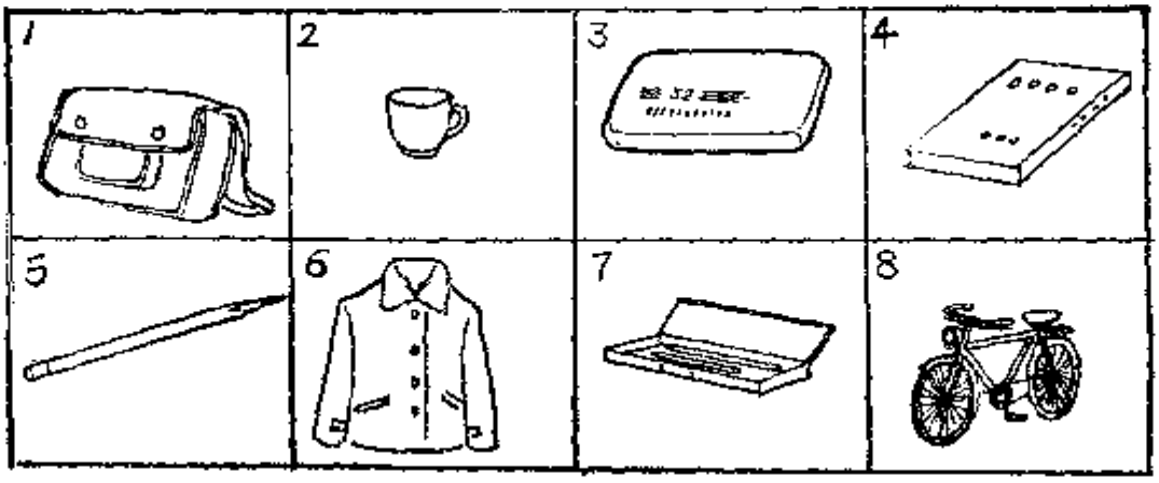
Your bag is blue.

B. Model (示范): Picture 1 (图1)

Is this your bag?

No, it isn't.

It's his (her) bag.



5. Copy these (抄写):

my your his her

a cup a rubber a pencil-box

Is that your ruler?

No, it isn't. It's her ruler.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日 常 用 语)

May I use your rubber?

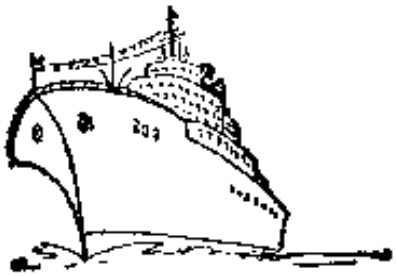
Yes. Here you are.

LESSON NINE

Lesson 9

DRILLS (句型练习)

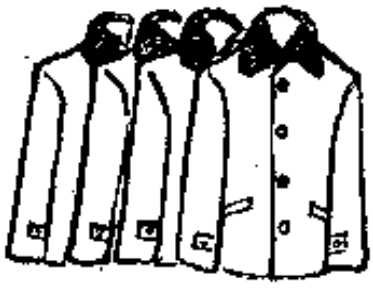
A



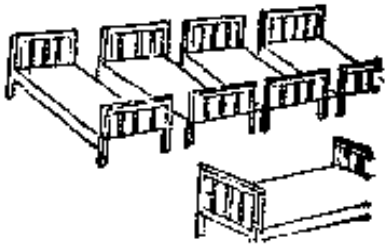
one ship

two ships

three cakes



four coats



five beds

six bees

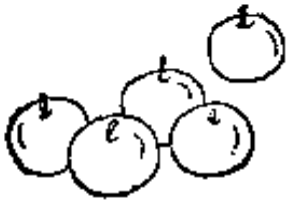
seven bananas

eight oranges

nine buses

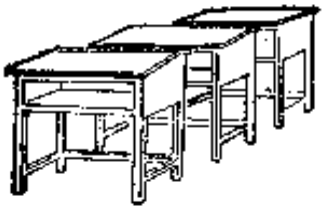
ten boxes

B



These are apples.
Those aren't apples.
They're oranges.
The apples are here.
The oranges are there.

aren't = are not
they're = they are



These are desks.
Those aren't desks.
They're tables.
The desks are here.
The tables are there.

43 page forty-three

DIALOGUE (对话)

A: Look, what's this?

B: It's a *ship*.

A: No, it's a sheep.
These are all sheep.
They're white sheep.
What are those?

B: Why, they're sheep, too.
They're black sheep.

A: No, they aren't sheep.
They're goats.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS (单词和习惯用语)

lesson *n.* 课,功课
one *num.* 一
two *num.* 二
three *num.* 三
four *num.* 四
five *num.* 五
six *num.* 六
seven *num.* 七
eight *num.* 八
nine *num.* 九
ten *num.* 十
box *n.* 盒子
these *pron.* & *adj.* 这些
are *v.* 是
those *pron.* & *adj.* 那些
they *pron.* 他们(她们,它们)
the *art.* 这(那)个; 这(那)些
here *adv.* 这儿
there *adv.* 那儿
table *n.* 桌子

* * *

look *v.* 看
all *adv.* 都
too *adv.* 也
goat *n.* 山羊

GRAMMAR (语法)

名词的复数形式 (The Plural Number of Nouns) (I)

1. 一般在单数名词末尾加 -s:

book	books
ruler	rulers
egg	eggs
student	students
hand	hands
rose	roses
orange	oranges

2. 以 s, x 等结尾的词加 -es:

bus	buses
box	boxes

注: knife 的复数形式为 knives, sheep 的复数形式和单数形式相同。

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION (语音和语调)

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) jeeps ships books cakes bikes
dogs pens lessons apples tables
bees cars chairs rulers rubbers
coats goats students beds hands
buses boxes faces roses oranges

2) th～ese → these　　th～ose → those

ta～ble → table　　les～son → lesson

2. Read aloud these phrases and sentences (朗读这些词组和句子):

1) 'three ↗cakes　　↘three cakes

'five ↗beds　　↘five beds

'eight ↗oranges　　↘eight oranges

'nine ↗buses　　↘nine buses

'ten ↗boxes　　↘ten boxes

2) 'These are ↘apples.　↘Those aren't apples.

They're ↘oranges.

The 'apples are ↘here.

The 'oranges are ↘there.

EXERCISES (练习)

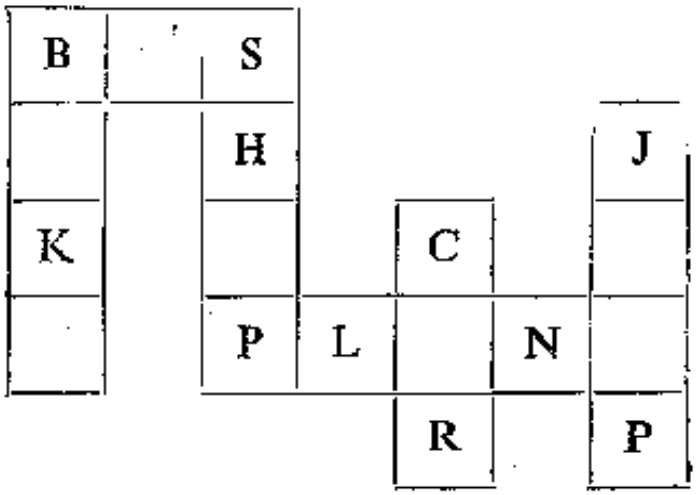
1. Read out these numbers (读出这些数字):

Model(示范): 550243→five, five, o, two, four, three

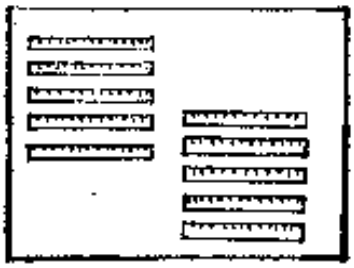
注: 0 读字母 O 音。

551234	894673
339876	
285432	740531

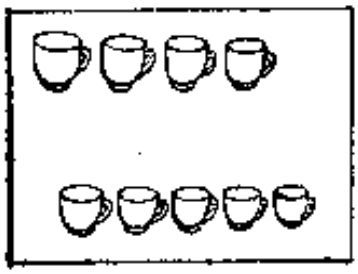
2. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):



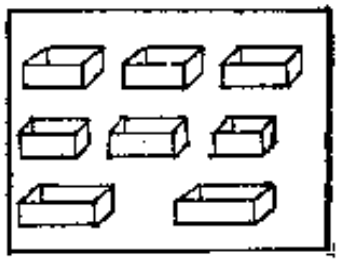
3. Write out these in English (用英语写出图中的事物):

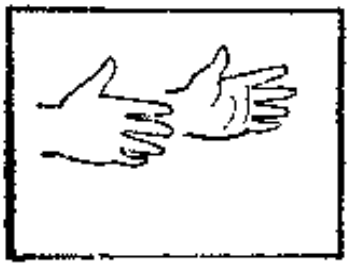


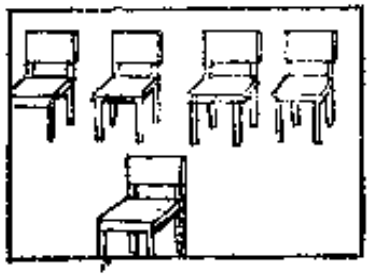
ten rulers



nine







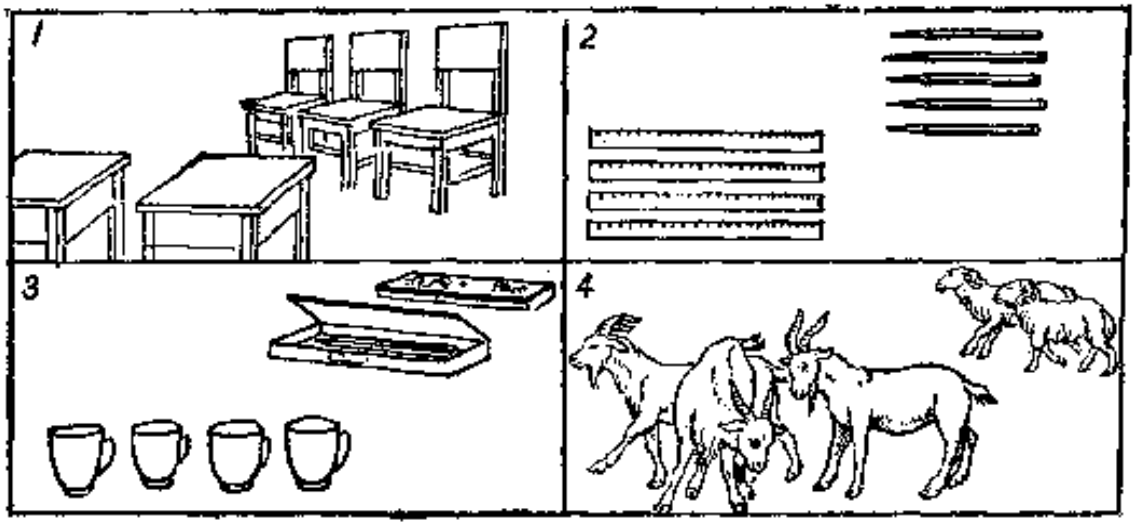
4. Make these sentences negative (把这些句子改成否定句):

Model (示范): These are red pens. ⟶
These are not red pens.

1) These are blue rubbers.
2) Those are green pencil-boxes.
3) These are yellow buses.
4) Those are orange cars.
5) These are red apples.
6) Those are black goats.

5. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

Model (示范): Picture 1(图 1)
These aren't chairs.
They're tables.
The chairs are there.
Those aren't tables.
They're chairs.
The tables are here.



6. Copy these (抄写):

one two three four five

six seven eight nine ten

one ship three cakes ten boxes

These are desks. Those aren't desks.

They're tables.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日常用语)

Look at the blackboard.

Read after me, please.

LESSON TEN

Lesson 10

DRILLS (句型练习)

A

What are these?

They're pigs.

They're fat.

What are those?

They're goats.

They're thin.

B

Are these horses white?
Yes, they are.

Are those cows white,
too?
No, they aren't.
They're black and white.

C

Are those chicks?
No, they aren't.
Are they cocks?
No, they aren't.
What are they, then?
They're hens.
They're big, fat hens.

DIALOGUE (对话)

Kate: What's in that box, Mum?

Mum: Shoes. New shoes for you.

Kate: New shoes for me! What colour are they?

Mum: Guess.

Kate: Are they white?

Mum: No, they aren't.

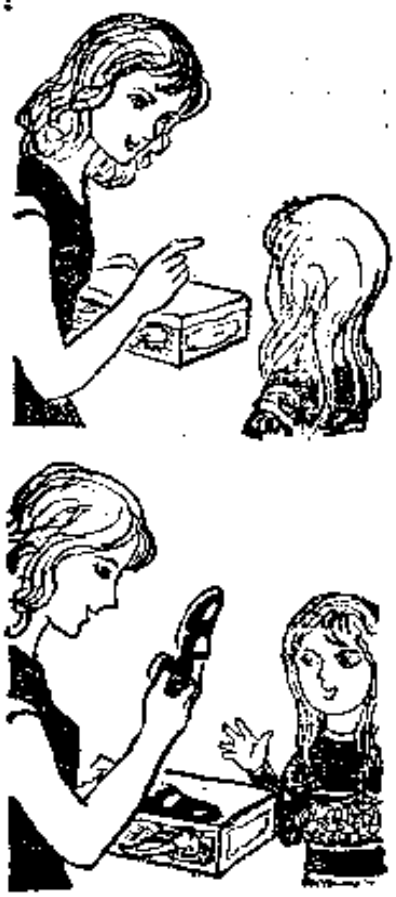
Kate: Are they red?

Mum: No.

Kate: Are they green, then?

Mum: No. Look, they're blue.

Kate: How nice! Thank you, Mum.



WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS (单词和习惯用语)

pig *n.* 猪
fat *adj.* 肥胖的
thin *adj* 瘦的
horse *n.* 马
cow *n.* 母牛，奶牛
and *conj.* 和；又
cock *n.* 公鸡
then *adv.* 那么；然后
hen *n.* 母鸡
big *adj.* 大的

* * *

in *prep.* 在……里面
mum *n.* 妈妈
shoe *n.* 鞋
new *adj.* 新的
for *prep.* 为

me *pron.* 我(宾格)
guess *v.* 猜
how *adv.* (指程度、数量)
多么;多少
nice *adj.* 好的,好看的

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION
(语音和语调)

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1)

oo	l*oo*k	b*oo*k		
ow	c*ow*	h*ow*		
k	*K*ate	loo*k*	tha*nk*	des*k*
c	*c*ar	*c*oat	*c*up	*c*olour
ck	co*ck*	chi*ck*	bla*ck*	
g	*g*oat	*g*reen	pi*g*	bi*g*
h	*h*en	*h*er	*h*ere	*h*orse
th	*th*in	*th*ank	*th*ree	
	*th*ey	*th*en	*th*at	*th*ere

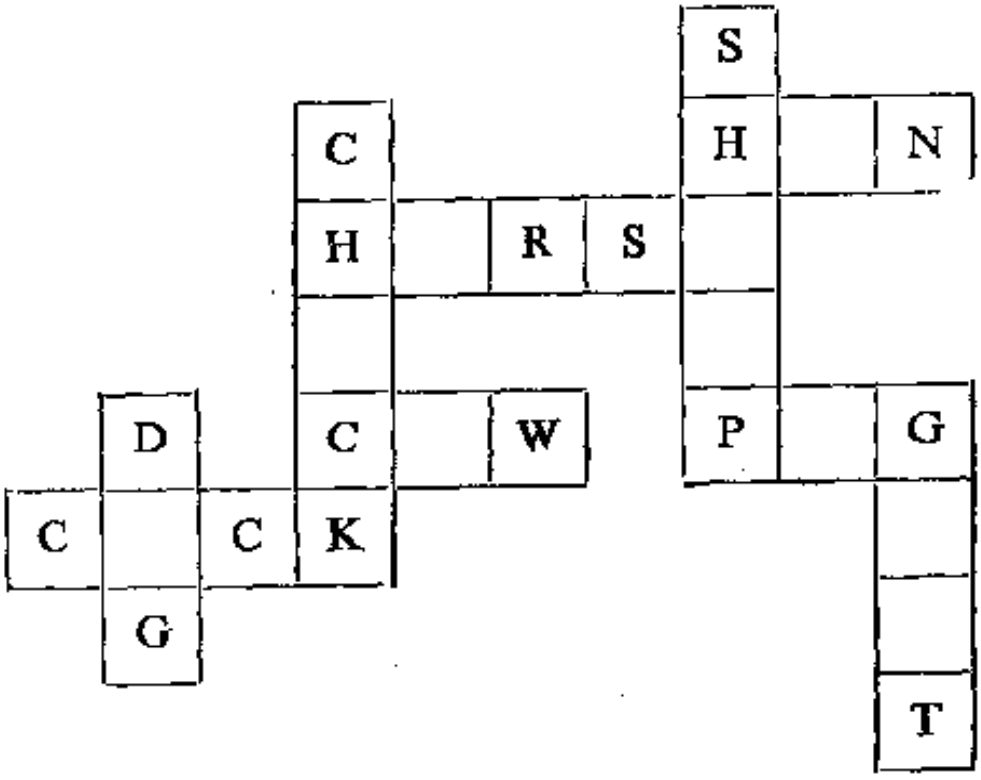
2) f~at → fat　　p~ig → pig
m~um → mum　　n~ice → nice

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

'What are ↘these? They're ↘pigs. They're ↘fat.
Are 'these 'horses ↗white? ↘Yes, they ↘are.
Are 'those 'cows 'white, ↗too? ↘No, they ↘aren't.
They're 'black and ↘white.

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):



2. Give the English for these (把这些词组译成英语):

1) 一只公鸡	2) 三只母鸡	3) 十只小鸡
4) 五只绵羊	5) 四头奶牛	6) 八口猪
7) 六匹马	8) 两只狗	9) 七只山羊

3. Make these plural (把这些句子改成复数形式):

Model (示范): This is a fat pig. ⟶
These are fat pigs.

1) This is a desk.
2) That is a table.
3) This is a nice coat.
4) That is a new box.
5) This is a big cock.

6) That is a fat hen.

4. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

A. Model (示范): Picture 1(图 1)

What are these?

They're cocks.

What are those?

They're hens.

B. Model (示范): Picture 1(图 1)

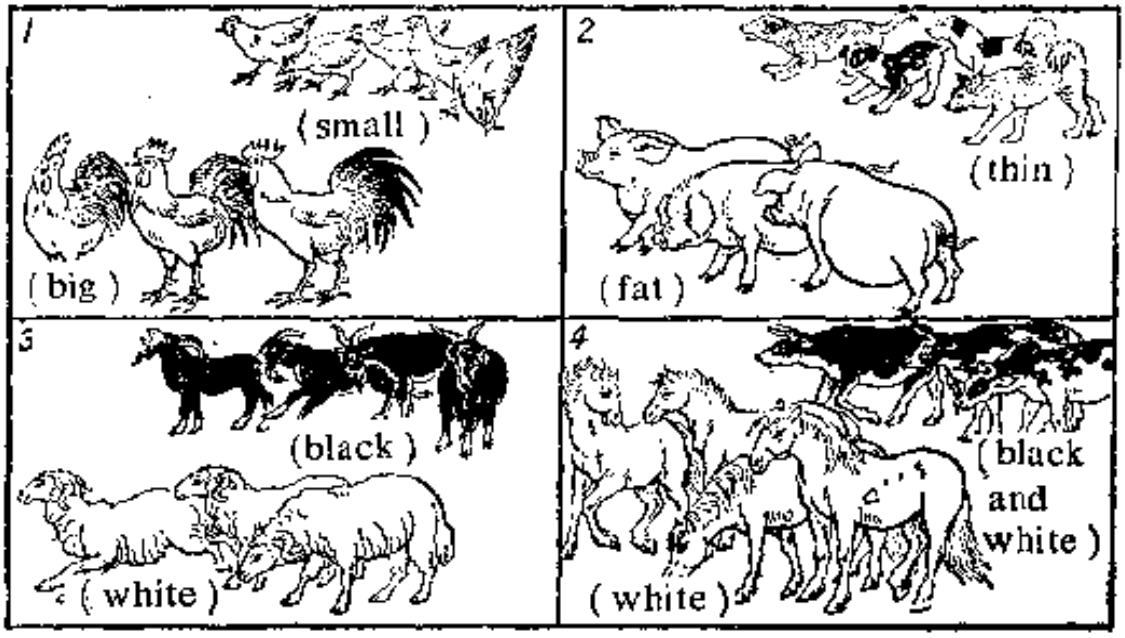
Are the cocks big?

Yes, they are.

Are the hens big, too?

No, they aren't.

They're small.



5. Copy these (抄写):

pig goat horse cow cock hen.

fat thin black and white

What are these? They're cocks.

Are those chicks? No, they aren't.

They're big, fat hens.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日 常 用 语)

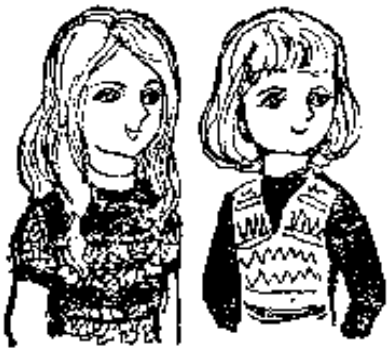
What day is today?
It's Monday (Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday).

LESSON ELEVEN

Lesson 11

DRILLS (句型练习)

A



This is Kate and this is Joan.
Kate's hair is long.
Joan's hair is short.

This is Mike and this is Tom.
Tom's trousers are new.
Mike's trousers are old.

b

Is Kate's hair long or short?
It's long.
Are Tom's trousers old or new?
They're new.

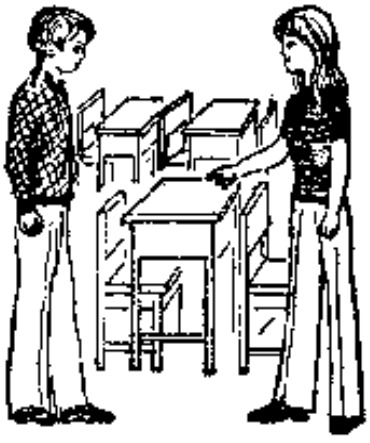
C

Whose room is this?
It's our room.
It's small.

Whose books are those?
They're their books.
They're new.

DIALOGUE (对话)

Kate: Hello, Joan.
Joan: Hello, Kate.
Kate: Joan, this is Mike.
He's a new student.
Joan: Hello, Mike.
Mike: Hello, Joan.
Mike: Whose seat is this?
Kate: It's Joan's. Your seat is over there.



he's = he is

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS (单词和习惯用语)

eleven *num.* 十一
Joan 琼(女名)
Kate's 凯特的
hair *n.* 头发
long *adj.* 长的
short *adj.* 短的
Mike 迈克(男名)
trousers (*pl.*)*n.* 长裤
old *adj.* 旧的
or *conj.* 或者
whose *pron.* 谁的
room *n.* 房间
our *pron.* 我们的
small *adj.* 小的
their *pron.* 他们的(她们的，它们的)

* * *

hello *interj.* 喂(表示问候，或唤起注意)
he *pron.* 他
seat *n.* 座位
over *adv.* 在那边，在另一处
over there 在那边(指较远处)

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION (语音和语调)

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1)	air	h*air*	ch*air*		
	oa	c*oa*t	g*oa*t	J*oa*n	
	or	*or*	h*or*se	sh*or*t	
	l	*l*ong	*l*ook	*l*esson	e*l*even
		o*l*d	sma*ll*	ap*pl*e	pen*cil*
	m	*m*y	*M*ike	*m*um	roo*m*
	n	*n*ot	*n*ine	te*n*	thi*n*

2) l~ong → long o~ver → over

s~ca~t → seat tr~ou~sers → trousers

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

'This is ↗Kate and 'this is ↘Joan.

'Kate's 'hair is ↘long. 'Joan's 'hair is ↘short.

Is 'Kate's 'hair ↗long or ↘short? It's ↘long.

'Whose 'room is ↘this? It's ↘our room.

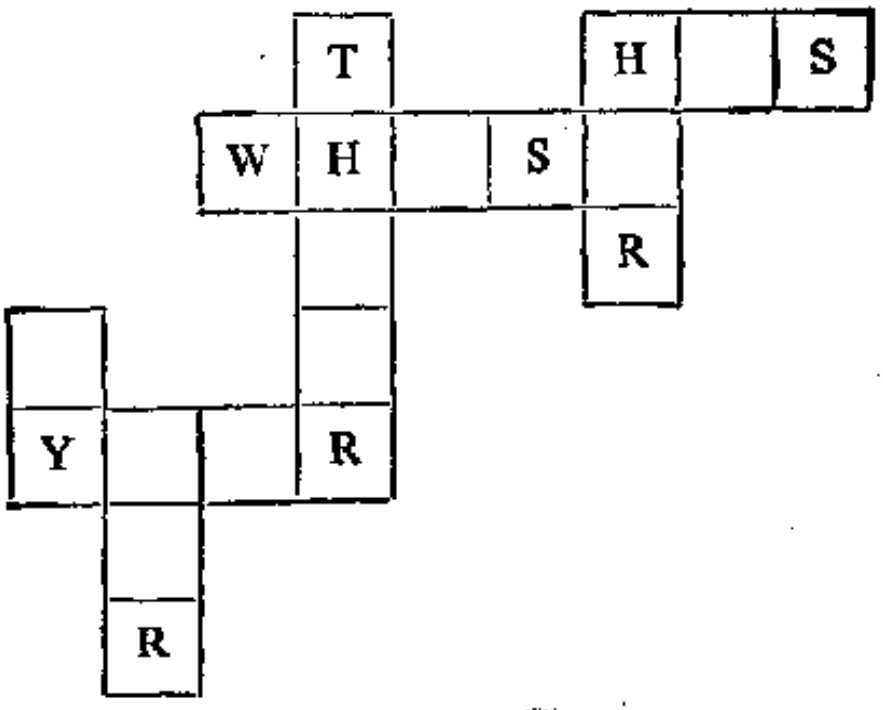
EXERCISES (练习)

1. Give the opposites of these (写出与这些词意义相反的词):

black — white fat — big —

old — long — yes —

2. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):



3. Give the plural of these nouns (写出这些名词的复数

形式):

a seat　a shoe　a room　a horse　an orange

a table　a bus　a face　a cup　a box

4. Make questions (组成问句):

A. Model (示范): this bus, big, small ⟶

Is this bus big or small?

1) this pencil, long, short

2) his coat, green, blue

3) our room, big, small

4) her hair, long, short

B. Model (示范): their desks, new, old ⟶

Are their desks new or old?

1) Jack's trousers, blue, yellow

2) your shoes, old, new

3) those pigs, black, white

4) these sheep, fat, thin

5. Make questions and then give answers (组成问句,然后回答):

A. Model (示范): book (my) ⟶

Whose book is this?

It's my book.

1) chair (my)　2) knife (his)

3) ruler (her)　4) bike (your)

B. Model (示范): pens (our) ⟶

Whose pens are these?

They're our pens.

1) pencils (their) 2) bags (our)

3) boxes (your) 4) shoes (their)

6. Copy these (抄写):

long short old new big small

Joan's hair Mike's trousers

Is Kate's hair long or short?

It's long.

Whose room is that?

It's their room.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

(日 常 用 语)

May I come in?

Yes. Come in.

LESSON TWELVE

Lesson 12

(Revision)

EXERCISES (练习)

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):

f__ce	c__ke	t__ble	pl__ne
__nd	__pple	bl__ck	f__t
j__p	thr__	sh__p	gr__n
h__n	y__llow	l__sson	gu__ss
b__ke	n__ce	kn__fe	wh__te
s__x	p__g	b__g	ch__ck
r__se	th__se	n__	__ld
n__t	c__ck	d__g	l__ng
st__dent	r__ler	c__p	m__m

2. Give the English for these (把这些词组译成英语):

1) 我的铅笔　　2) 你的蓝色钢笔

3) 凯特的脸　　4) 他的手

5) 她的橡皮　　6) 汤姆的绿铅笔盒

7) 琼的新鞋　　8) 迈克的裤子

9) 我们的书桌　　10) 他们的书包

3. Fill in the blanks (填空):

A. 1) Is that a ___? (飞机)

2) Whose ___ (铅笔) is that?

3) Are those ___ (绵羊)?

4) It is their ___ (房间).

5) What colour is the ___ (玫瑰花)?

6) Tom's ___ (裤子) are old.

7) What colour are the ___(课桌)?

8) Whose ___ (椅子) are those?

B. 1) What ___ that?

2) They ___ not jeeps.

3) ___ this a car?

4) Whose trousers ___ these?

5) What colour ___ the bag?

6) ___these sheep fat?

7) Whose coat ___ this?

8) What colour ___ the shoes?

4. Make these sentences negative and interrogative (把这些句子改成否定句和疑问句):

A. Model (示范): This is a big cow. (small) ⟶
This is not a small cow.
Is this a small cow?

1) This is a white horse. (black)

2) That is a fat pig. (thin)

3) This is his rubber. (my)

4) That is her bag. (your)

B. Model (示范): These are white dogs. (black)
⟶

These are not black dogs.

Are these black dogs?

1) These are fat hens. (thin)

2) Those are white pigs. (black)

3) These are their cows. (our)

4) Those are our horses. (your)

5. Turn these into questions (把这些句子变为问句):

A. Model (示范): This is ***my*** pen. ⟶

Whose pen is this?

1) This is ***his*** seat.

2) That is ***her*** pencil.

3) This is ***my*** room.

4) That is ***his*** desk.

B. Model (示范): These are ***our*** books. ⟶

Whose books are these?

1) These are ***his*** pencils.

2) Those are ***our*** rubbers.

3) These are ***their*** pencil-boxes.

4) Those are ***your*** bikes.

6. Look at the pictures on page i and page ii, and then make questions and answers (就第 i, ii 页上的彩图进行问答):

A. Model (示范): What's this?

It's a bus.

What colour is it?

It's red.

1) car 2) jeep 3) ship 4) plane 5) bike

B. Model (示范): What are those?
They're goats.
What colour are they?
They're black.

1) pigs 2) cocks 3) hens 4) chicks
5) eggs 6) sheep 7) cows

A SONG (一首歌)

Ten Little Indian Boys

F $\frac{4}{4}$

1 1 1 1 1 1 | 3 5 5 3 1 |
1. One lit-tle, two lit-tle, three lit-tle In-dians,
2. Ten lit-tle, nine lit-tle, eight lit-tle In-dians,

2 2 2 2 2 2 | 7 2 2 7 5 |
Four lit-tle, five lit-tle, six lit-tle In-dians,
Seven lit-tle, six lit-tle, five lit-tle In-dians,

1 1 1 1 1 1 | 3 5 5 3 1 |
Seven lit-tle, eight lit-tle, nine lit-tle In-dians,
Four lit-tle, three lit-tle, two lit-tle In-dians,

5 4 4 3 2 | 1 – 0 0 :‖
Ten lit-tle In-dian boys.
One lit-tle In-dian boy.

LESSON THIRTEEN

Lesson 13

DRILLS

A

Li Ping is a boy.
He's a Chinese boy.
He's twelve.
He's tall.
He's a student.

Li Ying is a girl.
She's Li Ping's sister.
She's five.
She's short.
She isn't a student.

she's = she is

B

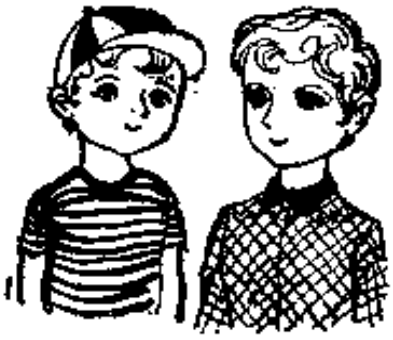
Who's this man?
He's Li Ping's father.
Is he a teacher?
Yes, he is.

who's = who is

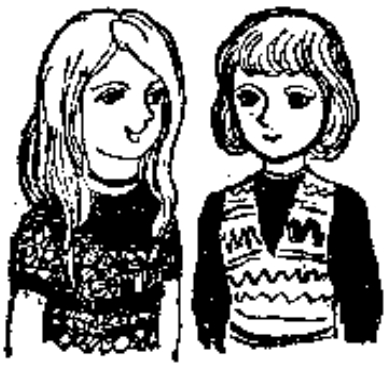
Who's this woman?
She's Li Ping's mother.
Is she a teacher, too?
No, she isn't.
She's a worker.

C

These two boys are Jack and Mike.
They aren't Chinese.
They're English.
They're brothers.



D



Who are these girls?
They're Joan and Kate.
Are they English?
Yes, they are.
Are they sisters?
No, they aren't.
They're friends.

DIALOGUE

A: Look at this picture, Li Ping.

B: Oh, it's an old picture. Who's this man?

A: He's my father.

B: Oh, your father?

A: Yes. He's a teacher. And this is my mother.

B: Is she a teacher, too?

A: No. She's a worker.

B: Who's this baby?

A: Guess!

B: Is it your brother?

A: No.

B: Your sister?

A: No.

B: Then it's you! Ha ha!

A: Yes, it's me.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

thirteen *num.* 十三
boy *n.* 男孩
Chinese *adj.* 中国的; 中国人的; 汉语的
n. 中国人; 汉语
twelve *num.* 十二
tall *adj.* 高的
girl *n.* 女孩
she *pron.* 她
sister *n.* 姐, 妹
short *adj.* 矮的
who *pron.* 谁
man(*pl.* men) *n.* 男人; 人
father *n.* 父亲
teacher *n.* 教师
woman(*pl.* women) *n.* 妇女, 女人
mother *n.* 母亲
worker *n.* 工人
Jack 杰克(男名)
English *adj.* 英国的; 英国人的; 英语的
n. 英语
brother *n.* 兄, 弟
friend *n.* 朋友

* * *

look at 看……
picture *n.* 图画, 照片
oh *interj.* 哦
baby *n.* 婴儿
ha *interj.* 哈!

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

ir	girl	thirteen		
er	father	mother	brother	worker
r	red	right	friend	green
s	seat	small	this	desk
	is	rose	those	Chinese
sh	she	shoe	short	English

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

'Li 'Ping is a ↘boy. He's a Chi↘nese boy.

He's a ↘student. She 'isn't a ↘student.

'Who's this ↘woman? She's 'Li Ping's ↘mother.

Is 'she a 'teacher, ↗too? ↘No, she ↘isn't.

'These 'two 'boys are 'Jack and ↘Mike.

They 'aren't Chi↘nese.

'Who are these ↘girls? They're 'Joan and ↘Kate.

EXERCISES

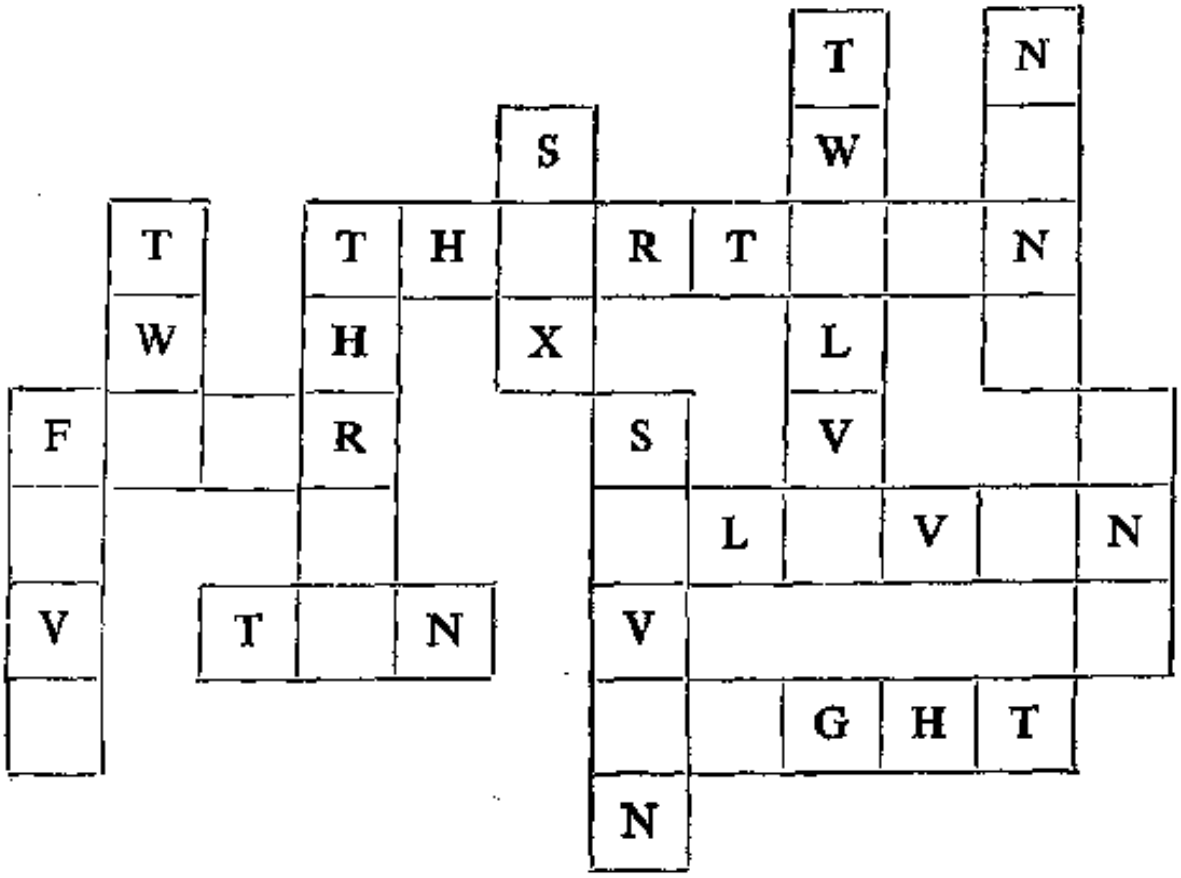
1. Give the English for these (把这些词组译成英语):

1) 李平的父亲　　2) 魏芳的母亲

3) 她的哥哥　　4) 我的妹妹

5) 迈克的母亲　　6) 琼的朋友

2. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):



3. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

A. Model: Picture 1

Who's this girl?

She's Li Ying.

Is she Li Ping's sister?

Yes, she is.

1

Li Ying (Li Ping's sister)

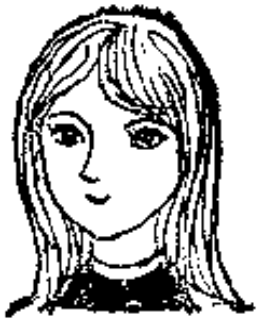
2

Li Ping (Li Ying's brother)

3

Jack (Mike's brother)

4



Kate (Joan's friend)

B. Model: Picture 1

Who are these boys?

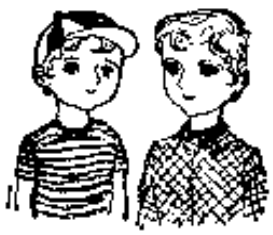
They're Jack and Mike.

Are they friends?

No, they aren't.

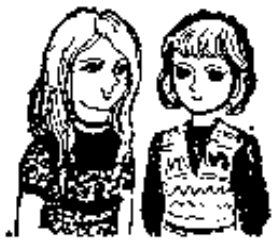
They're brothers.

1



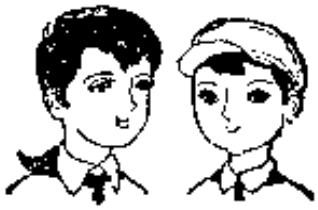
Jack and Mike (brothers)

2



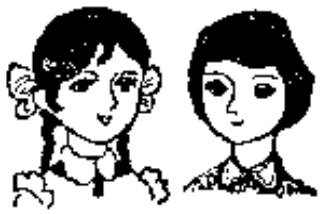
Joan and Kate (friends)

3



Li Ping and Wang Lin (friends)

4



Wei Fang and Wei Fen (sisters)

4. Make these sentences negative and interrogative (把

这些句子改成否定句和疑问句):

A. Model: She is a teacher. (worker) ⟶

She is not a worker.

Is she a worker?

1) He is Wang Lin. (Li Ping)

2) She is short. (tall)

3) Mike is twelve. (thirteen)

4) Tom's mother is a worker. (teacher)

B. Model: They are friends. (brother) ⟶

They are not brothers.

Are they brothers?

1) Jack and Mike are brothers. (friends)

2) Joan and Kate are friends. (sisters)

3) Li Ping and Wei Fang are students. (babies)

4) They are English boys. (Chinese boys)

5. Copy these (抄写):

boy girl man woman

brother sister worker friend

Who's this man?

He's Li Ping's father.

Is Li Ping's mother a teacher, too?

No, she isn't. She's a worker.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Who's on duty today?

I am.

LESSON FOURTEEN

Lesson 14

DRILLS

A

I'm a boy.
You're a girl.
She's a girl.
You're girls.
I'm a student.
You're students.
We're all students.

I'm = I am
you're = you are
we're = we are

B

What's your name?
My name is Li Ping.
How old are you?
I'm twelve.
Are you a middle-school student?
Yes, I am.
Are you in Grade Two?
No, I'm not. I'm in Grade One.

C

Are you middle-school students?
Yes, we are.
Are you in Grade Three?
No, we aren't. We're in Grade One.
Are you Young Pioneers?
Yes, we are.

D

Is your father a doctor?
Yes, he is.

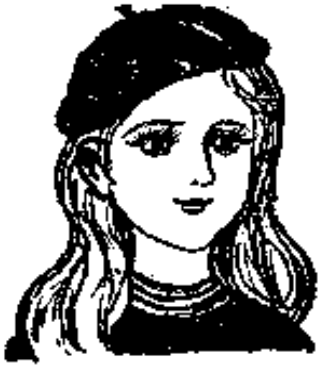
Is your mother a doctor, too?
No, she isn't. She's an English teacher.
What's your sister?
She's a nurse.

TEXT(课文)

My Family

I am an English boy. My name is Mike. I am twelve. My sister's name is Rose. She is fourteen. Rose and I are students. We like school.

My father is a teacher. He is a teacher of English. My mother is a nurse. They work hard. My little brother's name is Jack. He is only four. We all like Jack.



WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

fourteen *num.* 十四
I *pron.* 我
am *v.* 是
we *pron.* 我们
name *n.* 名字
old *adj.* 年老的；……岁的
how old 几岁
middle *adj.* 中间的，中等的
n. 中间
school *n.* 学校
middle-school student
中学生
grade *n.* 年级
young *adj.* 年青的
pioneer *n.* 先锋
Young Pioneer（简称 Pioneer）少先队员
doctor *n.* 医生
nurse *n.* 护士

* * *

family *n.* 家，家庭
Rose 罗斯(女名)
like *v.* 喜欢
of *prep.* ……的
a teacher of English
一位英语教师
work *v.* & *n.* 工作
hard *adv.* 努力地
little *adj.* 小的
only *adv.* 仅仅，只

GRAMMAR

I. 人称代词和物主代词 (Personal and Possessive Pronouns)

人称代词	I	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
物主代词	my	your	his	her	its	our	your	their

II. 动词 be (Verb *to be*)

1. I am / You are / He is / She is } (not) a student. We are / You are / They are } (not) students.

It is (not) a cock. They are (not) cocks.

2.

Am I ...? Yes, you are. No, you aren't.	Are you ...? Yes, I am. No, I'm not.	Is he (she, it) ...? Yes, he (she, it) is. No, he (she, it) isn't.
Are we ...? Yes, we (you) are. No, we (you) aren't.	Are you ...? Yes, we are. No, we aren't.	Are they ...? Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) a	cake	grade	table	baby
	am	fat	man	Jack
e	he	she	we	me
	these	Chinese		
	ten	hen	then	guess
ee	jeep	three	green	fourteen
ar	car	hard		
c	cake	cock	cup	
	face	nice	pencil	

ch *ch*air *ch*ick *Ch*inese teac*h*er

2) make cap see let arm

lake map keep get part

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

ˈWhat's your ↘name? ˈMy name is ˈLi ↘Ping.

ˈHow ↘old are you? I'm ↘twelve.

Are you a ˈmiddle-school ↗student?

↘Yes, I ↘am.

Are you in ˈGrade ↗Two?

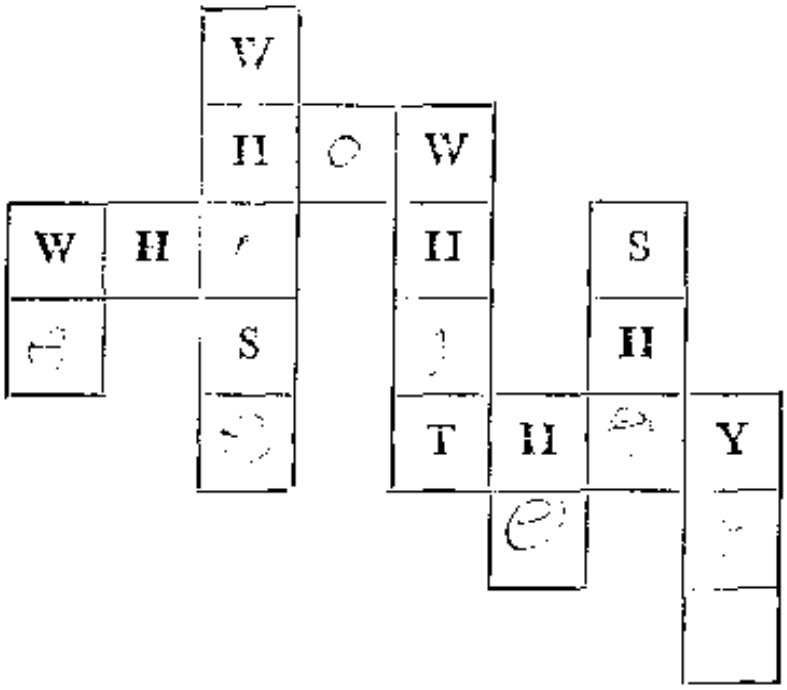
↘No, I'm ↘not. I'm in ˈGrade ↘One.

Is your ˈfather a ↗doctor? ↘Yes, he ↘is.

ˈWhat's your ↘sister? She's a ↘nurse.

EXERCISES

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):



2. Put in the missing words (填入所缺的词):

A. 1) I am a boy. ___ name is Wang Lin.

2) She is a student. ___ name is Joan.

3) You are a student. Is ___ sister a student, too?

4) Jack is a little English boy. ___ mother is a nurse.

5) We are in Room 5. ___ room is nice.

6) My father and mother are doctors. They like ___ work.

B. 1) My name ___ Wei Fang. I ___ a student. My father ___ a doctor. My mother ___ a worker.

2) How old ___ Li Ying? She ___ only five. ___ Li Ping her brother? Yes, he ___. They ___ brother and sister.

3) We ___ middle-school students. We ___ in Grade One. We ___ Young Pioneers.

4) Rose ___ an English girl. She ___ fourteen. Mike ___ an English boy. He ___ twelve. They ___ brother and sister.

3. Make these sentences negative and interrogative (把这些句子改成否定句和疑问句):

Model: Li Ying is a Chinese girl. (English) ⟶

Li Ying is not an English girl.

Is Li Ying an English girl?

1) I am a student. (teacher)

2) You are a doctor. (nurse)

3) We are Joan's friends. (Kate's)

4) Li Ying's mother is a worker. (teacher)

5) You are Tom's father and mother. (Mike's)

6) They are in Grade Two. (Grade One)

4. Turn these into questions (把这些句子变为问句):

Model: His name is ***Jack***. (what) ⟶

What is his name?

1) Li Ping is ***twelve***. (how old)

2) My sister is ***a nurse***. (what)

3) This man is ***Mike's father***. (who)

4) This woman is ***Joan's mother***. (who)

5) I am ***fourteen***. (how old)

6) My father is ***a doctor***. (what)

5. Answer these questions (回答问题):

1) What's your name?

2) How old are you?

3) Are you a student?

4) Are you in Grade Three?

5) Are you a Young Pioneer?

6) What's your father?

7) What's your mother?

8) Is your sister a student?

9) What's your sister's name?

10) Is your brother a worker?

11) How old is your brother?

12) What's your brother's name?

3. Copy these (抄写):

I my you your he his

she her we our they their

middle school nurse doctor

Are you a Young Pioneer?

Yes, I am.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Is everyone here?

Yes. (No, Liu Ying isn't here.)

Lesson 15

DRILLS

A

Kate is in the room.
She's near the window.
Her bag is on the desk.
Her books are in her bag.
Her pencils are in her pencil-box.

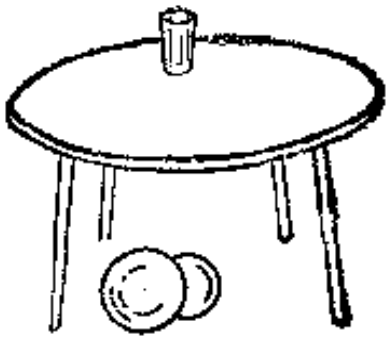
B

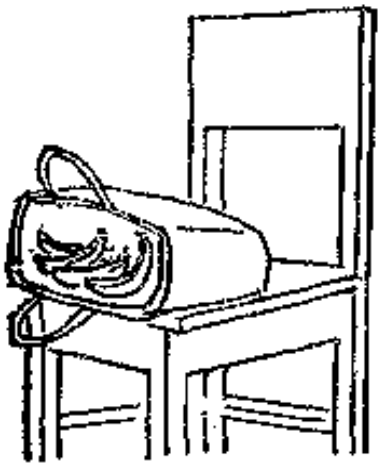
Where's Kate?
She's near the window.
Where's her bag?
It's on the desk.
Where are her books?
They're in the bag.
Where are her pencils?
They're in the pencil-box.

where's = where is

C

What's on the table?
There's a glass on it.
What's under the table?
There are two balls under it.





What's on the chair?
There's a bag on it.
What's in the bag?
There are some bananas in it.

there's = there is

DIALOGUE

Mike: Where's my cap, Mum?
Mum: Is it in your room?
Mike: No, it isn't.
Mum: Is it on the desk?
Mike: No, it isn't.
Mum: Why, Mike, it's right on your head!

* * *

Grandma: Where are my glasses, Mike?

Mike: Are they on the table?

Grandma: No, they aren't.

Mike: Are they in your bag?

Grandma: No, they aren't.

Mike: Why, Grandma, they're right on your nose!

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

fifteen *num.* 十五
near *prep.* 在……附近
window *n.* 窗
on *prep.* 在……上
where *adv.* 在哪里
glass *n.* 玻璃;玻璃杯
under *prep.* 在……下面
ball *n.* 球
some *adj.* & *pron.* 一些

* * *

cap *n.* 帽子
right *adv.* 正好,恰恰
head *n.* 头
grandma *n.* (口语)奶奶,外婆
glasses (*pl.*) *n.* 眼镜
nose *n.* 鼻子

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) i	like	white	nine	Chinese
	in	window	little	middle
o	no	those	rose	nose
	not	long	orange	doctor

al *ai*l t*ai*l b*ai*l sm*ai*l

h *h*e *h*orse *h*ead *h*ard

2) time sit go hot wall

rice milk close lock call

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

'Where's ↘Kate? She's near the ↘window.

'Where are her ↘books? They're in the ↘bag.

'What's on the ↘chair? There's a ↘bag on it.

'What's in the ↘bag? There are some ba↘nanas in it.

EXERCISES

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):

work___ teach___ rul___ und___

moth___ fath___ broth___ sist___

c___t g___t J___n

ri___t ei___t __nife g__ess

2. Give the English for these (把这些词组译成英语):

1) 在图画里 2) 在玻璃杯里

3) 在椅子下面 4) 在我手里

5) 在自行车上 6) 在我们学校附近

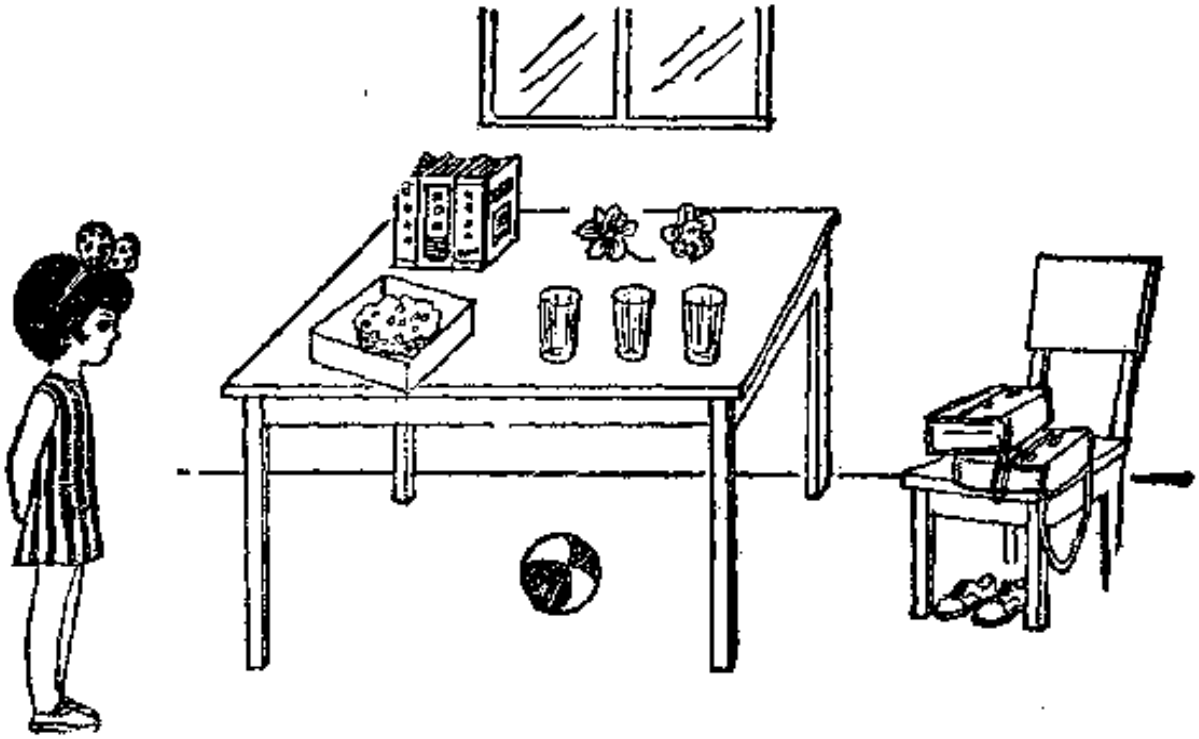
3. Talk about the picture (看图说话):

A. Model: Where's Li Ying?

She's near the table.

B. Model: Where are the books?

They're on the table.



4. Look at the pictures and answer the questions (看图回答问题):

1) What's in the cup?

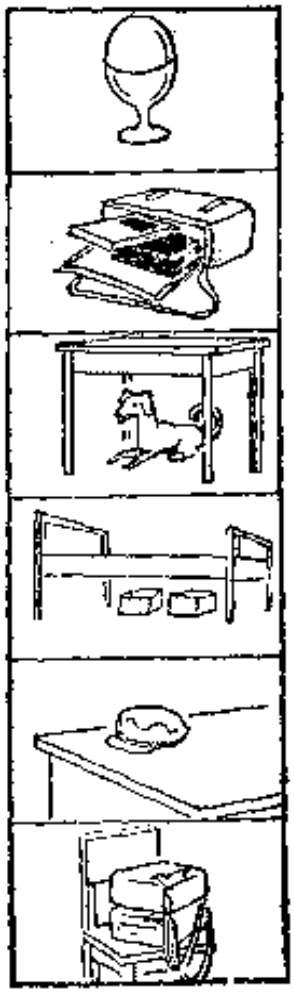
2) What's in the bag?

3) What's under the table?

4) What's under the bed?

5) What's on the desk?

6) What's on the chair?



5. Copy these (抄写):

where in on near under

glass ball cap head nose

Where's Kate?

She's near the window.

What's on the chair?

There's a bag on it.

There are some bananas in the bag.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

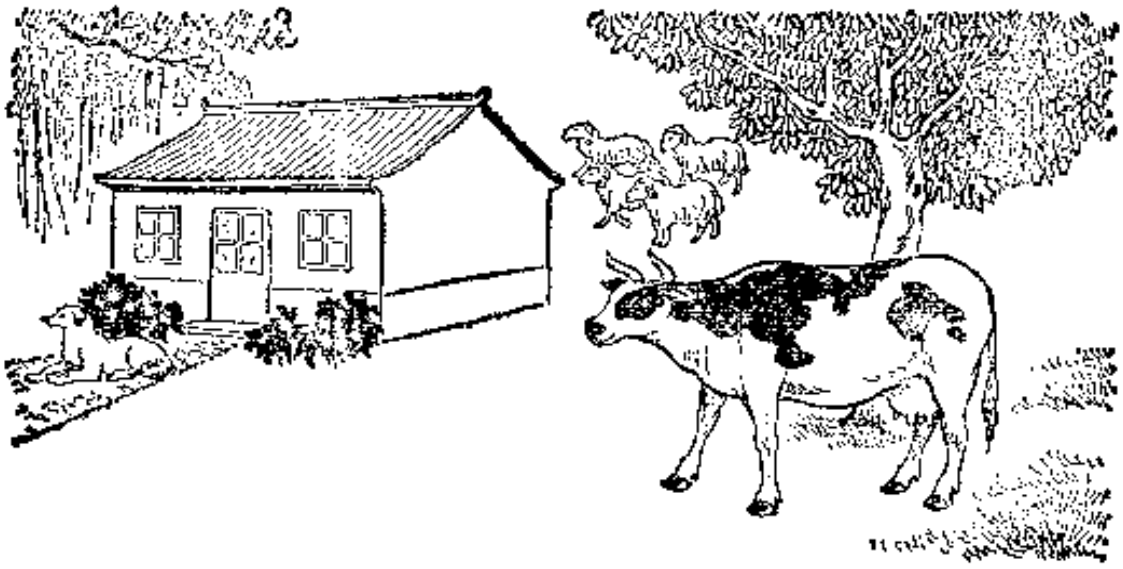
Class is over.
Let's have a break.

LESSON SIXTEEN

Lesson 16

DRILLS

A



There's a house in the picture.
There's a dog in front of the house.
There are some trees near the house.
There are some sheep behind the house.

B

Is there a big tree beside the house?
Yes, there is.
Is there a horse under the tree?
No, there isn't.
What's under it, then?
A cow.

C

Are there any flowers in front of the house?
Yes, there are.
Are there any cows behind the house?
No, there aren't any.
What's behind it, then?
Some sheep.

TEXT

Our Classroom

This is our classroom. It is a nice big room. The windows are big and the walls are white. There is a blackboard on the front wall.

On the back wall there is a map. It is a map of China.

In front of the blackboard there is a big desk. It is for the teacher. There are forty small desks and chairs in the room. They are for us students.

What is on the teacher's desk? There are some flowers. They are for our teacher. We like her. She is a good teacher.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

sixteen *num.* 十六
house *n.* 房子
front *n.* 前面
adj. 前面的
in front of 在……前面
tree *n.* 树
behind *prep.* 在……后面
beside *prep.* 在……旁边
any *adj.* 什么，一些；任何的
pron. 一个，一些；(无论)哪一个，(无论)哪一些
flower *n.* 花

* * *

classroom *n.* 教室
wall *n.* 墙
blackboard *n.* 黑板
back *adj.* 后面的
n. 后面
map *n.* 地图
China *n.* 中国
forty *num.* 四十
us *pron.* 我们(宾格)
her *pron.* 她(宾格)
good *adj.* 好的

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) u	st*u*dent			
	r*u*ler	bl*u*e		
	*u*s	m*u*m	*u*nder	r*u*bber
ou	h*ou*se	tr*ou*sers		
f	*f*ace	kni*f*e	*f*ront	*f*lower
v	fi*v*e	twel*v*e	se*v*en	ele*v*en
w	*w*ork	*w*all	*w*oman	*w*indow
wh	*wh*at	*wh*ite	*wh*y	*wh*ere
	*wh*o	*wh*ose		
2) tube	flu	but	much	mouse
duty	true	cut	must	blouse

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子)·

There's a 'house in the ↘picture.

There are some 'trees near the ↘house.

Is there a 'big 'tree be'side the ↗house?

↘Yes, there ↘is.

Are there any 'cows be'hind the ↗house?

↘ No, there ↘aren't any.

'What's be↘hind it, then? Some ↘sheep.

EXERCISES

1. Look at the pictures and put in the missing words (看图填入所缺的单词):

1) The apple is ____ the box.

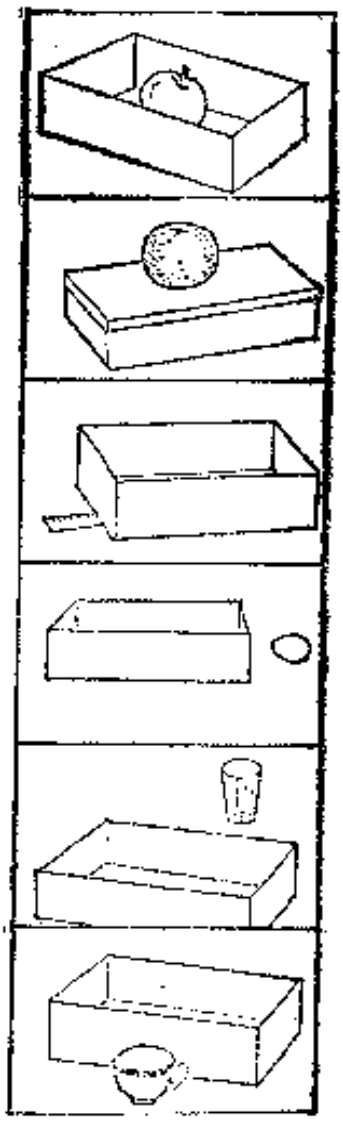
2) The orange is ____ the box.

3) The ruler is ____ the box.

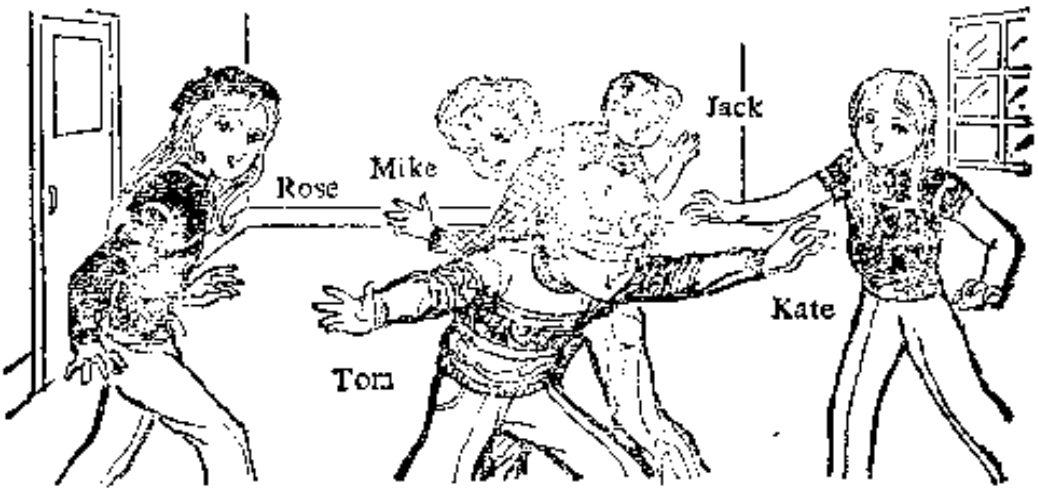
4) The egg is ____ the box.

5) The glass is ____ the box.

6) The cup is ____ the box.



2. Fill in the blanks with ***behind***, ***in front of*** or ***near*** (用 ***behind***, ***in front of*** 或 ***near*** 填空):



1) Tom is ____ Mike. 2) Mike is ____ Jack.

3) Jack is ___ Mike.　　4) Mike is ___ Tom.

5) Rose is ___ the door.　　6) Kate is ___ the window.

3. Fill in the blanks with *a*, *an* or *the* (用 *a*, *an* 或 *the* 填空):

1) What is in ___ cup? There is ___ egg in it.

2) Is there ___ orange in your hand? No. There is ___ apple in my hand.

3) Jack is ___ English boy. He is not ___ Chinese boy.

4) There is ___ table in the room. There is ___ old woman beside ___ table.

5) There is ___ house in the picture. There is ___ big tree near ___ house.

6) This is our classroom. It is ___ nice room. ___ windows are big and ___ walls are white.

4. Answer these questions (回答问题):

1) Whose classroom is this?

2) Is it big or small?

3) Are the walls white?

4) Are the windows big?

5) Where's the blackboard?

6) What's on the back wall of the room?

7) Is there a desk for the teacher?

8) Where's the teacher's desk?

9) Are there any flowers on the teacher's desk?

10) Is it a nice classroom?

5. Make these sentences negative and interrogative (把这些句子变为否定句和疑问句):

A. Model: There is a man in the room. —
There is not a man in the room.
Is there a man in the room?

1) There is a picture on the wall.
2) There is a big ball in Tom's room.
3) There is a baby on the chair.
4) There is a jeep in front of the house.
5) There is an old man behind the jeep.
6) There is a glass beside the cup.

B. Model: There are some women in the room. ⟶
There are not any women in the room.
Are there any women in the room?

1) There are some men near the house.
2) There are some chicks under the tree.
3) There are some bikes beside the house.
4) There are some books on the desk.
5) There are some flowers on the table.

6. Copy these (抄写):

in front of behind beside

our classroom a map of China

Is there a big tree beside the house?

Yes, there is.

Are there any cows behind the house?

No, there aren't any.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Excuse me. May I ask a question?
Yes. What is it?

A RHYME (一首小诗)

Good, better, best,
Never let it rest,
Till good is better,
And better, best.

LESSON SEVENTEEN

Lesson 17

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Look at the pictures and put in the missing words (看图填入所缺的单词):

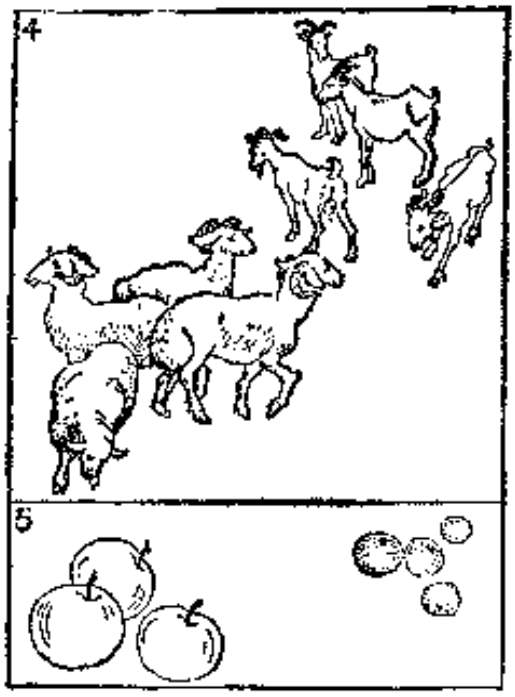
Model: The boy is not tall.
He is short.
The girl is not short.
She is tall.

1) The girl's hair is not ____.
It is ____.
The boy's hair is not ____.
It is ____.

2) The man is not ____.
He is ____.
The woman is not ____.
She is ____.

3) This coat is ____.
It is not ____.
That coat is ____.
It is not ____.

4) These sheep are ____.
They are not ____.
Those goats are ____.
They are not ____.



5) These apples are ____.
They are not ____.
Those oranges are ____.
They are not ____.

2. Fill in the blanks with ***am***, ***is*** or ***are*** (用 ***am***, ***is*** 或 ***are*** 填空):

1) ____ you Tom? ____ they Kate and Rose?
2) This ____ Jack's father. He ____ a teacher.
3) What ____ this? What ____ these?
4) Where ____ my books? They ____ on the desk.
5) You ____ a teacher and I ____ a student.
____ that boy a student?
6) This ____ your bag. ____ these your pencils?
7) Who ____ I? ____ I a middle-school student?
8) These ____ your seats. ____ that my seat?

3. Make these plural (把这些句子改成复数形式):

Model: I am a student. ⟶
We are students.

1) He is an old man.

2) Where is the bike?

3) Is this a cow?

4) That is a flower.

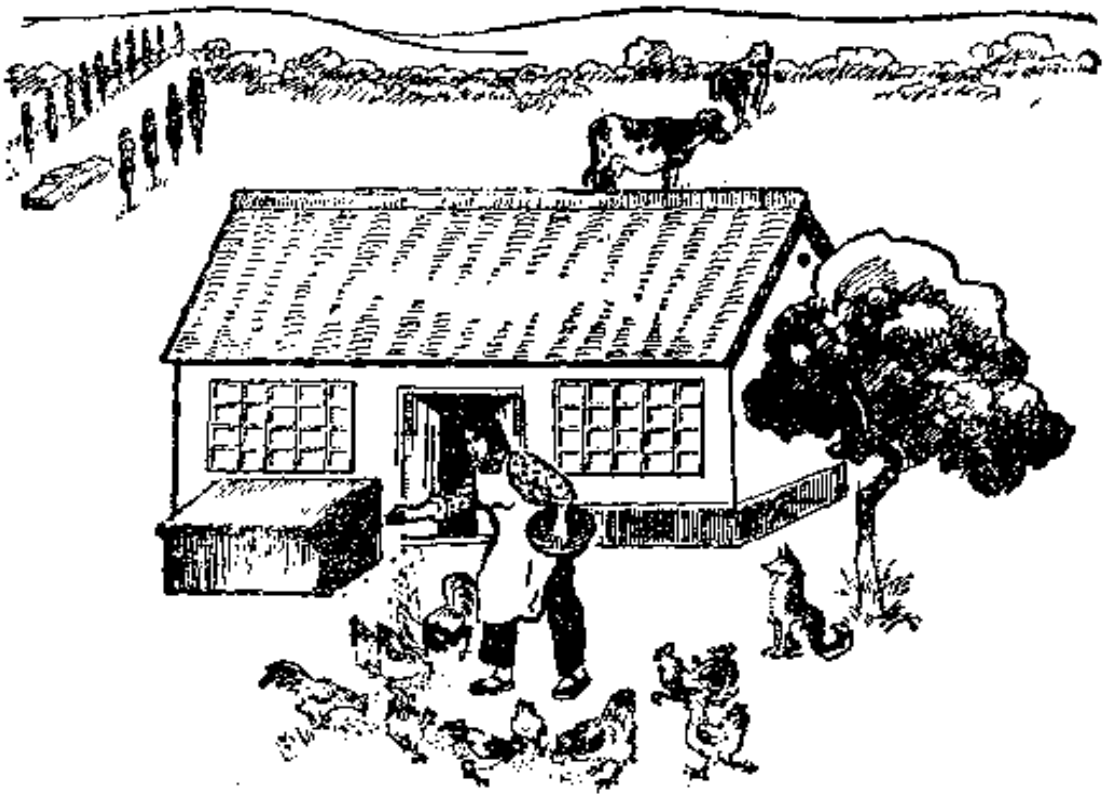
5) It is a white sheep.

6) There is a jeep in front of the house.

7) Is there an orange on the desk?

8) Who is this woman?

4. Look at the picture and answer the questions (看图回答问题):



1) Is there a house in the picture?

2) Is there a woman in front of the house?

3) Are there any boys and girls in the picture?

4) Where are the cocks and hens?

5) Is there a big apple tree beside the house?

6) What's on the tree?

7) What's under the tree?

8) Are there any cows behind the house?

9) Is there a car over there?

10) Are there any buses over there?

5. Give the English for these (把这些句子译成英语):

1) 我们是中学生。

2) 你母亲是医生吗?

3) 杰克和迈克是我的朋友。

4) 这个教室里有四十个学生。

5) 房子前面有三棵大树。

6) 教室的后墙上有一张中国地图。

7) 床下有什么东西? 一些盒子。

8) 罗斯的书包里有个铅笔盒。铅笔盒里有铅笔吗?

A SONG

Good Morning

A $\frac{3}{4}$

5 5 | 6 5 i | 7 - 5 5 |

1. Good morn-ing to you, Good
2. Good morn-ing to you, Good
3. Hap-py New Year to you, Hap-py

6 5 2 | i - 5 5 |

morn- ing to you, Good
morn- ing to you, Good
New Year to you, Hap-py

5 3 i | 7 7 6 4 4 |

morn- ing, dear teach- er, Good
morn- ing, dear stu-dents, Good
New Year, dear com-rades, Hap-py

3 i 2 | i - ||

morn- ing to you.
morn- ing to you.
New Year to you.

LESSON EIGHTEEN

Lesson 18

DRILLS

A

How many minutes are there in an hour?
There are sixty minutes in an hour.
How many hours are there in a day?
There are twenty-four hours in a day.

B

How many days are there in a week?
There are seven days in a week.
How many days are there in a month?
There are thirty or thirty-one days in a month.

C

How many months are there in a year?
There are twelve months in a year.
How many days are there in a year?
There are three hundred and sixty-five days in a year.

DIALOGUE

A: How many people are there in your family, Wang Lin?

B: There are five, my grandpa, my father, my mother, my sister and I.

A: Is your grandpa a worker?

B: Oh no. He's old. He's seventy.

A: What's your father?

B: He's a maths teacher in the No. 19 Middle School.

A: Are there many students in his class?

B: Yes. There are forty-six.

A: Is your mother a teacher, too?

B: No. She's a doctor.

A: And your sister?

B: She's a driver, a bus-driver.

A: How old is she?

B: She's twenty-three.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

eighteen *num.* 十八

many *adj.* 许多的，多的

pron. 许多

how many 多少

minute *n.* 分钟

hour *n.* 小时

sixty *num.* 六十
day *n.* 天，日
twenty *num.* 二十
twenty-four *num.* 二十四
week *n.* 周，星期
month *n.* 月
thirty *num.* 三十
year *n.* 年
hundred *num.* 百

* * *

people *n.* 人，人们
grandpa *n.* (口语)爷爷，外公
seventy *num.* 七十
maths *n.* 数学
No. = number *n.* 第……号
nineteen *num.* 十九
class *n.* (学校里的)班；课
driver *n.* 司机，驾驶员
bus-driver *n.* 公共汽车司机

GRAMMAR

I. There be 结构

"There is (are) ＋某物(某人)＋某地(某时)"这样一种句型，大致相当于汉语"某地(某时)有某物(某人)"的说法。句子中的 is (are) 和后面所跟的名词在数方面必须一致。

1. There is a house in the picture.
   There are some trees near the house.
2. Is there a horse under the tree?
   Yes, there is.
   No, there isn't.
   There isn't a horse under the tree.
3. Are there any cows behind the house?
   Yes, there are (some).
   No, there aren't (any).
   There aren't any cows behind the house.
4. How many hours are there in a day?

There are twenty-four hours in a day.

II. 基数词 (Cardinal Numbers)

1	one	11	eleven	21	twenty-one
2	two	12	twelve	29	twenty-nine
3	three	13	thirteen	30	thirty
4	four	14	fourteen	40	forty
5	five	15	fifteen	50	fifty
6	six	16	sixteen	60	sixty
7	seven	17	seventeen	70	seventy
8	eight	18	eighteen	80	eighty
9	nine	19	nineteen	90	ninety
10	ten	20	twénty	100	one hundred

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1) a(ss)	gl*a*ss	cl*a*ss	cl*a*ssroom	
oo	b*oo*k	l*oo*k	g*oo*d	
ng	lo*ng*	you*ng*		
th	***th***in	***th***irty	mon***th***	ma***th***s
	they	***th***eir	fa***th***er	mo***th***er
tr	***tr***ee	***tr***ousers		
dr	***dr***iver	hun***dr***ed		

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

ˈHow ˈmany ˈminutes are there in an ↘hour?

There are ↘sixty minutes in an hour.

'How 'many 'days are there in a ↘month?

There are ↗thirty or 'thirty-↘one days in a month.

'How 'many 'months are there in a ↘year?

There are ↘twelve months in a year.

'How 'many ↘days are there in a year?

There are 'three 'hundred and 'sixty-↘five days in a year.

EXERCISES

1. Count from one to one hundred (从 1 数到 100).
2. Say these in English and then write them out (用英语说出并写出这些数字):

21	15	16	28	36	44	56
67	73	82	95	100	200	366

3. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

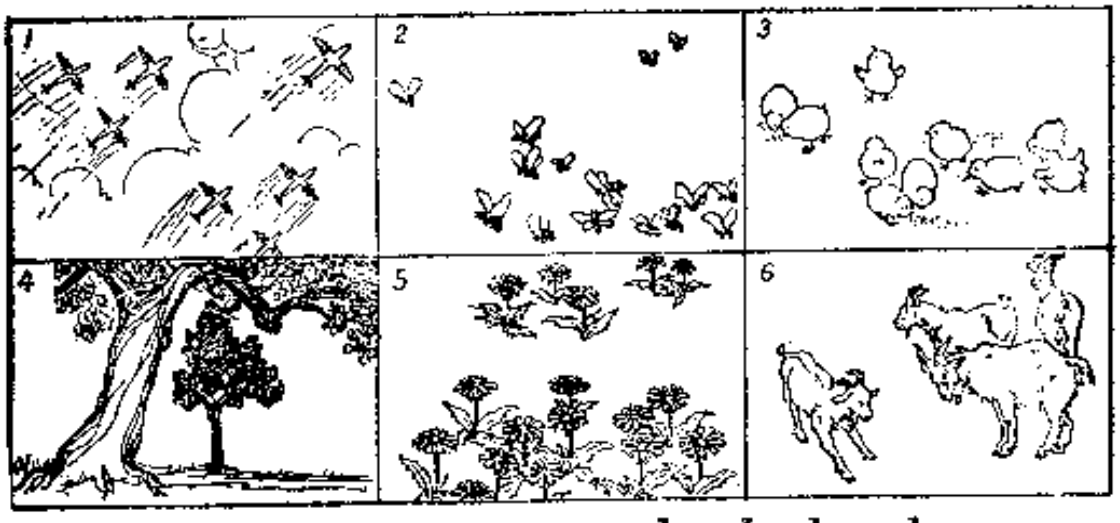
Model: Picture 1

What's in the picture?

There are some planes in it.

How many planes are there?

There are seven.



4. Answer these questions (回答问题):

A. 1) How many people are there in your family?

2) How old is your father?

3) What is he?

4) Is your mother a teacher?

5) How old is she?

B. 1) How many boys are there in your class? And how many girls?

2) How many grades are there in your school?

3) How many students are there in your grade? And how many teachers?

4) Are you in the No. 17 Middle School?

5) Are you in Grade One or Grade Two?

6) Are you in Class Three?

7) Are you all Young Pioneers?

5. Copy these (抄写):

minute hour day week month year

How many minutes are there in an hour?

There are sixty minutes in an hour.

How many months are there in a year?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Can you answer this question?
Let me try. (Sorry, I can't.)

A RHYME

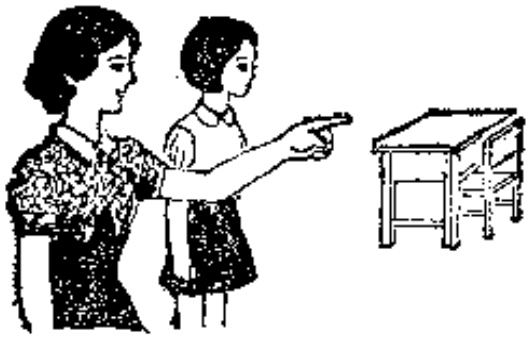
Twelve good hours in every day,
Time for work and time for play;
Twenty-four for day and night,
Some for darkness, some for light.

LESSON NINETEEN

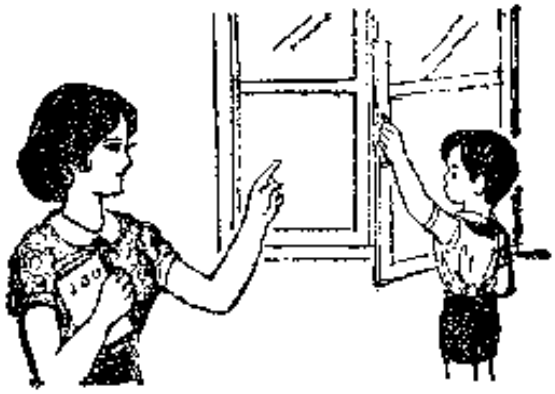
Lesson 19

DRILLS

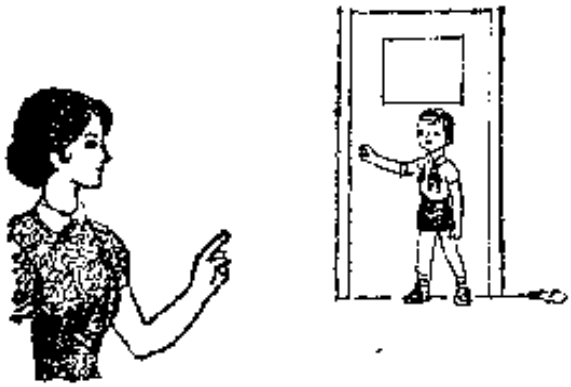
Come here, please.
Come to the black-board.



Go there, please.
Go to your seat.



Please open the window.

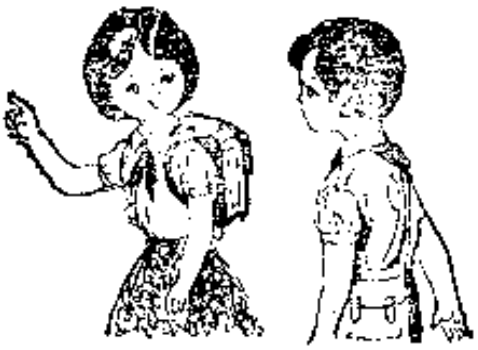


Please close the door.

Let's read.

Let's write.

let's = let us



Let's go to school.

Let's go home.

DIALOGUE

An English Class

Li: Stand up, please.

Teacher: Good morning, boys and girls.

Students: Good morning, teacher!

Teacher: Sit down, please. Are all the students here today, Li Ping?

Li: Yes.

Teacher: Oh, Wei Fang. How are you today?

Wei: I'm all right, thank you.

Teacher: That's good. Wang Lin, what day is today?

Wang: Today is Monday.

Teacher: How many days are there in this month?

Wang: There are thirty-one.

Teacher: That's right. Come to the blackboard, Liu Ying. Write "Monday" and "month" on it, please.

Teacher: Good. Now, go back to your seat. Boys and girls, open your books and turn to page 89. Let's read Lesson 18.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

come *v.* 来
please *v.* 请
to *prep.* 到……
go *v.* 去
open *v.* 开
close *v.* 关
door *n.* 门
let *v.* 让
read *v.* 读
write *v.* 写
go to school 上学
home *adv.* 回家，在家；*n.* 家
go home 回家

* * *

stand *v.* 站
up *adv.* 向上
morning *n.* 早晨，上午
Good morning. 早上好。（你好。）
sit *v.* 坐
down *adv.* 向下
today *adv.* & *n.* 今天
How are you? 你好吗？（问健康情况）
all right (病)好了
Monday *n.* 星期一
right *adj.* 对的，正确的
now *adv.* 现在
back *adv.* 回(原处)；向后
turn *v.* 翻；转
page *n.* 页，页码

GRAMMAR

词类(Parts of Speech)

词类	英语名称	意　　义	例　词
名词	The Noun (缩写为*n.*)	表示人或事物的名称	boy, cock, book, tree
冠词	The Article (*art.*)	用在名词前帮助说明名词所指的人或事物。	a (an), the
代词	The Pronoun (*pron.*)	用来代替名词、形容词或数词。	we, that, his, what
形容词	The Adjective (*adj.*)	用以修饰名词，表示人或事物的特征。	fat, red, big, good
数词	The Numeral (*num.*)	表示数量或顺序。	one, thirteen, first
动词	The Verb (*v.*)	表示动作或状态。	read, go, be (am, is, are)
副词	The Adverb (*adv.*)	修饰动词、形容词或其他副词。	not, too, here, then
介词	The Preposition (*prep.*)	表示名词、代词等和句中其它词的关系。	in, on, of, to, under
连词	The Conjunction (*conj.*)	用来连接词与词、短语与短语或句与句。	and, or
感叹词	The Interjection (*interj.*)	表示说话时的喜悦、惊讶等情感。	oh, hello, why, ha

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

1)

a	page	name	e	me	these
	map	back		let	lesson
i (y)	like	write	o	go	close
	my	why		not	cock
	sit	little	u	student	
	many	sixty		blue	ruler
				up	rubber

2)

air	hair	chair	al	wall	small
ar	car	hard	a(ss)	class	glass
ea	seat	read	ee	week	tree
er	worker	teacher	ir	girl	thirty
oa	coat	goat	oo	good	book
or	horse	short	ou	house	trousers
ow	now	down	ur	nurse	turn

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

'Come ↘here. 'Come to the ↘blackboard.

'Please 'open the ↘window.

'Let's ↘read.

'Let's 'go to ↘school.

EXERCISES

1. Give the opposites of these (写出与这些词意义相反的词):

up —	behind —	tall —
black —	thin —	small —
young —	short —	new —
come —	open —	here —

2. Arrange these words in groups (把这些单词分组归类):

Nouns (*n.*)	Pronouns (*pron.*)	Adjectives (*adj.*)	Verbs (*v.*)	Prepositions (*prep.*)
book	these	old	read	behind

bike come in nice they page guess long for your on yellow write her banana beside green like whose family stand friend that little under go worker blue who near thank picture of middle you morning we good let to

3. Make 20 sentences (造二十个句子):

Model: Please open the door.

Please	open close	the door. the window. the book. the box. the pencil-box.

Go to Come to	the blackboard, the door, the window, the house, the room,	please.

4. Give the English for these (把这些句子译成英语):

1) 请到黑板这边来。
2) 请回到你的座位上去。
3) 请关门。
4) 请开窗。
5) 我们读第 19 课吧。
6) 我们看黑板吧。
7) 请翻到第 25 页。
8) 我们回家吧。

5. Copy these (抄写):

Go there, please.

Please open the window.

Let's go to school.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

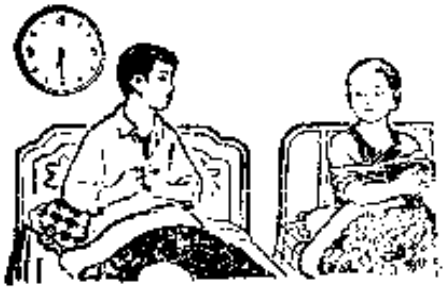
May I close the window?
Yes, do.

LESSON TWENTY

Lesson 20

DRILLS

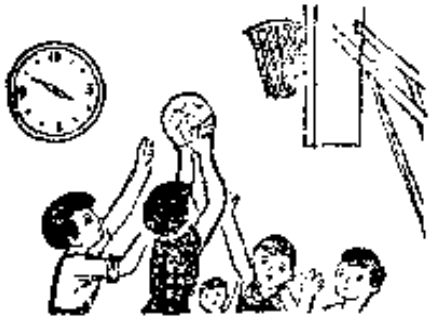
A



What time is it?
It's six thirty.
Let's get up.
We get up at six thirty in the morning.

What time is it?
It's seven fifteen.
Let's go to school.
We go to school at seven fifteen.

B



What time is it?
It's three fifty.
Let's go and play basketball.
We have sports at three fifty in the afternoon.

What time is it?
It's five.
Let's go home.
We go home at five.

C

What time is it?
It's seven thirty.
Let's do our homework.
We do our homework at seven thirty in the evening.

What time is it?
It's nine.
Let's go to bed.
We go to bed at nine.

TEXT

My Class

I am a middle-school student. My name is Wei Fang. I study at Yu Ying Middle School. I am in Class 3, Grade 1. There are twenty boys and twenty-three girls in my class.

I come to school at seven thirty. Classes begin at eight. We have four lessons in the morning and two in the afternoon. At three fifty we have sports.

We study Chinese, maths, English and other lessons. We like maths. We like English, too. Some of us are good at it.

We work hard. We study for the people.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

time *n.* 时间
get up 起床
at *prep.* 在
play *v.* 玩;打(球)
basket-ball *n.* 篮球
sport *n.* 运动
  have sports 进行体育活动
afternoon *n.* 下午
do *v.* 做
homework *n.* 家庭作业
  do one's homework 做作业
evening *n.* 傍晚,晚上
go to bed 上床睡觉

* * *

study *v.* 学习
begin *v.* 开始
have lessons 上课
other *adj.* 别的,其它的
(be) good at 在……方面(学得,做得)好;善于
the people 人民

GRAMMAR

特殊疑问句及其回答 (Some Special Questions and Answers)

1. What's this? It's a bus.

What are these? They're pigs.

What's your name? My name is Li Ping.

What's your mother? She's a nurse.

What's under the table?

There's a ball(There are two balls) under it.

What day is today? Today is Monday.

What time is it? It's seven thirty.

What colour is your coat? It's red.

What colour are your new shoes? They're blue.

2. Who's this boy? He's Li Ping.

   Who are these boys? They are Jack and Mike.

3. Whose room is this? It's our room.

   Whose books are these? They're my books.

4. Where's the dog? It's in front of the house.

   Where are the cows? They're behind the house.

5. How old are you? I'm twelve.

   How many days are there in a week?

   There are seven days in a week.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words (读出这些字母和单词):

   1) b *b*egin ta*b*le c {cap cock cup
      d *d*ay behin*d* {nice pencil

f	*f*ront	*f*ifteen	g	go	pig
h	*h*ave	*h*ead		page	orange
j	*j*eep	*J*ack	k	*K*ate	wee*k*
l	*l*ong	p*l*ay	m	*m*an	ti*m*e
	o*l*d	peop*l*e	n	*n*ear	tur*n*
p	*p*en	ma*p*	r	*r*ight	th*r*ee
s	some	nurse	t	*t*all	ge*t*
	please	close	v	fi*v*e	dri*v*er
w	*w*ork	*w*indow	x	bo*x*	si*x*
y	*y*ear	*y*oung			

2)

ch	*ch*air	tea*ch*er	ck	bla*ck*	chi*ck*
dr	*dr*iver	hun*dr*ed	ds	be*ds*	han*ds*
ng	lo*ng*	morni*ng*	sh	*sh*oe	Engli*sh*
th	*th*ank	*th*irty	tr	*tr*ee	*tr*ousers
	*th*ese	o*th*er	ts	coa*ts*	spor*ts*
wh	*wh*ere	*wh*ite			
	*wh*o	*wh*ose			

2. Read aloud these sentences (朗读这些句子):

'What ↘time is it? It's 'six ↘thirty.

'Let's 'get ↘up.

We 'get 'up at 'six 'thirty in the ↘morning.

'What ↘time is it? It's 'three ↘fifty.

'Let's 'go and 'play ↘basket-ball.

We have 'sports at 'three 'fifty in the 'after ↘noon.

EXERCISES

1. Say these in English (用英语说出这些时刻):

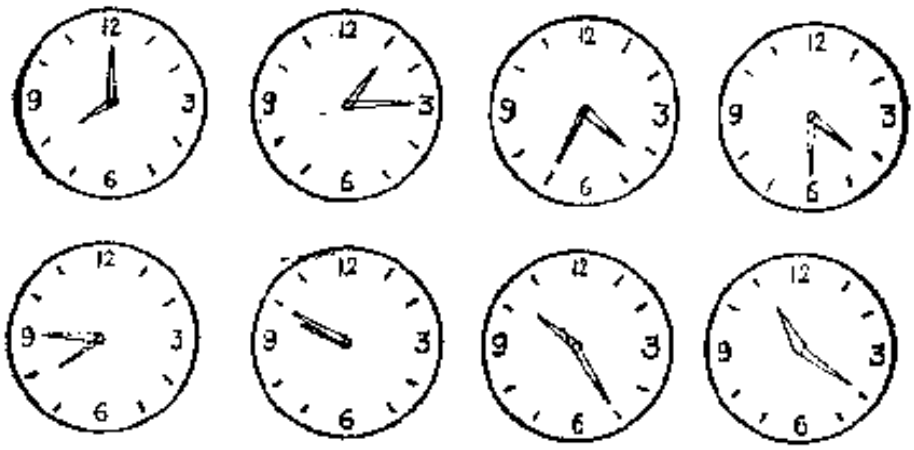
9:00	7:20	10:32
9:45	3:25	11:15
9:30	8:54	12:18

2. Talk about the pictures (看图说话):

Model: Picture 1

What time is it?

It's eight.



3. Put in the missing words (填入所缺的词):

1) We ____ (起床) at six thirty in the morning.

2) I ____ (上学) at seven forty in the morning.

3) They ____(进行体育活动)at four in the afternoon.

4) They ____ (打篮球) at four in the afternoon.

5) Tom and Mike ____ (回家) at five in the afternoon.

6) We ____ (做作业) at seven thirty in the evening.

7) I ___ (睡觉) at ten in the evening.

8) Many students ___ (喜欢) English.

9) Some of us ___ (学得好) maths.

10) We ___ (学习) for the people.

4. Give the English for these (把这些词组和句子译成英语):

A. 1) 在十二点钟 2) 在十点十五分 3) 在六点三十分

4) 在上午 5) 在下午 6) 在晚上

B. 1) — 今天同学们都到齐了吗?

— 都到齐了。

2) — 你今天身体怎么样?

— 好了,谢谢你。

3) — 今天星期几?

— 星期一。

5. Give the English for these (把这些句子译成英语):

1) 我叫刘英。在第二中学学习。

2) 我们班有四十二个学生。

3) 我七点十五分上学。八点开始上课。

4) 我们上午有四节课,下午有两节课。

5) 我们学习语文、数学、英语和其它课程。

6) 我们下午四点进行体育活动。

7) 我们有些人数学学得好。

8) 我们喜欢英语和语文。

9) 我们努力学习。

10) 我们为人民学习。

6. Copy these (抄写):

What time is it? It's five.

Let's go home.

We go home at five.

EVERYDAY ***ENGLISH***

Let's have a dictation.
Let's do Exercise Four.

A RHYME

Tick, tock, tick, tock,
Merrily sings the clock.
It's time for work,
It's time for play.
And it sings
Through all day.
Tick, tock, tick, tock,
Merrily sings the clock.

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

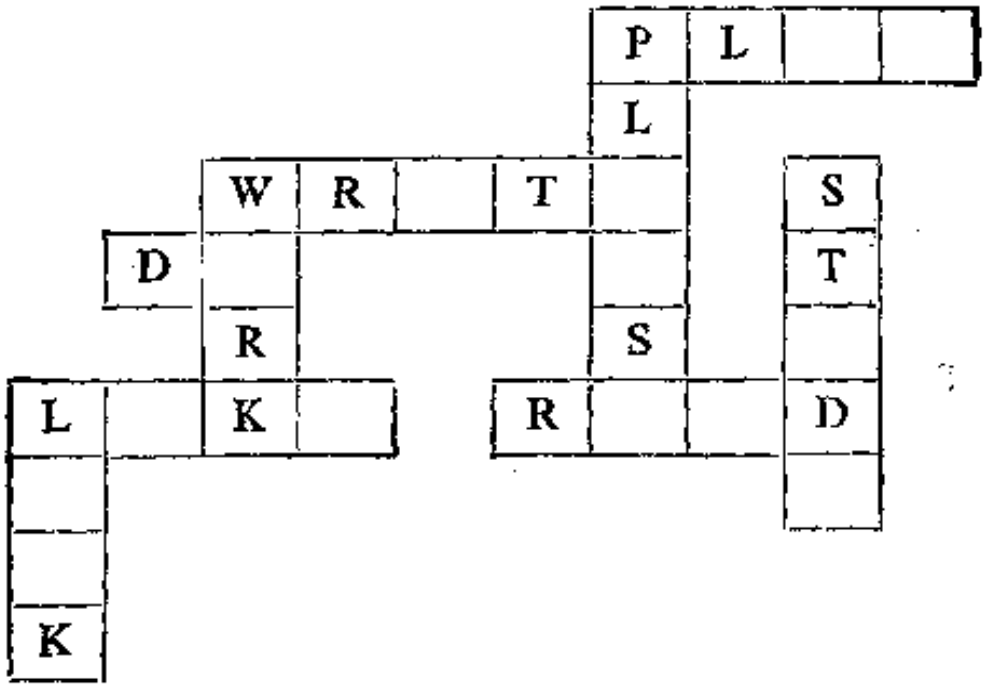
Lesson 21

(Revision)

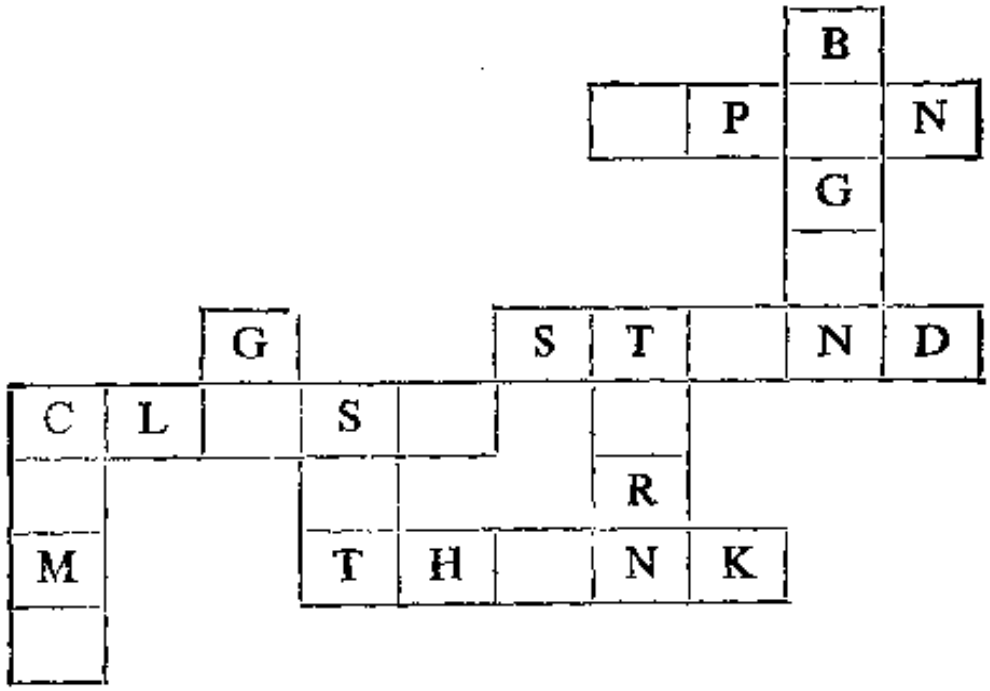
EXERCISES

1. Put in the missing letters (填入所缺的字母):

1)



2)



2. Arrange these words in groups(把这些单词分组归类):

1) 学习用品　2) 服装鞋帽　3) 食物

4) 交通工具　5) 动物　6) 人物

7) 人体部分

bag cap apple bike chick people head book coat orange car hen baby hair pencil-box trousers banana jeep cock boy face pen shoe cake bus dog girl nose pencil egg ship pig man woman hand knife plane cow grandpa grandma ruler horse father mother rubber sheep brother sister goat friend teacher student pioneer worker doctor nurse driver

3. Make these plural (把这些句子改成复数形式):

Model: There is a pig behind the house. ⟶

There are some pigs behind the house.

1) There is a tree in front of the house.

2) This is not an apple.

3) He is a bus-driver.

4) Is there a dog under the table?

5) Who is this boy?

6) Is this a bee?

7) Whose book is this?

8) It is not my cup.

9) Where is my rubber?

10) What colour is that flower?

4. Turn these into questions(把这些句子变为问句):

Model: There is ***a map*** on the wall. (what) ⟹

What is on the wall?

1) She is ***thirteen***. (how old)
2) Her name is ***Joan***. (what)
3) His mother is ***a nurse***. (what)
4) ***Tom*** is in the car. (who)
5) These are ***Kate's*** books. (whose)
6) Today is ***Monday***. (what day)
7) There are ***fifty*** eggs in the box. (how many)
8) The cow is ***behind the house***. (where)
9) There are ***one hundred and forty*** students in our grade. (how many)
10) It is ***ten thirty***. (what time)

5. Put in the missing words (填入所缺的词):
   1) Please look ____ the blackboard.
   2) There is an orange tree ____ the house.
   3) How many days are there ____ a week?
   4) Open your books and turn ____ page 20.
   5) Please come ____ the blackboard.
   6) Let's go ____ school.
   7) We study hard ____ the people.
   8) His father is a teacher ____ Chinese.
   9) I study ____ the No. 3 Middle School.
   10) Some of us go to bed ____ nine thirty.

6. Say something about your class, your family or yourself (谈一谈你的班级、你的家庭或你自己).

7. Give the English for these (把这些句子译成英语):

1) — 早上好!

— 早上好!

2) — 你叫什么名字?

— 我叫李平。

3) — 你多大了?

— 我十二岁。

4) — 你是中学生吗?

— 是的,我是中学生。我在一年级三班。

5) — 你们班有多少学生?

— 我们班有四十五个学生。

6) — 那个男孩是谁?

— 他是王林。

7) — 他是你们班的吗?

— 是的。

8) — 你们的老师在哪里?

— 他在教室里。

9) — 这是谁的教室?

— 是我们的教室。

10) — 我们去教室吧。

— 好吧。

A SONG

Are You Sleeping?

G $\frac{4}{4}$

1 2 | 3 1 1 2 | 3 1 3 4 |

1. Are you sleep-ing, are you sleep-ing, Broth-er
2. Are you read-ing, are you read-ing, Mr
3. Are you cook-ing, are you cook-ing, Mrs

5 - 3 4 | 5 - 5 6 5 4 |

John, Broth-er John? Morn-ing bells are
White, Mr White? Are you in the
White, Mrs White? Are you in the

3 1 5 6 5 4 | 3 1 1 5 |

ring-ing, Morn-ing bells are ring-ing: Ding, ding,
gar-den? Are you in the gar-den? No, I'm
kitch-en? Are you in the kitch-en? No, I'm

1 - 1 5 | 1 - :‖

dong, ding, ding, dong.
not! No, I'm not!
not! No, I'm not!

VOCABULARY

n. = noun 名词　　*v.* = verb 动词
art. = article 冠词　　*adv.* = adverb 副词
pron. = pronoun 代词　　*prep.* = preposition 介词
adj. = adjective 形容词　　*conj.* = conjunction 连词
num. = numeral 数词　　*interj.* = interjection感叹词

A

a [ei, ə], **an** [æn, ən]
art. 一(个, 件, ……) (1, 4)
afternoon [ˈɑːftəˈnuːn]
n. 下午 (20)
all [ɔːl] *adv.* 都 (9)
all right 行了; 好吧。
(病)好了 (8, 19)
That's all right.
没什么(这里表示"不用谢")。 (8)
am [æm, əm] *v.* 是 (14)
and [ænd, ənd] *conj.*
和; 又 (10)
any [ˈeni] *adj.* 什么, 一些; 任何的
pron. 一个, 一些; (无论)哪一个, (无论)哪一些 (16)
apple [ˈæpl] *n.* 苹果 (4)
are [ɑː] *v.* 是 (9)
at [æt, ət] *prep.* 在 (20)

B

baby [ˈbeibi] *n.* 婴儿 (13)
back [bæk] *adj.*
后面的; *n.* 后面 (16)
adv. 回(原处); 向后 (19)
bag [bæg] *n.*
提包, 口袋, 书包 (1)
ball [bɔːl] *n.* 球 (15)
banana [bəˈnɑːnə] *n.*
香蕉 (7)
basket-ball [ˈbɑːskitbɔːl]
n. 篮球 (20)
bed [bed] *n.* 床 (1)
bee [biː] *n.* 蜜蜂 (1)
begin [biˈgin] *v.* 开始 (20)
behind [biˈhaind] *prep.*

在……后面 (16)
beside [bi'said] *prep.*
在……旁边 (16)
big [big] *adj.* 大的 (10)
bike [baik] *n.* 自行车 (2)
black [blæk] *adj.*
黑色的 (7)
blackboard ['blækbɔ:d]
n. 黑板 (16)
blue [blu:] *adj.*
蓝色的 (7)
book [buk] *n.* 书 (6)
box [bɔks] *n.* 盒子 (9)
boy [bɔi] *n.* 男孩 (13)
brother ['brʌðə] *n.*
兄, 弟 (13)
bus [bʌs] *n.* 公共汽车 (4)

C

cake [keik] *n.*
蛋糕, 饼, 糕 (2)
cap [kæp] *n.* 帽子 (15)
car [kɑ:] *n.* 汽车,
小汽车 (7)
chair [tʃɛə] *n.* 椅子 (6)
chick [tʃik] *n.* 小鸡 (2)
China ['tʃainə] *n.*
中国 (16)
Chinese ['tʃai'ni:z] *adj.*
中国的; 中国人的; 汉语的
n. 中国人; 汉语 (13)
class [klɑ:s] *n.*
(学校里的)班, 课 (18)
classroom ['klɑ:srum]
n. 教室 (16)
close [kləuz] *v.* 关 (19)
coat [kəut] *n.*
外套, 上衣 (4)
cock [kɔk] *n.* 公鸡 (10)
colour ['kʌlə] *n.* 颜色 (7)
come [kʌm] *v.* 来 (19)
cow [kau] *n.* 母牛 (10)
cup [kʌp] *n.* 小茶杯 (8)

D

day [dei] *n.* 天, 日 (18)
desk [desk] *n.*
课桌, 书桌 (6)
do [du:] *v.* 做
do one's homework
做作业 (20)
doctor ['dɔktə] *n.* 医生 (14)
dog [dɔg] *n.* 狗 (3)
door [dɔ:] *n.* 门 (19)
down [daun] *adv.*
向下 (19)

driver ['draivə] *n.*
司机，驾驶员 (18)
bus-driver ['bʌs-draivə]
n. 公共汽车司机 (18)

E

egg [eg] *n.* 蛋 (4)
eight [eit] *num.* 八 (9)
eighteen ['ei'ti:n] *num.*
十八 (18)
eleven [i'levn] *num.*
十一 (11)
English ['iŋgliʃ] *adj.*
英国的；英国人的；英语的
n. 英语 (13)
evening ['i:vniŋ] *n.*
傍晚，晚上 (20)

F

face [feis] *n.* 脸 (1)
family ['fæmili] *n.*
家，家庭 (14)
fat [fæt] *adj.* 肥胖的 (10)
father ['fɑ:ðə] *n.* 父亲 (13)
fifteen ['fif'ti:n] *num.*
十五 (15)
five [faiv] *num.* 五 (9)
flower ['flauə] *n.* 花 (16)
for [fɔ:, fə] *prep.* 为 (10)
forty ['fɔ:ti] *num.*
四十 (16)
four [fɔ:] *num.* 四 (9)
fourteen ['fɔ:'ti:n] *num.*
十四 (14)
friend [frend] *n.* 朋友 (13)
front [frʌnt] *n.* 前面
adj. 前面的
in front of
在……前面 (16)

G

get up ['get 'ʌp] 起床 (20)
girl [gə:l] *n.* 女孩 (13)
glass [glɑ:s] *n.*
玻璃；玻璃杯
glasses ['glɑ:siz]
(*pl.*) *n.* 眼镜 (15)
go [gəu] *v.* 去 (19)
go home 回家 (19)
go to bed 上床睡觉 (20)
go to school 上学 (19)
goat [gəut] *n.* 山羊 (9)
good [gud] *adj.* 好的 (16)
(be) good at 在……
方面(学得，做得)好；
善于 (20)

grade [greid] *n.* 年级 (14)
grandma ['grænmɑ:] *n.*
(口语)奶奶,外婆 (15)
grandpa ['grænpɑ:] *n.*
(口语)爷爷,外公 (18)
green [gri:n] *adj.*
绿色的 (7)
guess [ges] *v.* 猜 (10)

H

ha [hɑ:] *interj.* 哈! (13)
hair [hɛə] *n.* 头发 (11)
hand [hænd] *n.* 手 (2)
hard [hɑ:d] *adv.*
努力地 (14)
he [hi:, hi] *pron.* 他 (11)
head [hed] *n.* 头 (15)
hello ['he'lou] *interj.*
喂(表示问候,或唤起
注意) (11)
hen [hen] *n.* 母鸡 (10)
her [hə:, hə] *pron.*
她的;她(宾格) (8, 16)
here [hiə] *adv.* 这儿 (9)
his [hiz] *pron.* 他的 (8)
home [houm] *adv.*
回家,在家 *n.* 家 (19)
homework ['houmwə:k]
n. 家庭作业 (20)
horse [hɔ:s] *n.* 马 (10)
hour ['auə] *n.* 小时 (18)
house [haus] *n.* 房子 (16)
how [hau] *adv.*
(指程度、数量)多么;
多少 (10, 14)
how old 几岁 (14)
how many 多少 (18)
How are you?你好吗?
(问健康情况) (19)
hundred ['hʌndrəd]
num. 百 (18)

I

I [ai] *pron.* 我 (14)
in [in] *prep.*
在……里面 (10)
is [iz] *v.* 是 (6)
it [it] *pron.* 它
(主格,宾格) (6, 15)

J

Jack [dʒæk]
杰克(男名) (13)
jeep [dʒi:p] *n.* 吉普车 (3)
Joan [dʒəun]
琼(女名) (11)

K

Kate [keit] 凯特(女名) (8)
knife [naif] *n.* 小刀 (3)

L

lesson ['lesn] *n.*
课,功课 (9)
have lessons 上课 (20)
let [let] *v.* 让 (19)
like [laik] *v.* 喜欢 (14)
little ['litl] *adj.* 小的 (14)
long [lɔŋ] *adj.* 长的 (11)
look [luk] *v.* 看 (9)
look at 看…… (13)

M

man [mæn] (*pl.* men [men]) *n.* 男人;人 (13)
many ['meni] *adj.*
许多的,多的
pron. 许多 (18)
map [mæp] *n.* 地图 (16)
maths [mæθs] *n.* 数学(18)
me [mi:, mi] *pron.* 我
(宾格) (10)
middle ['midl] *adj.*
中间的,中等的;*n.* 中间
middle-school student
中学生 (14)
Mike [maik]
迈克(男名) (11)
minute ['minit] *n.*
分钟 (18)
Monday ['mʌndi] *n.*
星期一 (19)
month [mʌnθ] *n.* 月 (18)
morning ['mɔ:niŋ] *n.*
早晨,上午
Good morning.
早上好。(你好。) (19)
mother ['mʌðə] *n.*
母亲 (13)
mum [mʌm] *n.* 妈妈 (10)
my [mai] *pron.* 我的 (8)

N

name [neim] *n.* 名字 (14)
near [niə] *prep.*
在……附近 (15)
new [nju:] *adj.* 新的 (10)
nice [nais] *adj.*
好的,好看的 (10)
nine [nain] *num.* 九 (9)
nineteen ['nain'ti:n]
num. 十九 (18)

no [nəu] *adv.* 不，不是 (8)
No. = number[ˈnʌmbə]
n. 第……号 (18)
nose [nəuz] *n.* 鼻子 (15)
not [nɔt] *adv.* 不 (8)
now [nau] *adv.* 现在 (19)
nurse [nə:s] *n.* 护士 (14)

O

of [ɔv, əv] *prep.* ……的
a teacher of English
一位英语教师 (14)
oh [əu] *interj.* 哦 (13)
old [əuld] *adj.* 旧的；
年老的；……岁的 (11, 14)
on [ɔn] *prep.*
在……上 (15)
one [wʌn] *num.* 一 (9)
only [ˈəunli] *adv.*
仅仅，只 (14)
open [ˈəupən] *v.* 开 (19)
or [ɔ:, ə] *conj.* 或者 (11)
orange [ˈɔrindʒ] *n.*
橙子，桔子 (4)
adj. 橙色的，桔色的 (7)
other [ˈʌðə] *adj.*
别的，其它的 (20)
our [ˈauə] *pron.*
我们的 (11)
over [ˈəuvə] *adv.*
在那边，在另一处
over there 在那边(指较远处) (11)

P

page [peidʒ] *n.*
页，页码 (19)
pen [pen] *n.* 钢笔 (3)
pencil [ˈpensl] *n.* 铅笔 (6)
pencil-box [ˈpenslbɔks]
n. 铅笔盒 (8)
people [ˈpi:pl] *n.*
人，人们 (18)
the people 人民 (20)
picture [ˈpiktʃə] *n.*
图画，照片 (13)
pig [pig] *n.* 猪 (10)
pioneer [ˌpaiəˈniə] *n.*
先锋
Young Pioneer(简称Pioneer)少先队员 (14)
plane [plein] *n.* 飞机 (4)
play [plei] *v.*
玩；打(球) (20)
please [pli:z] *v.* 请 (19)

R

read [ri:d] *v.* 读 (19)
red [red] *adj.* 红色的 (7)
right [rait] *adv.* 正好，恰恰 (15)
adj. 对的，正确的 (19)
room [ru:m] *n.* 房间 (11)
rose [rəuz] *n.* 玫瑰花 (3)
Rose 罗斯(女名) (14)
rubber ['rʌbə] *n.* 橡皮 (8)
ruler ['ru:lə] *n.* 尺 (8)

S

school [sku:l] *n.* 学校 (14)
seat [si:t] *n.* 座位 (11)
seven ['sevn] *num.* 七 (9)
seventy ['sevnti] *num.* 七十 (18)
she [ʃi:, ʃi] *pron.* 她 (13)
sheep [ʃi:p] *n.* 羊，绵羊 (4)
ship [ʃip] *n.* 轮船 (3)
shoe [ʃu:] *n.* 鞋 (10)
short [ʃɔ:t] *adj.* 短的；矮的 (11, 13)
sister ['sistə] *n.* 姐，妹 (13)
sit [sit] *v.* 坐 (19)
six [siks] *num.* 六 (9)
sixteen ['siks'ti:n] *num.* 十六 (16)
sixty ['siksti] *num.* 六十 (18)
small [smɔ:l] *adj.* 小的 (11)
some [sʌm] *adj.* & *pron.* 一些 (15)
sport [spɔ:t] *n.* 运动
have sports 进行体育活动 (20)
stand [stænd] *v.* 站 (19)
student ['stju:dənt] *n.* 学生 (4)
study ['stʌdi] *v.* 学习 (20)

T

table ['teibl] *n.* 桌子 (9)
tall [tɔ:l] *adj.* 高的 (13)
teacher ['ti:tʃə] *n.* 教师 (13)
ten [ten] *num.* 十 (9)
thank [θæŋk] *v.* 谢谢 (8)
that [ðæt] *pron.* & *adj.* 那，那个 (6)
the [ði:, ði, ðə] *art.* 这(那)个；这(那)些 (9)

their [ðɛə] *pron.*
他们(她们,它们)的 (11)
then [ðen] *adv.*
那么;然后 (10)
there [ðɛə, ðə] *adv.*
那儿 (9)
these [ðiːz] *pron.* & *adj.*
这些 (9)
they [ðei] *pron.*
他们(她们,它们) (9)
thin [θin] *adj.* 瘦的 (10)
thirteen [ˈθəːˈtiːn] *num.*
十三 (13)
thirty [ˈθəːti] *num.*
三十 (18)
this [ðis] *pron.* & *adj.*
这,这个 (6)
those [ðəuz] *pron.* & *adj.*
那些 (9)
three [θriː] *num.* 三 (9)
time [taim] *n.* 时间 (20)
to [tuː, tu, tə] *prep.*
到…… (19)
today [təˈdei] *adv.*
& *n.* 今天 (19)
Tom [tɔm] 汤姆(男名) (8)
too [tuː] *adv.* 也 (9)
tree [triː] *n.* 树 (16)
trousers [ˈtrauzəz]
(*pl.*) *n.* 长裤 (11)
turn [təːn] *v.* 翻;转 (19)
twelve [twelv] *num.*
十二 (13)
twenty [ˈtwenti] *num.*
二十 (18)
twenty-four *num.*
二十四 (18)
two [tuː] *num.* 二 (9)

U

under [ˈʌndə] *prep.*
在……下面 (15)
up [ʌp] *adv.* 向上 (19)
us [ʌs, əs] *pron.*
我们(宾格) (16)

W

wall [wɔːl] *n.* 墙 (16)
we [wiː, wi] *pron.*
我们 (14)
week [wiːk] *n.*
周,星期 (18)
what [wɔt] *pron.*
& *adj.* 什么 (6)
where [wɛə] *adv.*
在哪里 (15)

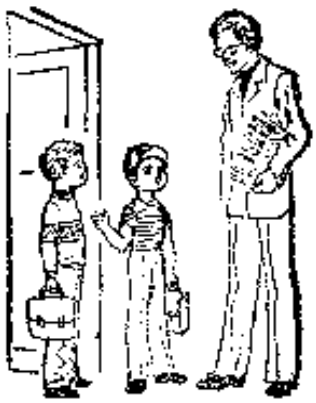
white [wait] *adj.*
白色的 (7)
who [hu:] *pron.* 谁 (13)
whose [hu:z] *pron.*
谁的 (11)
why [wai] *interj.*
怎么啦(表示惊讶) (7)
window ['windəu] *n.*
窗 (15)
woman ['wumən]
(*pl.* women['wimin])
n. 妇女,女人 (13)
work [wə:k] *v.* & *n.*
工作 (14)
worker ['wə:kə] *n.*
工人 (13)
write [rait] *v.* 写 (19)

Y

year [jə:, jiə] *n.* 年 (18)
yellow ['jeləu] *adj.*
黄色的 (7)
yes [jes] *adv.* 是,是的 (7)
you [ju:, ju] *pron.*
你,你们(宾格,主格)(8,14)
young [jʌŋ] *adj.*
年青的 (14)
your [jɔ:] *pron.*
你的,你们的 (8)

Supplementary Readings

1. A New Classmate



Jack: Good morning, sir.

Mr Green: Good morning, Jack.

Jack: Mr Green, this is Tom White.

Mr Green: How do you do, Tom?

Tom: How do you do, sir?

Mr Green: This is Tom White, boys and girls. Is there a seat for Tom?

Mike: No, sir. There are thirty-three of us, and there are only thirty-three desks and chairs here.

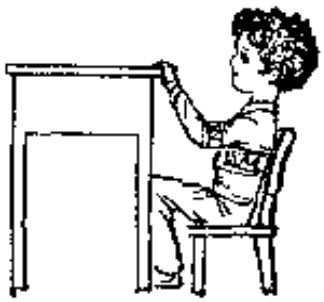
Mr Green: Jack and Mike, please go to the next room and get a desk and a chair for Tom.

Jack:
Mike: } Yes, sir.

Mike: Here's a desk for you, Tom.

Jack: And here's your chair.

Tom: Thank you very much. ...Oh, this chair is too small for me, Mr Green.



Mr Green: Sit on it this morning, Tom. Jack, please get a bigger chair for Tom this afternoon.

Jack: Yes, sir.

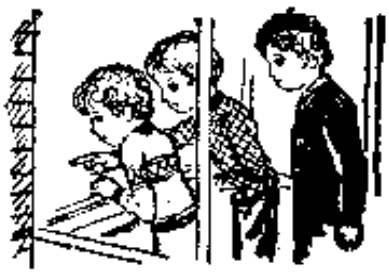
classmate ['klɑ:smeit] *n.* 同班同学
sir [sə:, sə] *n.* (不附带姓名的称呼)先生
Mr = Mister ['mistə] *n.* (置于男人姓名之前的称呼)先生
Green [gri:n] 格林(姓)
White [wait] 怀特(姓)
How do you do? 你好! (初次见面时问候语)
next [nekst] *adj.* 隔壁的
get [get] *v.* 取
very ['veri] much [mʌtʃ] 非常
bigger ['bigə] *adj.* 大一些的

2. Grace and Joan

Mike: Look at that girl down there.

Tom: Which one?

Mike: The girl with fair hair in a blue dress. Who is she?



Tom: Oh, that's Grace. She's new in our school.

Paul: Her name isn't Grace. Her name is Joan.

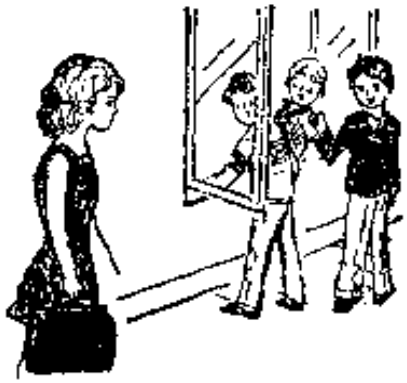
Tom: Her name is Grace, Paul. I'm sure.

Mike: Come on. Let's go and ask her.

Tom: Hi, Grace.

Girl: Hi. But I'm not Grace. I'm Joan.

Paul: You see, Tom, her name is Joan. Where are you going, Joan?

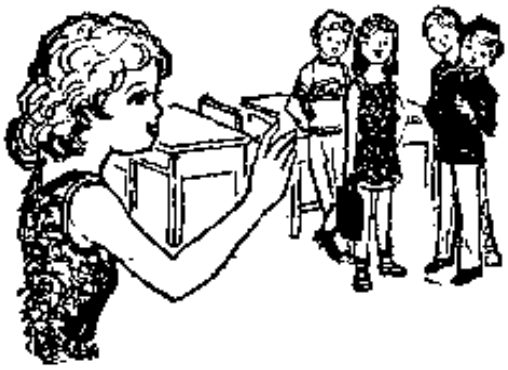


Girl: To the teachers' room.

Paul: See you in class then, Joan.

Girl: Right, Paul.

Mike: Look, she's coming back. Hi, Joan.



Girl: Hi. But I'm not Joan, I'm Grace.

Tom: So she has two names.

Mike: All right, Grace or Joan, let's go to class.

Paul: Oh, this girl has two names. But who's that?

Tom: Look at that girl at the window. She has the same hair ...

Mike: ... and the same blue dress.

Tom: Ha ha! They're twins. Grace and Joan are twins.

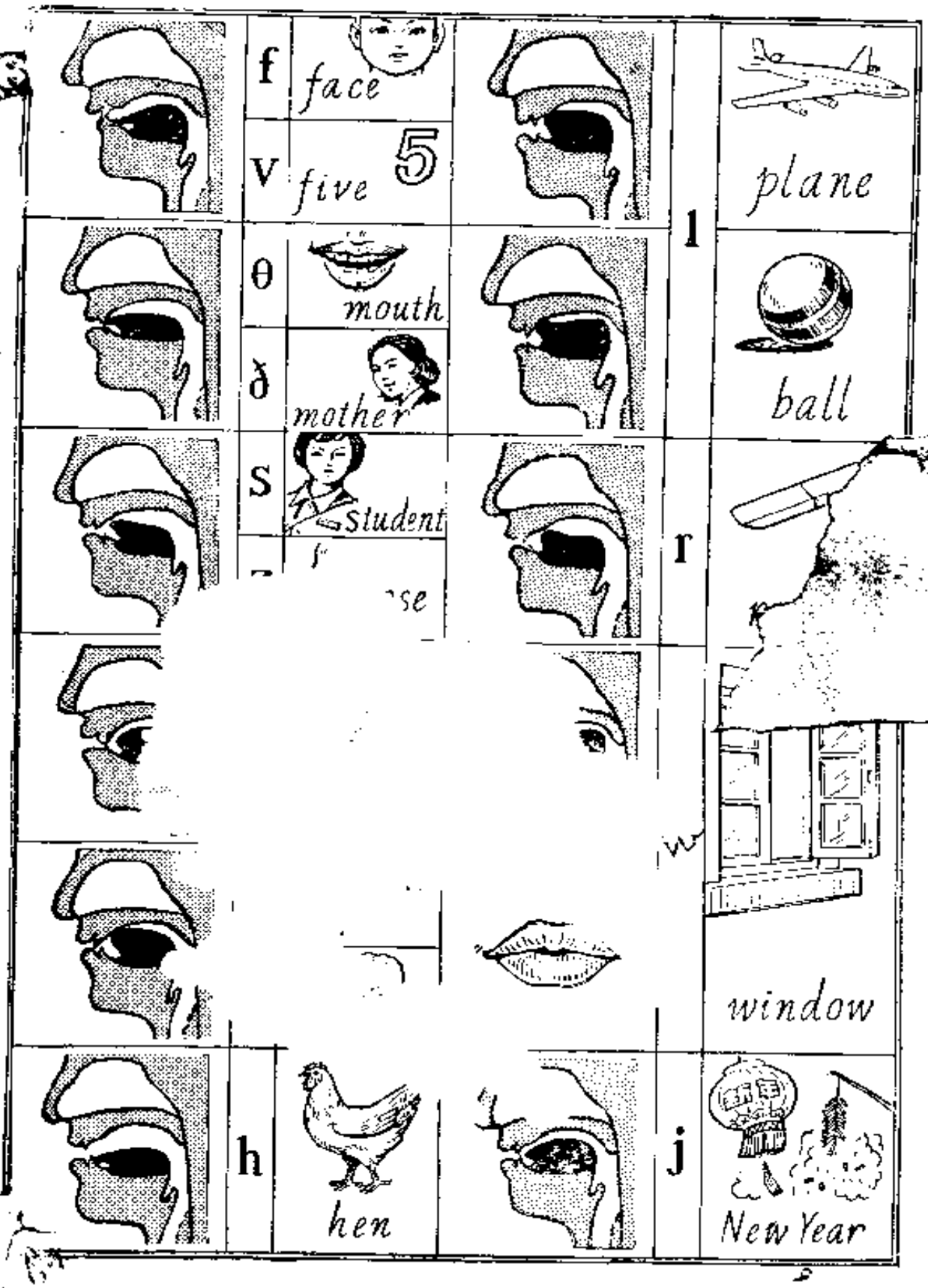
Paul: So we have twins in our class!

Grace [greis] 格雷斯(女名)
which [witʃ] *pron.* 哪一个
with [wiδ] *prep.* 带有
fair [fεə] *adj.* (头发)金色的
dress [dres] *n.* 衣服;连衣裙
Paul [pɔ:l] 保罗(男名)
sure [ʃuə] *adj.* 确信的,肯定的
come on 来吧
ask [ɑ:sk] *v.* 问
hi [hai] *interj.* 喂(表示问候,或唤起注意)
but [bʌt] *conj.* 但是,可是
see [si:] *v.* 看,看见;了解
Where are you going?
你到哪里去?
Look, she's coming back.
看,她回来了。
so [sou] *conj.* 那么,这样看来
same [seim] *adj.* 同样的
twins [twinz] (*pl.*) *n.*
孪生,双胞胎
have [hæv] *v.* 有

Phonetic Signs

	iː	bee		uː	ruler
	i	pig		u	book
	e	desk		ɔː	horse
	æ	cap		ɔ	dog
	əː	girl		ɑː	car
	ə	worker		ʌ	bus

ei	cake	p	pen
ai	knife	b	bag
ɔi	boy	t	table
əu	rose	d	door
au	house	k	bike
iə	ear	g	glass
εə	hair	m	map
uə	sure	n	nurse
		ŋ	The Bells


f
face
v
five
5
θ
mouth
ð
mother
s
student
l
plane
ball
r
window
h
hen
j
New Year

初级中学课本
英　语
第一册
人民教育出版社外语室英语组编订
*
人民教育出版社出版
北京出版社重印
北京市新华书店发行
北京印刷一厂印刷
*
开本787×1092　1/32　印张4.75　插页2　字数91,200
1982年1月第1版　1991年6月第10次印刷
印数 778,501—919,000
ISBN 7-107-00339-9
G·542(课)　定价 0.58 元

初级中学课本

英语

第二册

English 2

人民教育出版社

Spring

Summer

Autumn

Winter

Two Young Pioneers

On a Bus

说　明

初级中学课本英语是以《全日制十年制学校初中课本(试用本)英语》为基础，参考各地教师在试用期间提出的意见编订而成的。

本册由董蔚君、刘岩编订。斜体行书由孙全洁缮写。

北京外国语学院邓炎昌教授审订。

play football
playing football

run running

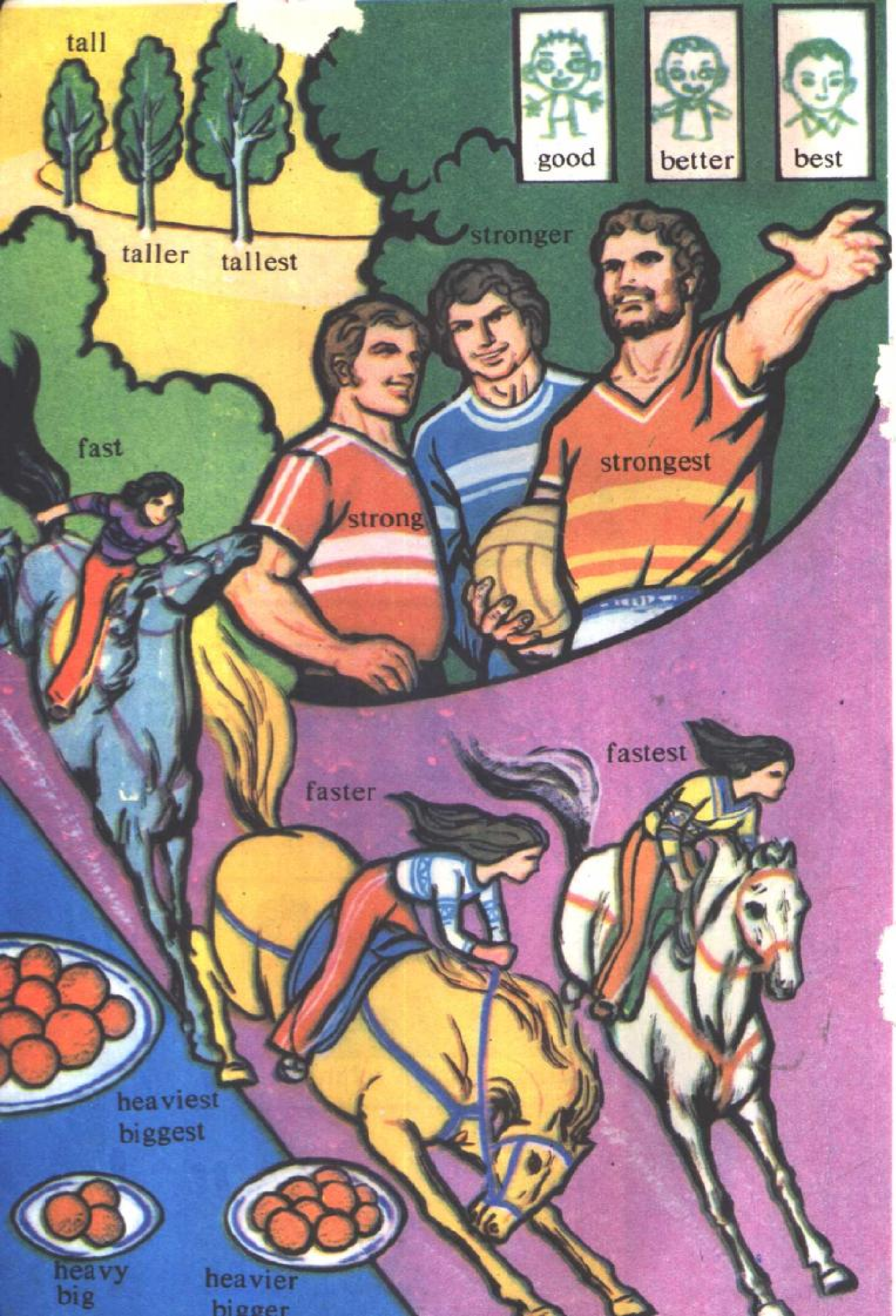
swim
swimming

read reading write writing

making model planes

sing singing dance dancing

43375


tall
taller
tallest
good
better
best
stronger
strong
strongest
fast
faster
fastest
heaviest
biggest
heavy
big
heavier
bigger

CONTENTS

Lesson 1 1

English Sounds

[i:] [i] [e] [æ] [u:] [u] [ɔ:] [ɔ] [ɑ:] [ʌ] [ə:] [ə];

[p] [b] [t] [d] [k] [g] [f] [v] [m] [n] [ŋ] [s] [z] [θ] [ð]

Lesson 2 6

English Sounds

[ei] [ai] [ɔi] [iə] [εə] [uə] [əu] [au];

[l] [r] [h] [w] [j] [ʃ] [ʒ] [tʃ] [dʒ] [tr] [dr] [ts] [dz]

Lesson 3 10

Drills: 1. There's some fish on one plate.
There's some bread on the other.

2. Please pass me (him, her, ...) a glass of water.

Dialogue: Supper Is Ready

Grammar: Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Pronunciation and Intonation: [i:, i, e, æ];
Liaison and Intonation

Lesson 4 20

Drills: 1. Have you a TV set?

Yes, we have. (No, we haven't.)
2. How many books has he?
He has four.
3. Has Mary any paper?
No, she hasn't. (Yes, she has.)
Text: What Is It?
Grammar: Verb *to have*
Pronunciation and Intonation: [i:, ei]; [e, ei]; [s, θ];
Incomplete Plosives and Intonation
Lesson 5 (Revision) 28
A Song: Days of the Week
Lesson 6 31
Drills: 1. Is this room yours?
No. It's theirs (his, hers).
2. Which jacket is yours?
The white one is mine.
Which cups are yours?
The blue ones are ours.
Dialogue: Two Young Pioneers
Grammar: Personal and Possessive Pronouns
Pronunciation and Intonation: ea [i:], [e];
ow [əu], [au]; ou[au]; ear [iə]
Lesson 7 40
Drills: 1. I'm talking.
2. You (We, They) aren't talking.

3. What are you (they) doing?
What's she (he) doing?
Text: On a Bus
Pronunciation and Intonation: [ɑ:, ai]; [ei, ai]; [w, v]
A Rhyme: Be Polite
Lesson 8 ·····48
Drills: 1. Are you cleaning your classroom?
Yes, we are. (No, we aren't.)
Is Liu Ying cleaning the window?
No, she isn't. (Yes, she is.)
2. Who's taking down the old pictures?
Our teacher is.
Who's sweeping the floor?
Some of the boys are.
Text: Planting Trees
Grammar: The Present Continuous Tense
Pronunciation and Intonation: Open and Close Syllables
Lesson 9 (Revision) ·····57
A Song: This Is the Way
Lesson 10 ·····61
Drills: 1. Don't read in bed.
2. Where are the boys playing?
Text: In a Park

Grammar: The Plural Number of Nouns (II)

Pronunciation and Intonation: [æ, ʌ, ɑ:]; [s, ʃ]

A Rhyme: May

Lesson 11 71

Drills: 1. You (They) speak Russian.

I(We) speak Chinese.

2. I (We, You, They) don't speak Russian.

3. Do you swim every day?

No, I don't. (Yes, I do.)

Text: A Letter

Grammar: Kinds of Sentences

Pronunciation and Intonation: ie [i:]; igh [ai]; ind [aind]; or[ə:]; kn[n]; nk [ŋk]; qu [kw]; x [ks]

Lesson 12 81

Drills: 1. Kate doesn't sing well, but she dances well.

2. Does she have lunch at home?

No, she doesn't. (Yes, she does.)

Text: The Cock and the Fox

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ʌ, ɔ]; [tʃ, tr]

Lesson 13 90

Drills: 1. What do you do on Sunday?

I usually do some cleaning.

2. When does your father go to work?

He goes to work at half past six.

3. Where does your grandpa live?

Text: A Present

Grammar: I. The Present Indefinite Tense

II. Ordinal Numbers

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ɔ:, ə:]; [dʒ, dr]

A Rhyme: Mr Moon

Lesson 14 (Revision) 100

A Song: Morning Comes Early

Lesson 15 105

Drills: 1. A sheep is heavy. A horse is heavier. An elephant is the heaviest.

2. Which is bigger, the moon or the earth? The earth is bigger.

3. Who's the youngest, Rose, Mary or Betty? Betty is the youngest.

Text: The Seasons

Grammar: The Comparative and Superlative Degrees of Adjectives (I)

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ɔ:, ɔi]; [əu, au]; [ʃ, tʃ]; r-syllables

Lesson 16 115

Drills: 1. Mike is taller than John.

2. Tom draws well. John draws better. Mike draws the best.

3. A truck goes faster than a bike.

4. Which goes the fastest, a car, a truck or a

bike?
Dialogue: Who Is Faster?
Grammar: The Comparative and Superlative Degrees of Adverbs (I)
Pronunciation and Intonation: [iə, εə, uə]; a [ɑ:]; o [ʌ]; ai, ay [ei]; ear [iə], [ə:]
A Rhyme: I Try
Lesson 17 (Revision) ····· 126
A Song: Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star
Vocabulary ····· 131
Supplementary Readings:
1. Why Is Mum Crying? ····· 141
2. The Crow and the Fox ····· 143

LESSON ONE

The First Lesson

ENGLISH SOUNDS

I

1. [i:] [i] [e] [æ]

[i:]	e	he	we	
	e□e	these	Chinese	
	ee	bee	green	jeep
	ea	seat	please	teacher
[i]	—i	ship	thin	sister
[e]	—e	hen	desk	lesson
[æ]	—a	fat	man	apple

2. [p] [b] [t] [d] [k] [g]

[p]	—p	pen	map	people
[b]	—b	bed	black	baby
[t]	—t	ten	Tom	that
[d]	—d	day	read	window

	c	*c*ap	*c*ome	*c*up
[k]	k	*K*ate	wee*k*	wor*k*er
	ck	ba*ck*	co*ck*	chi*ck*
[g]	g	*g*et	ba*g*	*g*lass

3.

[i:]	[i]	[e]	[æ]
[i:t]	[it]	[et]	[æt]
[pi:k]	[pik]	[pek]	[pæk]
[bi:d]	[bid]	[bed]	[bæd]
[di:d]	[did]	[ded]	[dæd]

II

1. [u:] [u] [ɔ:] [ɔ] [ɑ:]

[u:]	u	bl*u*e	r*u*ler	
	oo	t*oo*	sch*oo*l	
[u]	oo	b*oo*k	l*oo*k	
[ɔ:]	or	h*or*se	sp*or*t	
	al	t*al*l	b*al*l	sm*al*l
[ɔ]	o	n*o*t	c*o*ck	d*o*ctor
[ɑ:]	a (ss)	cl*a*ss	gl*a*ss	
	ar	c*ar*	h*ar*d	

2. [f] [v] [m] [n] [ŋ]

[f]	f	*f*riend	kni*f*e	*f*i*f*teen

[v] —v	ha*v*e	o*v*er	se*v*en
[m]—m	*m*e	so*m*e	*m*u*m*
[n] —n	*n*ame	*n*i*n*e	a*n*d
[ŋ] —ng	lo*ng*	you*ng*	morni*ng*

3.

[u]	[u]	[ə:]	[ə]
[fu:d]	[fut]	[nə:t]	[nət]
[ku:l]	[kuk]	[tə:n]	[təp]
[pu:l]	[put]	[fə:k]	[fənd]
[tu:l]	[tuk]	[mə:n]	[məp]

III

1. [ʌ] [ə:] [ə]

[ʌ] u — c*u*p — r*u*bber
[ʌ] o — s*o*me — br*o*ther

[ə:] ir — g*ir*l — th*ir*ty
[ə:] ur — t*ur*n — n*ur*se

[ə] —er — und*er* — teach*er*

2. [s] [z] [θ] [ð]

[s] s — *s*it — bu*s*
[s] c — *c*e — pen*c*il

[z] z — *z*oo [zu:] 动物园
[z] s — no*s*e — plea*s*e

[θ] th — *th*ank — mon*th*
[ð] th — *th*is — o*th*er

3.

[ɑ:]	[ʌ]
[dɑ:k]	[dʌk]
[kɑ:m]	[kʌm]
[bɑ:n]	[bʌn]
[gɑ:d]	[gʌn]

[ɔ:]	[ə:]
[bɔ:d]	[bə:d]
[tɔ:n]	[tə:n]
[θɔ:t]	[θə:d]
[nɔ:θ]	[nə:s]

	[-ə]
[big]	['bigə]
[sæd]	['sædə]
[mi:t]	['mi:tə]
[dɑ:k]	['dɑ:kə]

[z]	[ð]
[zi:]	[ði:]
[zed]	[ðen]
[zip]	[ðis]
[zəun]	[ðəuz]

[n]	[ŋ]
[sin]	[siŋ]
[θin]	[θiŋ]
[tʌn]	[tʌŋ]
[skin]	[kiŋ]

EXERCISES

1. Read and copy these:

[i:] [i] [e] [æ] [ɑ:] [ɔ]

[ɔ:] [u] [u:] [ʌ] [ə:] [ə]

[p] [b] [t] [d] [k] [g] [f] [v]

[s] [z] [θ] [ð] [m] [n] [ŋ]

2. Read and write out these words:

Model: [stænd] ⟶ stand

[dɔg]	[ði:z]	[θæŋk]	['dɔktə]
[buk]	[hɑ:d]	[spɔ:t]	['minit]
[pen]	[tə:n]	[frʌnt]	['i:vniŋ]
[siks]	[sku:l]	['sevn]	['θə:ti]

3. Pronounce these words:

cut	next	stop	talk
bad	grass	think	better
park	speak	first	supper

4. Read aloud the following:

Two heads are better than one. 两人智慧胜一人。

A friend in need is a friend indeed. 患难朋友才是真朋友。

better ['betə] 较好的　　than [ðæn, ðən] 比

need [ni:d] 需要　　indeed [in'di:d] 真正地

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Can you help me?

Yes, of course.

Can I help you?

No, thanks. I can do it.

LESSON TWO

The Second Lesson

ENGLISH SOUNDS

I

1. [ei] [ai] [ɔi]

[ei]	—a□e	f*a*ce	pl*a*ne	gr*a*de
[ai]	i□e	b*i*ke	f*i*ve	bes*i*de
	y	m*y*	wh*y*	
[ɔi]	—oy	b*oy*		

2. [l] [r] [h] [w] [j]

[l]	—l	*l*ike	*l*ook	p*l*ay
		al*l*	peop*l*e	litt*l*e
[r]	—r	*r*ed	g*r*ade	w*r*ite
[h]	h	*h*e	*h*and	*h*ello
	wh	*wh*o	*wh*ose	
[w]	w	*w*e	*w*all	*w*oman
	wh	*wh*at	*wh*ite	*wh*y
[j]	—y	*y*our	*y*ellow	*y*ear

3.

[i:]	[ei]	[e]
[li:k]	[leik]	[leg]
[hi:d]	[heit]	[hed]
[wi:t]	[weit]	[wet]
[mi:t]	[meit]	[met]

[ei]	[ai]	[ɔi]
[rei]	[rai]	[rɔi]
[feil]	[fail]	[fɔil]
[kein]	[kain]	[kɔin]
[hei]	[hai]	[hɔist]

II

1. [iə] [ɛə] [uə]

[iə] —ear *near*

[ɛə] —air h*air* ch*air*

[uə] —ure *sure* [ʃuə] 肯定的

2. [ʃ] [ʒ] [tʃ] [dʒ]

[ʃ] —sh *sh*eep Engli*sh*

[ʒ] —s usually ['ju:ʒuəli] 通常

[tʃ] —ch *Ch*ina tea*ch*er

[dʒ] <g / j> page orang*e* / *j*eep *J*ack

3.

[iə]	[ɛə]
[hiə]	[hɛə]
[fiə]	[fɛə]
[ʃiə]	[ʃɛə]
[tʃiə]	[tʃɛə]

[ɔ:]	[uə]
[pɔ:]	[puə]
[bɔ:]	[buə]
[mɔ:]	[muə]
[ʃɔ:]	[ʃuə]

III

1. [əu] [au]

[əu]	o	go	no
	o□e	rose	those
	oa	coat	Joan
[au]	ou	house	trousers
	ow	now	down

2. [tr] [dr] [ts] [dz]

[tr]	—tr	*tr*ee	*tr*ousers
[dr]	—dr	*dr*iver	hun*dr*ed
[ts]	—ts	goa*ts*	minu*tes*
[dz]	—ds	hea*ds*	blackboar*ds*

3.

[ɔ:]	[əu]
[fɔ:k]	[fəuk]
[wɔ:k]	[wəuk]
[jɔ:k]	[jəuk]
[strɔ:]	[strəuk]

[əu]	[au]
[təun]	[taun]
[rəuz]	[rauz]
[bəuθ]	[bauz]
[drəuv]	[draut]

[ts]	[dz]
[si:ts]	[si:dz]
[kɑ:ts]	[kɑ:dz]
[raits]	[raidz]
[greits]	[greidz]

EXERCISES

1. Read and copy these:

[ei] [əu] [ai] [au] [ɔi] [iə] [ɛə] [uə]

[ʃ] [ʒ] [tʃ] [dʒ] [tr] [dr] [ts] [dz]

[l] [r] [h] [w] [j]

2. Read and write out these words:

[hiə]	[daun]	[greid]	['teibl]
[bɔi]	[naif]	[kləuz]	['tʃainə]
[tʃɛə]	[peidʒ]	[spɔ:ts]	['hʌndrəd]

3. Pronounce these words:

so	dear	shine	round
toy	rice	large	plate
sky	lunch	theirs	Betty

4. Read aloud the following:

No pains, no gains. 不劳无获。

Time and tide wait for no man. 岁月不等人。

pain [pein] 艰苦 gain [gein] 收获

tide [taid] 潮流 wait [weit] for 等待

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What's the date today?

It's January 10 (January the tenth).

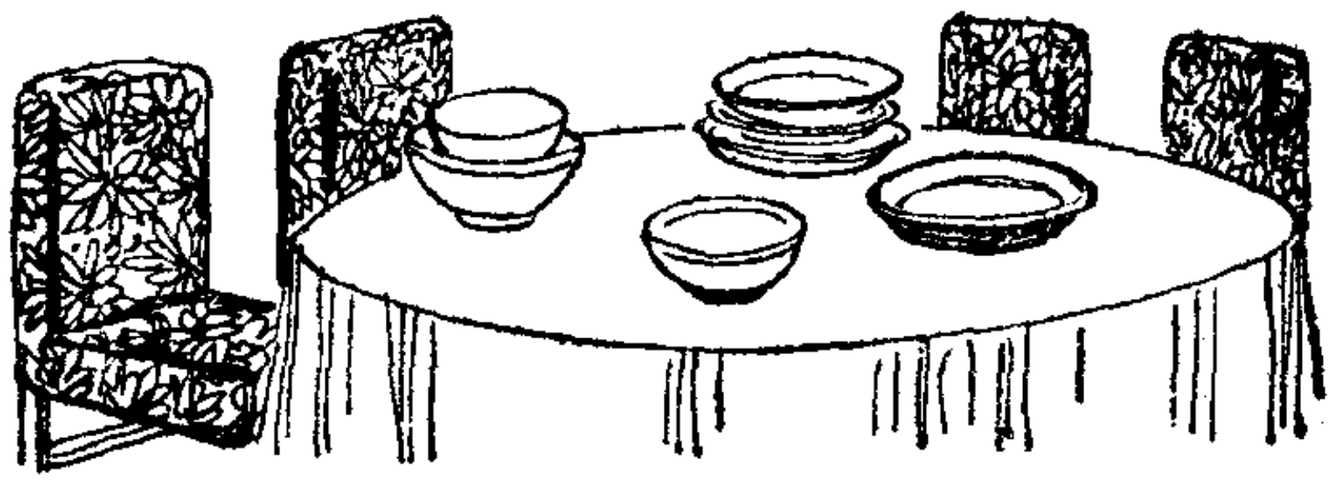
It's February (March, April, May, June, July) 10.

LESSON THREE

The Third Lesson

DRILLS

A



What's in the room?

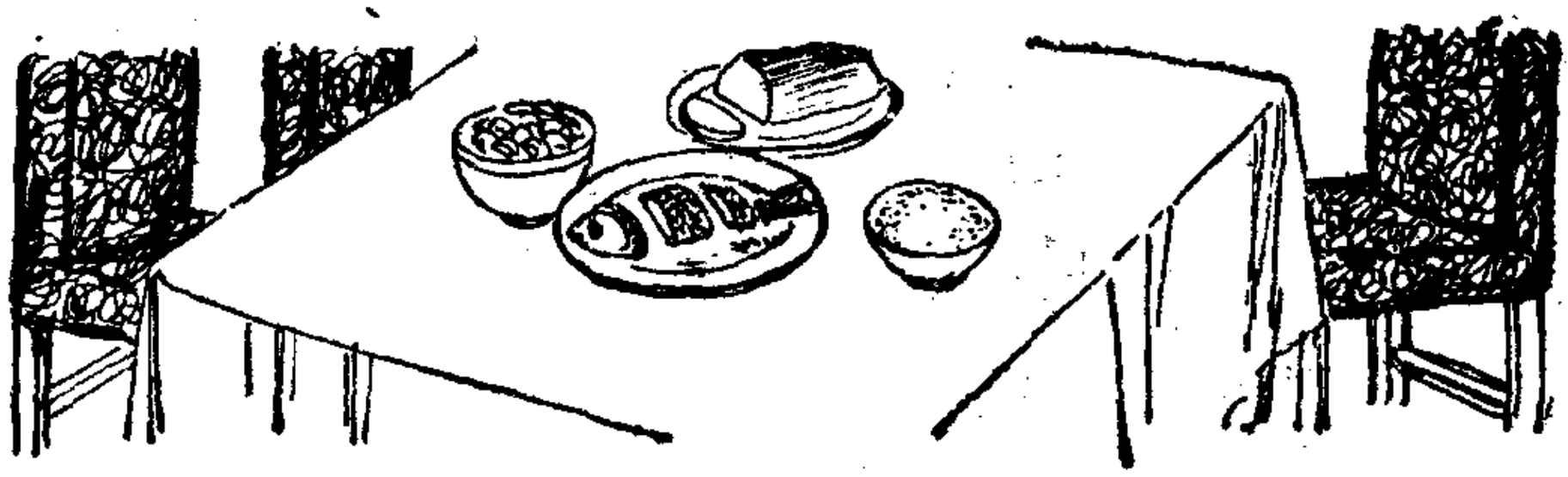
There's a table.

Are there any bowls on the table?

Yes, there are.

And there are some plates, too.

B



What's on the two plates?

There's some fish on one plate.

There's some bread on the other.

What's in the bowls?

There's some meat in this one.

There isn't any meat in that one.

There's some rice in it.

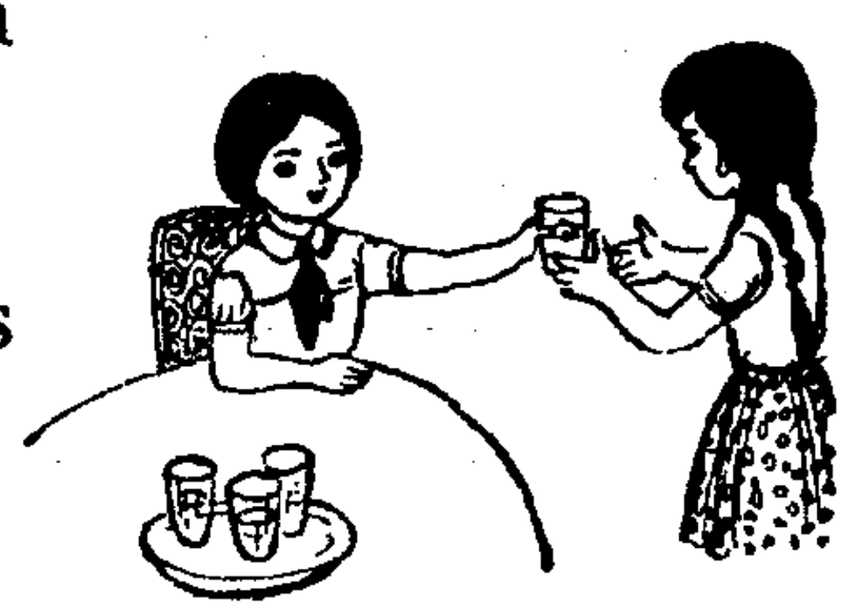
C

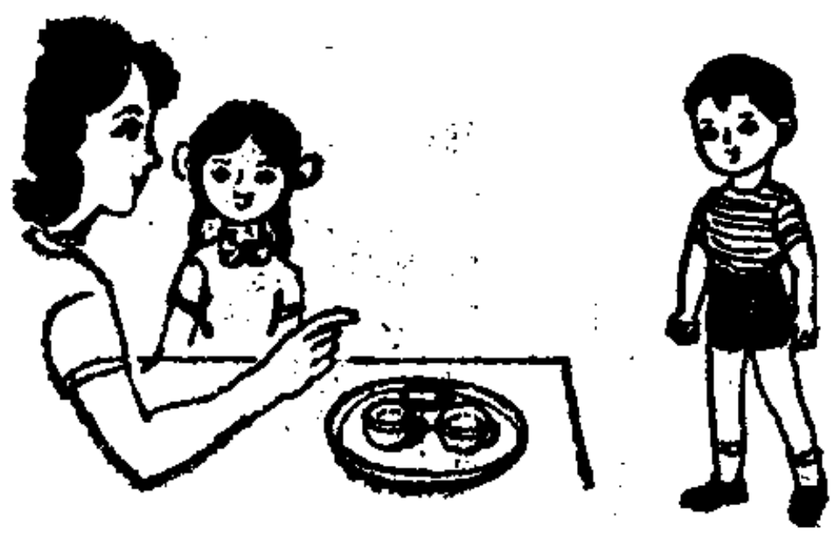
What's in those glasses?

There's some water in them.

Please pass me a glass of water.

Here you are.





What's in these cups?

There's some tea in them.

Please give him a cup of tea.

All right.

D

Are there any cups on the table?
Yes, there are.
Is there any tea in that
blue cup?
Yes, there is.

Is there any tea in that green one?
No, there isn't.
There's some milk in it.

DIALOGUE

SUPPER IS READY

Mum: Lingling!
Ling: Yes, Mum?
Mum: Supper is
ready.
Ling: All right.
Dad: Hurry!
Ling: I'm coming.
Hello, Dad.
Hello, Mum.

Mum: Sit down, Lingling. Here's your rice.

Ling: Thanks. Oh, there's fish and chicken! Meat too! And eggs! Why so much, Mum?

Mum: It's your daddy's birthday.

Ling: Oh! Happy birthday, Dad!

Dad: Thank you, Lingling. Help yourself to some fish.

Ling: Thank you.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

bowl [bəul] *n.* 碗
plate *n.* 盘子;碟子
fish *n.* 鱼肉;鱼
bread [bred] *n.* 面包
other ['ʌðə] (oth-er) *pron.* (两个中)另一个人(或事物)
others (*pl.*)
meat *n.* 肉
one *pron.* 一(个,只……)
ones (*pl.*)
rice *n.* 米饭;大米
water ['wɔ:tə] *n.* 水
them [ðem, ðəm] *pron.* 他(她)们,它们
pass *v.* 传递(用具等)
a glass of 一玻璃杯
Here you are. 给你。
tea *n.* 茶;茶叶
give [giv] *v.* 给
him *pron.* 他(宾格)
a cup of 一(茶)杯
milk *n.* 奶,牛奶

* * *

supper ['sʌpə] (sup-per) *n.* 晚餐
ready ['redi] *adj.* 准备好的,有准备
dad *n.* (口语)爸爸,爹爹

hurry ['hʌri] (hur-ry) *v.* 赶紧;匆忙

I'm coming. 我就来。

thank *n.* (只用复数) 谢谢,感谢

chicken ['tʃikin] (chick-en) *n.* 鸡肉;小鸡

why *adv.* 为什么

so *adv.* 这么,那么

much *adj.* 许多,多;大量的

daddy ['dædi] = dad

birthday ['bə:θdi] (birth-day) *n.* 生日

happy ['hæpi] (hap-py) *adj.* 高兴的,幸福的

Happy birthday.

(祝你)生日快乐。

help yourself ['help jɔ:'self] (to some fish) 随便吃(吃些鱼吧)

GRAMMAR

可数和不可数名词(Countable and Uncountable Nouns)

英语名词分可数名词和不可数名词两类。

1. 可数名词有复数形式,如:

an apple	two apples
a book	three books
a car	some cars

2. 不可数名词一般没有复数形式,如:

water:	a glass of water
	two glasses of water
	some water
rice:	a bowl of rice
	two bowls of rice
	some rice

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Compare:

[i:]	[i]	[e]	[æ]
[si:t]	[sit]	[set]	[sæt]
[bi:t]	[bit]	[bet]	[bæt]
[ri:d]	[rid]	[red]	[ræt]
[mi:t]	[mid]	[met]	[mæd]

2. Read aloud the following:

1) a cup of tea a bowl of rice

a glass of water a plate of fish

2) 'What's in 'these ↘cups?

There's some ↘tea in them.

'Please 'give him a 'cup of ↘tea.

↘Oh, there's 'fish and ↘chicken.

It's your 'daddy's ↘birthday.

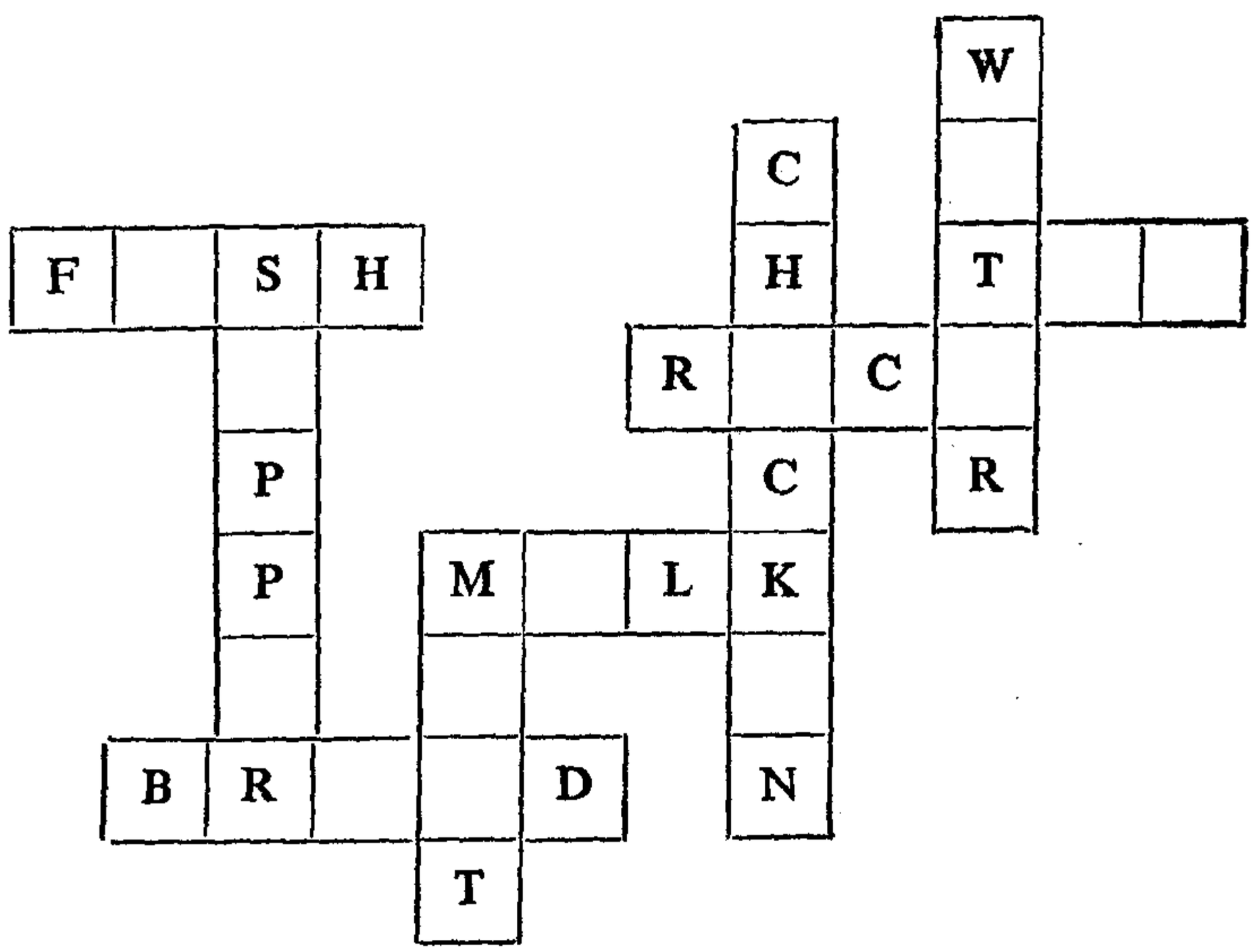
'Happy ↗birthday, Dad!

EXERCISES

1. Put in the missing letters:

   1) p__ge pl__te gr__de t__ble
   d__d st__nd h__ppy f__mily
   r__ce l__ke wr__te wh__te
   m__lk f__sh g__ve w__ndow
   sh___p j___p gr___n w___k
   m___t r___d pl___se t___cher
   br___d h___d r___dy

   2)



2. A. Fill in the blanks with **some** or **any**:

1) Is there ____ bread on the plate?

Yes, there is. There's ____ bread on it.

2) There isn't ____ milk in the glass.

There's ____ water in it.

3) Are there ____ sheep behind the house?

Yes, there are ____.

4) Is there ____ rice in that bowl?

No, there isn't ____. There's ____ meat in it.

B. Fill in the blanks with correct noun forms:

1) There are two hundred ____ (页) in that book.

2) Are there any ____ (学生) in the classroom?

3) Is there any ____ (面包) on the table?

4) There's some ____ (鸡肉) in the bowl.

3. Make sentences after the models:

A. Model: please, me, some water, give ⟶

Give me some water, please.

1) a cup of, him, please, tea, give

2) my coat, pass, please, me

3) some apples, please, them, give

4) her, pass, a glass of, please, milk

B. Model: Give **Li Ping** a cake, please. ⟶

Give **him** a cake, please.

1) Give **Joan** a cup of tea, please.

2) Pass **Rose and Kate** some bread.

3) Please give **Li Ping and me** some water.

4) The fish is nice. I like **the fish.**

4. Talk about the pictures:

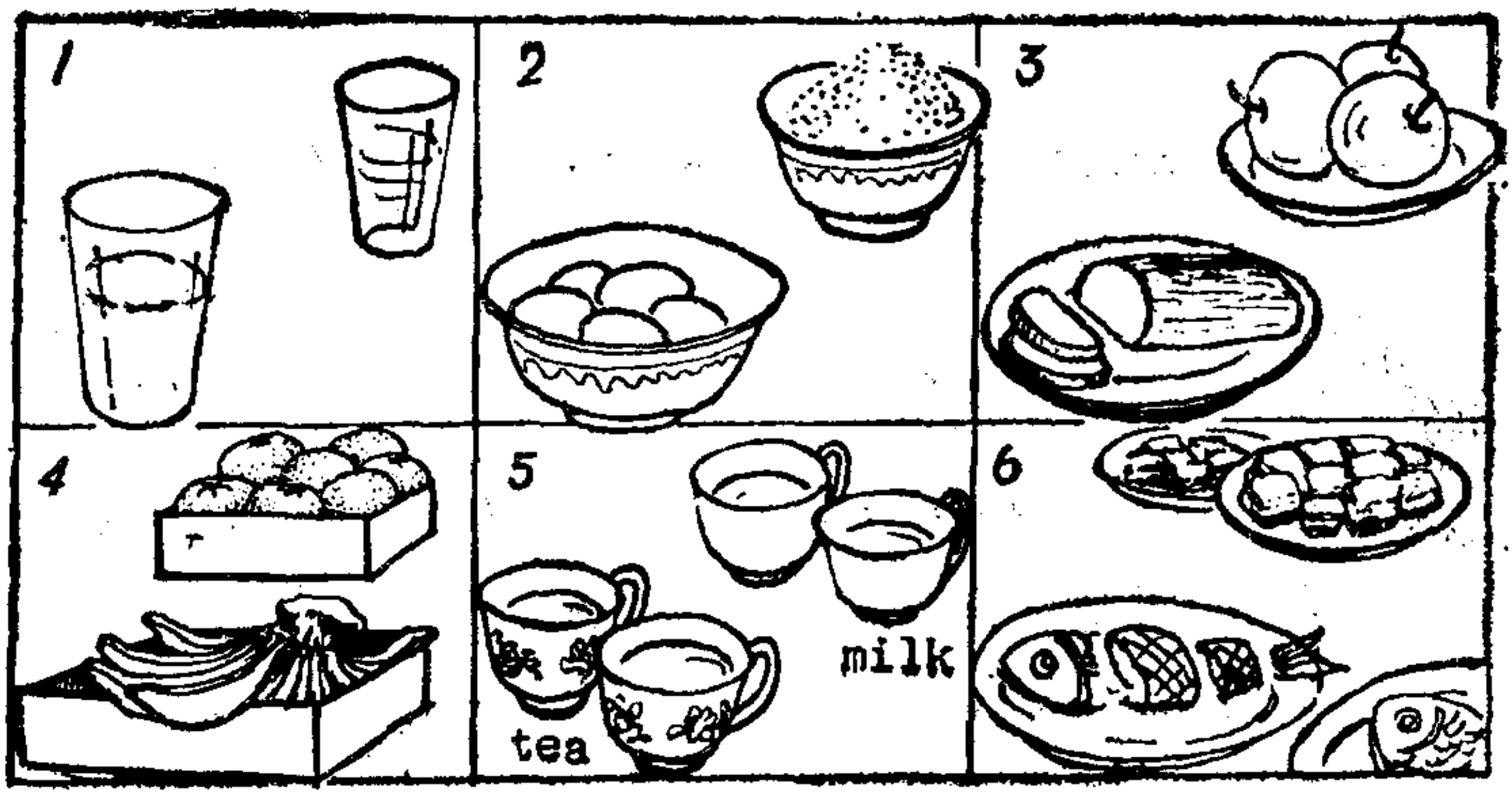
Model: Picture 1

Is there any water in the glass?

No, there isn't.

What's in it?

There's some milk in it.



5. Copy these:

ai ap ci cu dr dy en ex

bu my nu fa fi oo ow wa

bowl plate water tea milk

fish meat chicken bread rice

What's in those glasses?

There's some water in them.

Please pass me a glass of water.

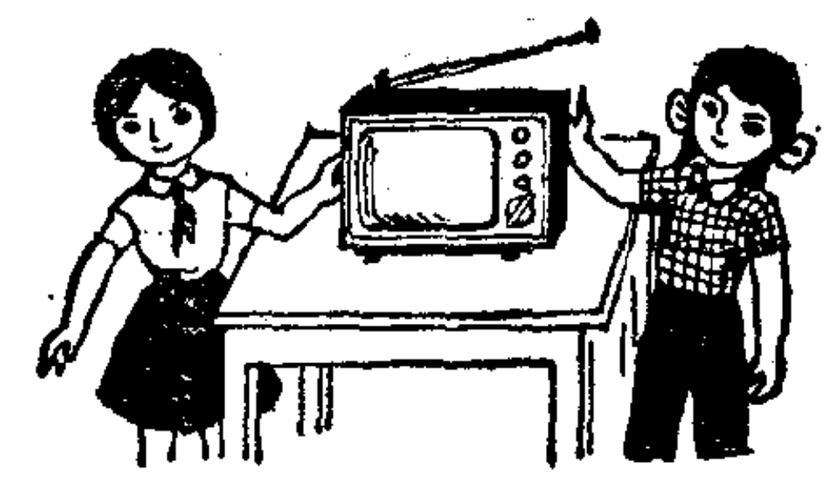
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

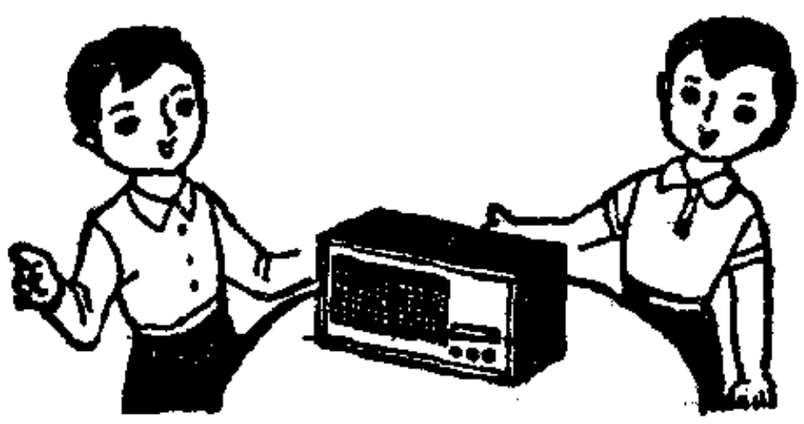
Wei Fang, would you like some water?
Thanks. That would be nice.

LESSON FOUR

The Fourth Lesson

DRILLS





A

We have a TV set.
Have you a TV set?
No, we haven't.
We have a radio.

haven't ['hævnt] = have not

B

Tom has a story-book.
Has Jack a story-book, too?
No, he hasn't.
He has some picture-books.
How many picture-books has he?
He has four.

hasn't ['hæznt] = has not

C

Have you any ink?
Yes, I have some.
Give me some ink,
please.
Here you are.
Thank you.

D

Has Mary any paper?
No, she hasn't.
Pass her a piece of
paper, please.
All right.

TEXT

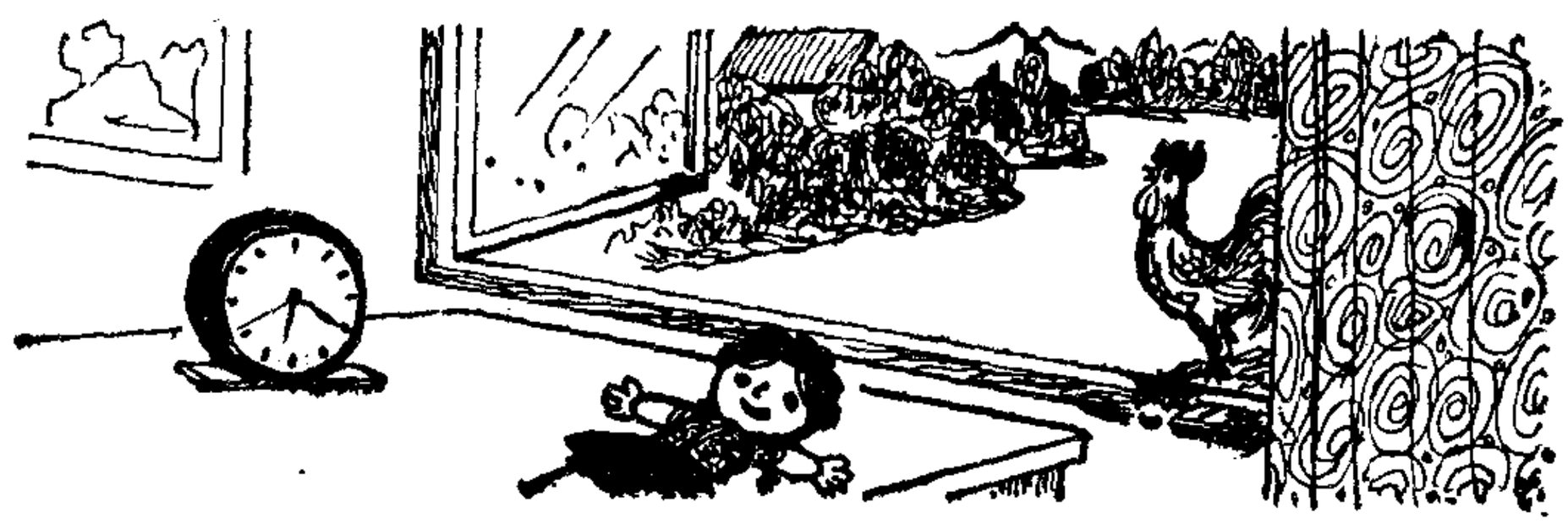
WHAT IS IT?

I have a good friend. It has a round face. On its face, it has three hands. One is short, the other two are long. It has no arms, but its

hands turn round and round. It has no feet or legs, but it can go all day and all night.

It has no eyes and no ears. It has no mouth, but it can talk. In the morning it can wake me up and tell me, "It's time to get up."

What is it?



(A CLOCK)

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

have [hæv, həv] *v.* 有
  has [hæz, həz] *v.* 有
  (只用于第三人称单数)
TV ['ti:'vi:] = television
  ['teli,viʒən] (tele-vision)
  n. 电视;电视机
set *n.* 装置,设备
  TV set 电视机
radio ['reidiəu] (ra-di-o) *n.*
  收音机
story ['stə:ri] *n.* 故事,小说
  story-book ['stə:ribuk] *n.*
    故事书
picture-book ['piktʃəbuk] *n.*
  图画书
ink *n.* 墨水
Mary ['mɛəri] 玛丽(女名)

paper ['peipə] (pa-per) *n.* 纸

piece[pi:s] *n.* 张(片,块,……)

a piece of

一张(片,块,……)

* * *

round *adj.* 圆的,圆形的

adv. 循环地,围绕地

its *pron.* 它的

one ... the other (two) ...

一(人或物)……另一(两)……

no *adj.* 没有

arm *n.* 手臂,胳膊

but [bʌt, bət] *conj.* 但是

foot [fut] *n.* 脚

feet (*pl.*)

leg *n.* 腿

can [kæn,kən] *v. aux.* 能

all *adj.* 所有的,全部的

night [nait] *n.* 夜晚

all day and all night

整日整夜

eye [ai] *n.* 眼睛

ear [iə] *n.* 耳朵

mouth [mauθ] *n.* 嘴

talk [tɔ:k] *v.* 说话,谈话

wake *v.* 醒

wake ... up 唤醒;弄醒

tell *v.* 告诉;讲述

It's time to get up. (是)该起床(的时候)了。

clock *n.* 时钟

GRAMMAR

动词 have (Verb *to have*)

1. I / You have, He / She / It has (not) ... We / You / They have (not) ...

2.

Have I ...? Yes, you have. No, you haven't.	Have you ...? Yes, I have. No, I haven't.	Has he(she, it)...? Yes, he(she, it)has. No, he(she, it)hasn't.
Have we ...? Yes, we(you)have. No,we(you)haven't.	Have you ...? Yes, we have. No, we haven't.	Have they...? Yes, they have. No, they haven't.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Compare:

[i:]	[ei]	[e]	[ei]	[s]	[θ]
[mi:]	[mei]	[et]	[eit]	[sin]	[θin]
[i:t]	[eit]	[tel]	[teil]	[sæŋk]	[θæŋk]
[wi:k]	[weik]	[wet]	[weit]	[pɑ:s]	[pɑ:θ]
[gri:d]	[greid]	[pen]	[pein]	[maus]	[mauθ]

2. Read aloud the following:

1) a pi(c)ture-book a bi(g) clock
   a goo(d) friend a roun(d) face

2) Have you a ↗TV set?
   ↘No, we ↘haven't. We have a ↘radio.
   Has ˈMary any ↗paper?
   ↘No, she ↘hasn't.
   ˈPass her a ˈpiece of ↘paper, please.

It has 'no ↘arms, but its 'hands 'turn 'round an (d) ↘round.

It has 'no ↗mouth, but i(t) can ↘talk.

It's 'time to 'get ↘up.

EXERCISES

1. Name the parts of the body:

2. A. Give the English for these:

1) 一张纸　　2) 一盘鸡肉　　3) 一杯茶

4) 一杯水　　5) 一盘鱼　　6) 一碗米饭

B. Give the Chinese for these:

1) a box of balls　　2) two boxes of glasses

3) a piece of meat　　4) eight pieces of bread

5) a glass of milk　　6) six bowls of rice

3. Fill in the blanks:

A. Model: I ____ a picture in ____ hand. ⟶

I have a picture in my hand.

1) Rose ____ a glass of milk in ____ hand.

2) He ___ not a story-book in ___ desk.

3) ___ you any ink on ___ desk?

4) We ___ a TV set in ___ room.

5) ___ they a radio in ___ room?

B. Model: There ___ some meat ___ the bowl. ⟶

There is some meat in the bowl.

1) ___ there any fish ___ the plate?

2) ___ there any trees ___ ___ ___ the house?

3) What ___ in the glasses? There ___ some tea ___ them.

4) ___ there a bike ___ the tree?

5) There ___ many students ___ the classroom.

4. Make sentences after the model:

Model: Mary and Joan, four, story-book ⟶

Mary and Joan have story-books.

Have Mary and Joan any story-books?

Yes, they have.

How many story-books have they?

They have four.

1) Tom, a picture-book

2) I, five, English story-book

3) a clock, three, hand

4) a goat, four, leg

5) Jack and Rose, a dog

5. Copy these:

ac us ho ka id it ng nk

ag co da ta ty tw vi vo

face head mouth nose eye

ear arm leg hand foot feet

Has Jack a story-book?

No, he hasn't.

He has some picture-books.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Excuse me. Have you got a pen?

Yes, here you are. (Sorry, I haven't.)

LESSON FIVE

The Fifth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the plural of these nouns:

clock	mouth	month	radio	shoe
set	night	plate	hand	head
bowl	arm	leg	eye	ear
baby	family	story	day	boy
bus	class	piece	horse	page
man	woman	foot	sheep	knife

2. Give the English for these:

1) 两袋大米	2) 九盒橡皮	3) 十五个男子
4) 三碗米饭	5) 十张红纸	6) 二十把小刀
7) 四条腿	8) 十一本故事书	9) 四十五分钟
10) 七杯茶	11) 十三个妇女	12) 五十页

3. Fill in the blanks with **a (an), some** or **any:**

   1) There is ____ piece of paper on the table.

   2) Have you ____ paper?

   3) Give me ____ ink, please.

   4) I haven't ____ picture-books, but I have ____ story-books.

5) There isn't ____ water in the cup.

6) Is there ____ egg in this bowl? No, there isn't____.

4. Make these sentences negative, then interrogative:

Model: There is some water in the cup. ⟶

There is not any water in the cup.

Is there any water in the cup?

1) There are five goats behind the trees.

2) There is some bread on the plate.

3) There are three knives in the pencil-box.

4) There is some chicken in this bowl.

5) There is some rice in that one.

5. Fill in the blanks:

1) ____ (有) a picture-book on the desk.

2) Tom ____ (有) a story-book.

3) ____ (有) you a TV set?

4) How many radios ____ (有) in the room?

5) How many hands ____ (有) it?

6) ____ (有) any people in this picture?

No, ____ (没有) any.

6. Fill in the blanks with the proper pronouns:

1) That's my bag. Give ____ my bag, please.

2) Give Tom this book. Give ____ that one, too.

3) Pass Joan that pen. Pass ____ this pencil, too.

4) Give Jack and Tom some apples. Give ____ some oranges, too.

5) We haven't any paper. Please give ____ some.

7. Answer these questions:

1) Have you any brothers? How many brothers have you?

2) Have you a sister?

3) Has your mother a brother? Has she a sister?

4) Has your father any sisters? How many has he?

5) Have you a radio in your home?

6) Have you a TV set in your home, too?

7) Has your father a bike? Have you a bike, too?

A SONG

Days of the Week

C $\frac{3}{4}$

3	1	-	1	2	3	4	2	-
Sun-	day		la-	la-	la,	Mon-	day	
2	3	4	5	3	-	5	6	7
la-	la-	la,	Tues-	day		la-	la-	la,
i	6	-	6	-	0	2	5	0
Wednes-	day,					Thurs-	day	
i	7	6	5	3	-	5	4	3
la-	la-	la,	Fri-	day		la-	la-	la,
6 · 4	2	-	4	3	2	1	-	-
Sat-ur-	day,		That	makes	a	week.		

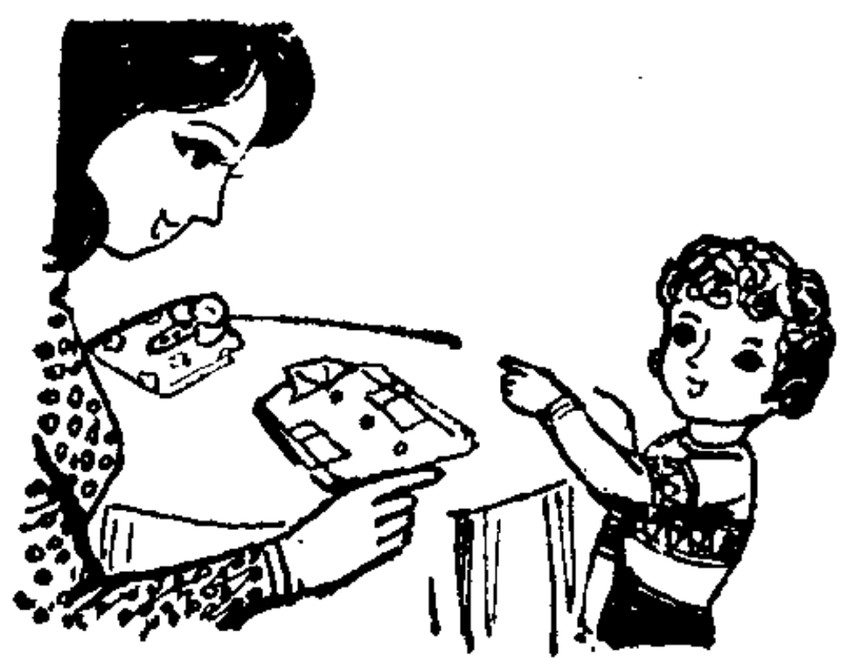
LESSON SIX

The Sixth Lesson

DRILLS

A

Is this new shirt mine?
No. It's your father's.
Oh, it's his.
Is that one mine?
Yes, that's yours.



B

Whose jacket is this?
It's Kate's.
Oh, it's hers.
Which one is yours?
The white one.

C

Is this room yours?
No. It's Mike and John's.
Oh, it's theirs.
Which one is yours?
The next one is ours.

D

Are these cups yours?
Only some of them.
Which ones are yours?
The blue ones are ours.

DIALOGUE

TWO YOUNG PIONEERS

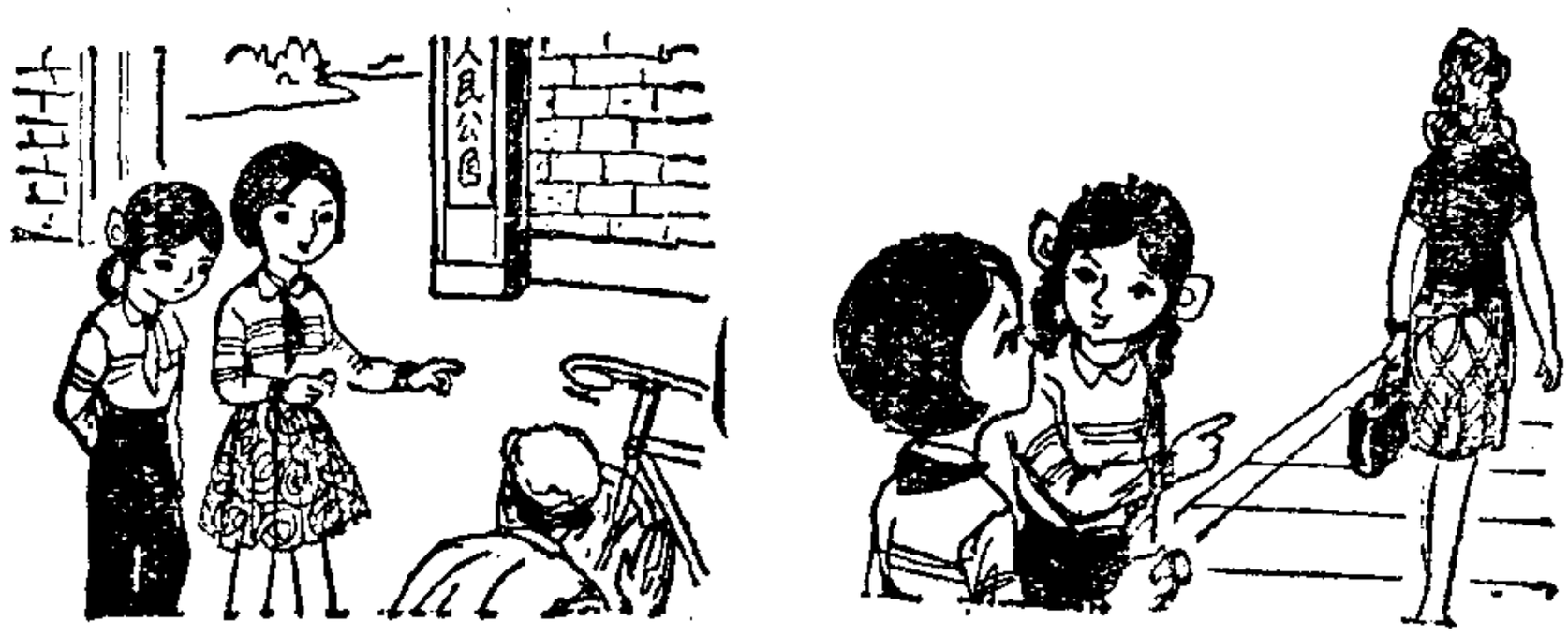
Liu: Look, Zhang Ling. What's that? It's a watch, isn't it?
Zhang: Yes. What a nice watch!
Liu: It's quite new!
Zhang: Look, there's a man over there. Perhaps it's his.

Liu: Let's go and ask him.

Zhang: All right.

Liu: Excuse me, comrade. Is this watch yours?

Man: No, it's not mine.



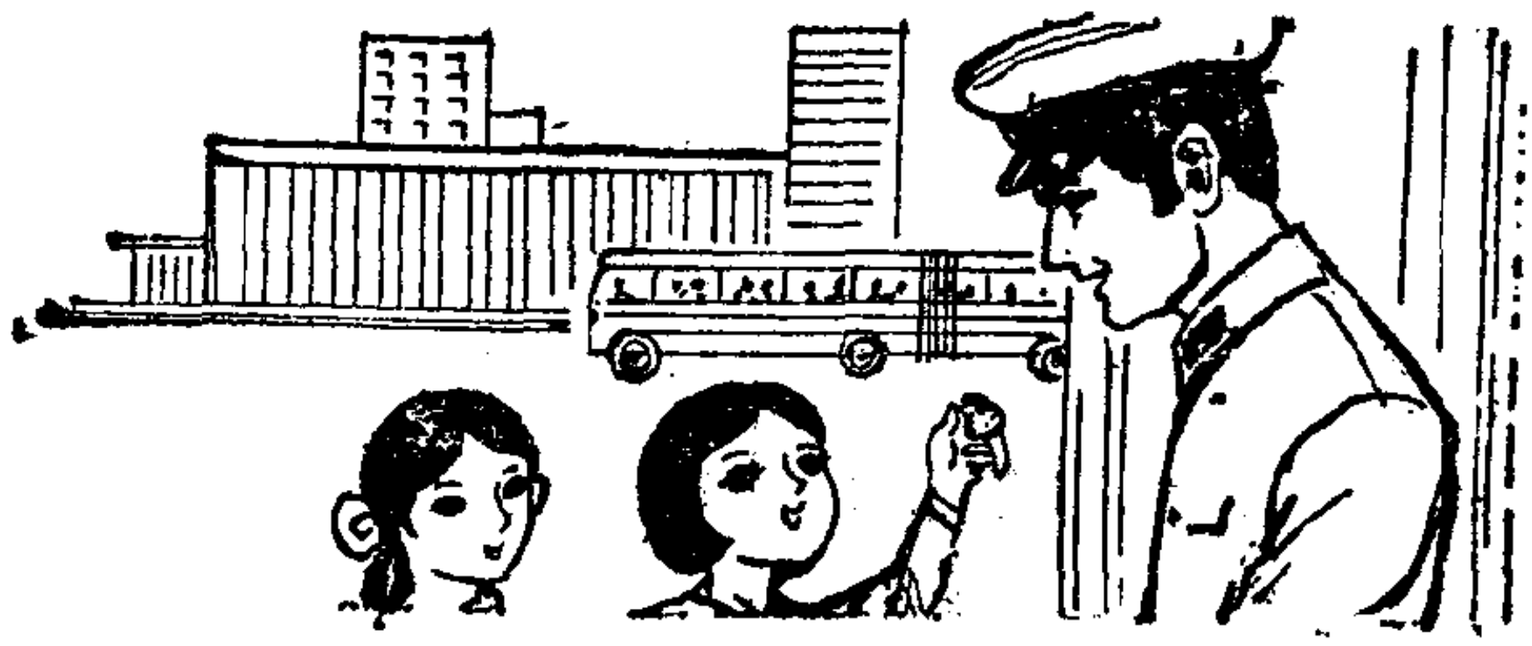
(They see a woman nearby.)

Liu: Excuse me, is this watch yours?

Woman: No, it isn't.

Zhang: Let's go and give it to the policeman.

Liu: OK.



(They go to a policeman nearby.)

Zhang: Excuse me.

Policeman: Yes? Can I help you?

Liu: Here's a watch. We can't find the owner. Can you find him and give it to him?

Policeman: Certainly. Thank you. You're good Young Pioneers.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

shirt *n.* (男式)衬衫

mine *pron.* 我的

yours [jɔ:z] *pron.* 你的;你们的

jacket ['dʒækit] (jack-et) *n.* 上衣

hers [hə:z] *pron.* 她的

which [witʃ] *adj.* & *pron.* 哪一个,哪些

John [dʒɔn] 约翰(男名)

theirs [ðɛəz] *pron.* 他(她)们的;它们的

next *adj.* 下一个, 紧接(后面)的;其次

ours ['auəz] *pron.* 我们的

* * *

watch [wɔtʃ] *n.* 手表

what *adj.* (用于感叹句中)多么

What a nice watch! 多么好看的一块手表啊!

quite [kwait] *adv.* 很,十分

perhaps[pə'hæps] (per-haps) *adv.* 也许,可能

ask [ɑ:sk] *v.* 问;请

excuse [iks'kju:z] (ex-cuse) *v.* 原谅

Excuse me. 对不起。(请原谅;打扰你了。)

comrade ['kɔmrid] (com rade) *n.* 同志

nearby ['niəbai] (near-by) *adj.* 附近的 *adv.* 附近

policeman [pə'li:smən]

(police-man) *n.* 警察

policemen [pə'li:smən] (*pl.*)

OK(O. K.) ['əu 'kei] *adv.* 对;好;可以

help *v.* 帮助,帮忙

Can I help you? 要我帮忙吗?(我能帮你(们)什么忙?)

Here's a . ... 这儿有……

can't [kɑ:nt] = cannot ['kænɔt] 不能

find [faind] *v.* 找到;发现

owner ['əunə] (own-er) *n.* 物主,所有人

certainly ['sə:tnli] (cer-tain-ly) *adv.* 当然,当然可以

GRAMMAR

人称代词和物主代词(Personal and Possessive Pronouns)

人称代词	主格	I	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
	宾格	me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them
物主代词	形容词性	my	your	his	her	its	our	your	their
	名词性	mine	yours	his	hers	its	ours	yours	theirs

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words:

ea	[i:]	tea	read	meat	seat
	[e]	head	bread	ready	
ow	[əu]	snow	bowl	owner	yellow
	[au]	cow	how	now	down
ou	[au]	round	mouth	house	trousers
ear	[iə]	ear	near		

2. Read aloud the following:

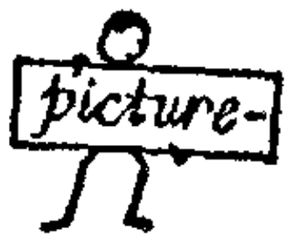
1) an ol(d) shirt — the nex(t) door
an English book — the re(d) coat
an orange jacket — the bla(ck) pen

2) Is 'this 'room ↗yours?
↘No, it's 'Mike an(d) ↘John's.
↘Oh, it's ↘theirs.
'Which one is ↘yours?
The ↘next one is.
It's a ↘watch, ↘isn't it?
'What a ↘nice watch!
Per'haps it's ↘his.
Let's 'go and ↘ask him.

EXERCISES

1. Make new words from the following:

Model: class + room = classroom



2. Make dialogues after the model:

Model: this jacket, Mary, the blue one ⟶

This jacket is Mary's.

Is that jacket yours?

No, it isn't.

Which one is yours?

The blue one is mine.

1) this shirt, Tom, the white one

2) this watch, hers, the big one

3) this room, Wei Fang and Liu Ying, the next one

4) these glasses, theirs, the green ones

5) these story-books, his, the ones on the desk

3. Fill in the blanks with the proper pronouns:

1) Give ____ a book, please. (he, him, his)

Which one is ____?

The green one is ____.

2) Give ____ a glass of milk, please. (she, her, hers)

Which glass is ____?

The blue one is ____.

3) Pass ____ a cup of water, please. (I, me, my, mine)

Which cup is yours?

The white one is ____.

4) Give ____ their picture-books, please.

(they, them, their, theirs)

Which ones are ____?

The ones on the bed are ____.

5) Pass ____ the story-books, please. (we, us, our, ours)

Which ones are yours?

The ones in the box are ____.

4. Give the English for these:

1) —瞧！课桌底下是什么东西？

—是支钢笔。是你的吗？

—不是。

—是谁的呢？

—可能是李平的。

2) —同志，对不起，这件上衣是你的吗？

—不，这不是我的。谢谢你。

—我们去交给警察吧。

3) —哪个碗是你的？

—白的是我的。

5. Copy these:

mine yours his hers ours theirs

Are these cups yours?

Only some of them.

Which ones are yours?

The blue ones are ours.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Is it time for class?

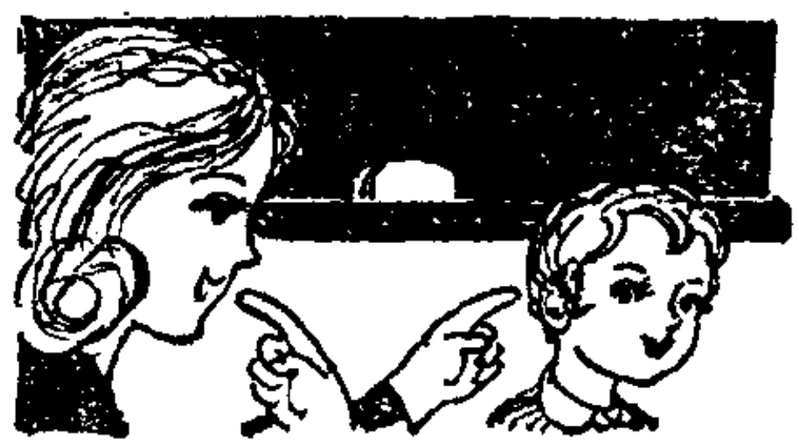
Yes. Let's hurry.

LESSON SEVEN

The Seventh Lesson

DRILLS

A



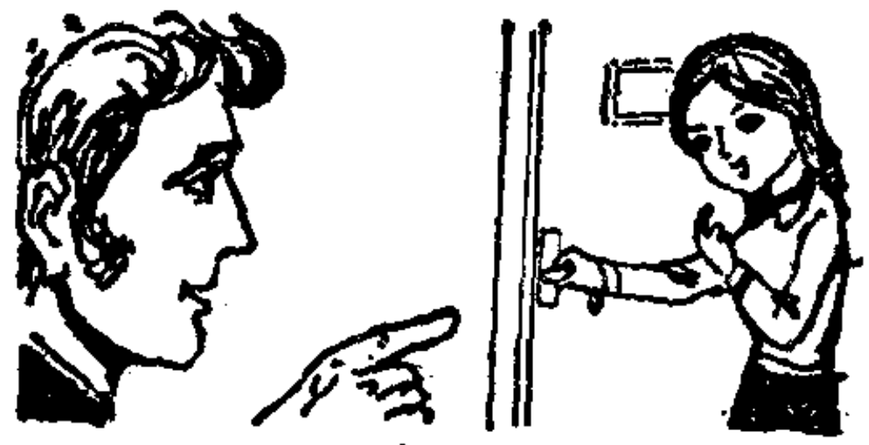
I'm talking.
You aren't talking.
You're listening to me.

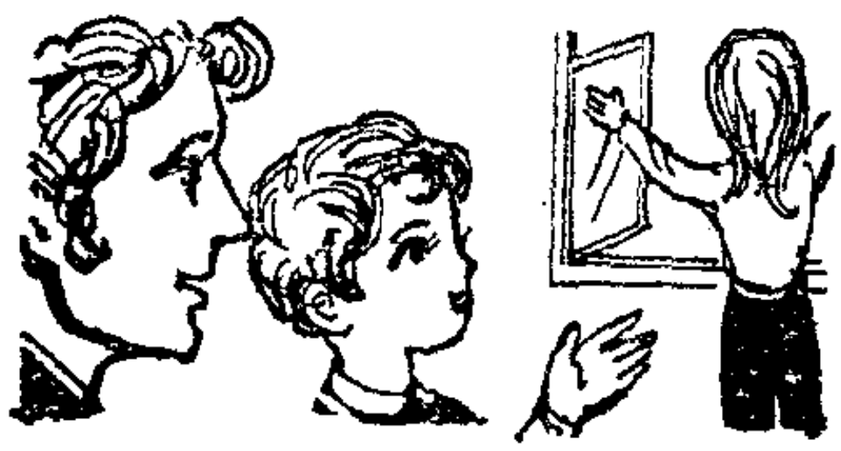
We're reading now.
Tom and Mike aren't reading.
They're doing exercises.

Rose is writing.
Jack isn't writing.
He's looking out of the window.

B

Close the door please,
Alice.
What are you doing,
Alice?
I'm closing the door.

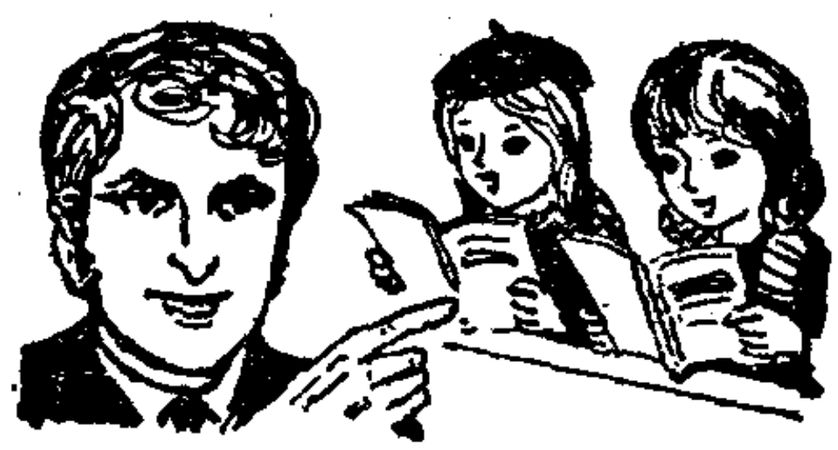




Open the window please,
Alice!
What's she doing, Peter?
She's opening the window.

C

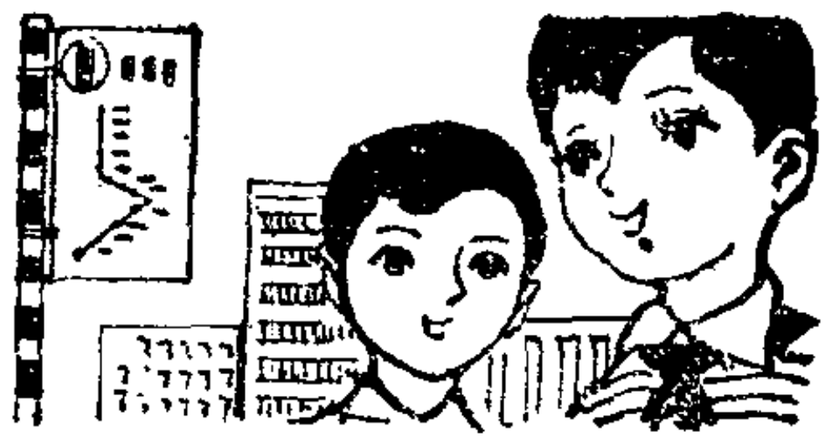
Read the text please,
Joan and Rose.
What are they doing?
They're reading the
text.



Write down the new words, please.
What are you doing?
We're writing down the new words.

TEXT

ON A BUS



It is Sunday today. Wang Lin and Li Ping are going to the zoo. They are waiting for a bus.

A red bus is stopping at the bus stop. Wang Lin and Li Ping are getting on the bus.

"Here's a seat for you, Wang Lin."

"No, thank you. There's another seat. I can sit over there."

The bus is coming to the next stop. Now, an old woman is getting on the bus. Wang Lin and Li Ping both stand up. Li Ping is saying:

"Here's a seat for you, Granny. Please sit here."

Wang Lin is also saying:

"Please come here and have my seat, Granny."

"Mine is near the door. So take this seat, please, Granny."

"Thank you very much. It's very nice of you."

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

listen ['lisn] (lis-ten) *v.* 听
listen to 听
exercise ['eksəsaiz] (exer-cise) *n.* 练习
out of ['aut əv] *prep.* 向……外
Alice ['ælis] 艾丽斯(女名)
Peter ['pi:tə] (Pe-ter) 彼得(男名)
text *n.* 课文;课本
write down 写下,记下
word [wə:d] *n.* 词,单词

* * *

Sunday ['sʌndi] (Sun-day) *n.* 星期日
zoo *n.* 动物园
wait [weit] *v.* 等,等候
wait for 等候
stop *v.* 停止,阻止
n. 停车站
bus stop 公共汽车站
get on 上(车)
another [ə'nʌðə] (an-other) *adj.* & *pron.* 再一(个,……),又一(个,……)
both [bəuθ] *adv.* & *pron.* 两个(人,……)都
say [sei] *v.* 说,讲
granny ['græni] (gran-ny) *n.* 老奶奶;祖母,外祖母
also ['ɔ:lsəu] *adv.* 也
have (one's) seat 坐(某人的)

座位
so *conj.* 因此
take *v.* 拿,取;就(座等)
take this seat 坐这个座位
very ['veri] *adv.* 很
much *adv.* 很,非常
very much 非常
It's very nice of you!
你(你们)真太好了!

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Compare:

[ɑ:]	[ai]	[ei]	[ai]	[w]	[v]
[ɑ:m]	[aim]	[sei]	[sai]	[wi:]	[vi:]
[lɑ:k]	[laik]	[meik]	[maik]	[wet]	[vet]
[gɑ:d]	[gaid]	[weit]	[wait]	[weit]	[veig]
[mɑ:tʃ]	[main]	[teim]	[taim]	[wə:d]	[və:b]

2. Read aloud the following:

'Rea(d) the ↘text.
'Wri(te) 'down the ↘words.
'Si(t) ↘down. 'Si(t) ↗down, please.
'Stand ↘up. 'Stand ↗up, please.
'Get ↘on. 'Get ↗on, please.
↘Thank you. ↗ Thank you.
'Rose is ↘writing.
'Mike ↘isn't writing.
'What's he ↘doing?
He's 'looking 'out of the ↘window.

EXERCISES

1. Add-ing to the following words:

   1) listen — listening

   pass wait tell stand

   say play study hurry

   2) write — writing

   give have wake take come

   3) stop — stopping

   sit get begin

2. Say how many syllables each of the following words has:

   Model: hundred['hʌndrəd] —— two

   1) certainly ['sə:tnli] 2) exercise ['eksəsaiz]

   3) perhaps [pə'hæps] 4) beside [bi'said]

   5) people ['pi:pl] 6) school [sku:l]

   7) twelve [twelv] 8) granny ['græni]

   9) eleven [i'levn] 10) evening ['i:vniŋ]

3. Make sentences with the given words:

   A. Model: the young man, sit ⟶

   The young man is sitting.

   1) Alice, wait for, a bus

   2) the Young Pioneers, work, hard

   3) I, write, now

   4) grandpa and grandma, listen to, the radio

   B. Model: Liu Ying, ask, the policeman ⟶

Liu Ying isn't asking the policeman.

1) Wang Lin and Li Ping, go home

2) Peter, have, supper, now

3) the woman, talk to, the doctor

4) the bus, come

4. Talk about the pictures:

Model: Picture 1

What's Alice doing?

She's doing her homework.

5. Copy these:

listen talk look read write do

wait stop say take sit stand

We're reading now.

Tom and Mike aren't reading.

They're doing exercises.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What's the weather like today?

It's fine (cloudy, windy, raining).

A RHYME

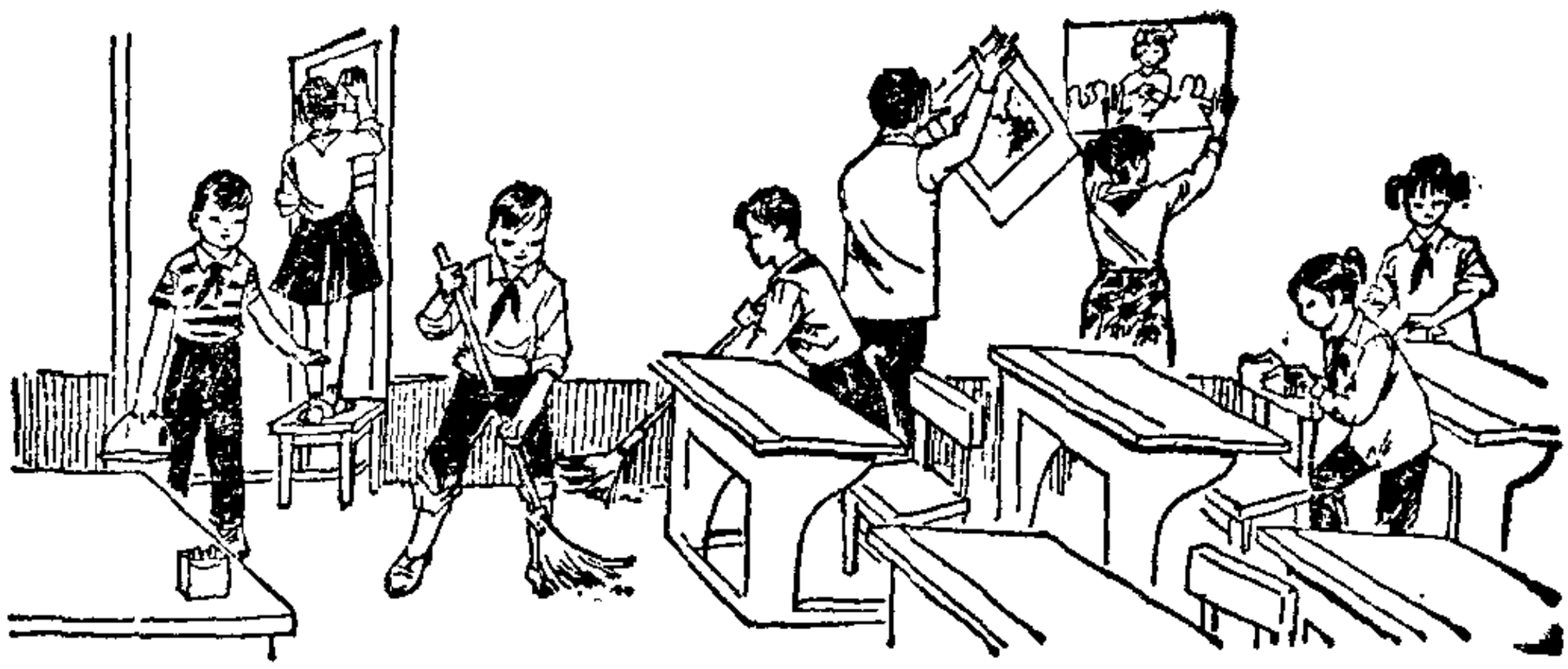
BE POLITE

Let us try to be polite
In everything we say and do
Remember it is always right
To say "Please" and "Thank you".

LESSON EIGHT

The Eighth Lesson

DRILLS



A

Are you cleaning your classroom?

Yes, we are.

Are they cleaning their classroom?

No, they aren't.

They're cleaning the dining-room.

B

Is Zhang Hong carrying water?

Yes, he is.

Is Liu Ying cleaning the window?

No, she isn't. She's cleaning the door.

C

Who's taking down the old pictures?
Our teacher is.
Who's putting up the new ones?
Our monitor is.

D

Who's sweeping the floor?
Some of the boys are.
Who's cleaning the desks and chairs?
Some of the girls are.

TEXT

PLANTING TREES

It is March now. Spring is here. It is time to plant trees.

Look! There is a little child in front of the house. What is she doing? She is watering some flowers. Who are the man and the woman beside the house? They are the girl's parents. What are they doing? They are planting trees.

Look at the children near the river. They are Young Pioneers. Are they playing or working? They are working. They are planting apple trees. Some are digging, some are planting. Some are carrying water, others are watering the trees. All of the children are busy.

On the hill there are also a lot of people. What are they doing? They are planting trees, too. Look at all the young trees on the hill.

How hard all these people are working! They are helping to make our country beautiful.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

clean *v.*
擦干净，把……弄干净

dining-room ['dainiŋrum] (dining-room) *n.*
餐室，食堂

carry ['kæri] (car-ry) *v.*
运送；手提，肩挑

take down 拿下

put [put] *v.* 放
put up 挂起；张贴

monitor ['mɔnitə] (mon-i-tor) *n.* 班长

sweep *v.* 扫,扫除

floor [flɔ:] *n.* (室内)地;地板

* * *

plant [plɑ:nt] *v.* 种植

March *n.* 三月

spring *n.* 春天,春季

child [tʃaild] *n.* 小孩

children ['tʃildrən] (*pl.*)

water *v.* 浇水,灌溉

parent ['pɛərənt] *n.* 父(母)亲

river ['rivə] (riv-er) *n.* 江,河

dig *v.* 挖,掘

some ... others ... 一些(人,物)……,其他(人,物)……

busy ['bizi] *adj.* 忙的;繁忙的

all *pron.* 全部,全体

hill *n.* 小山

lot *n.* 许多

a lot of [ə 'lɔt əv] 许多

How hard all these people are working! 所有这些人干得多起劲啊!

country ['kʌntri](coun-try) *n.* 国家

beautiful['bju:təful] (beau-ti-ful)*adj.* 美丽的,优美的

make our country beautiful 使我们国家变得美丽

GRAMMAR

现在进行时 (The Present Continuous Tense)

1. 现在进行时表示现在正在进行或发生的动作。如:

We are reading the text now.

They are waiting for a bus.

也可以表示当前一段时期内的活动或现阶段正在进行的动

作。如:

We are working in a factory these days.

2. 现在进行时是由 am (is, are) + 动词的现在分词构成的。其肯定、否定和疑问式如下:

I am / You are / He, She, It is } (not) working.

We / You / They } are (not) working.

Am I working? Yes, you are. No, you aren't.	Are you working? Yes, I am. No, I'm not.	Is he(she,it) working? Yes, he(she,it) is. No, he(she,it) isn't.
Are we working? Yes, we(you) are. No, we(you)aren't.	Are you working? Yes, we are. No, we aren't.	Are they working? Yes, they are. No, they aren't.

3. 现在分词的构成:

构成方法	原形	现在分词
一般在动词原形末尾加-ing	go ask play	going asking playing
以不发音字母 e 结尾的动词,先去掉 e, 再加 -ing	write close take	writing closing taking

以重读闭音节结尾的动词，如末尾只有一个辅音字母，应先双写这一字母，再加 -ing	dig put begin	digging putting beginning

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words:

a[æ]	e[e]	i,y[i]	o[ɔ]	u[ʌ]
dad	get	dig	not	up
fat	red	milk	stop	mum
back	then	thin	long	but
stand	help	fish	clock	much

a[ei]	e[i:]	i,y[ai]	o[əu]	u[ju:] [u:]
take	me	like	so	student
name	we	rice	go	excuse
plate	she	my	home	blue
grade	these	why	close	ruler

2. Read aloud the following:

1) ta(ke) down the ol(d) pi(c)tures
put u(p) the new ones
swee(p) the floor
clean the desks an(d) chairs

2) Are they 'cleaning the ↗classroom?

↘No, they ↘aren't.

They're cleaning the ↘dining-room.

'Who's 'taking 'down the 'ol(d) ↘pi(c)tures?

Our ↘teacher is.

'What are they ↘doing?

They are 'planting ↘trees.

'Some are 'carrying ↘water, 'others are 'watering the ↘trees.

They are 'helping to 'make our 'country ↘beautiful.

EXERCISES

1. Add -ing to these words:

clean	sweep	help	hurry	carry
plant	water	make	put	dig

2. Turn these into questions and then give affirmative or negative answers:

Model: She is watering flowers. ⟶

Who is watering flowers?

Is she watering flowers?

Yes, she is. (No, she isn't.)

1) Wei Fang is waiting for her sister.

2) The Young Pioneers are working near the river.

3) Liu Ying is listening to the teacher.

4) The students in Grade Two are playing basketball.

5) Peter is doing his homework.

6) The boys are planting trees.

3. Talk about the picture:

4. Read the text and then answer these questions:

1) Who's in front of the house?

2) What's the child doing?

3) Who are the man and the woman beside the house?

4) Are they watering the flowers, too?

5) What are the Young Pioneers near the river doing?

6) Are they planting orange trees?

7) What are the people on the hill doing?

8) Are all these people working hard? Why?

5. Copy these:

clean sweep carry put dig

plant water make help

Is Zhang Hong carrying water?

Yes, he is.

Who's sweeping the floor?

Some of the boys are.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

That's all for today. See you later.

See you later (tomorrow).

LESSON NINE

The Ninth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Add -ing to the following words:

   help sweep ask talk work look wait plant find read stand pass guess turn clean open listen tell water say play study carry hurry do go make take write give have close get stop put dig sit begin

2. Give the English for these:

   1) 翻到 48 页　2) 瞧这些孩子　3) 听老师讲
   4) 等待他们　5) 上公共汽车　6) 上学
   7) 取下旧地图　8) 挂上新画　9) 往窗外看

3. Fill in the blanks with **on, for, of, to, at, up** or **down:**

   1) He is listening ____ his parents now.
   2) Is Li Ping putting ____ a map of China on the wall?
   3) Look ____ the old man over there. Is he waiting ____ a bus?
   4) I get ____ at 6:30 in the morning.
   5) Who is looking out ____ the window?
   6) Please write ____ these new words.

7) Tom is standing ____ the bus stop.

8) Who is getting ____ the bus?

9) Is there any seat ____ me?

10) It's very nice ____ you.

4. Fill in the blanks with **a, an, the, some** or **any**:

1) The room has two windows and one door. ____ windows are green and ____ door is green, too.

2) There are two bags in the classroom. One is red and ____ other is black. ____ red one is Li Ping's. ____ black one is mine.

3) Look at ____ picture on ____ blackboard. There is ____ table in it. On ____ table there are three bowls and one plate. There is ____ rice in the bowls, but there isn't ____ rice on ____ plate.

4) There are 24 hours in ____ day. There are sixty minutes in ____ hour.

5) There is ____ old woman and ____ young girl over there. ____ old woman is Wang Lin's grandma, and ____ young girl is his sister.

5. Turn these into questions:

Model: Mary has a red bag. (who) ⟶

Who has a red bag?

Has Mary a red bag?

1) The colour TV set is my grandpa's. (which)

2) A bee has six legs. (how many)

3) Alice is sitting near the window. (who)

4) This is Mike and Tom's room. (whose)

5) Li Ping and Wang Lin are cleaning the desks.(what)

6) The shoes under the table are Kate's. (which)

6. Talk about the pictures:

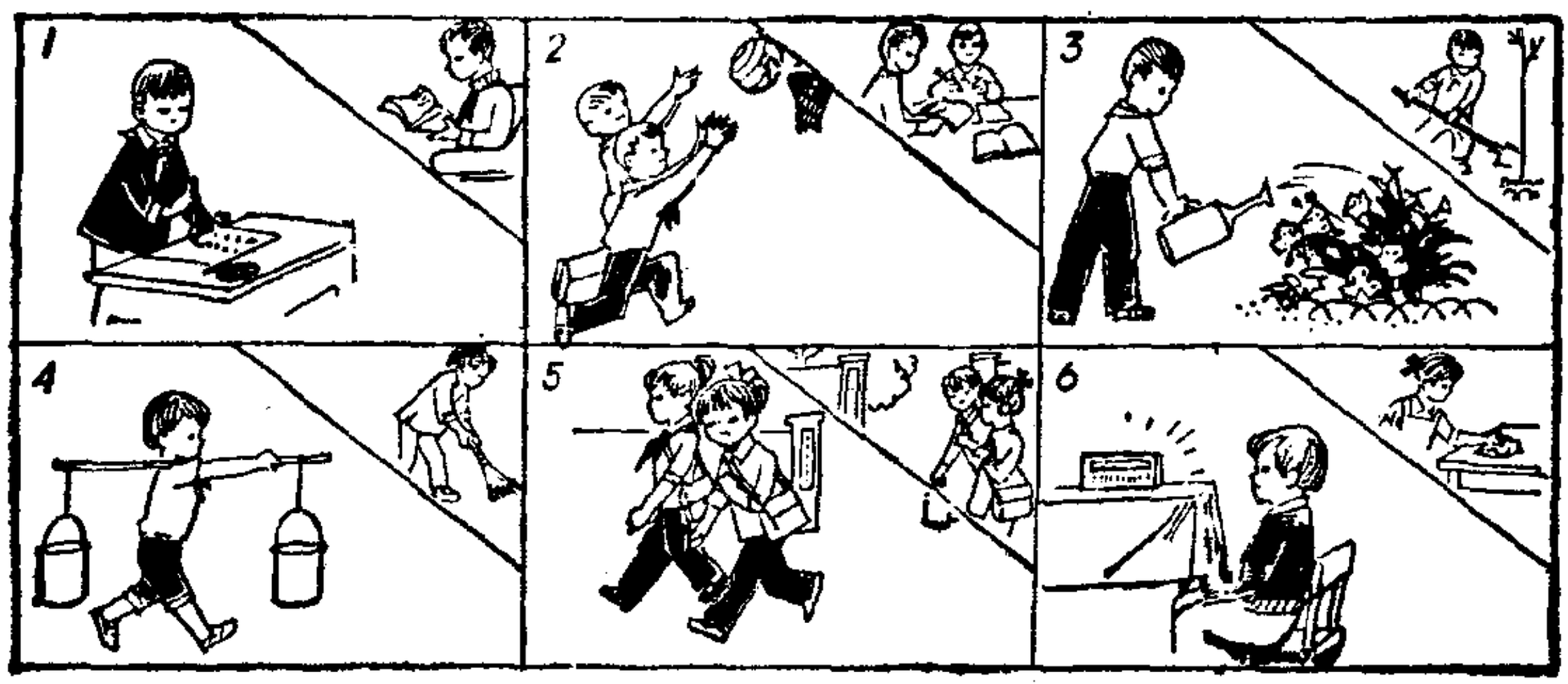
Model: Picture 1

Is the boy reading?

No, he isn't.

What's he doing?

He's writing.



7. Give the English for these:

1) 在那条河附近有十七个少先队员。他们在栽树。

2) 我有一本书，书里有三幅图画，我非常喜欢这些图画。

3) ——这是谁的尺子？是你的吗？

——不是我的，是她的。

4) ——玻璃杯里有水吗？

——有一些。

——请把那杯水递给我吧。

A SONG

This Is the Way

G $\frac{2}{4}$

1	1	1	1 · 3	5 · 3		1	
This	is	the	way we	wash	our	face,	
This	is	the	way we	clean	our	teeth,	
This	is	the	way we	eat	break-	fast,	
This	is	the	way we	sweep	the	floor,	
This	is	the	way we	go	to	bed,	
2 · 2			2	7 · 6		5	
wash	our		face,	wash	our	face.	
clean	our		teeth,	clean	our	teeth.	
eat	break-		fast,	eat	break-	fast.	
sweep	the		floor,	sweep	the	floor.	
go	to		bed,	go	to	bed.	
1	1	1	1 · 3	5 · 3		1 · 1	
This	is	the	way we	wash	our	face	at
This	is	the	way we	clean	our	teeth	at
This	is	the	way we	eat	break-	fast	at
This	is	the	way we	sweep	the	floor	at
This	is	the	way we	go	to	bed	at
2	2	2	5 6 7	1		1	
seven	o' clock	in	the	morn-		ing.	
seven	o' clock	in	the	morn-		ing.	
eight	o' clock	in	the	morn-		ing.	
ten	o' clock	in	the	morn-		ing.	
nine	o' clock	in	the	eve-		ning.	

LESSON TEN

The Tenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

What's the girl doing?
She's reading in bed.
What's her mother saying to her?
She's saying: "Don't read in bed."

don't [dəunt] = do not

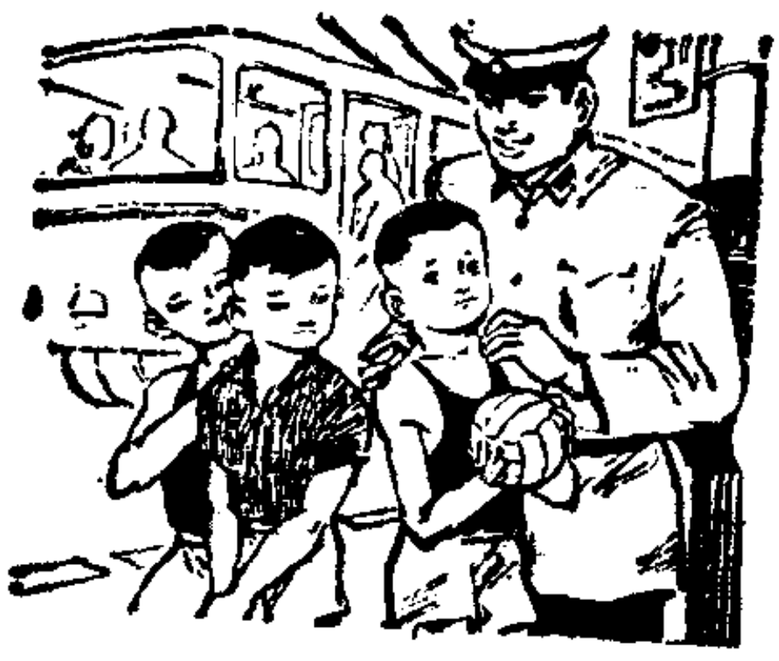
B

What's the boy doing?
He's drawing a plane on the wall.
What's his sister saying to him?
She's saying: "Don't draw on the wall."

C

Where are the children walking?
They're walking in the tomato field.
What's the old peasant saying to them?
He's saying: "Don't walk in the tomato field."

D



Where are the boys playing?
They're playing in the street.
What's the policeman saying to them?
He's saying: "Don't play in the street."

TEXT

IN A PARK

It is Saturday morning. The sun is shin-

ing. A lot of boys and girls are playing in the park. They are having a good time. Some are singing and dancing under a big tree. Some are drawing by the lake. Others are climbing the hill.

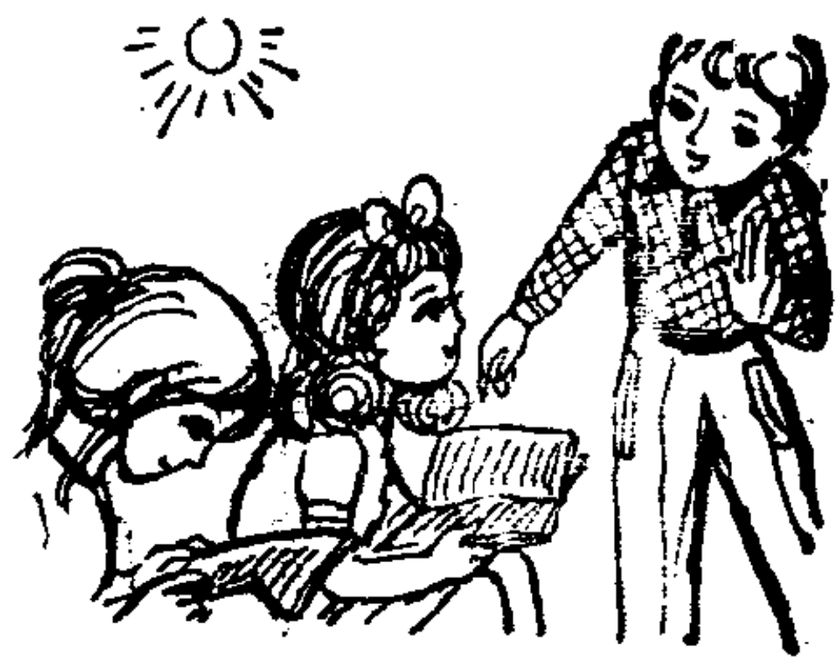
What are Betty and Mary doing?

Betty: Mary, let's sit here and read this picture-book.

Mary: All right. What an interesting book!

Betty: Yes. Look at this picture. There are all kinds of birds in it. Aren't they beautiful?

Mike: Hey, you two! Don't read in the sun. It's too bright. It's bad for your eyes.



Betty: You're right. Thank you, Mike.

Mary: Then let's go and sit there under the tree.

Betty: OK.

Kate: Excuse me. Where's Joan?

Mary: Look, there she is. She's climbing the hill with Rose.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

do [du:, du] *v. aux.* (构成疑问句及否定句用的助动词,无词义)

does [dʌz, dəz] *v. aux.* (只用于第三人称单数)

draw [drɔ:] *v.* 画,绘制

walk *v.* 走;散步

tomato [tə'mɑ:təu] (to-ma-to) *n.* 西红柿

field [fi:ld] *n.* 地,田地

peasant ['pezənt] *n.* 农民

street *n.* 街道

* * *

park *n.* 公园

Saturday ['sætədi] (Satur-day) *n.* 星期六

sun *n.* 太阳

shine *v.* 照耀;发光

have a good time 玩得很高兴;过得很愉快

sing *v.* 唱,演唱

dance [da:ns] *v.* 跳舞
by *prep.* 在……旁,靠近
lake *n.* 湖
climb [klaim] *v.* 爬;攀登
Betty ['beti] (Bet-ty)
贝蒂(女名)
interesting ['intristiŋ]
(in-terest-ing) *adj.*
有趣味的,引起兴趣的
kind [kaind] *n.* 种类
all kinds of 各种各样的
bird *n.* 鸟,禽类
hey [hei] *interj.* 嗨
too *adv.* 太
bright [brait] *adj.*
明亮的;耀眼的
bad *adj.* 坏的;(食物等)
腐败的
It's bad for your eyes.
对(你们的)眼睛有害。
with [wið] *prep.*
和……在一起

GRAMMAR

名词的复数形式 (The Plural Number of Nouns) (II)

可数名词的复数形式有以下几种情况:

1. 规则变化

构成方法	单数	复数
一般的名词在词尾加 -s:	book	books
在清辅音后读[s]	ball	balls
在浊辅音及元音后读[z]	ear	ears
在 t 后与 t 一起读[ts]	text	texts
在 d 后与 d 一起读[dz]	word	words
以辅音字母加y结尾的名词,先把 y 变 i,再加-es, 读[z]	story country	stories countries

在 s, x, ch, sh 结尾的名词后加 -es, 读 [iz]	bus box watch	buses boxes watches
在 ce, se, ge 结尾的名词后加 -s, 也读 [iz]	orange	oranges
以 o 结尾的名词后加 -es 或加 -s, 都读[z]	tomato radio	tomatoes radios
以 f 或 fe 结尾的名词, 把 f 或 fe 变为 -ves, 读[vz]	knife	knives

2. 不规则变化

单　　数	复　　数
man	men
woman	women
child	children
foot	feet

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Compare:

[æ]	[ʌ]	[ɑ:]	[s]	[ʃ]
[mætʃ]	[mʌtʃ]	[mɑ:tʃ]	[si:]	[ʃi:]
[kæp]	[kʌp]	[kɑ:p]	[sain]	[ʃain]
[bæk]	[bʌt]	[bɑ:k]	[sɔ:t]	[ʃɔ:t]
[hæd]	[hʌt]	[hɑ:d]	[æs]	[æʃ]

'2. Read aloud the following:

'Don' (t) 'read in ↘bed.

'Don' (t) 'draw on the ↘wall.

'Don' t 'walk in the to'mato ↘field.

'Don' (t) 'play in the ↘street.

They are having a 'goo(d) ↘time.

↗Mary, 'let's 'sit ↗here an(d) 'rea(d) 'this ↘pi(c)ture-book.

'What an ↘interesting book!

It's 'ba(d) for your ↘eyes.

EXERCISES

1. Give the plural of these nouns:

arm	hill	owner	river	monitor
text	plate	street	jacket	peasant
bird	word	kind	field	comrade
park	clock	lake	mouth	month
piece	watch	house	tomato	exercise
zoo	radio	day	story	country

2. Give the English for these:

1) 在墙上	2) 在街上	3) 在山上
4) 在画上	5) 在湖里	6) 在田间
7) 在公园	8) 在食堂	9) 在阳光下
10) 在房子旁边	11) 在河边	12) 在公共汽车站

3. Make sentences after the model:

Model: He's sitting on the desk. (chair)⟶

Don't sit on the desk.

Sit on the chair, please.

1) She's speaking Chinese. (English)

2) He's climbing the tree. (the hill)

3) She's telling us an English story. (a Chinese story)

4) He's drawing on the wall. (a piece of paper)

5) They're going to the park. (the zoo)

4. Talk about the pictures:

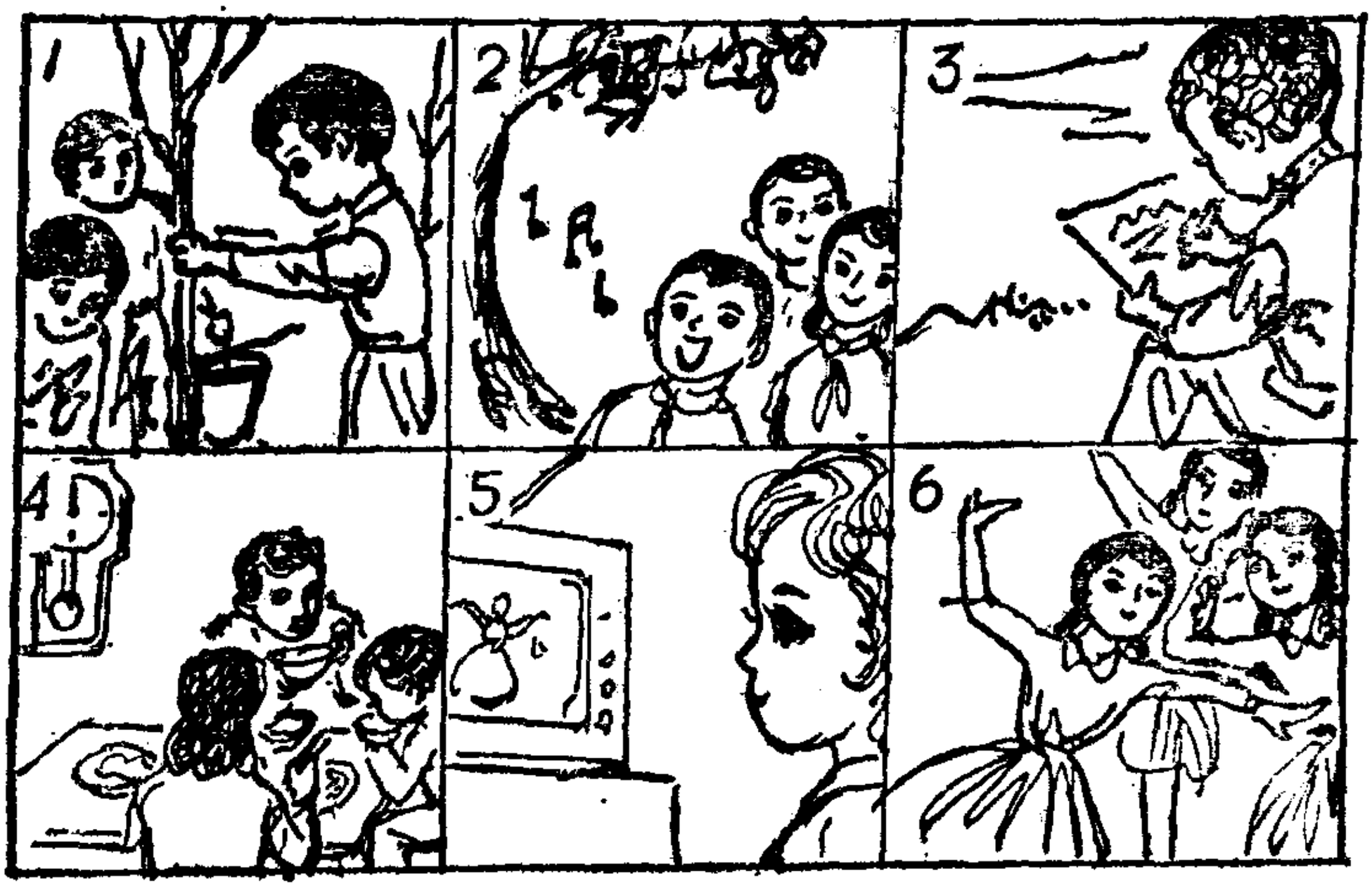
Model: Picture 1

What are the boys doing?

They're planting trees.

Where are they planting trees?

On the hill.



5. Read the text and then answer these questions:

1) Where are the boys and girls playing?

2) Are they all singing and dancing?

3) Where are some of the students drawing?

4) What are Betty and Mary doing?

5) Who are reading a picture-book in the sun?

6) Who's climbing the hill with Rose?

7) Are they all having a good time?

6. Copy these:

draw sing dance climb shine

in bed on the wall in the fields

in the street in the park

by the lake

What's her mother saying to her?

She's saying: "Don't read in bed."

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What's the English for "衬衫"?
It's "shirt".
What's the Chinese for "shirt"?
It's "衬衫".

A RHYME

MAY

In the merry month of May,
All the little birds are gay.
They all hop and sing and say:
"Winter days are far away,
Welcome, welcome, merry May!"

In the merry month of May,
All the Pioneers are gay.
They all dance and sing and say:
"Winter days are far away,
Welcome, welcome, First of May!"

LESSON ELEVEN

The Eleventh Lesson

DRILLS

A

I'm doing my homework now.

I do my homework every day.

They're playing football now.

They play football every Tuesday.

Sometimes they play on Friday.

B

You speak Russian.

I don't speak Russian.

I speak Chinese.

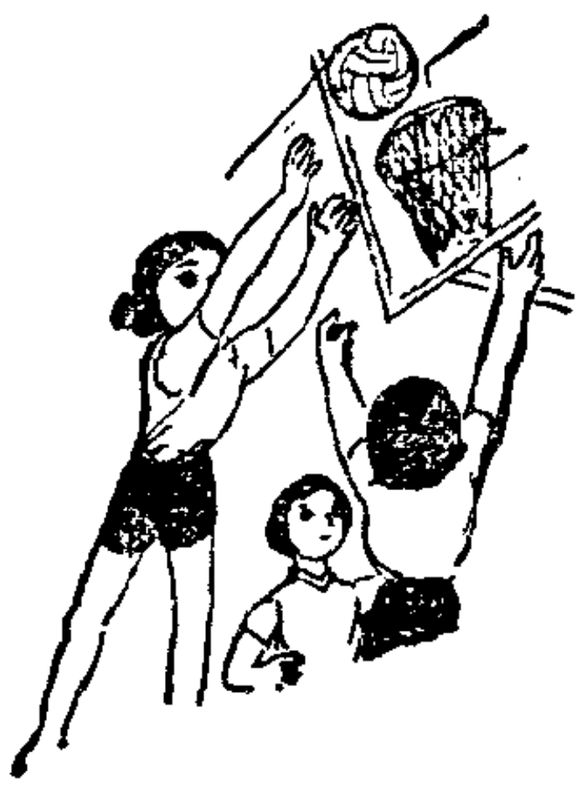
They know some Russian.
We don't know Russian.
We know some English.

C

Are you writing to your friends?
Yes, I am.
Do you often write to them?
Yes, I do.
Do your friends often write to you?
Yes, they do.

D

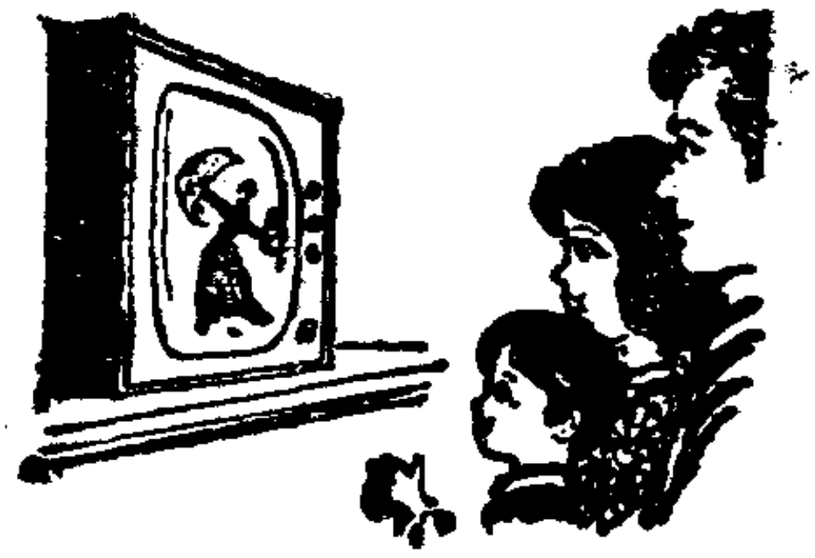
Do you swim every day?
No, I don't. I only swim on Thursday.



Do you play basket-ball every day?
No, we don't. We play only on Wednesday.

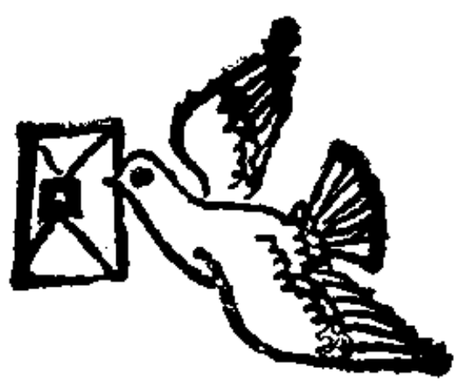
Do they watch TV every evening?

No, they don't. They watch TV only on Saturday evening.



TEXT

A LETTER



May 2nd, 1983

Dear friend,

I am an American schoolgirl. My name is Alice Green. I am thirteen.

I have two brothers. One is Jack, the other is Peter. My brothers and I are all at school. We go to school from Monday to Friday. We have no classes on Saturday.

My parents are both teachers. They often tell me about your country. They say China is a large and beautiful country.

I like drawing and reading. Now I am reading a book of Chinese stories. They are very interesting. My brothers like playing football. We all like watching TV. Do you often watch TV?

Let us be friends. Please write soon.

Yours,
Alice Green

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

every ['evri] *adj.* 每一，每个的

football (foot-ball) *n.* 足球

Tuesday ['tju:zdi] (Tues-day) *n.* 星期二

sometimes ['sʌmtaimz] (some-times) *adv.* 有时

Friday ['fraidi] (Fri-day) *n.* 星期五

speak *v.* 说话

Russian ['rʌʃən] (Rus-sian) *n.* 俄语

know [nəu] *v.* 知道；懂得；

认识

write to 写信给……

often ['ɔfn] (of-ten)

adv. 常常;经常

swim *v.* 游泳

Thursday ['θə:zdi]

(Thurs-day) *n.* 星期四

Wednesday ['wenzdi]

(Wednes-day) *n.* 星期三

watch *v.* 观看,注视

* * *

letter ['letə] (let-ter) *n.*

信;字母

May [mei] *n.* 五月

second ['sekənd] (sec-ond)

n. (月的)第二日

num. 第二

May 2nd (May the second)

五月二日

1983 (nineteen eighty-three) 一九八三(年)

dear [diə] *adj.* 亲爱的

American [ə'merikən]

(A-mer-i-can)

adj. 美国的

n. 美国人

schoolgirl (school-girl) *n.*

中小学女学生

Alice Green ['ælis 'gri:n]

艾丽斯·格林

from [frɔm, frəm] *prep.*

从;从……起;由

from ... to ... 从……到……

about [ə'baut] (a-bout)

prep. 关于

large [la:dʒ] *adj.*

大的;巨大的

be [bi:, bi] *v.* 是;成为

soon [su:n] *adv.* 不久;很快

GRAMMAR

句子种类 (Kinds of Sentences)

英语的句子按照用途可分为下列四类:

1. 陈述句 (The Declarative Sentence)用来叙述一件事情。如:

My parents are both school teachers.

They are planting apple trees.

We aren't workers.

2. 疑问句(The Interrogative Sentence)用来提出问题。如:

Have you any ink?

Do you swim every day?

What are they doing now?

Are you in Class One or Class Two?

Our classroom is bright, isn't it?

3. 祈使句 (The Imperative Sentence) 用来表示请求、命令等。如:

Write down the new words, please.

Look at the children near the river.

Don't draw on the wall.

4. 感叹句 (The Exclamatory Sentence) 用来表达强烈的感情。如:

What an interesting book!

How hard all these people are working!

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these letters and words:

ie [i:] p*ie*ce f*ie*ld

igh	[ai]	n*igh*t	r*igh*t	br*igh*t
ind	[aind]	k*ind*	f*ind*	
or	[ə:]	w*or*d	w*or*k	
kn	[n]	*kn*ow	*kn*ife	
nk	[ŋk]	i*nk*	tha*nk*	
qu	[kw]	*qu*ite		
x	[ks]	bo*x*	te*x*t	ne*x*t

2. Read aloud the following:

I 'do my 'homework 'every ↘day.

They 'play 'foo(t)ball 'every ↘Tuesday.

I 'don'(t) 'speak ↘Russian.

We 'don'(t) 'know ↘Russian.

Do you 'often ↗wri(te) to them?

↘Yes, I ↘do.

Do you 'swim 'every ↗day?

↘No, I ↘don't.

EXERCISES

1. Give the English for these:

1) 每天　　2) 每星期

3) 每年　　4) 在星期二

5) 在星期四下午　　6) 在星期天上午

7) 从星期一到星期六　　8) 从九点到十一点

9) 五月二日

2. Make sentences after the models:

A. Model: You speak Russian. (I, Chinese) ⟶

I don't speak Russian.

I speak Chinese.

1) They make paper planes. (we, paper ships)
2) You often read Russian stories. (I, English stories)
3) They clean the dining-room every day. (we, classroom)
4) You like playing football. (I, basket-ball)

B. Model: They often go to the park. ⟶

Do they often go to the park?

Yes, they do. (No, they don't.)

1) I read English every morning.
2) We sometimes swim in the river.
3) They often go to the zoo.
4) You listen to the radio every evening.

3. Talk about the pictures:

Model: Picture 1

What are the two boys doing?

They're swimming.

Do they swim every day?

No, they don't. They only swim on Wednesday.

4. Answer these questions:

1) Have you any brothers or sisters? Have you any American friends?
2) Do you have an English class every day?
3) Do you like English?
4) Do you have any classes on Sunday?
5) Do you know Russian?
6) Have you a TV set in your home?
7) Do you like watching TV? Do you watch TV every day?

5. Copy these:

Sunday Monday Tuesday

Wednesday Thursday Friday

Saturday

Are you writing to your friends?

Yes, I am.

Do you often write to them?

Yes, I do.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Where are you going?
I'm going to the post office.
Will you come with me?
All right.

LESSON TWELVE

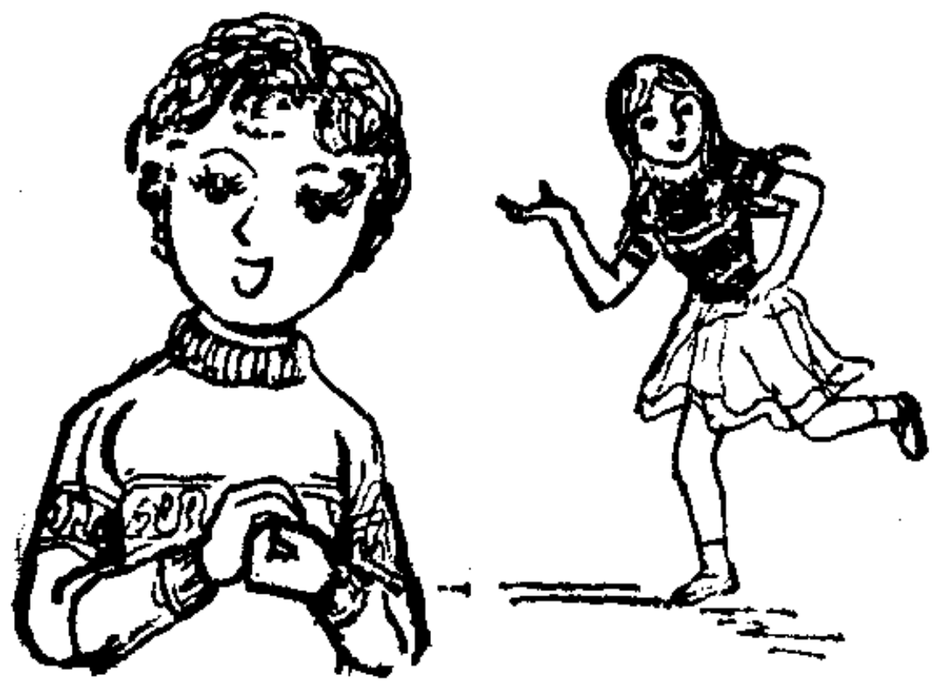
The Twelfth Lesson

DRILLS

A

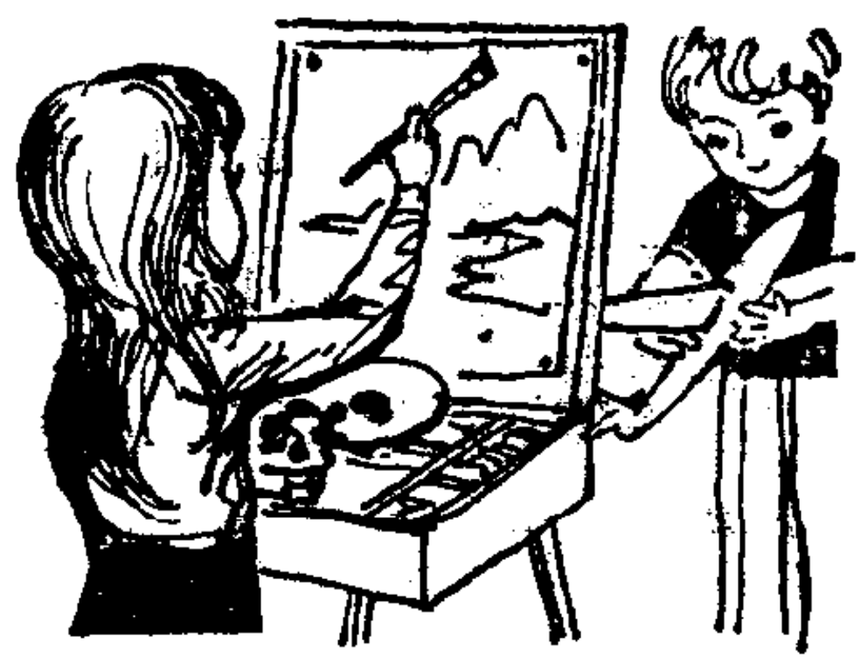
Li Ping gets up at half past six.
His sister gets up at seven o'clock.
His mother goes to work at seven.
His father goes to work at ten past seven.

B



Tom sings well.
Kate doesn't sing well,
but she dances well.

Alice likes drawing.
Peter doesn't like drawing.
He likes making model planes.



doesn't ['dʌznt] = does not

C

Does Li Ping's mother have breakfast at home?
Yes, she does.
Does she have lunch at home?
No, she doesn't. She has it at the factory.
Does his father have lunch at home?
Yes, he does.

TEXT

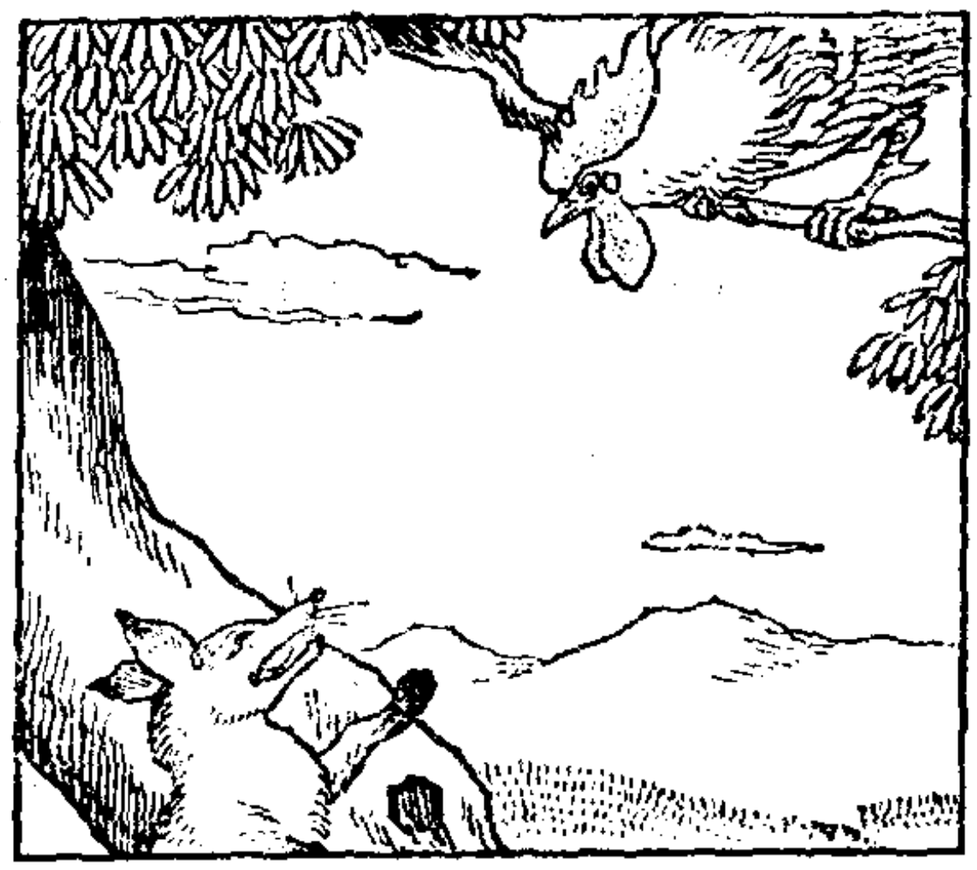
THE COCK AND THE FOX

It is evening. An old cock is sitting in a tall tree. A fox comes to the tree and looks up at the cock.

"Hello, Mr Cock. I have some good news for you," says the fox.

"Oh?" says the cock. "What is it?"

"All the animals are good friends now. Let's be friends, too. Please come down and play with me."



"Fine!" says the cock. "I'm very glad to hear that." Then he looks up. "Look! There's something over there."

"What are you looking at?" asks the fox.

"Oh, I see some animals over there. They're coming this way."

"Animals?"

"Yes. Oh, they're dogs."

"What? Dogs?" asks the fox. "Well, ... well, I must go now. Good-

bye."

"Wait, Mr Fox," says the cock. "Don't go. They're only dogs. And dogs are our friends now."

"Yes. But perhaps they don't know that yet."

"I see, I see," says the cock. He smiles and goes to sleep high up in the tree.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

half [hɑ:f] *n.* 半，一半
past [pɑ:st] *prep.*
过；经过
o' clock [ə'klɔk] *n.* ……
点钟
well *adv.* 好
interj. 好；那么；哎呀
make *v.* 造，制作；使……
model ['mɔdl] (mod-el)
n. 模型
breakfast ['brekfəst]
(break-fast) *n.* 早餐
have breakfast 吃早饭
lunch *n.* 午餐
factory ['fæktəri]
(fac-tory) *n.* 工厂

* * *

fox *n.* 狐狸
look up 向上看；仰望
Mr = mister ['mistə] *n.*
先生（用于姓名前）
news [nju:z] *n.* 新闻，消息
animal ['æniməl]
(an-i-mal) *n.* 动物；牲畜
come down 下来
fine *adj.* 好的；美好的
adv. （口语）很好；妙
glad *adj.* 高兴的，乐意的
hear [hiə] *v.* 听见，听
something ['sʌmθiŋ]

(some-thing) *pron.* 某事(物)

see *v.* 看见,看到; 领会

way [wei] *n.* 路,道路

come this way 朝这条路来(往这边来)

must [mʌst, məst] *v. aux.* 必须,应当

good-bye ['gud'bai] *interj.* 再见

yet *adv.* 仍然

I see. (我)明白了。

smile *v.* 微笑

sleep *v.* & *n.* 睡,睡眠

high *adv.* 高高地

adj. 高的

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Compare:

[ʌ]	[ɔ]	[tʃ]	[tr]
[dʌg]	[dɔg]	[tʃik]	[trik]
[nʌt]	[nɔt]	[tʃi:t]	[tri:t]
[bʌs]	[bɔs]	[tʃein]	[trein]
[rʌn]	[rɔŋ]	[tʃi:z]	[tri:z]

2. Read aloud the following:

1) at half pas(t) six　　at eight o'clock

at home　　a(t) the fa(c)tory

2) 'Ka(te) 'doesn'(t) ↗sing well, bu(t) she ↘dances well.

Does she have 'lunch at ↗home?

↘No, she ↘doesn't.

She has it a(t) the ↘fa(c)tory.

It is ↘evening. An ol(d) 'cock is 'sitting in a 'tall ↘tree. A 'fox 'comes to the ↗tree an(d) looks up a(t) the ↘cock.

EXERCISES

1. Add -s or -es to the following words:

sit	get	wait	ask	look
like	sleep	sing	come	smile
say	see	hear	know	go

2. Fill in the blanks:

Li Ping often ___ (起床) at six o'clock. He ___(吃) breakfast at home. He ___ (去) to school at half past seven.

Classes ___ (开始) at eight o' clock. There ___ (有) four classes in the morning and two in the afternoon. Li Ping ___ (学习) hard. He ___ (喜欢) maths very much. He also ___ (喜欢) English. He ___ (读) English every morning.

Li Ping ___(吃) supper at twenty past six. In the evening, he ___ (做) his homework. He ___ (喜欢看) TV. But he only ___ (看) it on Saturday and Sunday. He ___ (睡觉) at about half past nine every day.

3. Make sentences after the models:

A. Model: Peter gets up at six o'clock. ⟶
Peter doesn't get up at six o'clock.
Does Peter get up at six o'clock?
Yes, he does. (No, he doesn't.)

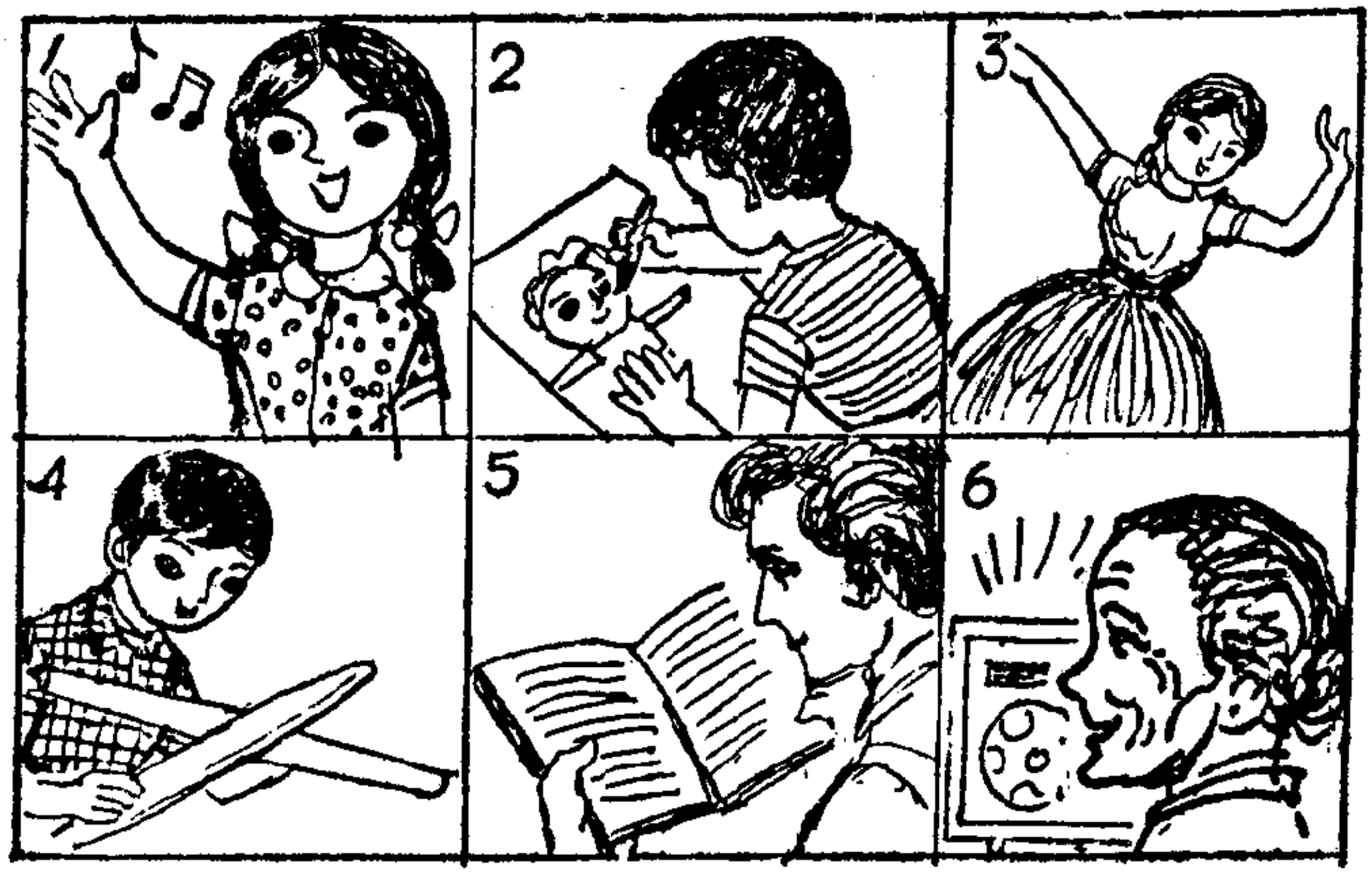
1) My mother goes to work at seven.
2) His father listens to the radio every morning.
3) His sister knows many interesting stories.
4) Their English teacher often has lunch at school.
5) Mary often cleans her room.

B. Model: Betty likes swimming. ⟶
Betty doesn't like swimming.
Does Betty like swimming?
Yes, she does. (No, she doesn't.)

1) Her brother likes playing football.
2) Her grandpa likes watching TV.
3) My father likes speaking English.
4) Their monitor likes reading stories.
5) Tom likes helping others.

4. Talk about the pictures:

Model: Picture 1
What's the girl doing?
She's singing.
Does she sing every day?
Yes, she does. (No, she doesn't.)



5. Copy these:

"Hello, Mr Cock. I have some

good news for you," says the fox.

"Oh?" says the cock. "What

is it?"

Pardon? Will you please say that again?

All right.

LESSON THIRTEEN

The Thirteenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

What do you do on Sunday?
I usually do some cleaning.
What does your brother do?
He plays football with his friends.

B

When do you go to school?
I usually go to school at seven.
When does your father go to work?
He goes to work at half past six.
When does your mother go to work?
She usually goes to work at twenty to eight.

C

Where do you live?
I live in Beijing.
Where does your grandpa live?
He lives in Shanghai.

TEXT

A PRESENT

Today is June 4. It is Betty's birthday. She comes home and sees a card on the table. It says: "There's a present for you, Betty. Go and look for it in your room."

Betty runs to her room. Her parents are watching her. They are smiling.

On her bed she sees a new red box. She thinks: "What's in the box?" She opens it. There is nothing but a

card in it! Betty takes it out and reads:

"Dear Betty, I'm your present. My first letter is in the word 'book', but not in 'look'. My second letter is in 'ink', but not in 'thank'. You can find my third letter in both 'ink' and 'book'. And my last letter is in 'sheep', but not in 'ship'. What am I?"

Betty thinks hard. B–I–K–E. She smiles and says to her mother: "Aha, I know. But where is it, Mum?" Her mother says: "Look at the back of the card." Betty turns it over and reads: "Come and look for me in the garden."

Betty hurries to the garden. There under a big tree she finds her present — a nice new bike!

"Happy birthday, Betty!" her parents say.
"Thank you, Mum and Dad!"

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

usually ['ju:ʒuəli]
(u-sual-ly) *adv.* 通常
do (some) cleaning 扫除
when *adv.* 什么时候，何时
(at) twenty to eight 八点差二十 (七点四十分)
live [liv] *v.* 居住

* * *

present ['preznt] (pres-ent) *n.* 礼物
June [dʒu:n] *n.* 六月
fourth [fɔ:θ] *num.* 第四
n. (月的)第四日
card *n.* 卡片；名片
look for 寻找
run *v.* 跑
think [θiŋk] *v.* 想，思考；认为
nothing ['nʌθiŋ]
(noth-ing) *n.* & *pron.* 没有东西，没有什么
but *prep.* 除了
out *adv.* 出；在外
take...out 把……拿出来，取出
first *num.* 第一
third [θə:d] *num.* 第三
both ... and ... ……和……两者都
last [lɑ:st] *adj.* 最后的
aha [ɑ(:)'hɑ:] *interj.* 啊哈
turn ... over 把……翻过来
garden ['gɑ:dn] (gar-den) *n.* 花园

GRAMMAR

I. 一般现在时 (The Present Indefinite Tense)

1. 一般现在时表示经常的或习惯性的动作，常常与 usually, often, sometimes, every day, every morning 等连用。如:

I do my homework every day.

Do you usually go to school at seven?

He doesn't speak Russian.

2. 一般现在时的肯定、否定和疑问式如下：

I You We They	go.	I You We They	do not(don't) go.
He She It	goes.	He She It	does not(doesn't) go.

Do I go? Yes, you do. No, you don't.	Do you go? Yes, I do. No, I don't.	Does he(she, it)go? Yes, he(she, it)does. No, he(she, it)doesn't.
Do we go? Yes, we(you)do. No,we(you)don't.	Do you go? Yes, we do. No, we don't.	Do they go? Yes, they do. No, they don't.

当主语是第三人称单数时，动词形式的几种变化：

一般的动词在词尾加 -s	like read play	likes reads plays
以字母 o, s, ch, sh 等结尾的动词加 -es	do pass wash	does passes washes
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的动词，先把 y 变 i，再加 -es	study carry	studies carries

II. 序数词 (Ordinal Numbers)]

序数词表示事物的顺序，往往与定冠词 the 连用。

first	1st	twentieth ['twentiiθ]	20th
second	2nd	twenty-first	21st
third	3rd	thirtieth['θə:tiiθ]	30th
fourth	4th	thirty-ninth	39th
fifth [fifθ]	5th	fortieth	40th
sixth	6th	fiftieth	50th
seventh	7th	sixtieth	60th
eighth[eitθ]	8th	seventieth	70th
ninth [nainθ]	9th	eightieth	80th
tenth	10th	ninetieth	90th
eleventh	11th	hundredth['hʌndrədθ]	100th
twelfth	12th	one hundred and first	101st

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Compare:

[ɔ:]	[ə:]	[dʒ]	[dr]
[wə:k]	[wə:k]	[dʒə:]	[drə:]
[hə:s]	[hə:z]	[dʒi:p]	[dri:m]
[tə:k]	[tə:n]	[dʒəb]	[drəp]
[fə:s]	[fə:st]	[dʒein]	[drein]

2. Read aloud the following:

'When does your 'mother 'go to ↘work?

She 'usually 'goes to 'work a(t) 'twenty to ↘eight.

'Where does your 'gran(d)pa ↘live?

He lives in 'Shang↘hai.

To'day is 'June ↘4. It's 'Betty's ↘birthday. She 'comes ↗home an(d) 'sees a 'card on the ↘table. I(t)↗says: "There's a ↘presen(t) for you, Betty. 'Go an(d) 'loo(k) for it in your ↘room."

EXERCISES

1. Add -s or -es to the following words:

stop	sleep	ask	thank	think
sit	put	wait	find	read
dig	run	swim	climb	begin
live	shine	give	take	write
draw	water	dance	close	excuse
watch	guess	pass	do	go
study	hurry	carry	say	play

2. Fill in the blanks:

1) Sunday is the first day of the week.

2) Monday is the ____ day of the week.

3) Tuesday is ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____.

4) ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____.

5) ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____.

6) ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____.

7) ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____ ____.

3. Turn these sentences into questions:

A. Model: I clean my room on Sunday. ⟶

What do you do on Sunday?

1) He often reads story-books in the evening.
2) We climb hills sometimes in spring.
3) John waters the flowers every morning.
4) They clean the dining-room every week.
5) I usually watch TV on Saturday evening.

B. Model: He goes to school at seven. ⟶

When does he go to school?

1) Alice does her homework in the evening.
2) Peter draws every Wednesday afternoon.
3) Our English teacher has supper at six thirty.
4) They play football in the afternoon.
5) His grandpa listens to the radio every evening.

C. Model: They live in Beijing. ⟶

Where do they live?

1) We often go to the park on Sunday.
2) Zhang Hong's grandpa lives in Shanghai.
3) John sometimes swims in a river.
4) Mary usually does her exercises at school.
5) They plant apple trees on the hills.

4. Read the text and then answer these questions:

1) When is Betty's birthday?

2) What does Betty find on the table?

3) What does the card say?

4) Where does Betty run to?

5) What does Betty see on her bed?

6) Does Betty find her present in the new box? What does she see, then?

7) Does the second card tell Betty the name of the present? What is it?

8) Where does Betty find her new bike?

9) What do her parents say to her?

5. Copy these:

Betty thinks hard. B-I-K-E.

She smiles and says to her

mother: "Aha, I know. But where

is it, Mum?" Her mother says:

"Look at the back of the card."

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Shall we go and play pingpong?
That's a good idea.
Are you ready?
Not yet. Wait a minute, please.

A RHYME

MR MOON

Oh, Mr Moon, what do you see?
Children's faces, looking at me.

Oh, Mr Moon, what do you do?
I light the world the whole night through.

Oh, Mr Moon, where do you go?
To look at the lands of ice and snow.

Oh, Mr Moon, when do you steep?
All day, till stars begin to peep.

LESSON FOURTEEN

The Fourteenth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Add -s (-es) and -ing to the following verbs:

   listen water talk draw sweep hear
   climb sing see wait plant find
   smile give take wake make have
   put get swim dig stop run
   carry hurry say watch pass dance

2. Arrange these words in groups:

Nouns (n.)	Pronouns (pron.)	Adjectives (adj.)	Verbs (v.)	Adverbs (adv.)

   bowl give milk their certainly ready hurry
   happy help find it very smile bad hill Saturday interesting busy know us yours often fox
   bright ours spring yet factory think sometimes
   glad perhaps usually him

3. Give the English for these:

1) 上班　　2) 找东西　　3) 给母亲写信

4) 扫除　　5) 吃晚饭　　6) 坐在他的位置上

4. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) The students ____ (have) an English lesson now.

2) The Young Pioneers ____ (plant) trees in spring every year.

3) ____ his father ____ (go) to the factory on Sunday?

4) The child ____ (sleep) now. He usually ____ (sleep) very well.

5) Peter ____ (listen) to the radio every morning. He ____ (listen) to it now.

6) Li Ping and Zhang Hong ____ (carry) water for a granny every afternoon. They ____ (carry) water for her now.

7) Mr Green often ____ (water) the flowers in his garden. He usually ____ (water) them in the morning.

8) Mother sometimes ____ (tell) us stories on Saturday evening. We ____ (listen) to her now.

5. Make sentences after the models:

A. Model: When do you get up every day?

I usually get up at 6:30.

Sometimes I get up at 7:00.

6:30 (7:00)	get up
7:10 (7:20)	have breakfast
7:30 (7:40)	go to school
12:15(12:30)	have lunch
4:10 (4:30)	have sports
4:50 (5:00)	come home
6:00 (6:30)	have supper
7:00 (7:15)	do my homework
9:30 (9:45)	go to bed

B. Model: 1) What do the children often do in the afternoon?

They often play football.

Sometimes they play basket-ball.

What are they doing now?

They are playing basket-ball now.

	often	sometimes	now
1) the children, in the afternoon	play football	play basket-ball	
2) you, in the evening	read English	read Chinese	
3) Mr Green, on Sunday	swim in the lake nearby	climb the hill	

4) Tom and his sister, on Sunday	go to the park	play in the garden
5) I, in the evening	do my home-work	watch TV
6) Betty, on Thursday afternoon	make model planes	make model ships

6. Give the English for these:

1) 请不要在公园里攀登树木。

2) 她祖母在写一本书。

3) 凯特喜欢唱歌吗？

4) 汤姆不懂俄语，但他懂一些汉语。

5) ——你们正在干什么？

——我们在做英语练习。

6) ——你父亲每天什么时候去工厂？

——早上七点。

7. Say something about what you do every day.

A SONG

Morning Comes Early

^{b}B $\frac{2}{4}$

1 1 2 | 3 5 4 | 3 2 | 1 - |
Morning comes ear -ly and bright with dew.

5 5 6 | 7 2̇ 1̇ | 7 6 | 5 - |
Under your win-dow I sing to you.

1̇ 3̇ 2̇ | 1̇ 7 | 6 6 5 | 4 3 |
Up then my com- rades, up then my com- rades,

2 2 3 | 5 5 4 | 3 2 | 1 - |
Let us be greet-ing the morn so blue.

1̇ 3̇ 2̇ | 1̇ 7 | 6 6 5 | 4 3 |
Up then my com- rades, up then my com- rades,

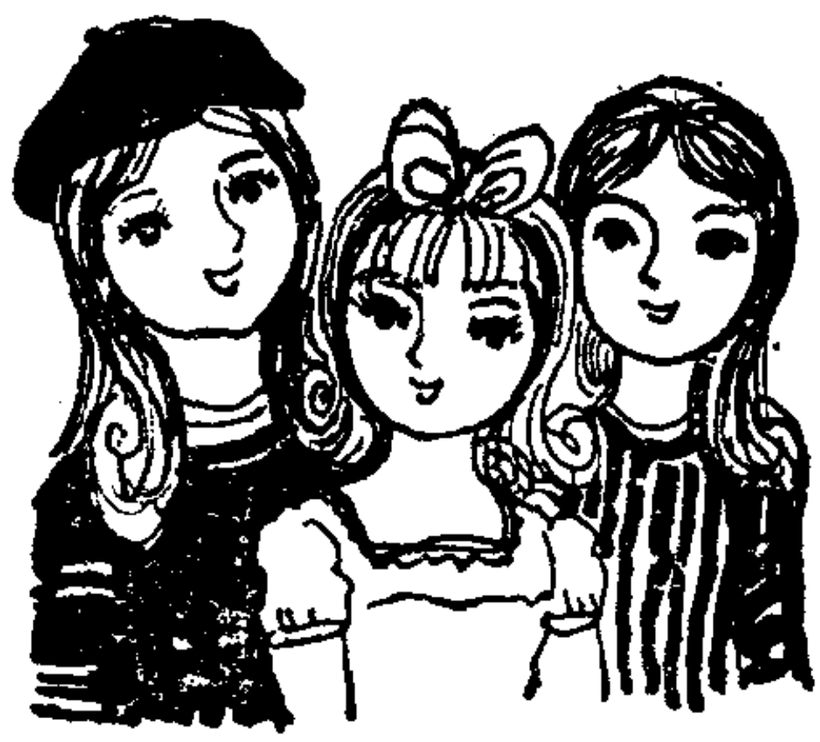
2 2 3 | 5 5 4 | 3 2 | 1 - ||
Let us be greet-ing the morn so blue.

LESSON FIFTEEN

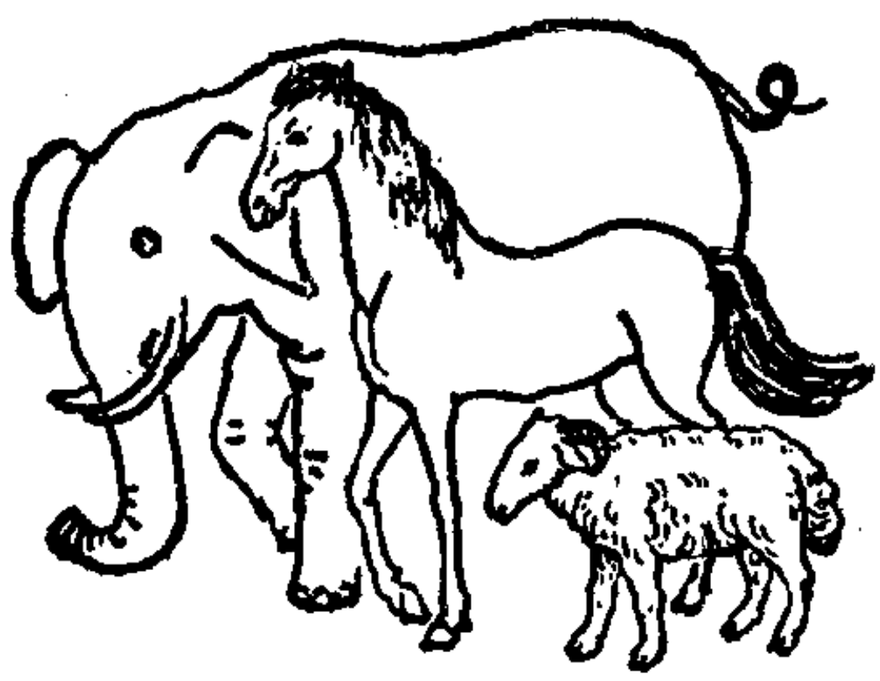
The Fifteenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

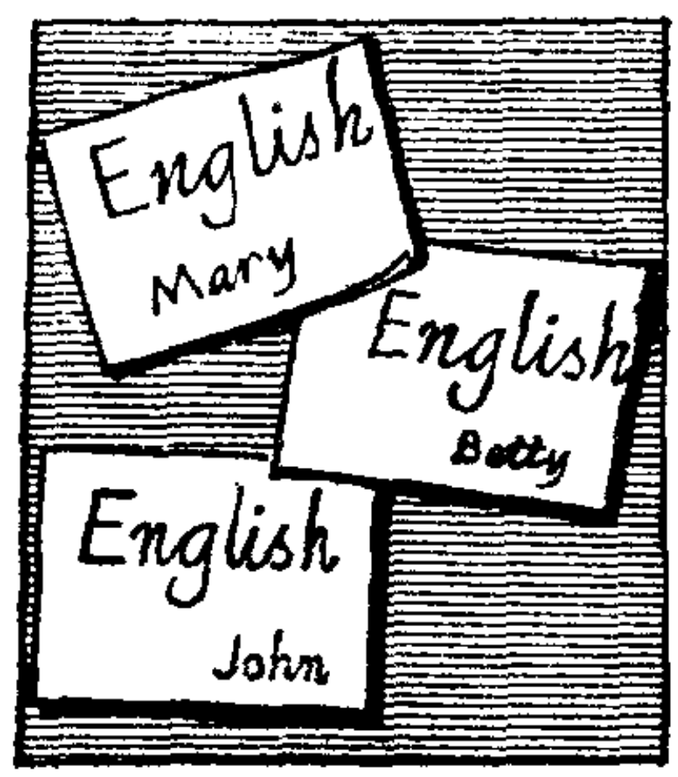


Rose is young.
Mary is younger.
Betty is the youngest.



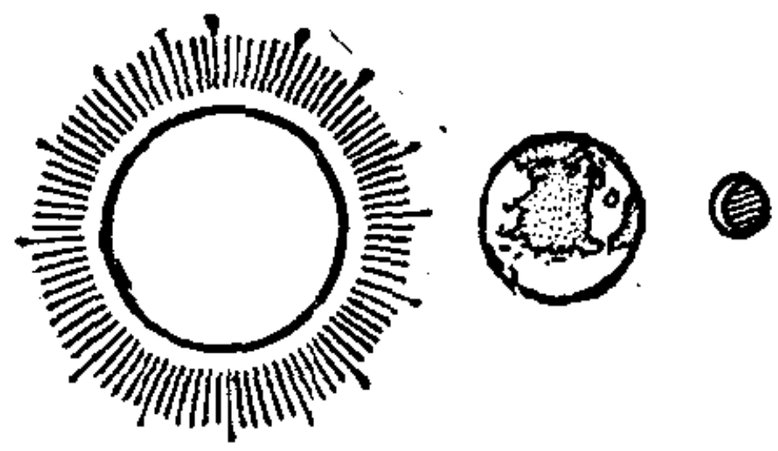
A sheep is heavy.
A horse is heavier.
An elephant is the heaviest.

Mary's handwriting is good.
Betty's handwriting is better.
John's handwriting is the best.



B

Which is bigger, the moon or the earth?
The earth is bigger.
Which is the biggest,
the sun, the moon
or the earth?
The sun is the biggest.
Which is the smallest?
The moon, of course.



C

Who's younger, Mary or Rose?
Mary is younger.
Who's the youngest, Rose, Mary or Betty?
Betty is the youngest.
Who's the oldest?
Rose, of course.

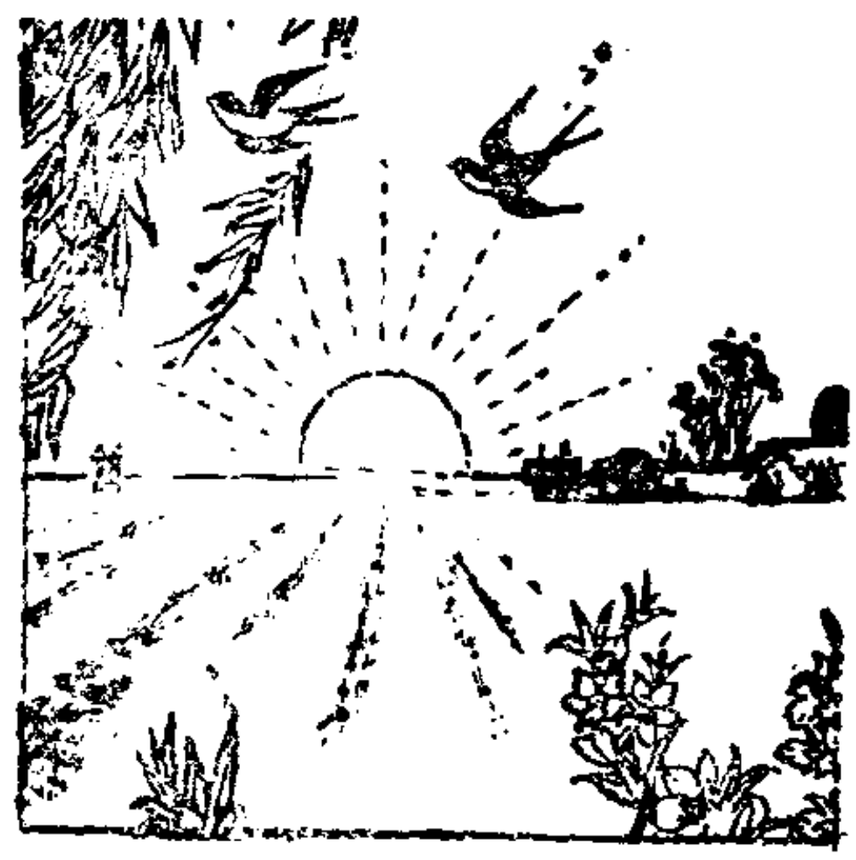
TEXT

THE SEASONS

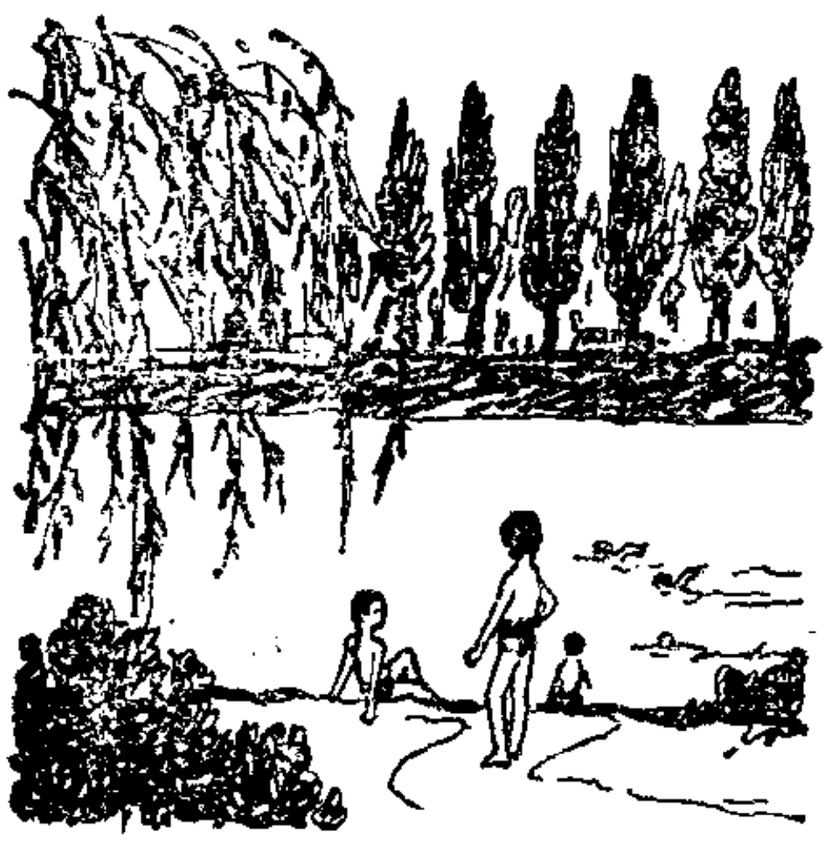
There are four seasons in a year: spring,

summer, autumn and winter.

Spring is the best season of the year. The weather gets warmer, and the days get longer. The crops begin to grow. The trees turn green and flowers come out.



Summer comes after spring. It is the warmest season. It often rains and the crops grow fast. The best sport in summer is swimming. Children often go swimming in rivers and lakes.



Autumn is a busy season. The days get shorter and the nights longer. It is harvest-time. The peasants are busy. They are getting in the crops.

Winter is the coldest season of the year. Sometimes it snows and the fields are all white. Skating is the best sport in winter. Many boys and girls often go skating. But the peasants are still busy. They are getting ready for the next year.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

heavy ['hevi] *adj.* 重的

elephant ['elifənt] (el-e-phant) *n.* 象

handwriting ['hændraitiŋ] (hand-writing) *n.* 书法; 笔迹

better ['betə] (bet-ter) *adj.* 更好的 *adv.* 更好地

best *adj.* 最好的 *adv.* 最好地

moon [mu:n] *n.* 月亮

earth [ə:θ] *n.* 地球

of course [əf 'kɔ:s] 当然

* * *

season ['si:zn] (sea-son) *n.* 季节

summer ['sʌmə] (sum-mer) *n.* 夏天, 夏季

autumn ['ɔ:təm] (au-tumn) *n.* 秋天, 秋季

winter ['wintə] (win-ter) *n.* 冬天, 冬季

weather ['weðə] *n.* 天气

warm [wɔ:m] *adj.* 暖和的

get warmer 变得更暖和

crop *n.* 庄稼;收成
grow [grəu] *v.* 生长
turn green 变绿(色)
come out 出来
after ['ɑ:ftə] (af-ter)
prep. 在……之后
rain [rein] *v.* 下雨
n. 雨
fast [fɑ:st] *adv.* 快地
adj. 快的
go swimming (去)游泳
harvest ['hɑ:vist]
(har-vest) *n.* 收获
harvest-time *n.* 收获季节
get in 收获;收割
cold [kəuld] *adj.*
冷的,寒冷的
snow [snəu] *v.* 下雪
n. 雪
skate [skeit] *v.* 滑冰
go skating (去)滑冰
still *adv.* 还;仍旧
get ready for 为……准备好

GRAMMAR

形容词的比较级和最高级 (The Comparative and Superlative Degrees of Adjectives) (I)

大多数形容词有三个等级:

1) 原级,即原形,如 big (大);
2) 比较级,表示"更……一些"或"较……"的意思,如 bigger (更大,比较大,大一些);
3) 最高级,表示"最……"的意思,如 biggest (最大)。

I. 形容词比较级和最高级的构成

1. 规则变化(一般在单音节和部分双音节的形容词词尾加 -er 或 -est)

构成方法	原级	比较级	最高级
一般在词尾加 -er([ə]) 或 -est([ist])	tall long	taller longer ['lɔŋgə]	tallest longest ['lɔŋgist]
以字母 e 结尾的形容词，加 -r 或 -st	nice	nicer	nicest
以重读闭音节结尾的形容词，如末尾只有一个辅音字母，应先双写这一字母，再加 -er 或 -est	big thin	bigger thinner	biggest thinnest
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的形容词，先把 y 变 i，再加 -er 或 -est	happy heavy	happier heavier	happiest heaviest

2. 不规则变化

good　　better　　best

Ⅱ. 形容词比较级和最高级的用法

1. 表示两者(人或物)的比较时，用形容词比较级。如:

A sheep is heavy. A horse is heavier.

Who is younger, Rose or Mary?

Mary is younger.

2. 表示三者或三者以上(人或物)的比较时，用形容词最高级，最高级的前面要加定冠词 the，后面可带 of (in) 短语，来说明比较的范围。如:

Which is the biggest, the sun, the moon or the

earth?

The sun is the biggest of the three.

This elephant is the heaviest one in the zoo.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. 1) Compare:

[ɔ:]	[ɔi]	[əu]	[au]	[ʃ]	[tʃ]
[bɔ:]	[bɔi]	[nəu]	[nau]	[ʃu:]	[tʃu:]
[dʒɔ:]	[dʒɔi]	[rəuz]	[rauz]	[ʃi:p]	[tʃi:p]
[nɔ:θ]	[nɔiz]	[ʃəud]	[ʃaut]	[ʃə:t]	[tʃə:t]
[spɔ:t]	[spɔil]	[fəun]	[faund]	[fiʃ]	[fetʃ]

2) Pronounce these letters and words:

ar	or	ir	er	or	ur	-er
[ɑ:]	[ɔ:]	[ə:]				[ə]
*ar*m	h*or*se	sh*ir*t	h*er*s	t*ur*n		riv*er*
p*ar*k	sp*or*t	f*ir*st	w*or*k	n*ur*se		summ*er*
c*ar*d	st*or*y	b*ir*thday	w*or*d	Th*ur*sday		weath*er*

2. Read aloud the following:

'Which is ↘bigger, the ↗moon or the ↘earth?

'Who's the ↘youngest, ↗Rose, ↗Mary or ↘Betty?

'Spring is the 'bes(t) 'season of the ↘year. The 'weather 'gets ↗warmer, an(d) the 'days ge(t)

↘longer. The ˈcrops beˈgin to ↘grow. The ˈtrees ˈturn ↗green an(d) ˈflowers ˈcome ↘out.

EXERCISES

1. Add -er and -est to the following words:

   bright fast short cold

   warm long tall

   large nice

   thin big fat

   heavy busy happy

2. Fill in the blanks:

   1) Jack is a tall boy.

   He is the tallest boy in his class.

   2) The Changjiang River is very ____. (long)

   It is ____ river in our country. (long)

   3) This factory is very ____. (large)

   It is ____ one in Tianjin. (large)

   4) John has a very ____ model ship. (good)

   It is ____ one in his class. (good)

   5) This elephant is very ____. (heavy)

   It is ____ one in the zoo. (heavy)

   6) Today is ____. (fine)

   It is ____ day in this week. (fine)

   7) Wangfujing Street is very ____. (busy)

   It is ____ street in Beijing. (busy)

3. Look at the pictures for the drills and answer these questions:

1) Who is older, Mary or Betty?

2) Who is the oldest, Mary, Rose or Betty?

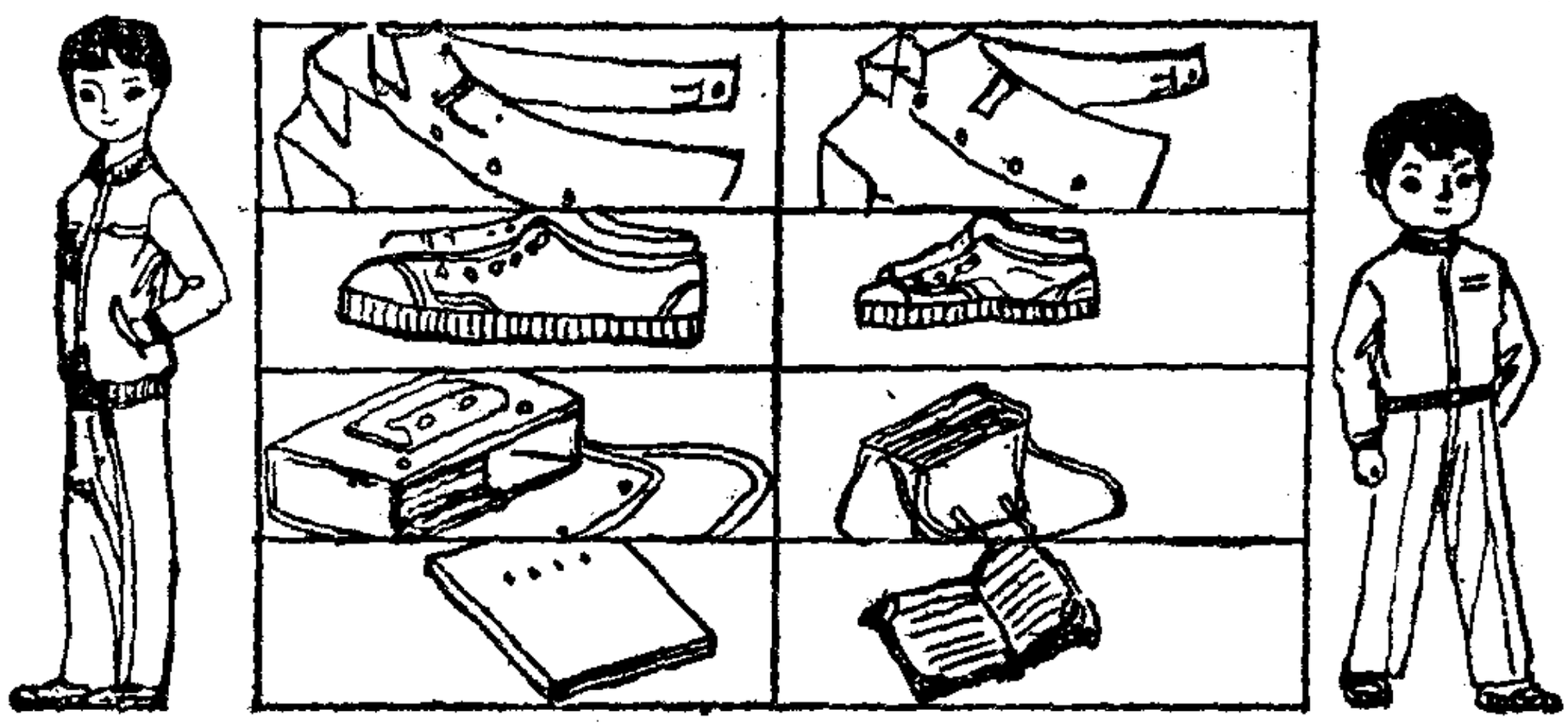
3) Whose handwriting is better, Mary's or Betty's?

4) Which is the heaviest, a sheep, a horse or an elephant?

5) Which is smaller, the sun or the earth?

6) Which is bigger, the earth or the moon?

4. Talk about the picture:



Model: jacket, long / short⟶

Whose jacket is longer, Liu Ming's or Wu Dong's?

Liu Ming's is longer.

Whose jacket is shorter?

Wu Dong's is shorter.

1) trousers, long / short; old/new

2) shirt, long/short

3) shoes, big/small

4) bag, big/small

5) story-book, old/new; big/small

5. Read the text and then answer these questions:

1) How many seasons are there in a year? What are they?

2) Which is the best season of the year?

3) Do the days get longer or shorter in spring?

4) Which is the warmest season of the year?

5) Do the crops grow fast in summer?

6) What is the best sport in summer?

7) Do you like swimming and skating? Do you often go swimming in summer?

8) What season comes after summer?

9) What do the peasants do in autumn? Are they very busy?

10) Which is the coldest season of the year?

11) Which season do you like best?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

It's rather warm(cold) today, isn't it?

Yes, you'd better take off (put on) your coat.

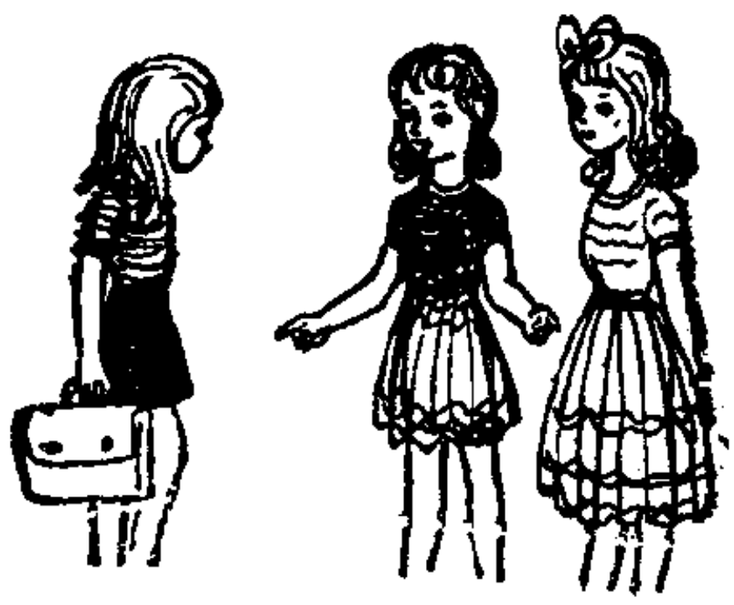
LESSON SIXTEEN

The Sixteenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

Tom is taller than Mike.
Mike is taller than John.
Who's the tallest?
Tom is the tallest.



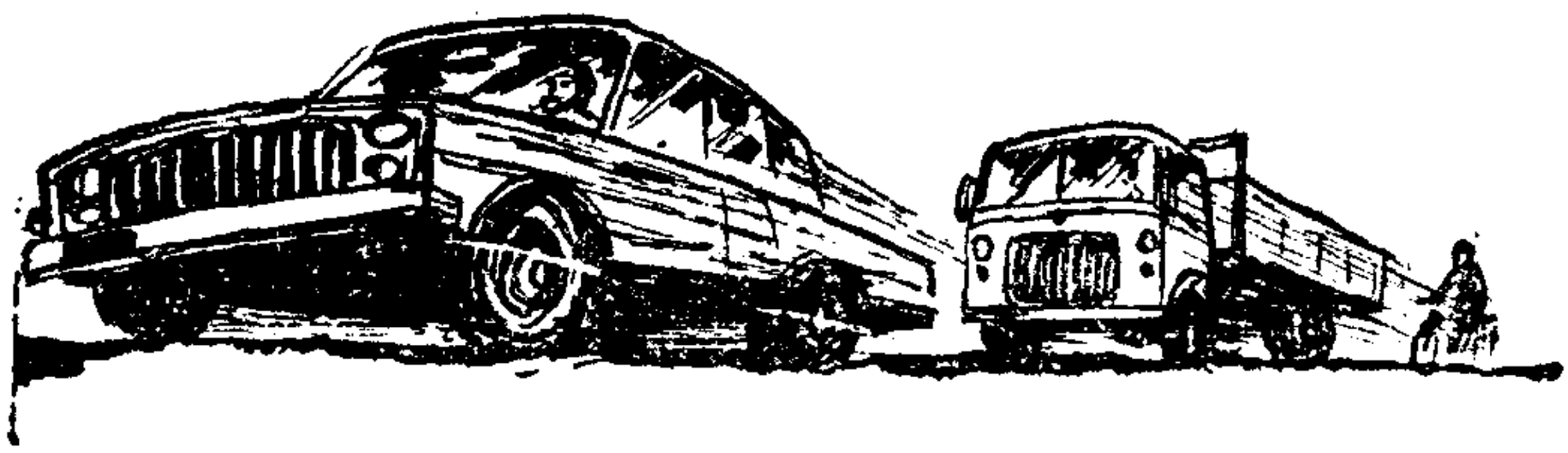
My skirt is longer than yours.
Betty's skirt is longer than mine.
Whose skirt is the longest?
Hers is the longest.

B

Rose works hard.
Joan works harder.
Mary works the hardest.

Tom draws well.
John draws better.
Mike draws the best.

C



A truck goes faster than a bike.
A car goes faster than a truck.
Which goes the fastest?
A car goes the fastest.

Mike comes to school earlier than Kate.
Mary comes to school earlier than Mike.
Who comes to school the earliest?
Mary comes to school the earliest.

D

Who dances the best in your class?
Kate does.

Who runs the fastest in your class?

John does.

Who works the hardest in your class?

Mary does.

DIALOGUE

WHO IS FASTER?

T — Tortoise

H — Hare

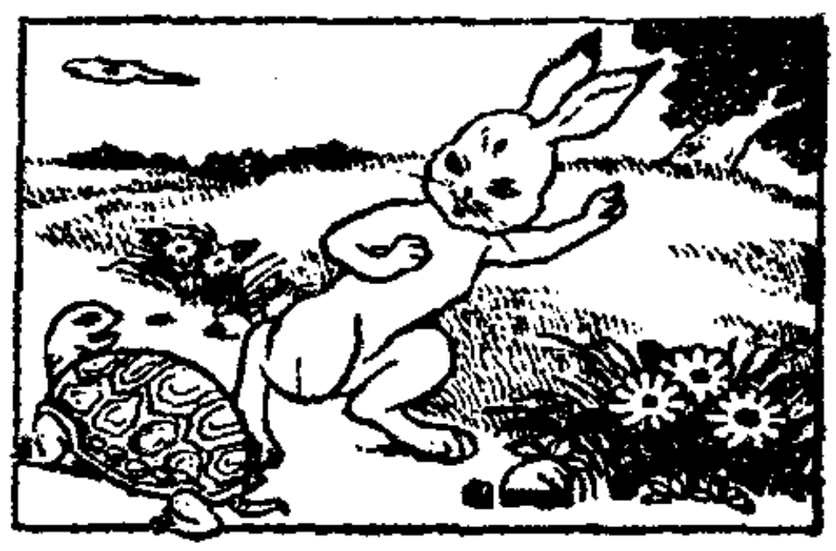
T: Hello, Mr Hare!

H: Oh, it's you, Mr Tortoise. What are you doing?

T: I'm running.

H: Running? Ha ha! You can't run. Your legs are too short!

T: Of course I can.



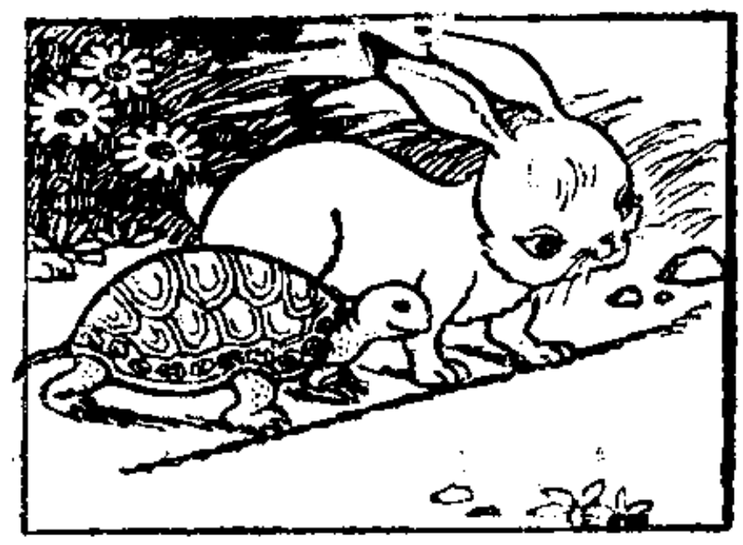
H: My legs are longer than yours. I'm sure I can run faster than you.

T: Don't be so sure.

H: Well then, let's run to the tall tree over there. Let's see who gets there first.

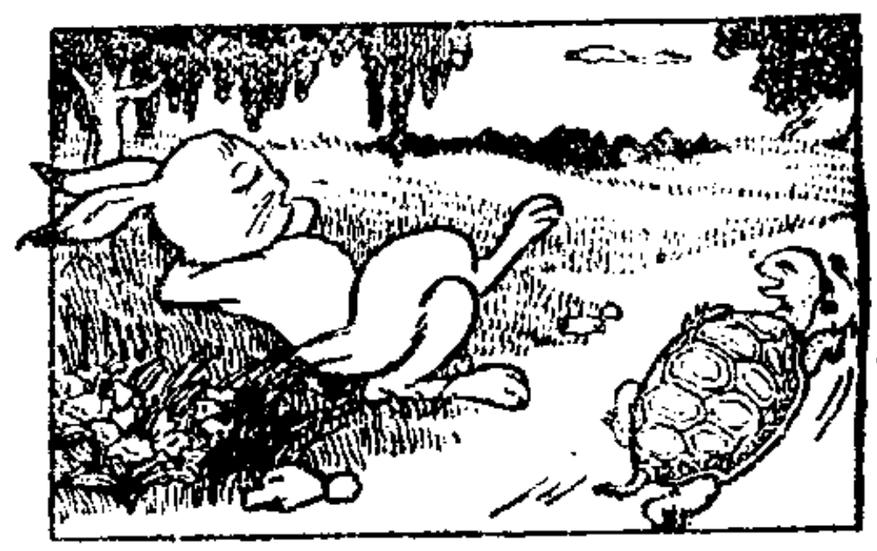
T: All right.

H: Ready? Go!



(*Mr Tortoise goes very slowly. Mr Hare runs much faster. In a minute he comes to a small tree.*)

H: Where's Mr Tortoise? Aha! There he is. He's far behind me. How slow he is! I'm much faster. Mmm, it's hot! Ahh, here's a tree. Let me have a rest under it. It's so nice and cool.



(*Soon he is asleep.*)

(*Mr Tortoise comes up. He looks at Mr Hare and goes on.*)

H(*waking up*): Ah, what a good sleep! Now, where's Mr Tortoise? Where is he? I don't see him. (*Runs to the tall tree.*)

T(*sitting under the tall tree*): Why, hello, Mr Hare! How are you? You're very fast, aren't you?

H: Yes, but ...

T: But, I'm here first. Now who is faster, you or me?

H: Oh! ...

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

than [ðæn, ðən] *conj.* 比

skirt *n.* 女裙

truck *n.* 卡车

early ['ə:li] *adv.* 早

* * *

tortoise ['tɔ:təs] (tor-toise) *n.* 乌龟

hare [hɛə] *n.* 野兔

sure [ʃuə] *adj.* 确信的，有把握的

get (to) *v.* 到达

first *adv.* 首先，最初

slow [sləu] *adj.* 慢的

slowly ['sləuli] *adv.* 慢慢地

in a minute 一会儿，立刻

far *adj.* 远的 *adv.* 远地

How slow he is! 他(是)多么慢啊!

Mmm [m] *interj.* 嗯

hot *adj.* 热的

wake up 醒，醒来

ah [ɑ:] *interj.* 啊

rest *n.* 休息

have a rest 休息一会儿

cool [ku:l] *adj.* 凉的，凉快的

asleep [ə'sli:p] *adj.* 睡着的，熟睡

come up 走过来；走近

go on 继续，继续走

GRAMMAR

副词的比较级和最高级 (The Comparative and Superlative Degrees of Adverbs) (I)

I. 副词和形容词一样，也有原级、比较级和最高级三个等级。规则变化和形容词一样。如:

hard	harder	hardest
fast	faster	fastest
high	higher	highest
early	earlier	earliest

不规则变化，如:

well	better	best

II. 副词比较级和最高级的用法与形容词相似。如:

Rose works hard.

Joan works harder.

以上两句也可用一个句子表示，即

Joan works harder than Rose.

形容词比较级也可用在带连接词 than 的句子里。如:

A horse is heavier than a sheep.

副词最高级前可以不加定冠词 the。如:

Which goes (the) fastest, a truck, a bike or a car?

A car goes (the) fastest of the three.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. 1) Compare:

[iə]	[ɛə]	[uə]
[ʃiə] [piə] [tiə]	[ʃɛə] [pɛə] [tɛə]	[ʃuə] [puə] [tuə]

2) Pronounce these letters and words:

a	[ɑ:]	class	glass	ask	
		last	past	fast	
		dance	plant	can't	
o	[ʌ]	some	front	other	
ai, ay	[ei]	wait	rain		
		say	way	play	May
ear	[iə]	ear	dear	hear	nearby
	[ə:]	early	earth		

2. Read aloud the following:

'Whose 'skirt is the ↘longest?

↘Hers is the longest.

A 'car 'runs 'faster than a ↘truck.

'Mary 'comes to 'school the ↘earliest.

'Who 'works the 'hardest in your ↘class?

↘Mary does.

'How ↘slow he is!

↘Ah, 'what a 'goo(d) ↘sleep!

You're 'very ↘fast, ↗aren't you?

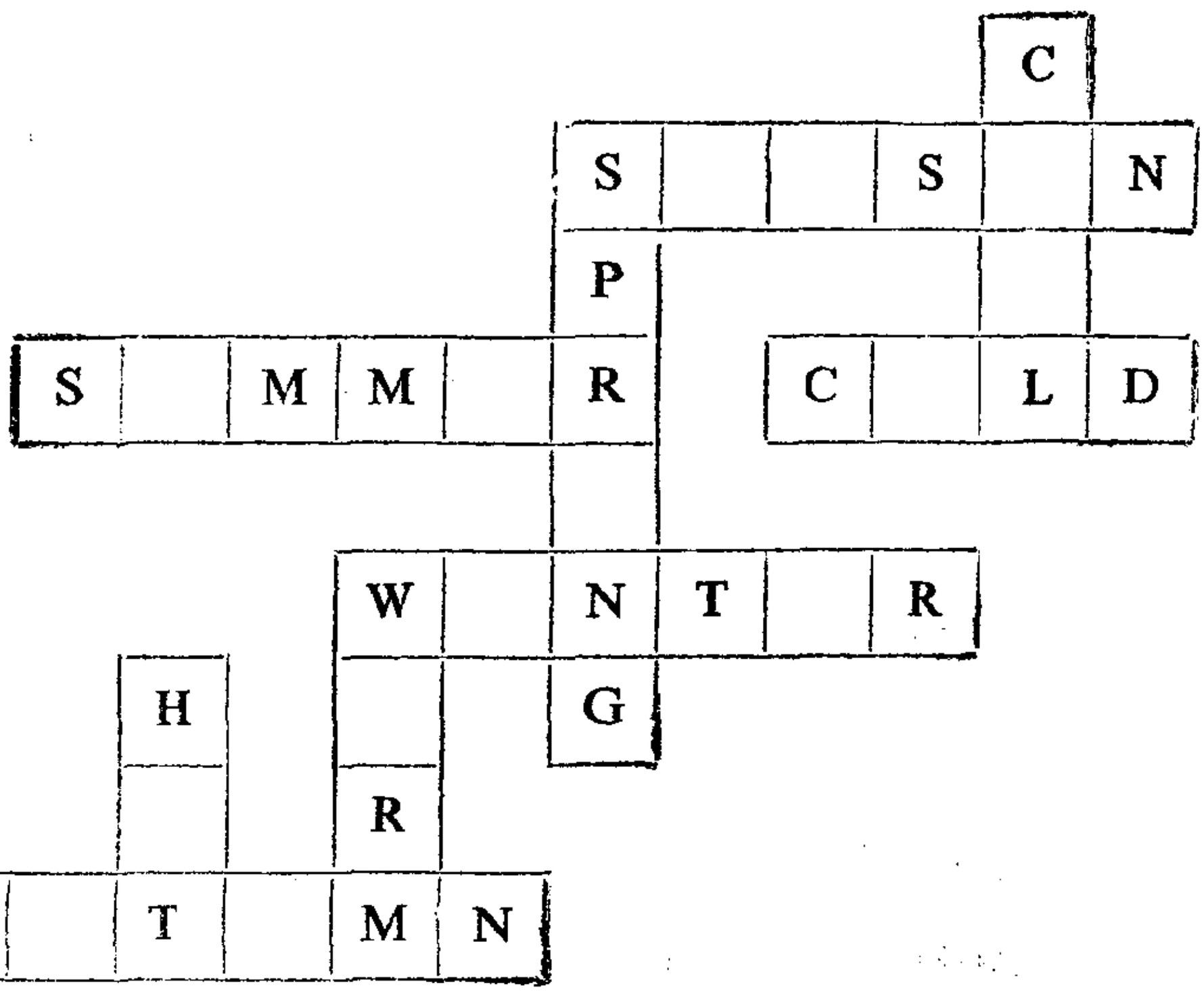
Now 'who is ↘faster, ↗you or ↘me?

EXERCISES

1. Add **-er** and **-est** to the following words:

new	dear	warm	cold	cool
hot	thin	big	red	fat
hard	high	slow	early	happy

2. Put in the missing letters:



3. Put in the missing letters:

pl__te	r__dio	p__per	sk__te
h__ppy	c__rry	gl__d	j__cket
v__ry	b__tter	pr__sent	__lephant
qu__te	ch__ld	sh__ne	sm__le
m__lk	wh__ch	th__nk	h__ll
cl__ck	__ften	m__del	m__nitor
l__nch	m__ch	h__rry	tr__ck
read__	dadd__	stor__	bus__
M__ __ch	g__ __den	l__ __ge	h__ __vest
br__ __d	p__ __sant	h__ __vy	br__ __kfast
m__ __t	cl__ __n	sp__ __k	s__ __son
sw__ __p	f__ __t	str__ __t	asl__ __p
aft__ __	summ__ __	p__ __haps	wint__ __
f__ __st	th__ __d	sk__ __t	b__ __thday

4. Fill in the blanks:

1) Tom is **taller than** Jack. (tall)
   Jack is **shorter than** Tom. (short)
2) The first street is ____ ____ the second street. (long)
   The second street is ____ ____ the first one. (short)
3) John's father is ____ ____ Mike's. (young)
   Mike's father is ____ ____ John's. (old)
4) The white hen is ____ ____ the yellow hen. (fat)

The yellow hen is ____ ____ the white one. (thin)

5) Shanghai is ____ ____ Tianjin. (large)
Tianjin is ____ ____ Shanghai. (small)

6) The sun is ____ ____ the earth. (big)
The earth is ____ ____ the sun. (small)

7) It is ____ in spring ____ in winter. (warm)
It is ____ in autumn ____ in summer. (cool)
It is ____ in summer ____ in spring. (hot)
It is ____ in winter ____ in autumn. (cold)

5. Make sentences, using the given words:

Model: Jack, Mike, Tom, tall

Jack is **tall.**

Mike is **taller.**

Tom is **taller than** Mike.

Who's **the tallest**?

Tom is, of course.

1) the moon, the earth, the sun, big
2) her mother, her father, her grandma, old
3) the first TV set, the second one, the third one, good
4) Alice, Jack, Peter, run, fast
5) I, my father, my mother, get up, early
6) Mary, Joan, Betty, sing, well

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Are you free this afternoon?
Yes. What can I do for you?
(No, I'm quite busy.)

A RHYME

I TRY

I try to do my best each day,
In my work and in my play;
And if I always do my best,
I needn't worry about a test.

LESSON SEVENTEEN

The Seventeenth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Fill in the blanks:

Verbs			Nouns	
play	plays	playing	baby	babies
hurry			factory	
study			country	
stop			field	
swim			child	
begin			foot	
live			knife	
skate			man	
make			woman	
snow			radio	
watch			tomato	
hear			fox	

Adjectives and Adverbs					
busy	busier	busiest	white		
early			hot		
young			thin		
hard			big		
fast			good		
high			well		

2. Give the opposites of these words:

cool ____ hot ____ good ____ slow ____

close ____ black ____ fat ____ old ____

long ____ yes ____ big ____ up ____

here ____ come ____ young ____ small ____

3. Arrange these words in groups:

1) 人物 2) 人体部分 3) 饮食

4) 动物 5) 自然界

fish arm tortoise foot comrade bread hare policeman elephant leg meat eye bird Alice mouth rice ear fox hill head Peter animal rain tea hand granny snow milk child river chicken hair parent lake sheep peasant tomato nose monitor face

4. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

A. 1) Mary ____ (draw) now.

____ she ____ (draw) every day?

No. She only ____ (draw) on Wednesday.

2) Li Ping and Zhang Hong ____ (make) model planes now.

____ they often ____ (make) model planes?

Yes, they ____.

3) Betty ____ (sing) in the room.

____ she often ____ (sing)?

Yes, she ____ (sing) very well.

4) Liu Ying ____ (carry) water for Grandma Li.

When ____ she ____ (carry) water for her?

She usually ____ (carry) water for her in the afternoon.

B. Wang Lin ____ (be) a schoolboy. He ____ (live) in Beijing. He ____ (study) in a middle school.

Wang Lin ____ (get) up at half past five every day. After that, he ____ (read) English and Chinese. He ____ (have) breakfast at seven.

Now it is seven o'clock in the morning. What ____ Wang Lin ____ (do)? He ____ (have) breakfast with his parents.

"Have another cake, Xiao Lin. It's only ten past seven," his mother ____ (say).

"No, ____ (thank) you, Mum. I must ____ (hurry). Li Ping ____ (wait) for me at the bus

stop. I must ____ (go) now. Good-bye, Mum. Good-bye, Dad."

5. Turn these sentences into questions:

Model: Tom's father makes TV sets at a factory. (where, who, what)

Where does Tom's father work?

Who works at the factory?

What does he make at the factory?

1) John's father works on a ship. (who, where)
2) John is studying Chinese at school. (where, who, what)
3) They begin their work at eight in the morning. (what, when)
4) Lingling and her mother usually clean the room on Sunday. (when, what, who)
5) Li Ping's mother has lunch at the factory. (where, who)
6) I go swimming every Tuesday and Friday. (when, what)

6. A. Give the English for these:

1) 有茶吗？请递给我一杯。
2) 你们班谁唱歌唱得最好？
3) 他在哪儿看电视？
4) 我们的教室比他们的亮。
5) 李冬比张红画得好。

6) 你午饭后常休息吗?

B. Give the Chinese for these:

1) Put all the books in your bag. Don't take them out.

2) Put up this map. Don't take it down.

3) His father usually gets up at half past five and goes to bed at eleven.

4) It is getting warmer and warmer. It's time to go swimming.

5) The peasants are getting in the crops.

6) Please get ready. It is time for class.

7. Say something about your family, your class or your school.

A SONG

Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star

F $\frac{2}{4}$

1 1	5 5	6 6	5	4 4	3 3	
Twinkle,	twinkle,	little	star,	How I	wonder	
2 2	1	5 5	4 4	3 3	2	
what you	are!	Up a-	bove the	world so	high,	
5 5	4 4	3 3	2	1 1	5 5	
Like a	diamond	in the	sky.	Twinkle,	twinkle,	
6 6	5	4 4	3 3	2 2	1	‖
little	star,	How I	wonder	what you	are!	

Vocabulary

A

a cup of 一(茶)杯 3
a glass of 一玻璃杯 3
about [ə'baut] *prep.* 关于 11
after ['ɑ:ftə] *prep.* 在……之后 15
ah [ɑ:] *interj.* 啊! 16
aha [ɑ(:)'hɑ:] *interj.* 啊哈 13
Alice ['ælis] 艾丽斯(女名) 7
Alice Green ['ælis 'gri:n] 艾丽斯·格林 11
all [ɔ:l] *adj.* 所有的，全部的 4
pron. 全部,全体 8
all day and all night 整日整夜 4
all kinds of 各种各样的 10
also ['ɔ:lsəu] *adv.* 也 7
American [ə'merikən] *adj.* 美国的
n. 美国人 11
animal ['æniməl] *n.* 动物;牲畜 12
another [ə'nʌðə] *adj.* & *pron.* 再一(个,……) 又一(个,……) 7
arm [ɑ:m] *n.* 手臂,胳膊 4
ask [ɑ:sk] *v.* 问;请 6
asleep [ə'sli:p] *adj.* 睡着的,熟睡 16
autumn ['ɔ:təm] *n.* 秋天,秋季 15

B

bad [bæd] *adj.* 坏的;(食物等)腐败的
It's bad for your eyes. 对(你们的)眼睛有害。 10
be [bi:, bi] *v.* 是;成为 11
beautiful ['bju:təful] *adj.* 美丽的,优美的 8
best [best] *adj.* 最好的
adv. 最好地 15
better ['betə] *adj.* 更好的

adv. 更好地 15
Betty ['beti] 贝蒂(女名) 10
bird [bə:d] *n.* 鸟,禽类 10
birthday ['bə:θdi] *n.* 生日 3
both [bəuθ] *adv.* & *pron.*
两个(人,……)都 7
both ... and ... ……
和……两者都 13
bowl [bəul] *n.* 碗 3
bread [bred] *n.* 面包 3
breakfast ['brekfəst] *n.*
早餐 12
bright [brait] *adj.*
明亮的;耀眼的 10
busy ['bizi] *adj.*
忙的;繁忙的 8
but [bʌt, bət] *conj.* 但是 4
prep. 除了 13
by [bai] *prep.*
在……旁,靠近 10

C

can [kæn, kən] *v. aux.*
能 4
Can I help you? 要我帮忙吗?(我能帮你(们)什么忙?) 6
can't [kɑ:nt] = **cannot** ['kænɔt] 不能 6
card [kɑ:d] *n.* 卡片;名片 13
carry ['kæri] *v.*
运送;手提,肩挑 8
certainly ['sə:tnli] *adv.*
当然,当然可以 6
chicken ['tʃikin] *n.*
鸡肉;小鸡 3
child [tʃaild] *n.* 小孩
children ['tʃildrən] (*pl.*) 8
clean [kli:n] *v.*
擦干净,把……弄干净 8
climb [klaim] *v.*
爬;攀登 10
clock [klɔk] *n.* 时钟 4
cold [kəuld] *adj.*
冷的,寒冷的 15
come down 下来 12
come out 出来 15
come up 走过来;走近 16
comrade ['kɔmrid] *n.*
同志 6
cool [ku:l] *adj.*
凉的,凉快的 16
country ['kʌntri] *n.* 国家 8
crop [krɔp] *n.* 庄稼;收成 15

D

dad [dæd] *n.*
(口语)爸爸,爹爹 3
daddy ['dædi] = dad 3
dance [dɑ:ns] *v.* 跳舞 10
dear [diə] *adj.* 亲爱的 11
dig [dig] *v.* 挖,掘 8
dining-room ['dainiŋrum]
n. 餐室,食堂 8
do [du:, du] *v. aux.* (构成疑问句及否定句用的助动词,无词义)
does [dʌz, dəz] *v. aux.*
(只用于第三人称单数) 10
do (some) cleaning 扫除 13
draw [drɔ:] *v.* 画,绘制 10

E

ear [iə] *n.* 耳朵 4
early ['ə:li] *adv.* 早 16
earth [ə:θ] *n.* 地球 15
elephant ['elifənt] *n.* 象 15
every ['evri] *adj.*
每一,每个的 11
excuse [iks'kju:z] *v.*
原谅 6
Excuse me. 对不起。
(请原谅;打扰你了。) 6
exercise ['eksəsaiz] *n.*
练习 7
eye [ai] *n.* 眼睛 4

F

factory ['fæktəri] *n.*
工厂 12
far [fɑ:] *adj.* 远的
adv. 远地 16
fast [fɑ:st] *adv.* 快地
adj. 快的 15
field [fi:ld] *n.* 地,田地 10
find [faind] *v.*
找到;发现 6
fine [fain] *adj.*
好的;美好的
adv. (口语)很好;妙 12
first [fə:st] *num.* 第一 13
adv. 首先,最初 16
fish [fiʃ] *n.* 鱼肉;鱼 3
floor [flɔ:] *n.*
(室内)地;地板 8
foot [fut] *n.* 脚
feet [fi:t] (*pl.*) 4
football ['futbɔ:l] *n.*

足球 11
fourth [fɔ:θ] *num.* 第四
n. (月的)第四日 13
fox [fɔks] *n.* 狐狸 12
Friday ['fraidi] *n.*
星期五 11
from [frɔm, frəm] *prep.*
从;从……起;由
from ... to ...
从……到…… 11

G

garden ['gɑ:dn] *n.* 花园 13
get in 收获;收割 15
get on 上(车) 7
get ready for
为……准备好 15
get (to) *v.* 到达 16
get warmer 变得更暖和 15
give [giv] *v.* 给 3
glad [glæd] *adj.*
高兴的,乐意的 12
go on 继续 16
go skating (去)滑冰 15
go swimming (去)游泳 15
good-bye ['gud'bai]
interj. 再见 12
granny ['græni] *n.*
老奶奶;祖母,外祖母 7
grow [grəu] *v.* 生长 15

H

half [hɑ:f] *n.* 半,一半 12
handwriting ['hændraitiŋ]
n. 书法;笔迹 15
happy ['hæpi] *adj.*
高兴的,幸福的
Happy birthday.
(祝你)生日快乐。 3
hare [hɛə] *n.* 野兔 16
harvest ['hɑ:vist] *n.* 收获
harvest-time
['hɑ:vist 'taim] *n.*
收获季节 15
have [hæv, həv] *v.* 有
has [hæz, həz] *v.* 有
(只用于第三人称单数) 4
have a good time 玩得很
高兴;过得很愉快 10
have a rest 休息一会儿 16
have breakfast 吃早饭 12
have (one's) seat
坐(某人的)座位 7
hear [hiə] *v.* 听见,听 12

heavy [ˈhevi] *adj.* 重的 15
help [help] *v.* 帮助，帮忙 6
help yourself [ˈhelp jɔːˈself] (to some fish)
随便吃(吃些鱼吧) 3
Here's a. ... 这儿有…… 6
Here you are. 给你。 3
hers [həːz] *pron.* 她的 6
hey [hei] *interj.* 嗨 10
high [hai] *adv.* 高高地
adj. 高的 12
hill [hil] *n.* 小山 8
him [him] *pron.*
他(宾格) 3
hot [hɔt] *adj.* 热的 16
How hard all these people are working!
所有这些人干得多起劲啊! 8
How slow he is!
他(是)多么慢啊! 16
hurry [ˈhʌri] *v.*
赶紧；匆忙 3

I

I see. (我)明白了。 12
I'm coming. 我就来。 3
in a minute 一会儿，立刻 16
ink [iŋk] *n.* 墨水 4
interesting [ˈintristiŋ]
adj. 有趣味的，引起兴趣的 10
It's time to get up. (是)该起床(的时候)了。 4
It's very nice of you!
你(你们)真太好了! 7
its [its] *pron.* 它的 4

J

jacket [ˈdʒækit] *n.* 上衣 6
John [dʒɔn] 约翰(男名) 6
June [dʒuːn] *n.* 六月 13

K

kind [kaind] *n.* 种类 10
know [nəu] *v.*
知道；懂得；认识 11

L

lake [leik] *n.* 湖 10
large [lɑːdʒ] *adj.*
大的；巨大的 11
last [lɑːst] *adj.* 最后的 13
leg [leg] *n.* 腿 4

letter ['letə] *n.* 信;字母 11
listen ['lisn] *v.* 听
listen to 听 7
live [liv] *v.* 居住 13
look for 寻找 13
look up 向上看;仰望 12
lot [lɔt] *n.* 许多
a lot of [ə 'lɔt əv]
许多 8
lunch [lʌntʃ] *n.* 午餐 12

M

make [meik] *v.*
造,制作;使…… 12
make our country beautiful 使我们国家变得美丽 8
March [mɑ:tʃ] *n.* 三月 8
Mary ['mɛəri] 玛丽(女名) 4
May [mei] *n.* 五月 11
meat [mi:t] *n.* 肉 3
milk [milk] *n.* 奶,牛奶 3
mine [main] *pron.* 我的 6
Mmm [m] *interj.* 嗯 16
model ['mɔdl] *n.* 模型 12
monitor ['mɔnitə] *n.*
班长 8
moon [mu:n] *n.* 月亮 15
mouth [mauθ] *n.* 嘴 4
Mr = mister ['mistə] *n.*
先生(用于姓名前) 12
much [mʌtʃ] *adj.*
许多,多;大量的 3
adv. 很,非常 7
must [mʌst, məst]
v. aux. 必须,应当 12

N

nearby ['niəbai]
adj. 附近的 *adv.* 附近 6
news [nju:z] *n.*
新闻,消息 12
next [nekst] *adj.* 下一
个,紧接(后面)的;其次 6
night [nait] *n.* 夜晚 4
no [nəu] *adj.* 没有 4
nothing ['nʌθiŋ] *n.* & *pron.*
没有东西,没有什么 13

O

o'clock [ə'klɔk] *n.*
……点钟 12
of course [əf 'kɔ:s] 当然 15
often ['ɔfn] *adv.*
常常,经常 11

OK (O.K.) ['əu'kei]
adv. 对;好;可以 6
one [wʌn] *pron.*
一(个,只,……)
ones [wʌnz] (*pl.*) 3
one ... the other
(two) ... 一(人或物)
……另一(两)…… 4
other ['ʌðə] *pron.* (两个中)另一个人(或事物)
others ['ʌðəz] (*pl.*) 3
ours ['auəz] *pron.* 我们的 6
out [aut] *adv.* 出;在外 13
out of ['aut əv] *prep.*
向……外 7
owner ['əunə] *n.*
物主,所有人 6

P

paper ['peipə] *n.* 纸 4
parent ['pɛərənt] *n.*
父(母)亲 8
park [pɑ:k] *n.* 公园 10
pass [pɑ:s] *v.*
传递(用具等) 3
past [pɑ:st] *prep.*
过;经过 12
peasant ['pezənt] *n.* 农民 10
perhaps [pə'hæps] *adv.*
也许,可能 6
Peter ['pi:tə] 彼得(男名) 7
picture-book ['piktʃəbuk]
n. 图画书 4
piece [pi:s] *n.*
张(片,块,……)
a piece of
一张(片,块,……) 4
plant [plɑ:nt] *v.* 种植 8
plate [pleit] *n.*
盘子;碟子 3
policeman [pə'li:smən]
n. 警察
policemen [pə'li:smən]
(*pl.*) 6
present ['preznt] *n.* 礼物 13
put [put] *v.* 放
put up 挂起;张贴 8

Q

quite [kwait] *adv.*
很,十分 6

R

radio ['reidiəu] *n.* 收音机 4

rain [rein] *v.* 下雨 *n.* 雨 15
ready ['redi] *adj.* 准备好的，有准备 3
rest [rest] *n.* 休息 16
rice [rais] *n.* 米饭；大米 3
river ['rivə] *n.* 江，河 8
round [raund] *adj.* 圆的，圆形的 *adv.* 循环地，围绕地 4
run [rʌn] *v.* 跑 13
Russian ['rʌʃən] *n.* 俄语 11

S

Saturday ['sætədi] *n.* 星期六 10
say [sei] *v.* 说，讲 7
schoolgirl ['sku:lgə:l] *n.* 中小学女学生 11
season ['si:zn] *n.* 季节 15
second ['sekənd] *n.* （月的）第二日 *num.* 第二 11
see [si:] *v.* 看见，看到；领会 12
set [set] *n.* 装置，设备； 4
shine [ʃain] *v.* 照耀；发光 10
shirt [ʃə:t] *n.* （男式）衬衫 6
sing [siŋ] *v.* 唱，演唱 10
skate [skeit] *v.* 滑冰 15
skirt [skə:t] *n.* 女裙 16
sleep [sli:p] *v.* & *n.* 睡，睡眠 12
slow [sləu] *adj.* 慢的 16
slowly ['sləuli] *adv.* 慢慢地 16
smile [smail] *v.* 微笑 12
snow [snəu] *v.* 下雪 *n.* 雪 15
so [səu] *adv.* 这么，那么 3 *conj.* 因此 7
some ..., others ... 一些（人，物）……，其他（人，物）…… 8
something ['sʌmθiŋ] *pron.* 某事（物） 12
sometimes ['sʌmtaimz] *adv.* 有时 11
soon [su:n] *adv.* 不久；很快 11
speak [spi:k] *v.* 说话 11
spring [spriŋ] *n.* 春天，春季 8
still [stil] *adv.* 还；仍旧 15
stop [stɔp] *v.* 停止，阻止 *n.* 停车站

bus stop 公共汽车站 7
story ['stɔ:ri] *n.*
故事，小说 4
story-book ['stɔ:ribuk]
n. 故事书 4
street [stri:t] *n.* 街道 10
summer ['sʌmə] *n.*
夏天，夏季 15
sun [sʌn] *n.* 太阳 10
Sunday['sʌndi] *n.* 星期日 7
supper ['sʌpə] *n.* 晚餐 3
sure [ʃuə] *adj.*
确信的，有把握的 16
sweep [swi:p] *v.*
扫，扫除 8
swim [swim] *v.* 游泳 11

T

take [teik] *v.*
拿，取；就(座等) 7
take down 拿下 8
take ... out
把……拿出来，取出 13
take this seat
坐这个座位 7
talk [tɔ:k] *v.* 说话，谈话 4
tea [ti:] *n.* 茶；茶叶 3
tell [tel] *v.* 告诉；讲述 4
text [tekst] *n.* 课文；课本 7
than [ðæn, ðən] *conj.*
比 16
thank [θæŋk] *n.* (只用复数)谢谢，感谢 3
theirs [ðɛəz] *pron.*
他(她)们的；它们的 6
them [ðem, ðəm] *pron.*
他(她)们，它们 3
think [θiŋk] *v.*
想，思考；认为 13
third [θə:d] *num.*
第三 13
Thursday ['θə:zdi] *n.*
星期四 11
tomato [tə'mɑ:təu] *n.*
西红柿 10
too [tu:] *adv.* 太 10
tortoise ['tɔ:təs] *n.* 乌龟 16
truck [trʌk] *n.* 卡车 16
Tuesday ['tju:zdi] *n.*
星期二 11
turn green 变绿(色) 15
turn ... over
把……翻过来 13

TV ['ti:'vi:] =television ['teli,vizən] *n.* 电视机;电视
TV set 电视机 4

U

usually ['ju:ʒuəli] *adv.* 通常 13

V

very ['veri] *adv.* 很
very much 非常 7

W

wait [weit] *v.* 等,等候
wait for 等候 7
wake [weik] *v.* 醒
wake ... up 唤醒;弄醒 4
wake up 醒,醒来 16
walk [wɔ:k] *v.* 走;散步 10
warm [wɔ:m] *adj.* 暖和的 15
watch [wɔtʃ] *n.* 手表 6
v. 观看,注视 11
water ['wɔ:tə] *n.* 水 3
v. 浇水,灌溉 8
way [wei] *n.* 路,道路 12
weather ['weðə] *n.* 天气 15
Wednesday ['wenzdi] *n.* 星期三 11
well [wel] *adv.* 好
interj. 好;那么;哎呀 12
what [wɔt] *adj.* (用于感叹句中)多么
What a nice watch! 多么好看的一块手表啊! 6
when [wen] *adv.* 什么时候,何时 13
which [witʃ] *adj.* & *pron.* 哪一个,哪些 6
why [wai] *adv.* 为什么 3
winter ['wintə] *n.* 冬天,冬季 15
with [wið] *prep.* 和……在一起 10
word [wə:d] *n.* 词,单词 7
write down 写下,记下 7
write to 写信给…… 11

Y

yet [jet] *adv.* 仍然 12
yours [jə:z] *pron.* 你的;你们的 6

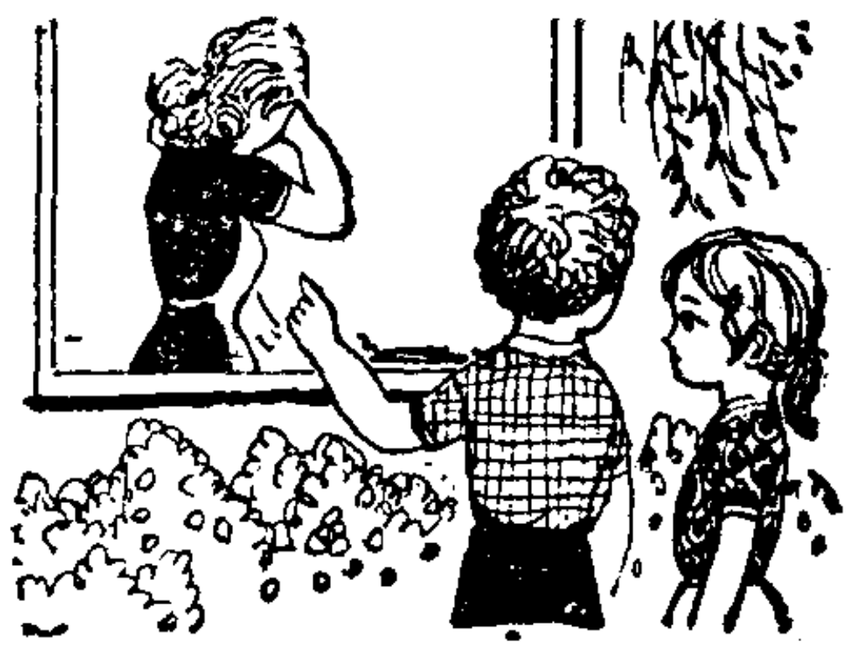
Z

zoo [zu:] *n.* 动物园 7

Supplementary Readings

1. Why Is Mum Crying?

Sue: Look, Sandy! Mum's crying. What's the matter with her?



Sandy: Poor Mum! Does she miss Grandma?

Sue: I don't know. And maybe she misses Daddy, too.

Sandy: Let's go and ask her, then.

Sue: All right.

(They come into the kitchen.)

Sandy: Excuse me, Mum!

Sue: Hi, Mum!

Mum: Yes?

Sandy: Mum, are you ...?

Mum: What's the matter with you, Sandy?

Sandy: Do you miss Grandma, Mum?

Mum: Sometimes. Why?

Sue: Do you miss Daddy?

Mum: Yes, sometimes. But not now. Why are you asking, children?

Sue
Sandy : Why are you crying, Mum?

Mum: Well, look! I'm cutting these!

Sue
Sandy : Oh, onions!

cry *v.* 哭
Sue [sju:] 秀(女名)
Sandy ['sændi] 桑迪(男名)
matter ['mætə] *n.* 事情
What's the matter
with her? 她怎么啦?
poor [puə] *adj.* 可怜的; 贫穷的
miss *v.* 惦念
maybe ['meibi] *adv.* 大概, 或许
kitchen ['kitʃin] *n.* 厨房
hi [hai] *interj.* 嗨
cut *v.* 切; 割
onion ['ʌnjən] *n.* 洋葱

2. The Crow and the Fox

A crow is sitting in a big tree. She has a big piece of meat in her mouth. "My babies will have a nice breakfast," she thinks.

An old fox is looking for his breakfast. He sees the crow and the meat. "How can I get that piece of meat?" he thinks.

"Good morning, Mrs Crow," says the fox sweetly. "How are you?"

But the crow doesn't say a word.

"You have very nice babies, Mrs Crow," says the fox very sweetly. "How are they? May I see them?"

Still, the crow doesn't say a word.

"You're very beautiful, Mrs Crow. And you have a beautiful voice, too," says the fox very, very sweetly. "Will you please sing a song for me?"

Mrs Crow thinks, "How nice Mr Fox is! I must sing him a song." So she opens her mouth, "Caw! Caw!" Down drops the meat into the fox's mouth.

crow [krəu] *n.* 乌鸦
will *v. aux.* 会，将要
Mrs ['misiz] *n.* 夫人
sweetly ['swi:tli] *adv.* 亲切地
may *v. aux.* 可以
voice [vɔis] *n.* 嗓子，嗓音
Will you please ...? 请你……好吗？
song *n.* 歌，歌曲
caw [kɔ:] *v.* (乌鸦等)呱呱地叫
drop [drɔp] *v.* 落下，掉下
into ['intu, 'intə] *prep.* 进入；到……里

初级中学课本
英　语
第二册
人民教育出版社外语室英语组编订
*
人民教育出版社出版
北京出版社重印
北京市新华书店发行
北京印刷一厂印刷
*
787×1092毫米　32开本　印张4.75　插页2　字数83,000
1982年5月第1版　1989年1月第7次印刷
ISBN 7-107-00117-5/G·174(课)　定价 0.48元

初级中学课本 英语 第三册

初级中学课本

英语

第三册

English 3

人民教育出版社

January

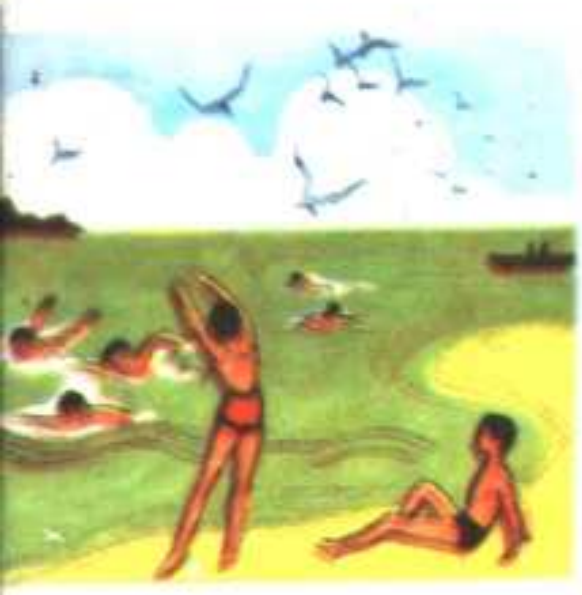
February

March

April

May

June



July

August

September

October

November

December

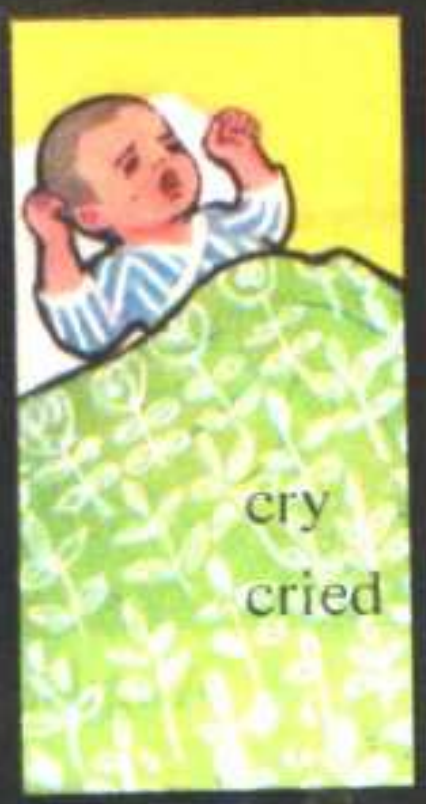
jump
jumped

repair
repaired

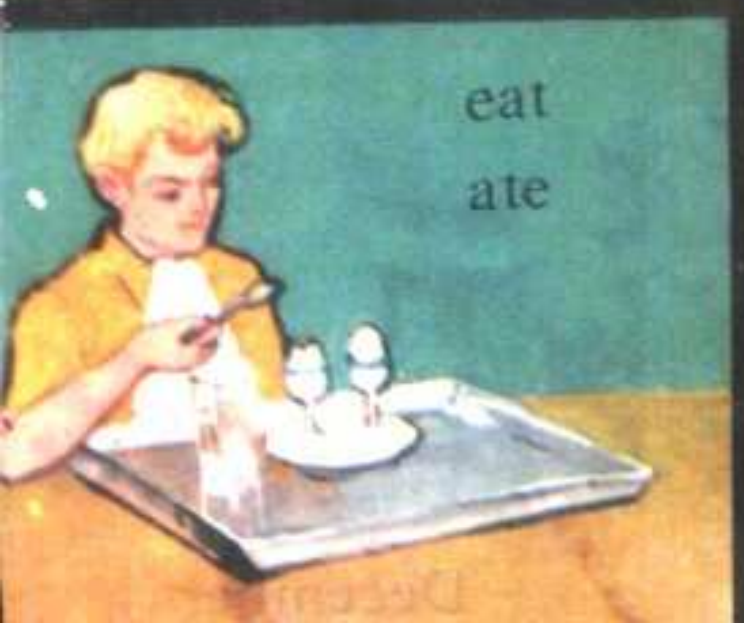
listen
listened

visit
visited

stop
stopped


cry
cried

make
made


eat
ate

buy
bought

CONTENTS

Lesson 1 1

Drills: 1. I'm(not) going to see a film this afternoon.

2. Are you going to have geography this year?

3. What's Jane going to do this evening?

Text: The New School Year

Grammar: Be going to

Pronunciation and Intonation: [i:] e, ee, ea, ie; [e] e, ea; Sense Group and Intonation

Lesson 2 10

Drills: 1. When are you going to do your homework?

2. Where are they going to have the match?

3. Who's going to give the talk?

Dialogue: What Are You Going to Do Tomorrow?

Grammar: Members of the Sentence (I)

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ei] a, ay; [æ] a

Lesson 3 20

Drills: 1. Can you skate?

Yes, I can. (No, I can't.)
2. I can't be here so early.
3. May I use your pen?
4. Must I clean the room now?
Yes, you must. (No, you needn't.)
Dialogue: At the Library
Grammar: Kinds of Verbs
Pronunciation and Intonation: [u:] u, oo; [ju:]u, ew; [u] oo
A Rhyme: My Book
Lesson 4 30
Drills: 1. He was(They were)here a moment ago.
2. Was your father at home last night?
Yes, he was. (No, he wasn't.)
3. Were they busy yesterday evening?
Yes, they were. (No, they weren't.)
4. When (Where) were you born?
Dialogue: A Telephone Call
Pronunciation and Intonation: [əu] o, o(ld), oa, ow; [ɔ] o, a
Lesson 5 39
Drills: 1. I got up at six this morning.
I didn't get up so early.
2. Did your father go to work early yesterday?

Yes, he did. (No, he didn't.)
3. What did you do after school?
Text: The Artist
Grammar: The Past Indefinite Tense
Pronunciation and Intonation: [tʃ] ch, tch; [dʒ] g, j; [kw] qu; [tw] tw
A Rhyme: Do Your Best
Lesson 6 50
Drills: 1. What day was yesterday?
What was the date?
2. How many classes did you have yesterday afternoon?
3. Who did she go with?
4. What time did they get to the zoo last Monday?
How long did they stay there?
Text: "The Moving Blackboard"
Grammar: Members of the Sentence (II)
Pronunciation and Intonation: [ai] i, y, igh; [i] i, y; [ɑ:] a(s), ar
Lesson 7 62
Text: A Page from a Student's Diary
Lesson 8 (Revision) 70
Lesson 9 74
Drills: 1. Which picture is more beautiful?

2. Which lesson is the most difficult in Book Two?
3. Tom writes more carefully than Peter. He writes the most carefully in our class.
4. Joan is as tall as Kate.

Dialogue: The Moon

Grammar: The Comparative and Superlative Degrees of Adjectives and Adverbs (II)

Pronunciation and Intonation: [iə] ear; [εə] air; [uə] ure; [f] f, ph

A *Rhyme*: The Moon

Lesson 10 86

Drills: 1. It was cold yesterday, wasn't it?
Yes, it was.
2. You were tired after the sports meet, weren't you?
Yes, I was.
3. You went home late yesterday, didn't you?
Yes, I did. (No, I didn't.)

Text: A Way Out

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ə:] er, ir, ur, ear; [əi] oi, oy; [au] ou, ow

A Rhyme: Friendship

Lesson 11 96

Drills: 1. I'll wash the clothes after lunch.

2. Will you be here this afternoon?

Yes, I will. (No, I won't.)

Dialogue: Shopping

Grammar: The Future Indefinite Tense

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ɔ:] or, ough, al, au, ore; [ʃ] sh; [ʒ] s

Lesson 12 106

Drills: 1. I (He, She, They) can work it out myself (himself, herself, themselves).

2. Can you repair it yourself?

3. We teach ourselves.

Text: Two Friends and a Bear

Grammar: The Reflexive Pronouns

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ʌ] u, o; [r] r, wr; [tr] tr; [dr] dr

Lesson 13 115

Drills: 1. I want to have a word with him.

2. Please ask her to call me tomorrow.

3. Can you come to see the film with me now?

Text: Lenin and the Guard

Grammar: The Infinitive (I)

Pronunciation and Intonation: [ə] a, e, o, u,

er, or; [i] a, e, i, y
Lesson 14 ····· 124
Text: The Story of Little Gauss
Lesson 15 (Revision) ····· 130
Vocabulary ····· 134
Irregular Verbs ····· 145
Supplementary Readings: 1. What Am I? ····· 147
2. The Tiger and the Monkey ····· 149
3. A Surprise for Abe (1) ····· 151
4. A Surprise for Abe (2) ····· 153

LESSON ONE

The First Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: | Do you / Do they / Does Mary | often go to the cinema?

B: No, but | I'm / they're / she's | going to see a film this afternoon.

| I'm not / They aren't / She isn't | going to have any lessons.

B

A: Are you going to / have geography

this year?
this term?
next year?

B: Yes, I am.

A:

Is Kate
Are they
Is your brother

going to have geography, too?

B: Yes, I think so.
(No, I don't think so.)

C

A: What are you going to do

this evening?
this Sunday?
tomorrow?

B: I'm going to write some letters.

A: What's Jane going to do?

B: She's going to

do her lessons.
play volleyball.
play tennis.

TEXT

THE NEW SCHOOL YEAR

It's September, and we're back at school. It's good to see all my teachers and friends again. They all look fine.

We're in Grade Two this year. We're going to have a new subject — physics. I hear physics isn't easy. I'm going to work hard at it. I'm not very good at maths, but Wei Fang says she's going to help me. I think I can do better than

last year.

I like English very much. I always work hard at it. This year I'm going to do more speaking. Zhang Hong likes English too, but he needs help. I'm going to help him.

This term I'm going to work for the wall-newspaper. My classmates say I draw well, and my handwriting is good. It's interesting work, and I like it.

I'm going to do my best this year.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

have a swim 游泳

cinema ['sinimə]
(cin-e-ma) *n.* 电影院；电影

go to the cinema
上电影院，去看电影

film *n.* 电影

geography [dʒi'ɔgrəfi]
(ge-ogra-phy) *n.* 地理学

term *n.* 学期

tomorrow [tə'mɔrəu]
(to-mor-row) *adv.* & *n.* (在)明天

do one's lessons 做（预习或复习）功课

volleyball ['volibɔ:l]
(vol-ley-ball) *n.* 排球

tennis ['tenis] (ten-nis)
n. 网球

* * *

September [səp'tembə]
(Sep-tem-ber) *n.* 九月

again [ə'gen] (a-gain) *adv.* 又，再

subject ['sʌbdʒikt]
(sub-ject) *n.* 科目

physics ['fiziks] (phys-ics) *n.* 物理学
easy ['i:zi] *adj.* 容易
work hard at 努力学习
last *adj.* 刚过去的
last year 去年
always ['ɔ:lweiz] (al-ways) *adv.* 总是，一直
more [mɔ:] *adj.* (many, much 的比较级) 更多的，较多的
adv. (much 的比较级)更
need *vt.* & *n.* 需要
newspaper ['nju:s,peipə] (news-paper) *n.* 报纸
classmate ['klɑ:smeit] (class-mate) *n.* 同班同学
do one's best 尽力

NOTES

1. It's good to see all my teachers and friends again.
又见到所有的老师和朋友，真是高兴。

2. They all look fine. 他们气色都很好。
这里 look 是"显得"、"看起来"的意思。

3. I think I can do better than last year. 我想我能比去年学得好一些。
better 是副词 well 的比较级。do well 是"干得不错"、"进行得很好"的意思。又如:
He does well in English. 他英语学得不错。

4. 1) ..., but he needs ***help***.
2) I'm going to ***help*** him.
help 在第 1)句中作名词，在第 2)句中作动词。
work 也是既可以作名词，也可以作动词。例如:
1) It's interesting ***work***. (作名词)
2) This term I'm going to ***work*** for the wall-newspaper.

(作动词)

GRAMMAR

Be going to 结构

"Be going to + 动词原形" 表示就要（即将），打算(做什么）或将要发生的事。常与 tomorrow, tomorrow afternoon,next week, this year 等表示将来的时间状语连用。如:

We're going to have a new subject this year.

Is Li Ping going to play basket-ball with us?

What are you going to do next Sunday?

It's going to rain this afternoon.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

[i:]	e	be	these	Chinese
	ee	see	need	sleep
	ea	read	speak	easy
	ie	piece	field	
[e]	e	set	best	help
	ea	bread	ready	peasant

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) 'Are you 'going to 'have ge'ography | this ↗year?
'Are we 'going to 'see an 'English 'film | this ↗week?

2) I'm 'no(t) 'going to 'have any ↘lessons.

He's 'no(t) 'going to 'write any ↘letters.

3) 'This ↗year | I'm 'going to 'do 'more ↘speaking.
'This ↗term | they're 'going to 'do 'more↘writing.

4) I'm 'going to 'do my 'best | this ↘year.
She's 'going to 'do her 'best | this ↘term.

EXERCISES

1. Put the following into Chinese:

1) Li Ping often **does** his lessons in the afternoon.
2) I'm going to **do** more speaking in class this year.
3) What's Mary **doing** now? She's **doing** her homework.
4) I'm not good at geography, but I'm going to **do** my best this term.
5) I think I can **do** better in English this year than last year.
6) What's Kate going to **do** this Sunday?
She's going to **do** some cleaning at home.

2. Make these sentences interrogative, then negative:

Model: We're going to play football tomorrow afternoon. ⟶
What are you going to do tomorrow afternoon?
Are you going to play football tomorrow afternoon?
We aren't going to play football tomorrow afternoon.

1) I'm going to draw a picture this evening.

2) Betty is going to write to her grandma after lunch.
3) They're going to play tennis this week.
4) We're going to have a swim next Wednesday.
5) My brother is going to do his lessons after supper.

3. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:
   1) The students ____ some trees tomorrow.
      They often ____ trees in spring. (plant)
   2) We ____ the classroom this afternoon.
      ____ you ____ your classroom too? (clean)
   3) Mary usually ____ at six o'clock. But tomorrow morning she ____ at half past five. (get up)
   4) The students of Class Two ____ an English lesson now. We ____ ours tomorrow morning. (have)

4. Put the words in brackets in their proper places in the sentences:
   1) Li Hong's parents go to work early. (always)
   2) Our teacher comes to school at seven o'clock. (usually)
   3) We play volleyball after class. (often)
   4) Betty does her lessons after supper. (usually)
   5) Tom goes to the cinema with his parents. (sometimes)

5. Answer the following questions:
   1) Are you all back at school now?
   2) It's good to see your teachers and friends again, isn't it? Do they all look fine?

3) Which grade are you in this year?

4) Are you going to have a new subject this year? What is it?

5) Is physics easy? You're going to work hard at it, aren't you?

6) Do you like English? Are you doing well in it?

7) Do you often speak English? Are you going to do more speaking this term?

8) Are you going to do any work for your class?

LESSON TWO

The Second Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: What are you doing over there?

Are you	drawing a picture?
	doing your homework?
	writing a letter to Grandpa?

B: No. I'm reading the newspaper.

A: When are you going to	draw the picture	then?
	do your homework	
	write the letter	

B: This evening.

B

A: What are they going to do

the day after tomorrow?
this Sunday morning?
next Saturday afternoon?

B: They're going to have a volleyball match.

A: Where are they going to have it?

B: They're going to have it

on the playground
in our school.
at the Children's Palace.

C

A: Are we going to have

a meeting	this week?
a talk	
an English film	

B: Yes, we are.

A: Who's going to

speak at the meeting?
give the talk?
buy the tickets?

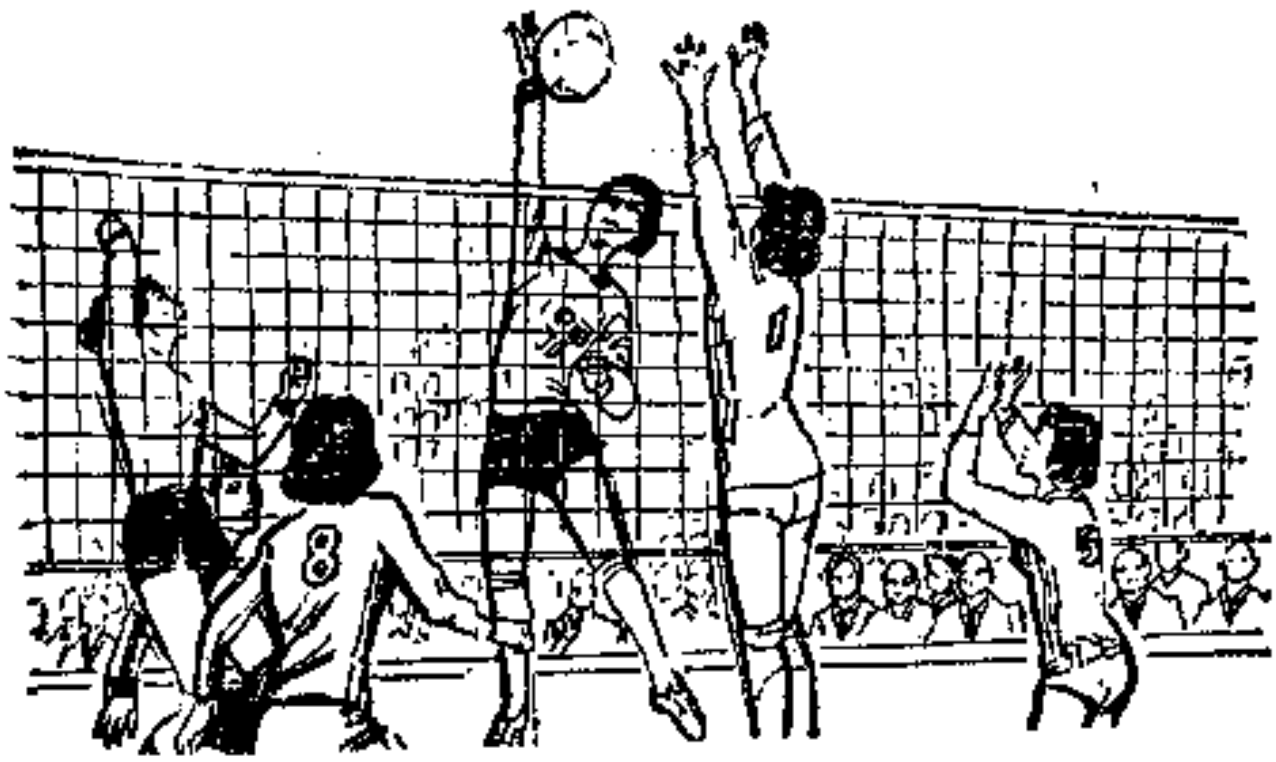
B:

Our teacher	is, I think.
Comrade Wu	
Li Ping	

WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO TOMORROW?

Zhang Hong: It's Sunday tomorrow, you know. What are you going to do?

Wang Lin: I'm going to watch a volleyball match in the Capital Stadium. It's between a Japanese team and a Chinese team.



Zhang Hong: That's great. What time is it going to be?

Wang Lin: At four o'clock in the afternoon. I have two tickets here. I can let you have one. You want to go,

don't you?

Zhang Hong: Of course I do, but I can't. We're going to have a table tennis match tomorrow afternoon.

Wang Lin: I see. Who are you going to play?

Zhang Hong: A team from the No. 7 Middle School.

Wang Lin: Where are you going to have the match?

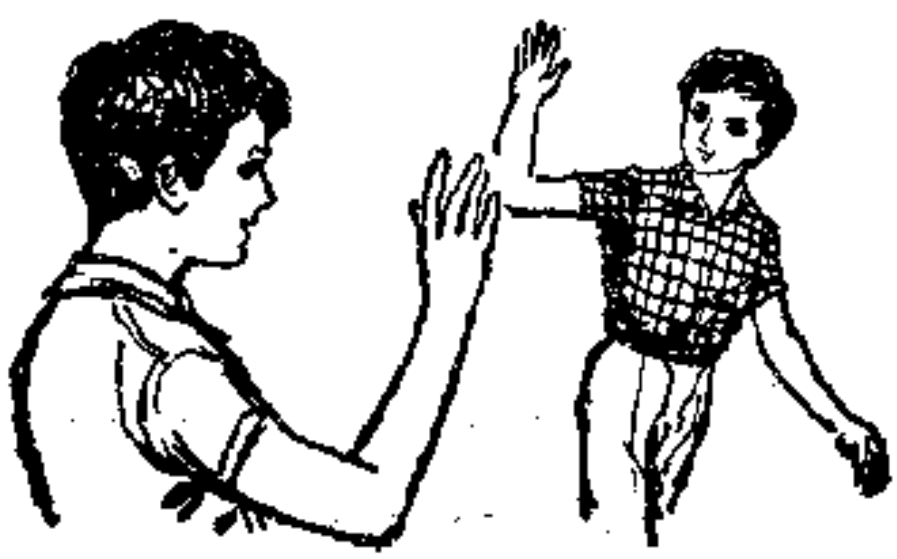
Zhang Hong: At the Children's Palace. By the way, where's Li Ping, do you know?

Wang Lin: He's at home. Why?

Zhang Hong: He's got my bat. I must get it back from him.

Wang Lin: His home isn't far from here. I think you can find him at home.

Zhang Hong: Right. I'd better go and look for



him now. See you later.

Wang Lin: See you later.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

the day after tomorrow 后天

match [mætʃ] *n.* 比赛,竞赛
have a match 举行(进行)一场比赛

playground ['pleigraund] (play-ground) *n.* (学校的) 操场; (儿童) 游戏场

palace ['pælis] *n.* 宫,宫殿
the Children's Palace 少年宫

meeting ['mi:tiŋ] (meet-ing) *n.* 会,集会
have a meeting 开会

talk *n.* & *vi.* 演讲;谈话
give a talk 做讲演(报告)

buy [bai] *vt.* 买

ticket ['tikit] *n.* 票,券

* * *

capital ['kæpitl] (cap-i-tal) *n.* 首都;省会

stadium ['steidjəm] (sta-dium) *n.* 体育场
the Capital Stadium 首都体育馆

between [bi'twi:n] (be-tween) *prep.* 在(两者)之间

Japanese [ˌdʒæpə'ni:z] (Japa-nese) *adj.* 日本的;日本人的
n. 日本人;日语

team *n.* 队;组

great [greit] *adj.* 伟大的;重大的;(口语)美妙的

want [wɔnt] *vt.* 要,想要;需要

table tennis *n.* 乒乓球

by the way 顺便说,顺便问一下

get *vt.* 得到,获得

bat *n.* (网球,乒乓球等的)球拍

late *adv.* & *adj.* 迟(的),晚(的)

NOTES

1. Are we going to have a talk this week? 这个星期我们听报告吗?

   Who's going to give the talk? 谁做报告?

   动词 have 因其后面跟的名词不同而有不同的含义，如 have a meeting, have lunch, have a good time, have a rest 等。

*　　*　　*

2. That's great. 好极了!
3. You want to go, don't you? 你想去，是不是?
4. He's got my bat. = He has got my bat. 他拿了我的球拍。
5. I'd better go and look for him now. 最好我现在去找他。

   I'd better = I had better, had better 的意思是"最好(做某事)"，后面跟动词原形，如:

   You'd better write him a letter now.
6. See you later. 回头见!

   later 是 late 的比较级。

GRAMMAR

句子的成分 (Members of the Sentence) (I)

组成句子的各个部分叫做句子的成分，即: 主语，谓语; 表语，宾语，宾语补足语，定语和状语。

1. 主语 (The Subject) 和谓语 (The Predicate)

   句子一般是由主语和谓语两个部分构成的。主语表明

句子里所谈的是“什么人”或“什么事物”。谓语说明主语“做什么”，“是什么”或者“怎么样”。如:

主语部分	谓语部分
We	‖ ***work*** hard.
Betty	‖ ***likes*** her new bike.
My ***parents***	‖ ***are*** both teachers.

主语(主语部分里主要的词)常用名词、代词或相当于名词的词或短语等;谓语(谓语部分里主要的词)用动词。

谓语和主语在“人称”和“数”两方面必须一致。如:

I ***am reading.***	We ***are reading.***
You ***are reading.***	You ***are reading.***
He / She } ***is reading.***	They ***are reading.***

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

[ei]	a	name	make	plate
		later	stadium	radio
	ay	way	May	playground
[æ]	a	bat	match	thank
		daddy	factory	happy

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) 'What are you 'going to 'do | the 'day after to↘morrow?

'What are you 'going to 'read | the 'day after to↘morrow?

2) 'Who's going to 'buy the ↘tickets?

ˈWho's going to ˈgive the ↘talk?

3) ˈBy the ↘way, | ˈwhere's ˈLi ↘Ping, | do you ↗know?

ˈBy the ↘way, | ˈwhat's her ↘name, | do you ↗know?

4) You ˈwan(t) to ↘go, | ✕ don't you?

She ˈwants to ↘play, | ✕ doesn'(t) she?

EXERCISES

1. Give the English for these:

A. 1) 今年　　2) 明年

3) 下星期三下午　　4) 这个星期天晚上

5) 明天　　6) 明天晚上

7) 后天　　8) 这个星期

9) 下星期　　10) 下个月

B. 1) 开会　　2) 吃早饭

3) 举行乒乓球赛　　4) 休息一下

5) 过得很愉快　　6) 上地理课

2. Ask questions after the model:

Model: Wei Fang is going to sing at the Children's Palace this afternoon. ⟶

Who's going to sing at the Children's Palace this afternoon?

What's Wei Fang going to do at the Children's Palace this afternoon?

When is Wei Fang going to sing at the Chil-

dren's Palace?

Where is Wei Fang going to sing this afternoon?

1) Peter is going to skate in the park this afternoon.
2) We're going to have a football match on the playground the day after tomorrow.
3) Comrade Zhang is going to give us a talk in our school next Wednesday.
4) I'm going to have a swim in the river this Sunday.

3. Fill in the blanks after the model:

Model: You're in Grade Two now, aren't you?

1) Your father is a worker, ___?
2) Mary is going to study Chinese, ___?
3) We're going to have a meeting this week, ___?
4) Jack is playing in the garden, ___?
5) They all look fine, ___?
6) You like English, ___?
7) Kate swims the best in her class, ___?
8) Mike watches TV every day, ___?

4. Answer the following questions:

1) What's Wang Lin going to do tomorrow? The match is between a Japanese team and a Chinese team, isn't it?
2) What time is the match going to be?
3) How many tickets has Wang Lin?
4) Does Zhang Hong want to watch the match? Can he go? Why not?

5) Where are Zhang Hong and his classmates going to have the match?

6) Do you like sports? Which sport do you like best?

7) You have sports every day, don't you?

8) What time do you have sports?

9) Where do you usually play after class?

10) Do you like singing, dancing or drawing?

5. Give the English for these:

1) 你在干什么？
这个星期天你打算干什么？

2) 他们现在在哪儿举行排球赛？
他们明天准备在哪儿举行排球赛？

3) 谁正在屋里扫地？
明天谁扫地？

4) 下雨啦。
要下雨啦。

LESSON THREE

The Third Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Can you

skate?
dance?
answer this question?

B: No, I can't, but

John	can.
they	
my sister	

B

A: Can you be | here / ready / back | at eight tomorrow morning?

B: Sorry, I can't be | here / ready / back | so early.

C

A: Excuse me, may I | look at that book? / have a glass of water? / use your pen? |

B: Certainly. Here you are.

D

A: Must I | finish my homework / clean the room / stay here | now?

B: Yes, you must.
(No, you needn't. You may go home now.)

DIALOGUE

AT THE LIBRARY

It's four o'clock in the afternoon. Liu Ying is at the library. She's going to borrow some books. She's speaking to the assistant.

Liu Ying: Good afternoon!

Assistant: Good afternoon! Can I help you?

Liu Ying: Do you have *From Earth to Moon*?

Assistant: Let me see .... Ah, here it is.

Liu Ying: Thank you. How long may I keep it?

Assistant: Two weeks.

Liu Ying: Can I keep it a little longer?

Assistant: Yes, you can. But you must come and renew it if you can't finish it in time.

Liu Ying: Must I bring the book back for that?

Assistant: Yes, you must. And you mustn't lend it to others.

Liu Ying: All right, I won't. May I look at some of the new books?

Assistant: Certainly. They're over there.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

answer ['ɑ:nsə] *vt.* & *n.* 回答

question ['kwestʃən] (ques-tion) *n.* 问题

can't [kɑ:nt] = cannot

sorry ['sɔri] *adj.* 难过的；对不起的

may [mei] *v. aux.* 可以

use [ju:z] *vt.* 用；使用

finish ['finiʃ] (fin-ish) *vt.* 完成，结束

stay [stei] *vi.* 停留；暂住

need *v. aux.* 需要，必要

needn't ['ni:dnt] = need not

* * *

library ['laibrəri] (li-bra-ry) *n.* 图书馆(室)

borrow ['bɔrəu] *vt.* 借

assistant [ə'sistənt] (as-sist-ant) *n.* 助手；图书管理员

keep *vt.* 保存，保持；留住

a little 一点儿

long *adv.* 长久
renew [ri'nju:] (re-new) *vt.* 续借(图书);重新开始
if *conj.* 假如,如果
in time 及时
bring *vt.* 带来
mustn't ['mʌsnt] = must not
lend *vt.* 把……借给
will *v.aux.* 将;会;愿
won't [wəunt] = will not

NOTES

1. I can and I can sing in English, too. 我会唱,而且我还会用英语唱。

这里 in 是介词,表示表述的方法,"用,以"的意思。又如:

talk in Russian 用俄语交谈
write in Japanese 用日语写

* * *

2. *From Earth to Moon* 《从地球到月球》(书名)

这是法国作家儒勒·凡尔纳写的一部科学幻想小说。

名词 sun, moon 和 earth 之前一般要加定冠词 the,但在书名中有时可以省去。

3. But you must come and renew it if you can't finish it in time. 但是如果你到时候没有看完,就必须来续借。

4. Must I bring the book back for that? 我续借时必须把这本书带来吗?

for that 相当于 for renewing the book (续借这本书)。

GRAMMAR

动词的种类 (Kinds of Verbs)

动词是表示动作或状态的词，按其词义和在句子中的作用可分为下列四类:

1. 行为动词，又称实义动词 (The Notional Verb) 表示动作或状态，能独立作谓语。如:

   I'*m reading* the newspaper now.

   She *has* some books.

   They often *come* back early.

   行为动词又可分为及物动词 (The Transitive Verb, 缩写为 *vt.*) 和不及物动词 (The Intransitive Verb, 缩写为*vi.*)。及物动词后面带宾语。

2. 连系动词 (The Link Verb, 缩写为 *link v.*) 不能独立作谓语，必须与表语一起构成谓语。最常用的连系动词是 be (是)，另外还有 look (显得，看起来)，turn (变成)，get (变得)，become (变得，成为)等。如:

   His father *is* a teacher.

   They all *look* fine.

3. 助动词 (The Auxiliary Verb, 缩写为 *v. aux.*) 本身没有词义，不能独立作谓语，只能和主要动词一起构成谓语动词，表示否定、疑问、时态或其它语法关系。常用的助动词有 be, do, have 等。如:

   He *doesn't speak* Russian. (表示否定)

   They *are doing* their homework now. (表示进行时态)

   Do you often *go* swimming in summer? (表示疑问)

4. 情态动词 (The Modal Verb) 本身有一定的意义，但不能独立作谓语，只能和主要动词一起构成谓语动词，表示说话人的语气和情态。情态动词没有人称和数的变化。常用的情态动词有 can, may, must, need 等。如:

I ***can*** speak a little English.

May I come in?

Must he go now? No, he ***needn't.***

Can he be at the zoo tomorrow morning?

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

[u:]	u	blue	ruler	June
	oo	cool	soon	moon
[ju:]	u	use	student	excuse
	ew	news	renew	
[u]	oo	look	good	foot

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) 'Can you 'answer 'this ↗question?
'Can he 'do 'that ↗exercise?

2) Ex↗cuse me, may I have a 'glass of ↗water?
Ex↗cuse me, may I 'borrow 'this ↗foo(t)ball?

3) 'Must I 'finish my 'homewor(k) ↗now?
'Mus(t) she 'clean the 'dining-room ↗now?

EXERCISES

1. Add -s (-es) to the following verbs:

think	borrow	get	use	buy
pass	grow	begin	live	play
answer	watch	swim	wake	stay
dig	write	carry	keep	go
stop	smile	study	say	make
run	open	finish	clean	read

2. Fill in each blank with the given adjective or adverb in its proper degree:

   1) Li Ying's handwriting is ___ than Wei Fang's. Her handwriting is ___ in her class. (good)
   2) Your ruler is ___ than mine, but mine is ___ than hers. Whose ruler is ___ of the three? (long)
   3) Li Ping speaks English ___. Wu Dong speaks English ___ than Li Ping. Wei Fang speaks English ___ of the three. (well)
   4) Kate comes to school ___. Sometimes she comes to school ___ than Joan. But Tom comes earlier than Kate. He is always ___ of the three. (early)

3. Fill in the blanks with **can (can't), may, must** or **needn't**:

   1) This pencil is very short now, but I ___ still use it.
   2) ___ I go out and play basket-ball, Mum? No, you ___ finish your homework first.

3) ___ you go to the cinema with me on Tuesday afternoon?

I'm sorry I ___. *I'm going to play tennis then.*

4) ___ you answer this question?

Sorry, I ___.

5) Lanlan: ___ I watch TV this evening, Mum?

Mum: Yes, you ___. But you ___ finish your exercises first.

Lanlan: All right. ___ I write down all the words in this lesson?

Mum: No, you ___, but you ___ write down all the new words today. You ___ write down the old ones tomorrow.

4. Answer the following questions:

1) What time do you usually get up in the morning?
2) You always have breakfast at home, don't you?
3) What time do you usually go to school?
4) Which class are you in? How many students are there in your class?
5) How many classes do you have every day?
6) How many subjects do you have *this* year? What are they? Which subject do you like best?
7) Who is your physics teacher? Is physics interesting? You like it, don't you?
8) Do you like sports? What sport can you play? Can you swim? Do you often go swimming in summer?

9) Do you like reading? What do you often read?

10) Is there a library in your school? Do you often borrow books from the library? How long can you keep the books? What must you do if you can't finish them in time?

5. Give the English for these:

1) 我可以把这本书借给别人吗？

2) 今天下午五点你能准备好吗？

3) 我们必须七点半到校。

4) 他们不可能那么早到这儿。

5) 我借你的自行车用用好吗？

6) 你不必现在就做完作业。

A RHYME

MY BOOK

I will not spoil this little book,
Nor drop it on the floor;
I will not turn its corners down
To spoil it more and more.
My book's a little friend to me,
And so a friend to it I'll be.

LESSON FOUR

The Fourth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Where	is Mr Green? is Mary? are Jack and Mike?	

B: Sorry, I don't know.	He was She was They were	here a moment ago.	

B

A: Was your father at home

yesterday morning?
yesterday afternoon?
last night?

B: Yes, he was.
(No, he wasn't. He was at work.)

C

A: Were they

busy	yesterday
back at seven	evening?
late for the meeting	

B: Yes, they were.
(No, they weren't.)

D

A: When were you born?

B: I was born

in January, 1969.
in February, 1970.
on April 2, 1969.

A: Where were you born?

B: I was born in

Wuhan.
Guangzhou.
Tianjin.

DIALOGUE

A TELEPHONE CALL

Mrs Black: Hello!

Mary: Hello! May I speak to John?

Mrs Black: Sorry, John isn't in.

Mary: Is that Mrs Black speaking?

Mrs Black: Yes. Who's that?

Mary: This is Mary, Mrs Black. I called at four thirty this afternoon, but nobody was in.

Mrs Black: Oh, we were all out. John wasn't back home then. Mr Black and I were at the cinema. Can I take a message for John?

Mary: Yes, please. John asked me to help him with his lessons this evening. I'm afraid I can't do that today. Mother is ill. I have to look after her at home.

Mrs Black: I'm sorry to hear that. Just stay at home and take good care of your mother. Don't worry about John. You can help him later, can't you?

Mary: Yes. Please tell John about it.

Mrs Black: OK.

Mary: Thanks a lot. Bye-bye!

Mrs Black: Good-bye!

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

were [wə:, wə]
(are 的过去式)
weren't [wə:nt] = were not
yesterday ['jestədi]
(yes-ter-day) *adv.* & *n.* (在)昨天
was [wɔz, wəz]
(am, is 的过去式)
wasn't ['wɔznt] = was not
ill *adj.* 病的
moment ['məumənt]
(mo-ment) *n.* 片刻;瞬间;时刻
ago [ə'gəu] *adv.* 以前
a moment ago 刚才
at work 在工作
born [bɔ:n] (由动词 bear 变来的)出生
be born 出生于……
January ['dʒænjuəri]
(Jan-uary) *n.* 一月
February ['februəri]
(Feb-ruary) *n.* 二月
April ['eiprəl] (A-pril)

n. 四月

* * *

telephone ['telifəun]
(tele-phone) *n.*
电话;电话机
call *n.* 叫声;喊声;通话
vi. & *vt.* 喊,叫;称呼;打电话给……
a telephone call 一个电话
called (call 的过去式)
Mrs ['misiz] *n.* 夫人
Mrs Black 布莱克夫人
nobody ['nəubədi]
(no-body) *pron.* 没有人
message ['mesidʒ]
(mes-sage) *n.* 消息;信息
take a message for 给……捎个信儿
asked (ask 的过去式)
afraid [ə'freid] (a-fraid)
adj. (用作表语) 怕,害怕
be afraid 恐怕,害怕
have to 不得不,必须
look after 照看,照顾
just *adv.* 正好,恰好
care [kɛə] *n.* 照料;保护;小心
take care of 照顾;保管
worry ['wʌri] (wor-ry)
vt. (使)担忧
worry about 担心
a lot 许多,大量
bye-bye ['bai'bai] *interj.* 再会

NOTES

1. I was born in January, 1969. 我生于1969年1月。
I was born on April 2, 1969. 我生于1969年4月2日。
介词 in, on, at 表示时间的一些用法:
a) *in* 1969, *in* spring, *in* February, *in* the morning
b) *on* Tuesday, *on* April 2, *on* Sunday evening
c) *at* six o'clock, *at* a quarter to seven

* * *

2. Hello! May I speak to John? 喂，请找约翰接电话好吗？
Sorry, John isn't in. 对不起，约翰不在家。
Is that Mrs Black speaking? 您是布莱克夫人吗？
Yes. Who's that? 是的。你是哪一位？
This is Mary, Mrs Black. 我是玛丽，布莱克夫人。
以上都是打电话时常说的话。

3. ... but nobody was in. ……但是没人在家。
in 在这个句子里是副词，作表语。类似的句子还有：
John isn't *in*.
We were all *out*.
John wasn't *back* home then.

4. John asked me to help him with his lessons this evening. 约翰要我今天晚上帮他复习功课。

5. Thanks a lot. 多谢。

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

[əu]	o-	so	ago	over	moment
		nose	rose	close	home
	o(ld)	old	cold		
	oa	coat	goat	Joan	
	ow	know	bowl	grow	owner
[ɔ]	o	John	sorry	comrade	often
	a	was	what	want	watch

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) Was your 'father at 'home | 'yesterday ↗morning?
Was his 'brother a(t) 'school | 'yesterday after-↗noon?

2) I was 'born on 'April '2nd, | '196↘9.
You were 'born on 'April '9th, | '19↘70.

3) You can 'help him ↘later, | ✗ can't you?
We can 'use the ↘classroom, | ✗ can't we?

EXERCISES

1. Give the English for these:

A. 1) 在公共汽车站　　2) 在家
3) 在公园　　4) 在阳光下
5) 在图书馆　　6) 在河边
7) 在电影院　　8) 在操场
9) 在首都体育馆

B. 1) 在星期二　　2) 从星期一到星期五
3) 在冬天　　4) 在上午
5) 在星期五下午　　6) 在下午六点钟
7) 在九月　　8) 在一九八二年一月三日
9) 在一九四九年

2. Fill in the blanks with **was** or **were**:

1) Where ____ you last Sunday evening?
I ____ at the cinema.

2) ____ you born in May, 1970?
No, I ____ born in April, 1970.

3) ____ Li Ying in Grade Two last term?
No, she ____ in Grade One last term.

4) ____ the children late for school yesterday?
No, they ____ just in time.

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) — Were you born in Beijing or in Shanghai?
— I was born in Shanghai.

2) — Where is that Young Pioneer?
— Sorry, I don't know. He was here a moment ago.

3) — What time were you back last night?
— I was back at half past nine last night.

4) — I hear you were ill yesterday. How are you now?
— I'm much better, thank you.

4. Fill in the blanks with **am, is, are, was, wasn't** or **were:**

1) ____ you at home last Sunday?
No, I ____. I ____ out last Sunday.

2) The students ____ busy now. They ____ going to have a volleyball match this afternoon.

3) Where ____ Li Ping and Wang Lin? They ____ here an hour ago.

4) My sister ____ much taller this year than she ____ last year.

5) I ____ ill last week. I ____ much better now.

5. Give the English for the Chinese sentences:

— Hello!

— 喂！请找吴东接电话可以吗？

— This is Wu Dong speaking. Who's that?

— 我是李平。今晚有一场英文电影，我这儿有两张票。

— Good. And one is for me?

— 对。可是你必须晚饭后早点到这儿来。

— All right. See you later then. Thanks a lot.

— 回头见。

LESSON FIVE

The Fifth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: What time | do you / do they / does he / does she | usually get up in the morning?

B: | I get up / They get up / He gets up / She gets up | at six. But | I / they / he / she | didn't get

up so early this morning.

I
They
He
She

got up at a quarter to seven.

B

A: Did your father go to work early yesterday?

B: Yes, he did. He went to work at six.

A: Did he

have lunch at home?
stop work early?
come back early?

B: No, he didn't. He

had it at the factory.
stopped work quite late.
came back quite late.

C

A: Did you have a meeting after school?

B: No, I didn't.

A: What did you do?

B: I

played the violin.
helped my brother with his biology.
planted trees with my classmates.
carried water for Grandpa Li.

THE ARTIST

Long, long ago there lived a king. He loved horses. One day he asked an artist to draw him a beautiful horse. The artist said, "All right, but you must wait." So the king waited. He waited and waited. At last, after a year he could not wait any longer. He went to see the artist himself.

Quickly the artist brought out paper and a brush. In five minutes he finished drawing a very beautiful horse. The king was angry. "You can draw a good horse in five minutes, yet you kept me waiting for a year. Why?"

"Come with me, please," said the artist. They went to the artist's workroom.

There the king saw piles and piles of paper. On every piece of paper was a picture of a horse. "It took me more than a year to learn to draw a beautiful horse in five minutes," the artist said.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

did (do 的过去式)
didn't ['didnt] = did not
quarter ['kwɔ:tə] (quar-ter) *n.* 一刻钟，四分之一
violin [ˌvaiə'lin] (vio-lin) *n.* 小提琴
biology [bai'ɔlədʒi] (bi-ology) *n.* 生物学

* * *

artist ['ɑ:tist] *n.* 美术家；艺术家
king *n.* 国王
love [lʌv] *vt.* 爱；喜欢
one day 有一天，某一天
at last 最后；终于
could [kud] (can 的过去式)
not ... any longer 不再
himself [him'self] (him-self) *pron.* 他自己
quickly ['kwikli] (quick-ly) *adv.* 快，迅速
brought [brɔ:t] (bring的过去式)
bring out 取出来
brush [brʌʃ] *n.* 刷子；画笔
angry ['æŋgri] (an-gry) *adj.* 发怒的，生气的
yet *conj.* 然而
kept (keep 的过去式)
workroom ['wə:krum] (work-room) *n.* 工作室
saw [sɔ:] (see 的过去式)
pile [pail] *n.* 堆
a pile of 一堆
piles and piles of 一堆堆的
took [tuk] (take 的过去式)

learn [lə:n] *vt.* 学;学会　　| said [sed] (say 的过去式)

NOTES

1. Long, long ago there lived a king. 很久很久以前有一个国王。
2. ..., yet you kept me waiting for a year. ……然而你让我等了一年。

   keep 在这个句子里是"使(人、物)保持某种状态"的意思。
3. It took me more than a year to learn to draw a beautiful horse in five minutes. 我花了一年多时间,才学会在五分钟之内画出一匹好看的马。

   这里 take 是"需用;花费(时间)"的意思。

   It takes somebody some time to do something. 某人花费多少时间做某事。又如:

   It took us three days to finish the work.

GRAMMAR

一般过去时 (The Past Indefinite Tense)

1. 一般过去时表示在过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态,也表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。常与 yesterday, yesterday afternoon, last year, in 1965, a moment ago 等表示过去的时间状语连用。如:

   I *got* up at five yesterday, but I ***didn't get*** up so early this morning.

   Did he ***watch*** TV last night?

   I ***was*** in Grade One last year.

2. 动词过去式的构成和读音

规则动词

A. 过去式的构成

1) 一般的词，加 -ed:

ask — asked　　help — helped

2) 结尾是"e"的词，加 -d:

dance — danced　　love — loved

3) 末尾只有一个辅音字母的重读闭音节词，先双写这个辅音字母，再加 -ed:

stop — stopped

4) 结尾是"辅音字母+y"的词，改"y"为"i"，再加 -ed:

carry — carried　　study — studied

B. 过去式的读音

规则动词的过去式，其词尾 -ed 或 -d 的读音，依照下列规律:

1) 在浊辅音后面读为 [d]。

used [ju:zd]　　called [kɔ:ld]

在元音后面也读为 [d]。

played [pleid]　　answered ['ɑ:nsəd]

2) 在清辅音后面读为 [t]。

worked [wə:kt]　　helped [helpt]

3) 在 [t], [d] 音后面读为 [id]。

wanted ['wɔntid]　　needed ['ni:did]

不规则动词

am (is)	— was	are	— were
bring	— brought	come	— came
do	— did	get	— got

go	—	went	have	—	had
keep	—	kept	make	—	made
run	—	ran	say	—	said
see	—	saw	take	—	took
tell	—	told			

(参阅本书末《不规则动词表》)

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

1) [tʃ]	ch	*ch*air	*ch*ild	*ch*icken	*Ch*ina
		Mar*ch*	whi*ch*	lun*ch*	tea*ch*er
	tch	wa*tch*	ma*tch*		
[dʒ]	g	large	orange	biology	geography
	j	*j*eep	*j*ust	*J*anuary	
[kw]	qu	*qu*ite	*qu*ickly	*qu*arter	*qu*estion
[tw]	tw	*tw*elve	*tw*enty	be*tw*een	

2) [d]	answer	— answered	borrow	— borrowed	
	carry	— carried	worry	— worried	
	play	— played	stay	— stayed	
[t]	stop	— stopped	help	— helped	
	talk	— talked	like	— liked	
[id]	plant	— planted	skate	— skated	
	wait	— waited	need	— needed	

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) I ˈgot ˈup | at a ˈquarter to ˈseven | this ˎmorning.

He 'woke 'up | at a 'quarter pas(t) 'six | this ↘morning.

2) I 'didn'(t) 'get 'up so 'early | 'yesterday ↘morning.
She 'didn'(t) 'come 'home so 'early | 'yesterday ↘evening.

3) Did your 'father 'go to 'work 'early ↗yesterday?
↘Yes, he ↘did. He 'wen(t) to 'work a(t) ↘six.
Did he 'stop 'work ↗early?
↘No, he ↘didn't. He 'stopped wor(k) 'qui(te) ↘late.

EXERCISES

1. Give the past form of the following verbs:

1) ask	finish	watch	walk	dance
learn	live	call	borrow	love
stop	need	want	wait	plant
carry	study	worry	stay	play
2) am (is)	are	have (has)	do (does)	
say	take	see	come	go

2. Ask questions after the model:

Model: Mary didn't go to the cinema last Sunday.
She went swimming. ⟶
Did Mary go to the cinema last Sunday?
No, she didn't.
What did she do?

She went swimming.

1) Peter didn't play football yesterday.
   He played volleyball.
2) We didn't have a meeting last Saturday.
   We cleaned our classroom.
3) John didn't watch TV last night.
   He did his homework.
4) I didn't water the flowers this morning.
   I planted some trees.
5) Mike and John didn't play table tennis on Thursday.
   They played the violin.

3. Fill in the blanks with **behind, in front of, between, under, about, with, in, of, on, to, at** or **for**:

1) There were big piles ____ paper ____ the artist's workroom. ____ every piece ____ paper was a picture ____ a horse.
2) Mr and Mrs Black came ____ Beijing last week. Mr Black is going to give us a talk ____ March 25. It's ____ the study of English.
3) A lot ____ students are singing and dancing ____ a big tree ____ the park.
4) Li Ping is shorter than Wang Lin, but taller than Wu Dong. So he sits ____ them. And Wu Dong sits ____ Wang Lin and Li Ping. Wang Lin sits ____ both Wu Dong and Li Ping.
5) Can you help John ____ his lessons, Mary?

6) They had a meeting ___ a quarter ___ four yesterday afternoon.

7) Is Betty ___ the classroom?
No, she is ___ the library.

8) Were you late ___ class this morning?
No. I was quite early.

4. Answer the following questions:

1) What did the king love?

2) What did he ask an artist to do for him?

3) How long did he wait for the picture?

4) Could he wait any longer? What did he do then?

5) Did the artist draw him a beautiful horse at last? How long did it take him to draw the horse?

6) Could the artist learn in one day to draw a horse well in five minutes?

7) How long did it take him to learn to draw a beautiful horse in five minutes?

8) Can you draw a horse well in five minutes? It takes a long time to learn to draw well, doesn't it?

9) Can you learn to speak English well in one day? Does it take a long time to learn English well?

10) You want to learn English well, don't you? What are you going to do then?

5. Give the English for these:

1) 上星期天你们玩得好吗？

2) 昨晚你很早就做完作业了吗？

3) 昨天上午我们上了物理课和生物课。

4) — 昨天下午你干什么了？

— 我给艾丽斯写了一封英文信。

A RHYME

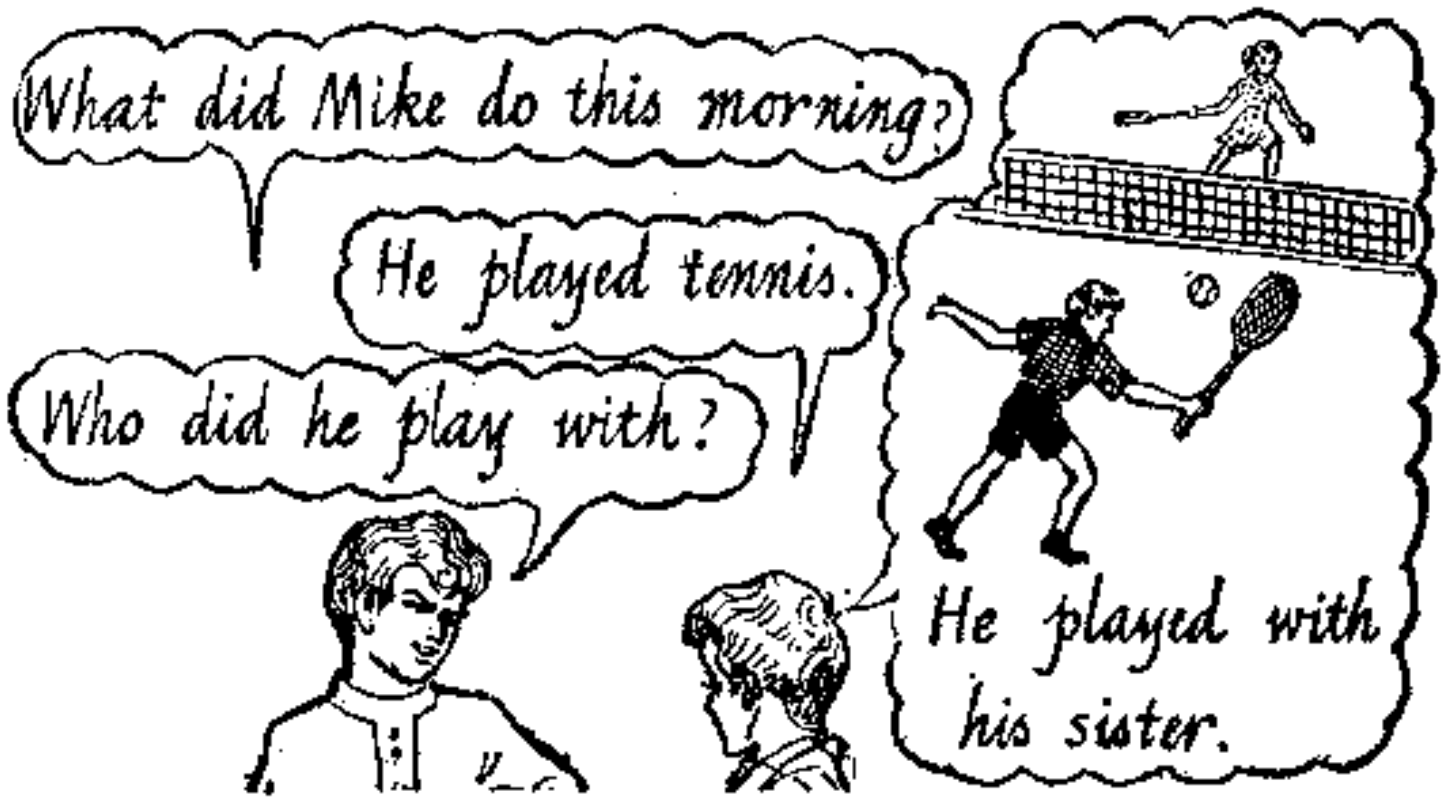
DO YOUR BEST

Do your best, your very best,
And do it every day —
Little boys and little girls,
That is the wisest way.
No matter what you try to do,
At home or at your school,
Always do your very best —
There is no better rule.

LESSON SIX

The Sixth Lesson

DRILLS



A

A: What day was yesterday?

B: It was Tuesday.

A: What was the date?

B: It was

July 4th.
August 2nd.
November 3rd.
December 21st.

B

A: How many classes did you have yesterday afternoon?

B: We had two.

A: What classes did you have?

B: We had

history and politics.
P.E. and English.
physics and biology.

C

A: What did Alice do the day before yesterday?

B: She

went to the cinema.
visited the History Museum.
climbed the hills.

A: Who did she go with?

B: She went with her classmates.

D

A: What time did they get to the

park
zoo
museum

last Monday?

B: At about nine.

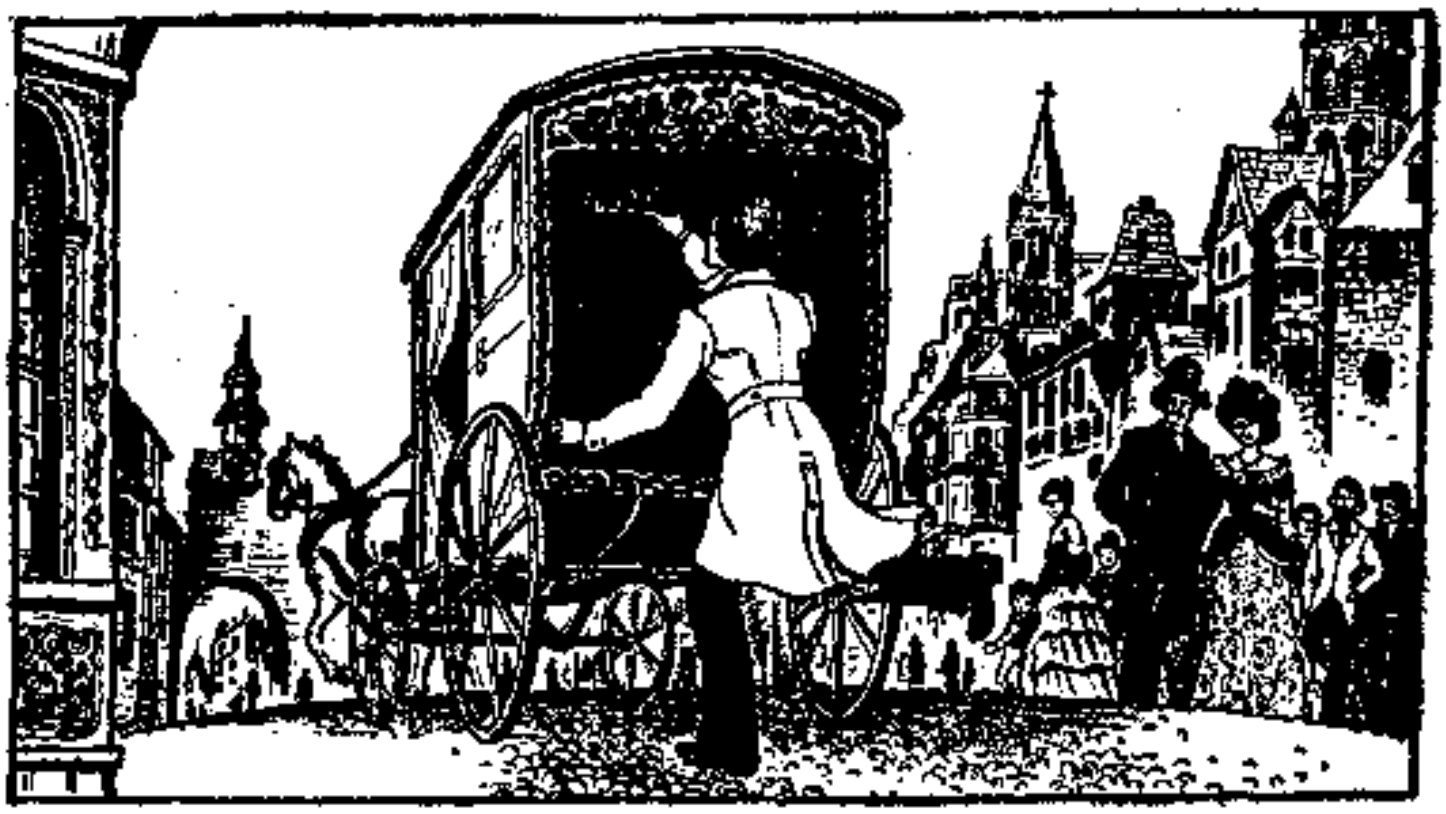
A: How long did they stay there?

B: They stayed there

for half an hour.
for three hours.
for two hours.

TEXT

"THE MOVING BLACKBOARD"



More than one hundred years ago there was a great French scientist with the name Ampère.

One day, Mr Ampère went out for a walk in the street. There were a lot of people and much noise there. But all this was nothing to him. He was thinking about a maths problem.

He had no paper with him. How could he work it out?

Just then, he saw a blackboard in front of him. He ran up to it at once. He took out a piece of chalk and wrote his problem on the blackboard. Then he started to work on it. The blackboard moved a little, but he did not notice it. The blackboard moved on. Mr Ampère moved with it. The blackboard started to move away faster and faster. Mr Ampère could not keep up with it any longer. He stopped to have a look.

What did he see? Why, the "blackboard" was NOT a blackboard. It was the back of a carriage!

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

date *n.* 日期

July [dʒu(:)ˈlai] (Ju-ly) *n.* 七月

August [ˈɔːgəst] (Au-gust) *n.* 八月

November [nəuˈvembə] (No-vem-ber) *n.* 十一月

December [diˈsembə] (De-cem-ber) *n.* 十二月

history [ˈhistəri] (his-tory) *n.* 历史,历史学

politics [ˈpolitiks] (poli-tics) *n.* 政治

P.E. (physical education)

['fizikəl ˌedju(:)'keiʃən] *n.* 体育

before [bi'fɔ:] *prep.*, *adv.* & *conj.* 在……以前

the day before yesterday 前天

visit ['vizit] *vt.* & *n.* (vis-it) 访问;参观

museum [mju(:)'ziəm] (mu-seum) *n.* 博物馆

the History Museum 历史博物馆

about [ə'baut] *adv.* 大约

half an hour 半小时

* * *

move [mu:v] *vt.* & *vi.* 移动;搬动

French *adj.* 法国的,法国人的 *n.* 法语

scientist ['saiəntist] (scien-tist) *n.* 科学家

go out for a walk 出去散步

noise [noiz] *n.* 嘈杂声;响声

think about 考虑

problem ['prɔbləm] (prob-lem) *n.* 问题;习题

work out 算出;制订出

just then 正在那时

run up 跑上去,跑过去

once [wʌns] *adv.* 一次;一度;从前

at once 立刻,马上

chalk *n.* 粉笔

start *vt.* 开始 *vi.* 出发

notice ['nəutis] (no-tice) *vt.* 注意到

move on 继续向前移动

away [ə'wei] *adv.* 离开

move away 离开;离去

keep up with 跟上

have a look 看一看

carriage ['kæridʒ] (car-riage) *n.* 四轮马车

NOTES

1. "The Moving Blackboard" "正在移动着的黑板"
2. More than one hundred years ago there was a great French scientist with the name Ampère. 一百多年前,

有一位杰出的法国科学家，名叫安培。

安培(Andre Marie Ampère ['ændri mə'ri: 'æmpɛə], 1775—1836)是法国物理学家。

3. But all this was nothing to him. 所有这一切对他都无所谓。

4. He was thinking about a maths problem. 他正在想一道数学题。

5. Then he started to work on it. 接着他开始演算那道数学题。

on 是介词，"从事(某工作)"的意思。work on 在这里可译作"演算"。

6. Why, the "blackboard" was NOT a blackboard. 哎，这块"黑板"原来不是黑板。

NOT 这个词的字母全大写，表示强调，要读得重一些。

GRAMMAR

句子的成分(Members of the Sentence)(II)

2. 表语 (The Predicative)，宾语 (The Object)和宾语补足语 (The Object Complement)

表语、宾语、宾语补足语都是谓语里的组成部分。表语由名词、形容词或相当于名词或形容词的词或短语等充当，和连系动词一起构成谓语，说明主语是什么或者怎么样。如：

Her sister ***is*** *a nurse*.

Are you *ready*?

We ***were*** *at home* last night.

宾语是动作行为的对象，由名词、代词或相当于名词的词或短语等表示，和及物动词一起构成谓语，说明主语做什

么。如:

He ***needs help.***

Tom ***has a story-book.***

Did you ***see him*** yesterday?

有些及物动词可以有两个宾语，一个指人，一个指物，前者叫做间接宾语，后者叫做直接宾语，合称双宾语。如:

Our teacher ***told us*** an interesting ***story.***

He ***gave me*** some ***ink.***

有些及物动词的宾语后边还需要有一个补足语，意思才完整。宾语和它的补足语构成复合宾语 (The Complex Object)。如:

Let ***me stay here.***

John asked ***me to help him.***

3. 定语 (The Attribute) 和状语 (The Adverbial)

定语是修饰名词或代词的。可以作定语的除形容词外，还有名词、代词、数词、介词短语或相当于形容词的词或短语等。如:

This is a ***green jeep.***

Winter is ***the coldest season of the year.***

形容词作定语时通常放在被修饰的词之前，而介词短语等则放在被修饰的词之后。

状语是修饰动词、形容词或副词的，有的修饰全句。可以作状语的主要是副词和介词短语或相当于副词的词或短语等。如:

They ***often draw in the park.***

You are ***quite right.***

We ***like*** this picture ***very much.***

简单句的五种基本类型:

	主语	谓语部分				
		谓语动词	表语	宾语		宾补
1	We	(不及物动词) work.	——	——		——
2	I	(及物动词) study	——	English.		——
3	They	(连系动词) are	students.	——		——
4	He	(及物动词) gave	——	(间宾) me	(直宾) some ink.	——
5	Li Ping	(及物动词) made	——	the baby		laugh.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

1) [ai] i rice shine pile library
y my by July
igh high right bright night

[i] i ill film bring history
y physics

[ɑ:] a(s) pass class fast last ask
ar car far park March
arm card artist garden

2) [d] listen — listened learn — learned

	live — lived	move — moved
	use — used	excuse — excused
	smile — smiled	climb — climbed
[t]	pass — passed	dance — danced
	finish — finished	watch — watched
[id]	start — started	visit — visited

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) 'How 'many 'classes | did you have | 'yesterday after↘noon?

'How 'many 'pi(c)tures | did he 'draw | 'yesterday ↘evening?

2) 'Wha(t) 'time | di(d) they 'ge(t) to the 'park | 'las(t) ↘Monday?

'Wha(t) 'time | did you 'finish the 'work | 'last ↘Wednesday?

3) 'How 'long | di(d) they 'stay a(t) the mu↘seum?

'How 'long | did you 'work in the ↘fa(c)tory?

EXERCISES

1. Give the past form of the following verbs:

1)	work	like	skate	start	visit
	move	love	listen	smile	notice
	study	hurry	carry	worry	play
2)	sleep	keep	sweep	write	give
	get	hear	make	tell	find

2. Fill in the blanks:

1) Li Ping walked too fast and I couldn't ___ (跟上) him.
2) You often ___ (出去散步), don't you?
3) Mother ___ (卧病在床). I must ___ (呆在家里) and ___ (照料) her.
4) This problem is not easy. I can't ___ it ___ (演算出来).
5) Don't ___ (担心) your mother. She's all right.
6) Now ___ (拿出) your books and turn to page 45.

3. Make dialogues after the models:

A. Model: I, not, get up at five, today, what time, at half past five ⟶
— I didn't get up at five today.
— What time did you get up?
— I got up at half past five.

1) I, not, go to the zoo, last Sunday, where, the park
2) he, not, have, a meeting at four, yesterday, what time, at a quarter to five
3) my grandma, not, live, in Beijing, last year, where, in Shanghai
4) we, not, visit, the History Museum, yesterday, when, the day before yesterday

B. Model: they, have, four classes, this morning, how many ⟶
— How many classes did they have this

morning?

— They had four.

1) you, see, two English films, last night, how many
2) they, stay, at the museum, for three hours, how long
3) my father, have, two meetings, last week, how many
4) the children, play, on the playground, for half an hour, yesterday, how long
5) it, take, you, ten minutes, to wait, for the bus, how long

4. Ask questions about the underlined parts:

Model: Fang Lin helped him with his English. ⟶
Who helped him with his English?
He talked with the doctor a moment ago. ⟶
Who did he talk with a moment ago?

1) Mr Green gave us a talk on August 2nd.
2) I went to the zoo with my parents last Sunday.
3) Mary helped Tom with his biology this morning.
4) Mike lent her a Chinese story-book.
5) We climbed the hill with our teacher yesterday afternoon.

5. Answer the following questions:

1) Who was Ampère?
2) What did Ampère do one day?
3) Were there a lot of people in the street? Did he notice them? What was he thinking about at the

moment?

4) What did Ampère want to do? Had he any paper with him?
5) What did he see in front of him? What did he do then?
6) The "blackboard" moved a little and then moved on. Did Ampère notice it?
7) Did Ampère stop at last? Why?
8) What did he see? Did he see a blackboard before him?

LESSON SEVEN

The Seventh Lesson

TEXT

A PAGE FROM A STUDENT'S DIARY

October 22nd, Saturday Cloudy

There were no classes this afternoon. My classmates all went to the Summer Palace. They had a good time, but I didn't go.

After lunch Aunt Huang came in. She looked worried. "Grandma is ill," she said. "I must take her to the hospital. But my baby, ... I can't leave her by herself."

Mother and Dad were not at home. So I said, "Don't worry. I can look after her."

"Thank you, Xiao Ping. Thank you." Then she left.

The baby was about ten months old. At

first she was asleep. Half an hour later she woke up. She couldn't find her mother and began to cry. "Don't cry," I said. I talked to her. But she looked at me and cried harder and harder. I turned on the radio. She stopped crying and listened to the music. After a few minutes she started to cry again. "Listen to me," I said. I started to sing. The baby watched and listened. She didn't cry any more. Then I made faces and jumped like a monkey. The baby laughed and laughed.

All that afternoon I jumped and sang and did all kinds of things. When Aunt Huang came back, I was so tired.

In the evening Wang Lin came to see me. I told him the whole story. He laughed. "You're great! I'm going to tell everyone. I'm going to tell them 'Bring your babies to Li Ping. He can take good care of your babies.'"

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

diary ['daiəri] (dia-ry) *n.* 日记；日记簿

October [ɔk'təubə] (Oc-to-ber) *n.* 十月

cloudy ['klaudi] (cloud-y) *adj.* 多云的，阴天的

the Summer Palace 颐和园

aunt [ɑ:nt] *n.* 姨，姑，伯母，婶母，舅母

worried ['wʌrid] *adj.* 焦虑的；烦恼的；担忧的

hospital ['hɔspitl] (hos-pi-tal) *n.* 医院

leave *vt.* 离开；剩下；留下 *vi.* 离去；出发

herself [hə:'self] (her-self) *pron.* 她自己

at first 起先，开始的时候

cry *vi.* 哭；叫喊

hard *adv.* 猛烈地；剧烈地

turn on 开，旋开（电灯，无线电等）

turn on the radio 打开收音机

music ['mju:zik] *n.* 音乐

a few [fju:] 有一些，少数几个

not ... any more 不再

make faces 做鬼脸

jump *vi.* 跳

like *prep.* 象；跟……一样

monkey ['mʌŋki] (mon-key) *n.* 猴子

laugh [lɑ:f] *vi.* & *n.* 笑，发笑

thing [θiŋ] *n.* 事情，东西

tired ['taiəd] *adj.* 疲劳的，累的

whole [həul] *adj.* 整个的

everyone ['evriwʌn] (every-one) *pron.* 每人，人人

NOTES

1. I must take her to the hospital. 我必须送她到医院(看病)。

   take 在这里是"带领"的意思。

2. ... I can't leave her by herself. ……我不能把她单独留下。

   leave one by oneself 把某人单独留下

3. But she looked at me and cried harder and harder. 但是她看了看我,哭得越来越厉害了。

4. She stopped crying and listened to the music. 她不哭了,听起音乐来。

   stopped crying 停止哭喊

   stopped to have a look 停下来(正在干的事情)看了一下。又如:

   He stopped talking. 他停止了谈话。

   He stopped to talk to her. 他停下来跟她谈话。

5. When Aunt Huang came back, I was so tired. 黄阿姨回来时,我累极了。

   句中 when 是连词,意思是"当……的时候"。

EXERCISES

1. Ask questions after the models:

   A. Model: What day is it?
   It's Sunday.
   What's the date?
   It's January 2, 1983.

1983年 二月 7 星期一	1983年 三月 10 星期四	1983年 四月 5 星期二	1983年 五月 4 星期三
1983年 六月 19 星期日	1983年 七月 30 星期六	1983年 八月 31 星期三	1983年 九月 23 星期五
1983年 十月 18 星期二	1983年 十一月 25 星期五	1983年 十二月 22 星期四	

B. Model: How many classes do you have on Saturday?

We have three classes and a class meeting.

What classes do you have?

We have maths, English and Chinese.

星期 / 课次	星期一	星期二	星期三	星期四	星期五	星期六
一	数学	数学	物理	语文	数学	数学
二	英语	英语	语文	数学	英语	英语
三	语文	语文	数学	政治	物理	语文
四	语文	物理	英语	体育	历史	班会
五	体育	历史	图画	音乐	数学	
六	政治	地理	生物	生物	地理	

2. Fill in the blanks:

1) There ____ (be) an English film in the People's Cinema last night.

2) ____ (be) there any apple trees here a few years ago?

3) There ____ (be) two football matches last week.

4) There ____ (be) no one here a few minutes ago.

5) ____ (be) there many Young Pioneers at the meeting the day before yesterday?

3. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) I usually ____ (do) my lessons in the evening. But yesterday I ____ (do) them in the afternoon.

2) My father ____ (go) to Shanghai last week. He ____ (come) back this morning.

3) Father ____ (take) my baby brother to the hospital half an hour ago. He ____ (not be) back

yet.

4) Mother ___ (can make) cakes herself. She ___ now ___ (make) cakes for us.

5) My aunt ___ (tell) me an interesting story last night. She ___ (tell) me another one this evening.

6) Where ___ (be) you this morning?
I ___ (be) at the Dahua Cinema.

7) What ___ you ___ (do) tomorrow morning?

8) Tom ___ (stay) with us the day before yesterday.

4. Fill in the blanks:

1) Betty's mother ___ (看上去很疲倦). Perhaps she ___ (病了).

2) They ___ (到达) the museum at a quarter to nine yesterday.

3) The peasants ___ (收割) the crops next week.

4) What time ___ you ___ (画完画) yesterday?

5) It was time for class. The students ___ (停止唱歌) and ___ (准备好) for class.

6) Last Sunday Xiao Ming's parents ___ (出去了). They ___ (留下小明一人). So I ___ (去) there and ___ (照看) him.

5. Read the text and then say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) The text is a page from Wang Lin's diary. ( )

2) All the students in Li Ping's class went to the

Summer Palace that afternoon. ( )

3) Aunt Huang had to take Grandma to the hospital, but she could not leave the baby by herself. ( )

4) Li Ping did not go to the Summer Palace. He looked after the baby. ( )

5) The baby cried the whole afternoon. ( )

6) Li Ping made faces, jumped and sang and did all kinds of things all that afternoon. ( )

7) The baby stopped crying and began to laugh at last. ( )

LESSON EIGHT

The Eighth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the past form of the following verbs:

1)	use	answer	climb	pass	clean
	guess	open	look	cry	jump
	laugh	turn	rain	thank	help
2)	leave	shine	sing	begin	wake
	let	put	read	think	buy
	bring	grow	draw	know	sit

2. Give the English for these:

1) 五张纸　　2) 四块面包
3) 两条消息　　4) 三支粉笔
5) 一碗米饭　　6) 六杯水

3. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) I usually ___ (do) my lessons in the evening.
2) My aunt ___ (go) to Xi'an last week.
3) Li Ping's father always ___ (leave) school late.
4) What ___ you ___ (do) the day after tomorrow?
5) The Young Pioneers ___ (play) basket-ball on the playground now.

6) I ___ (call) Alice yesterday, but she ___ (be not) in.

7) Nobody ___ (stay) at home tomorrow.

8) There ___ (be) a lot of students at the meeting yesterday.

4. Fill in the blanks with **a (an), the, some** or **any**:

1) He is going to watch ___ tennis match between ___ French team and ___ American team.

2) We did not have ___ lessons last Saturday afternoon. We went to visit ___ History Museum.

3) There was ___ English film in ___ People's Cinema last night. ___ of my classmates went to see it.

4) Excuse me, may I have ___ water?
Sorry, there isn't ___ water here.

5. Fill in the blanks with **can, can't, may, must, mustn't** or **needn't**:

1) ___ I leave school now? No. You ___ clean the classroom first.

2) It's time for class. You ___ stop playing basketball. You ___ be late for class.

3) ___ they answer the questions in Russian? No, they ___. They ___ answer them in Chinese.

4) ___ you be at the zoo before nine? No, I ___.

6. Turn these sentences into questions:

Model: Wang Hai studied at **the No. 5 Middle School** a year ago. (which) ⟶

Which school did **Wang Hai** study at a year ago?

1) The meeting started **at a quarter past four.** (what time)
2) They had their P. E. lesson **on the playground.** (where)
3) Grandpa Zhang is going to tell us **a story.** (what)
4) He is using **Wang Lin's** table tennis bat. (whose)
5) We have **two** biology classes every week. (how many)
6) It is **October 30.** (what)
7) Li Ping went to the factory with **his mother.** (who)
8) **Mary** called John at four thirty. (who)
9) Mike's mother worked at the hospital **the whole night.** (how long)
10) It was **Monday** yesterday. (what day)

7. Make sentences with the given words:

Model: don't, him, wake, up ⟶

Don't wake him up.

1) please, us, buy, for, two tickets
2) write, don't, the desk, on
3) stop, like, that, making faces
4) don't, this afternoon, before, five o'clock, here, leave
5) tomorrow, take, Grade Two, the students, of, to,

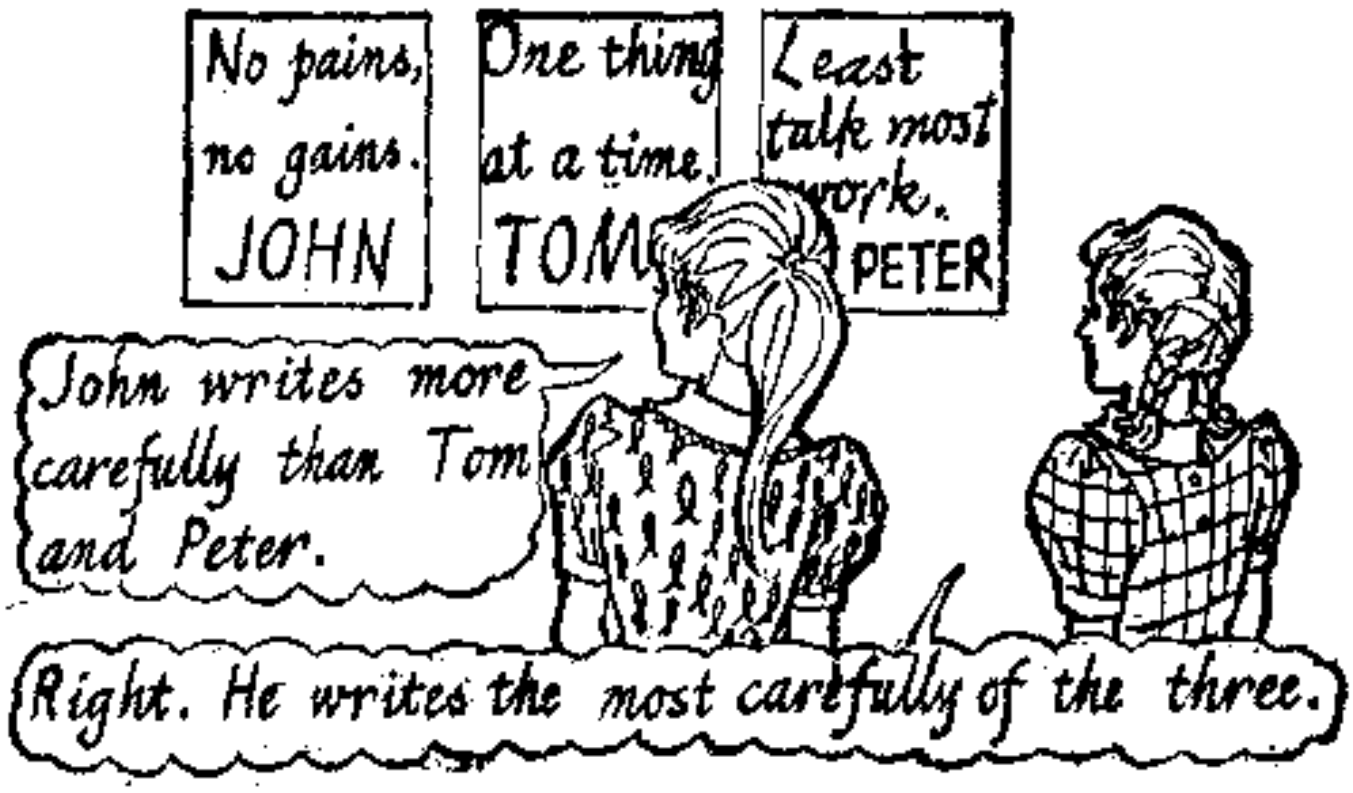
the museum

8. Say something about what you are going to do tomorrow and what you did yesterday.

LESSON NINE

The Ninth Lesson

DRILLS



A

A: Which picture is	more beautiful? more interesting? more expensive?	
B: The one	on the left, on the right, on the left,	I think.

B

A: Which lesson is

the most difficult
the most interesting
the most instructive

in Book Two?

B:

Lesson 15
Lesson 13
Lesson 6

is. Don't you think so?

C

A: Tom

draws better
jumps higher
writes more carefully

than Peter.

B: You're quite right. He

draws the best
jumps the highest
writes the most carefully

in our class.

D

A: Is Joan as

tall
strong
careful

as Kate?

B: No, she isn't. She isn't quite as | tall / strong / careful | as Kate.

(Yes, she's just as tall as Kate.)

DIALOGUE

THE MOON

Son: Look, Dad! How bright and near the moon looks tonight!

Father: But it isn't as near as it looks.

Son: I know it's far away from the earth.

Father: It's three hundred and eighty thousand kilometres away.

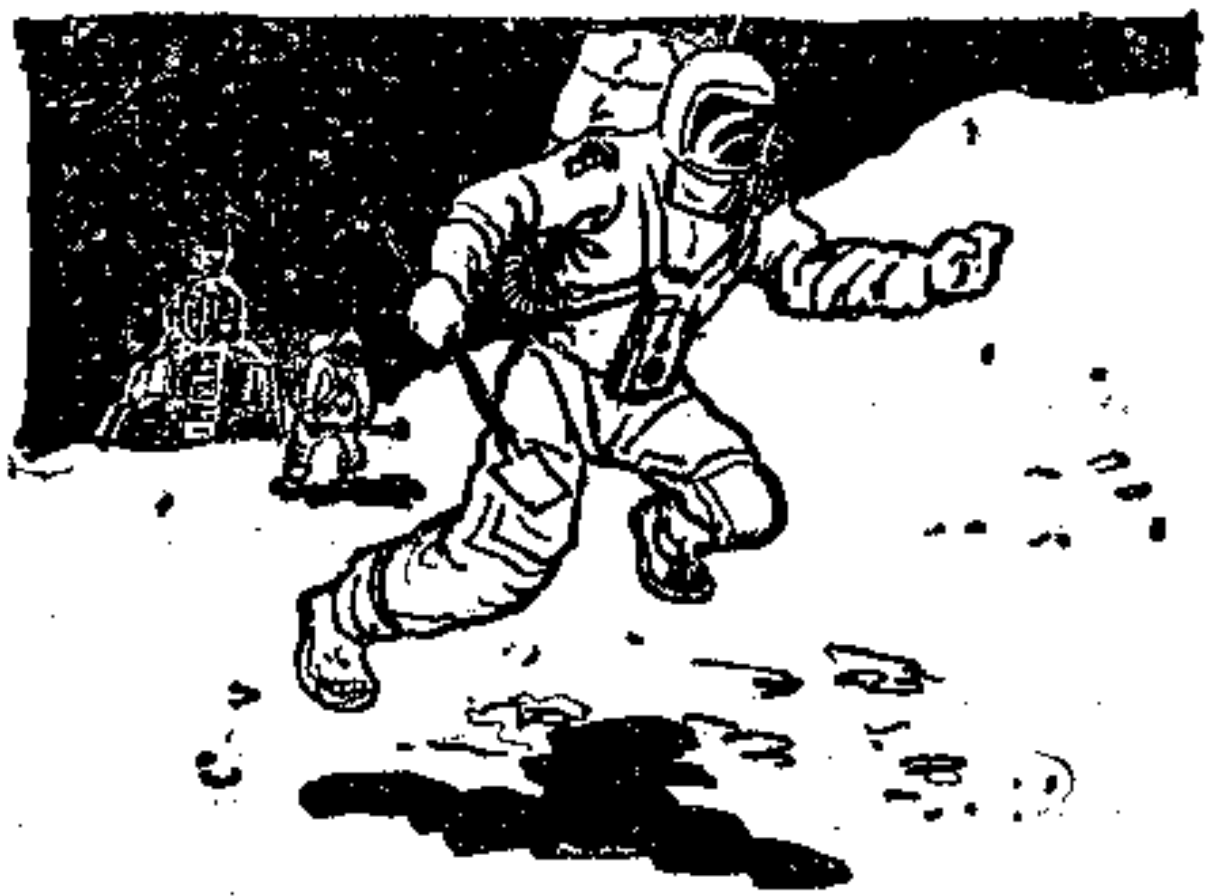
Son: How far is that?

Father: Well, it takes more than three days to get there by spaceship.

Son: A spaceship flies very, very fast, doesn't it?

Father: Yes. It flies at about eleven kilometres

a second. In 1969 two Americans got to the moon by spaceship. That was one of the most exciting moments of that year.



Son: They didn't find any living things there, did they?

Father: No, they didn't. It's too hot in the day and too cold at night. And there's no air or water there. Nothing can live on the moon.

Son: I hear walking on the moon is more difficult. It's like jumping and flying. Is that so?

Father: Yes, isn't that interesting! Everything is much lighter on the moon. You can jump much higher on the moon than on the earth.

Son: I wish I could fly to the moon in a spaceship one day. It must be great fun.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

careful ['kɛəful] (care-ful) *adj.* 小心的；仔细的

carefully ['kɛəfuli] (care-ful-ly) *adv.* 小心地；仔细地

most [məust] *adv.* & *adj.* (much 或 many 的最高级)最

expensive [iks'pensiv] (ex-pen-sive) *adj.* 昂贵的

left *n.* 左，左边

adj. 左，左边的

right *n.* 右，右边

adj. 右，右边的

difficult ['difikəlt] (dif-fi-cult) *adj.* 难的，困难的

instructive [in'strʌktiv] (in-struc-tive) *adj.* 有教育意义的；有启发的

as *adv.* 同样地

conj. 象……一样

as ... as 与……一样

not as (so) ... as 与……不一样

strong *adj.* 强壮的；坚强的

* * *

son [sʌn] *n.* 儿子

near *adj.* & *adv.* 近的(地)；接近的(地)

tonight [tə'nait] (to-night) *adv.* & *n.* 今晚

far away 遥远，很远

thousand ['θauzənd] (thou-sand) *num.* 千

kilometre ['kiləuˌmi:tə] (kilo-metre) *n.* 千米，公里

by *prep.* 乘(车、船等)

spaceship ['speisˌʃip] (space-ship) *n.* 宇宙飞船

fly *vi.* 飞；飞行

vt. 放(风筝、航模等)

second *n.* 秒

exciting [ik'saitiŋ] (excit-ing) *adj.* 令人兴奋的，使人激动的

living ['liviŋ] (liv-ing) *adj.* 活的；活着的

in the day 在白天

at night 在夜里

air [εə] *n.* 空气

everything ['evriθiŋ] (every-thing) *pron.* 每件事，每样东西

light *adj.* 轻的

wish *vt.* & *n.* 希望；愿望；祝愿

fun *n.* 有趣的事；玩笑；娱乐

great fun 很有趣的事

NOTES

1. Don't you think so? 你不是这样认为吗？

* * *

2. It's three hundred and eighty thousand kilometres away. 它(月球)离我们有三十八万公里。

1,000 以上的基数词读法如下：

1,026 读作 one thousand and twenty-six

9,743 读作 nine thousand, seven hundred and forty-three

15,978 读作 fifteen thousand, nine hundred and seventy-eight

748, 359 读作 seven hundred and forty-eight thousand, three hundred and fifty-nine

3. They didn't find any living things there, did they? 他们在那儿没有发现任何有生命的东西，是吧？

4. I wish I could fly to the moon in a spaceship one day. 但愿有一天我能坐上宇宙飞船飞向月球。

动词 wish 是现在时，而后面从句中的 could fly 却用了过去时形式，这是一种特殊的表达法，表明 wish 后边说的是不现实的愿望。

GRAMMAR

形容词和副词的比较级和最高级 (The Comparative and Superlative Degrees of Adjectives and Adverbs) (Ⅱ)

1. 多音节的形容词和副词在其前面加 more 或 most 构成比较级或最高级。如:

形容词:

difficult	more difficult	most difficult
interesting	more interesting	most interesting

副词:

slowly	more slowly	most slowly
carefully	more carefully	most carefully

不规则变化的形容词和副词的比较级和最高级：

原　级	比　较　级	最　高　级
good well	better	best
bad ill	worse [wə:s]	worst [wə:st]
many much	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther further	farthest furthest
old	older elder	oldest eldest

2. 多音节形容词和副词的比较级和最高级的用法。如：

This story is ***more interesting than*** that one.

The third question is ***the most difficult of*** the three.

He listens to the teachers ***more carefully than*** you.

She writes ***(the) most carefully of*** the three.

在形容词和副词的比较级前，有时可以用 much, a little, still 等来修饰。如：

An elephant is ***much*** stronger than a horse.

Mike is ***a little*** taller than John.

May I keep the book ***a little*** longer?

You can jump ***much*** higher on the moon than on the earth.

3. 表示甲与乙在某一方面程度相同时，用"as＋形容词(副词)原级＋as"的句型。如:

Joan is just *as careful as* Kate.

Tom walks *as fast as* Mike.

表示甲在某一方面不及乙时，用"not as (so)＋形容词(副词)原级＋as"的句型。如:

It is *not as (so) warm* today *as* yesterday.

He did *not* come *as (so) early as* Wang Lin.

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

1) [iə] ear *ear* d*ear* h*ear* n*ear*

[ɛə] air *air* h*air* ch*air*

[uə] ure s*ure*

2) [f] f *f*ly *f*irst i*f* be*f*ore

ph *ph*ysics geogra*ph*y ele*ph*ant

tele*ph*one

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) ˈTom ˈwrites more ˈcarefully than ↘Peter.

ˈThis ˈflower ˈlooks more ˈbeautiful than ↘that one.

2) ˈWhich ˈlesson is the mos(t) ˈdifficult | in ˈBoo(k) ↘Two?

ˈWhich ˈsu(b)je(c)t is the mos(t) ˈinteresting | this ↘term?

3) Is ˈJoan as ˈstrong as ↗Kate?

Is ˈMike as ˈtall as ↗John?

4) She 'isn'(t) 'quite as 'careful as ˋKate.
He 'isn'(t) 'quite as 'thin as ˋJohn.

EXERCISES

1. Give the comparative and superlative degrees of the following:

bright	great	slow	strong	light
big	hot	fat	thin	large
busy	easy	early	happy	heavy
well	much	far	bad	ill
beautiful	carefully	expensive		
instructive	difficult	exciting		

2. Read the following:

138	207	5,645
8,006	63,603	70,052
934,674	400,001	460,000

3. Fill in the blanks:

A. 1) This question is ___ (difficult) than the other two. It is ___ (difficult) of the three.

2) This TV set is ___ (big) than all the others and it is ___ (expensive).

3) Physics is one of ___ (difficult) subjects for us, but it is very ___ (interesting).

4) Beihai Park is one of ___ (beautiful) parks in Beijing.

5) Mike draws ___ (slowly) than Tom and

John, but he draws ___ (well).

6) Who works ___ (carefully), Kate or Mary?

B. 1) Is that book ___ than this one?

I don't think so. It is just ___ this one. (more interesting, as interesting as)

2) Is the horse ___ the elephant?

No. The elephant is much ___ than the horse. (stronger, as strong as)

3) Is Betty ___ than Alice in her work?

No, she isn't quite ___ Alice. (more careful, as careful as)

4) Are the flowers on the right ___ than the ones on the left?

No. They are just ___ the ones on the left. (as beautiful as, more beautiful)

5) Does a plane fly ___ a spaceship?

No, a spaceship flies much ___ than a plane. (as fast as, faster)

6) Do you get up ___ your parents?

No, I get up___than they. (later, as early as)

4. Give the English for these:

1) 这个故事比那个故事有趣得多。

2) 那是一九八二年一个最激动人心的时刻。

3) 汤姆画得比我更认真。

4) 我们班里刘明个子最高，跳高也跳得最高。

5) 这篇课文和那篇一样具有教育意义。

6) 在月球上行走不象在地球上那么容易。

5. Read the dialogue and say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) The sun is nearer to the earth than the moon. ( )
2) Some Russians went to the moon in a spaceship in 1969. ( )
3) It must be great fun to fly to the moon in a spaceship. ( )
4) No animals can live on the moon. ( )
5) There is air but no water on the moon. ( )
6) Jumping on the moon is easier than on the earth. ( )
7) On the moon things aren't as heavy as they are on the earth. ( )

A RHYME

THE MOON

O, look at the moon!
Round and bright up there.
O, Mother, it looks
Like a lamp in the air.
Last week it was smaller
And shaped like a bow,
But now it's grown bigger
And round like an O.

LESSON TEN

The Tenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: It was	cold hot sunny	yesterday, wasn't it?

B: Yes, it was. But it's	much warmer much cooler cloudy and windy	today.

B

A: You were tired after

the sports meet,
the football match,
running,

weren't you?

B: Yes, but only a little. Now I'm

fine.
all right.
much better.

C

A: You don't often go home late. But you went home late yesterday, didn't you?

B: Yes, I did. I

helped Liu Ying with her English.
had a long talk with the teacher.
waited for Wei Fang.

D

A: Your mother often goes to see your grandma. She went to see her last Sunday too, didn't she?

B: No, she didn't. She

stayed at home and cleaned the house.
stayed at home and did some washing.
took me to the park.

TEXT

A WAY OUT

A French student went to London for his holiday. He thought: "I know a little English. I think people can understand me."

One morning he went to visit the Science Museum. At noon he was tired and hungry. He went to the nearest restaurant and sat down at the table. He wanted to have a cup of tea and some eggs. Soon the waiter came up to him and asked, "Can I help you, sir?"

"A cup of tea and ...."he could not remember the English word for eggs. He looked around him, but nobody was eating eggs.

Then he saw a magazine on the table next to him. There was a picture of a cock on its cover. He showed the picture to the waiter.

"What's the English for this?" he asked.

"A cock, sir," answered the waiter.

"What do you call a cock's wife?" was the next question.

"A hen, sir."

"And what do you call a hen's children?"

"Chicks, sir."

"And what do you call chicks before they're born?"

"Eggs, sir."

"Very well," said the French student. "Bring me two eggs, two eggs and a cup of tea, please." And he sat back with a smile on his face.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

sunny ['sʌni] (sun-ny)
adj. 晴朗的；阳光充足的

windy ['windi] (wind-y)
adj. 有风的；风大的

meet *n.* 会;集会
sports meet 运动会
wash [wɔʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 洗
do some washing 洗衣服

* * *

way *n.* 方法;手段
London ['lʌndən] (Lon-don) 伦敦
holiday ['hɔlədi] (holi-day) *n.* 假日;假期
understand [ˌʌndə'stænd] (under-stand) *vt.* 懂得;理解
science ['saiəns] (sci-ence) *n.* 科学
the Science Museum科学馆
noon *n.* 中午,正午
at noon 在中午
hungry ['hʌŋgri] (hun-gry) *adj.* 饥饿的
restaurant ['restərɔ̃:ŋ, 'restərənt] (res-tau-rant) *n.* 饭馆
waiter ['weitə] (wait-er) *n.* 侍者(服务员)
sir [sə:, sə] *n.* 先生,阁下
remember [ri'membə] (re-mem-ber) *vt.* 记得,想起
around [ə'raund] *prep.* 在……周围,环绕着
adv. 在周围,在附近
eat *vt.* 吃
magazine [ˌmægə'zi:n] (maga-zine) *n.* 杂志
cover ['kʌvə] (cov-er) *n.* 封面
show [ʃəu] *vt.* 给……看;出示
wife *n.* 妻子

NOTES

1. a way out 出路;办法

还可以说: find a way out 找(到)出路(办法)。

2. the table next to him 他隔壁的桌子

next 在这里是形容词,"贴近的;隔壁的"意思。

3. And what do you call chicks before they're born?
小鸡孵出之前你怎么称呼它们?

4. And he sat back with a smile on his face.
他把身子往后一靠,脸上出现了笑容。

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

[ə:]	er	her	term	certainly	
	ir	shirt	first	birthday	
	ur	nurse	turn	Thursday	
	ear	learn	year	earth	early
[ɔi]	oi	noise			
	oy	boy			
[au]	ou	mouth	around	thousand	cloudy
	ow	cow	how	now	down

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) It was 'sunny ↘yesterday, | ↗ wasn't it?
He was 'out ↘yesterday, | ↗ wasn't he?

2) You were 'tired | 'after the 'foo(t)ball ↘match, | ↗ weren't you?
We were 'happy | 'after the 'musi(c) ↘class, | ↗ weren't we?

3) You 'went 'home 'late ↘yesterday, | ↗ didn't you?
She 'came 'ba(ck) 'late ↘yesterday, | ↗ didn't she?

EXERCISES

1. Give the past form of the following verbs:
   1) wish remember wash stop snow
      talk renew show
   2) fly eat stand understand run
      dig swim speak take lend
2. Fill in the blanks with **for, to, with, at, in** or **after:**
   1) Mary does well ___ English and she often helps me ___ it.
   2) Why did you keep me waiting ___ a week?
   3) You can finish the work ___ an hour, can't you?
   4) Li Ying isn't good ___ English.
   5) They say they're going to do more speaking ___ class.
   6) How long did it take you to get ___ the Science Museum?
   7) ___ a few minutes they started working again.
3. Rewrite the following sentences after the models:

   A. Model: I often come to school at seven. (this morning) ⟶
   I came to school at seven this morning.

   1) My father always reads the newspapers in the evening. (yesterday evening)
   2) They go to the cinema every week. (last week)

3) Mike and Tom are sometimes late for school. (yesterday)

4) It's windy and cold today. (the day before yesterday)

B. Model: Do you often go to the Children's Palace? (last Saturday) ⟶

Did you go to the Children's Palace last Saturday?

1) Does Zhang Hong watch TV every evening? (yesterday evening)

2) Do you have a sports meet every year? (last year)

3) Are you tired now? (after the football match)

4) Is your aunt in Wuxi now? (in 1979)

C. Model: What time does Li Ping usually have breakfast? (today) ⟶

What time did Li Ping have breakfast today?

1) What does your aunt often do on Wednesday? (last Wednesday)

2) What time do classes begin every morning? (this morning)

3) Where is your grandma? (an hour ago)

4) How are you today? (last night)

4. Fill in the blanks:

A. 1) It was November 9 yesterday, ____ it?

2) They were late for the meeting, ____ they?

3) Your grandpa was a truck driver, ____ he?

4) You borrowed a book from the library yesterday, ____ you?

5) Wang Lin flew model planes with his friends this morning, ____ he?

B. 1) Summer is much warmer than spring, ____ it?

2) Ampère lived more than two hundred years ago, ____ he?

3) June 4 was Betty's thirteenth birthday, ____ it?

4) A hare runs much faster than a tortoise, ____ it?

5) The peasants get in the crops in autumn, ____ they?

5. Answer the following questions:

1) What did the French student go to London for?

2) Did he know English?

3) What did he do one morning?

4) He was tired and hungry, wasn't he? Where did he go then?

5) What did he want to have?

6) Could he remember the English word "egg"?

7) What did he see on the table next to him?

8) Who did he show the picture to? He asked the waiter a few questions, didn't he?

9) What do English people call a hen's children? What do they call chicks before they are born?

10) Did the French student get eggs at last?

FRIENDSHIP

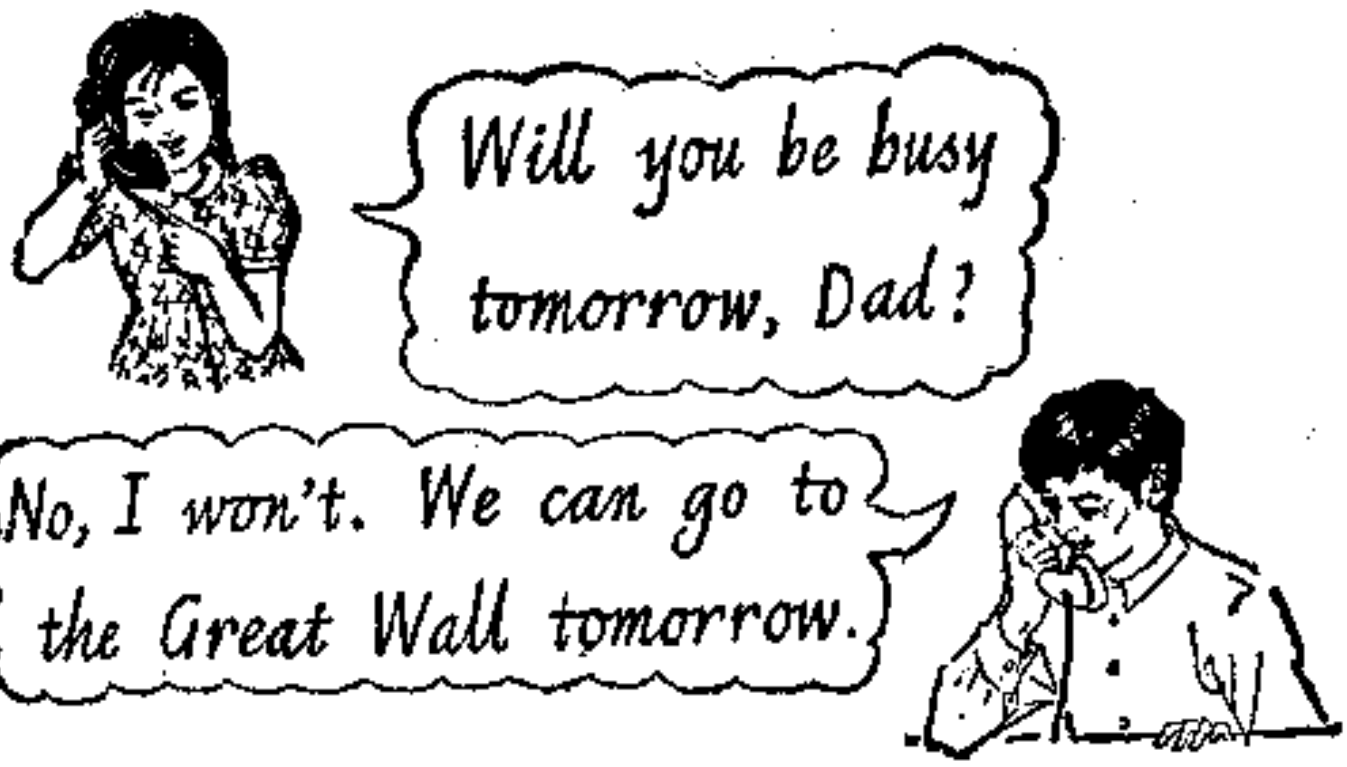
I met a little friend
Who came from another land.
I couldn't speak his language,
But I took him by the hand.

We sang together
And had a lot of fun!
Singing is a language
You can speak with anyone.

LESSON ELEVEN

The Eleventh Lesson

DRILLS



A

A: You	washed the clothes, answered the letter, called Mr Green, bought me a bottle of ink,	didn't you?

B: Sorry, I forgot! But I'll	wash them answer it call him go and buy a bottle for you	after lunch.

B

A: Will | you be here
you help me with my maths
she come home
they have any lessons | this afternoon?

B: Yes, | we
I
she
they | will.

C

A: Will you be free tomorrow?

B: No, I won't. But I'll be free the day after tomorrow.

A: Will you | go fishing with me?
teach me Japanese?
help me repair my bike?
make me a kite? |

B: Certainly. I'll be glad to.

DIALOGUE

SHOPPING

Alice: Mum, look at my coat. It's too short and too small. Will you buy me a new one?

Mrs. Green: All right. I'm just going out to do some shopping now. Come on, dear.

(*They go into a shop for clothes.*)

Shop Assistant: What can I do for you, madam?

M: I'm looking for a coat for my daughter.

S: Here, madam, here are coats for young people.

M: The red one on the right looks very nice, doesn't it? Do you like it, dear?

A: No, Mum, I don't like red very much. I like green better.

S: Green? Here's a green one. How do you like this?

A: It's nice, isn't it, Mum?

M: Yes. How much is it?

S: Thirty pounds.

M: Thirty pounds? That's too expensive, I'm afraid.

S: What about the one next to it? It's cheaper. It's only twenty pounds.

M: That'll be all right. Alice, please try it on, will you?

A: Yes, Mum. (*She tries it on.*)

M: It looks a bit large. Have you a smaller size?

A: I think it'll fit me quite well before long, Mum. You're always saying I'm growing so fast.

M: All right then. We'll take it.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

the Great Wall 长城

clothes [kləuðz] (*pl.*) *n.* 衣服

bottle ['bɔtl] *n.* 瓶

a bottle of 一瓶

forget [fə'get] (for-get) *vt.* & *vi.* 忘记

forgot [fə'gɔt] (过去式)

I'll [ail] = I will

free *adj.* 空闲的；自由的

fish *vi.* 捕鱼；钓鱼

go fishing (去)钓鱼

teach *vt.* & *vi.* 教;教书
repair [ri'pɛə] (re-pair)
vt. & *n.* 修理;修补
kite *n.* 风筝

* * *

shop *n.* 商店
vi. 到商店去买东西
do some shopping 买东西
into ['intu, 'intə] *prep.*
到……里
shop assistant 营业员,
店员
madam ['mædəm]
(mad-am) *n.* 夫人, 女士
(对妇女的尊称)
daughter ['dɔ:tə]
(daugh-ter) *n.* 女儿
how much 多少
pound [paund] *n.* 英镑(英
国货币单位)
cheap *adj.* 廉价的, 便宜的
that'll = that will
try *vt.* & *vi.* 试;努力
try on 试穿(衣、鞋、帽等)
bit *n.* 一点,一些
a bit 有点儿
size *n.* 尺寸,大小
it'll = it will
fit *vt.* & *vi.* 适合,合身
we'll = we will

NOTES

1. I'll be glad to. 我很高兴(干某事)。

   I'll be glad to 的后面省略了 go fishing with you 等。

   注意: 在省略句 I'll be glad to 中, to 不能省略。

* * *

2. Come on, dear. 快来,亲爱的。
3. What can I do for you? 我能为你做什么?(你要买什么?)

   这是服务人员接待顾客时常说的话。也可以用:
   Can I help you?

4. How much is it? 多少钱一件？

这里 it 指的是 the green coat。

5. What about the one next to it? 紧挨着它的那一件怎么样？

What about ...? "……怎么样？" 用在征求意见或询问消息。又如:

I'm twelve years old. What about you?

我十二岁，你呢？

Your brother is a doctor. What about your sister? 你哥哥是医生，你姐姐呢？

6. I think it'll fit me quite well before long, Mum. You're always saying I'm growing so fast. 妈妈，我想这件大衣很快就会合身的。你常说我长得很快。

现在进行时有时可以表示经常性的动作或状态。又如:

He is always thinking of others. 他总是想着别人。

He is always smiling. 他经常面带笑容。

before long 在这里是"不久以后"的意思。又如:

I'll see you again before long. 我很快又会见到你的。

GRAMMAR

一般将来时 (The Future Indefinite Tense)

1. 一般将来时表示在将来某个时间要发生的动作或存在的状态。

2. 一般将来时由"助动词 will+动词原形"构成。在日常口

语中，will 在名词或代词后常简缩为 'll, will not 常简缩为 won't。例如:

I'll go to your school tomorrow afternoon.

We won't have a meeting next Saturday.

注: 1) 在书面语中，主语为第一人称 (I 及 We) 时，常用助动词 shall+动词原形。例如:

I shall write you a letter next month.

We shall be very glad to see you.

但在日常口语中，所有人称都可用 will。

2) 在表示"带意愿色彩的将来"时，常用 will。例如:

I will tell you all about it.

3) 在问对方是否愿意，或表示客气的邀请或命令时，常用 will。例如:

Will you go and see the film with me?

Will you please open the window?

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

1) [o:]	or	horse	short	born	
	ough	bought	brought	thought	
	al	call	tall	wall	chalk
	au	autumn	August		
		daughter	taught		
	ore	more	before		
2) [ʃ]	sh	show	shop	wash	wish
[ʒ]	s	usually			

2. Read aloud these sentences:

1) Will you be 'free to↗morrow, Dad?
Will he be 'home to↗morrow, Mum?
Will she be 'here to↗morrow, Tom?

2) The 'red one on the ↗right | 'looks 'very ↘nice, | ||✕ doesn't it?
The 'blue one on the ↗left | 'looks 'very ↘good, | ✕ doesn't it?
The 'young 'man on my ↗right | 'looks 'very ↘kind, | ✕ doesn't he?

EXERCISES

1. Fill in the blanks:
   1) Wei Fang can't go to school today. She ___ (生病) in bed.
   2) Li Ping ___ (出生) in May 1970.
   3) I ___ (很饿). Bring me some meat and bread, please.
   4) Mrs Black ___ (累了). She needs a rest.
   5) I ___ (很忙) now. I can't go with you.
   6) Why ___ the king ___ (生气)?
   7) My father ___ (有空) next Sunday. Then he can take me to the Great Wall.
   8) Maths ___ (不太容易). You must work hard at it.
2. Put the following into Chinese:
   A. 1) I'll do my best for the wall-newspaper.
      2) Many people go to Beidaihe for their summer

holidays.

3) There's a shop **for** clothes near my home. Mother sometimes buys clothes **for** me there.

4) Are you looking **for** something?

5) You'd better go now. Your sister is waiting **for** you.

6) My parents often go out **for** a walk after supper.

7) You may keep the book **for** two weeks.

8) He was late **for** the meeting yesterday.

B. 1) **Take** that old picture down. We'll put up a new one.

2) I like this green skirt. I'll **take** it.

3) He **took** out a pen and a piece of paper and began to write.

4) It **takes** me half an hour to get home by bus.

5) Mr Green is going to **take** his son to London for their winter holidays.

6) Please **take** good care of your books.

7) Peter isn't in. Can I **take** a message for him?

3. Make these sentences negative, then interrogative:

Model: I'll go shopping tomorrow. ⟶

I won't go shopping tomorrow.

Will you go shopping tomorrow?

1) They'll have biology next year.

2) Rose will go skating tomorrow afternoon.

3) Your parents will take you to the Great Wall

tomorrow.

4) Father will go fishing on Sunday.

5) We'll be back at four o'clock.

6) She'll be busy next Tuesday.

4. Rewrite the following sentences after the model:

Model: Show him the magazine, please. (to) ⟶

Show the magazine to him, please.

1) Please buy me a bottle of ink. (for)

2) Please lend me a story-book. (to)

3) Please make her a model ship. (for)

4) Pass him today's evening paper, please. (to)

5) Write us a letter every month, please. (to)

6) Will you please give Kate some bread? (to)

7) Will you please bring me some chicken? (to)

8) Can you draw me a picture of a sheep? (for)

5. Give the English for the Chinese sentences:

— What can I do for you, Comrade?

— 我要一个乒乓球拍。

— The table tennis bats are over there. Which one do you like?

— 黄颜色的那个看上去挺好，多少钱？

— Two *yuan*.

— 恐怕太贵了。

— What about the blue one? It's cheaper. It's only one *yuan* and fifty *fen*.

— 那行。我要一个。

LESSON TWELVE

The Twelfth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Can | you / Jack / Mary / they | work out this problem?

B: Yes. It's not too difficult. | I / He / She / They | can work it out | myself. / himself. / herself. / themselves.

B

A: What's wrong with your

clock?
bike?
watch?
radio?

B: It doesn't work.

A: Can you repair it yourself?

B: I'm afraid not. Can you help me?

A: Certainly.

C

A: Hi, Mike! Where are you going?

B: To John's. We're going to have

Chinese
French
Japanese
Russian

lessons together.

A: Who teaches you?

B: Nobody. We teach ourselves.

TWO FRIENDS AND A BEAR

One day two young men were going through the forest. One said to the other, "We're good friends. We must help each other. If any beast comes at you, I'll stay with you and help you." The other friend said, "I will help you too, if any beast comes at you."

They walked on.

After a while there was a great noise. It was a big bear. The young men ran away quickly. One of them got up into a tree. But the other was fat and could not climb up. So he threw himself at the foot of the tree. He thought to himself, "The bear will think that I am dead."

Soon the bear came near. The bear looked at the fat young man, then it put its nose

down and smelled him. The young man held his breath. The bear thought he was dead, so it went away.

The man in the tree came down. With a smile he asked his friend, "The bear put its mouth so near to your ear. What did it say to you?"

The friend answered, "The bear said, 'Don't trust your friend. He ran away from you when you needed his help most. Remember: A friend in need is a friend indeed.'"

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

hard *adj.* 困难的;硬的

myself [mai'self] (my-self) *pron.* 我自己

themselves [ðəm'selvz] (them-selves) *pron.* 他(她,它)们自己

wrong [rɔŋ] *adj.* 错误的;有毛病的

yourself [jɔ:'self] (your-self) *pron.* 你自己

hi *interj.* 喂(表示问候,或唤起注意)

together [tə'geðə] (to-geth-er) *adv.* 一起

ourselves [ˌauə'selvz] (our-selves) *pron.* 我们自己

* * *

bear [bɛə] *n.* 熊

through [θru:] *prep.*

通过，穿过
forest [ˈfɔrist] *n.* 森林
each *pron.* 各个；每个
adj. 各个；每一
each other 彼此
beast [bi:st] *n.*
四足动物；兽
come at 袭击；向……扑来
walk on 继续走
while [wail] *n.* 一段时间
after a while
过了一会儿，不久
run away 逃跑
throw [θrəu] *vt.* & *vi.*
投掷；摔倒
threw [θru:] (过去式)
at the foot of 在……的脚下
dead [ded] *adj.* 死的
put ... down 把……放下
smell *vt.* 闻，嗅
smelled (过去式)
hold *vt.* 抓住；抑制
held (过去式)
breath [breθ] *n.* 呼吸；气息
hold one's breath 屏住气
trust *vt.* & *n.* 信任
indeed [inˈdi:d] (in-deed)
adv. 的确；真正地

NOTES

1. What's wrong with your clock? 你的钟出了什么毛病？
It doesn't work. 它不走了。
work 在这里是"(机器)运转"的意思。又如：
My radio doesn't work well. 我的收音机不灵了。
2. To John's. = To John's house. 到约翰家去。
在表示某人的家时，名词所有格后面常常省略它所修饰的名词。又如：
He went to his sister's for lunch yesterday. 他昨天到姐姐家吃午饭了。

* * *

3. After a while there was a great noise. 过了一会儿，(森林里)发出了一阵吼声。

noise 在这里作可数名词。

4. So he threw himself at the foot of the tree. 因此他就扑倒在一棵树下。

5. A friend in need is a friend indeed. 患难朋友才是真朋友。

GRAMMAR

反身代词 (The Reflexive Pronouns)

单　数	myself	yourself	himself	herself	itself
复　数	ourselves	yourselves	themselves		

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

1) [ʌ]	u	f*u*n	br*u*sh	s*u*nny	h*u*ngry
	o	s*o*me	c*o*me	s*o*n	L*o*ndon
		l*o*ve	c*o*ver	*o*ther	m*o*ther
2) [r]	r	th*r*ow	b*r*eath	*r*epair	*r*enew
	wr	*wr*ite	*wr*ong		
[tr]	tr	*tr*y	*tr*ust	*tr*ousers	s*tr*ong
[dr]	dr	*dr*aw	*dr*iver	hun*dr*ed	chil*dr*en

2. Read aloud the following:

The 'friend ↗answered, | "The 'bear ↗said, | "Don'(t) 'trust your ↘friend. ‖ He 'ran a ↗way from you | when you 'needed his 'hel(p) ↘most. | Re ↗member: | A 'friend in ↗need | is a 'friend in↘deed.'"

EXERCISES

1. Fill in the blanks:
   1) Will you ___ (好好照看) my little brother when I'm out?
   2) The river ___ (穿过) the forest.
   3) She ___ (放下) her pen and ___ (向窗外看了看).
   4) What are you doing now?
      I ___ (演算) a physics problem.
   5) Joan ___ (试穿了那件上衣). It was a bit too big for her.
   6) "Don't ___ (跑开)," the man called to his son.
2. Put the following into Chinese:
   1) Will you **help** me with my maths this afternoon?
   2) **Help** yourself to some chicken, please.
   3) Let's **help** each other.
   4) I can't do it well. Can you **help** me?
   5) I **helped** my mother do some washing yesterday.
   6) May I **help** you, madam?
   7) Do you need any **help**?
3. Fill in each blank with the proper reflexive pronoun:

1) I bought two tickets for the film. One is for ___ and the other is for my sister.
2) You don't look well. Have a good rest and take care of ___.
3) They asked ___, "Why can't we do the work ___?"
4) Joan's grandma lives in London by ___.
5) My brother taught ___ English.
6) "Can you work out this problem ___?"the teacher asked the students.

4. Fill in the blanks with the proper pronouns:
1) Who taught ___ drawing?
He learned it ___. (him, himself)
2) We must not think only of ___. (us, ourselves)
3) Who will go there with ___?
Nobody. She'll go there ___. (her, herself)
4) "Help ___ to the fish," Mrs Green said to her friends. (you, yourselves)
5) I can't repair the model ship ___. Can you help ___? (me, myself)
6) They made the model ships for ___. (them, themselves)

5. Answer the following questions:
1) The two young men were friends, weren't they?
2) Where were they one day?
3) What did they say to each other?
4) Did any beast come? What was it?

5) Did the two men try to help each other?

6) What did one of them do?

7) Did the other man climb a tree too? What did he do then?

8) What did the big bear do to the man?

9) Was the man afraid? He held his breath, didn't he?

10) Why did the bear soon leave the man?

11) What did the young man ask his friend when he came down from the tree?

12) What was the answer?

LESSON THIRTEEN

The Thirteenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Where's Peter? I want to

have a word with him.
ask him a question.
show him my new bike.

B: I don't know. Perhaps he's in the garden.

A: I'll go and find him.

B

A: Are you going to see Wei Fang today?

B: Yes. I'm going to her home right now.

A: Will you please ask her to

call me return my books bring a map of the world	tomorrow?

B: OK.

C

A: Can you come to

see the film fly my model plane skate in the park	with me now?

B: Sorry, I can't. I'll have to finish my homework first.

LENIN AND THE GUARD

One morning Lenin was going to his office. At the gate a guard stopped him. "Your pass, please."

"Oh, yes, my pass," said Lenin. "It's in one of my pockets." He began to look for it in his pockets.

Just then a young man came up. This young man knew Lenin. He said to the guard: "Let him in."

"No, I won't let him in if he has no pass. What's more, I want to see your pass, too."

The young man became angry. "This is Comrade Lenin. Let him in, I tell you!" he shouted at the guard.

"Don't shout at him," Lenin told the young man. "He's right. We must obey the rules!"

Lenin found his pass and showed it to the guard. The guard looked at it carefully. Yes, it was Lenin himself.

"I'm sorry." the guard said and his face turned red. "I didn't know it was you."

"But you did the right thing," Lenin said. "You are a good comrade. You are strict in your work. We must all be strict in our work."

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

have a word with somebody 和某人说句话
right now 立刻，马上
return [ri'tə:n] (re-turn) *vt.* 还，归还
world [wə:ld] *n.* 世界

* * *

Lenin ['lenin] 列宁
guard [ga:d] *n.* 哨兵，警卫员
office ['ɔfis] (of-fice) *n.* 办公室
gate *n.* 大门
pass *n.* 通行证
pocket ['pɔkit] *n.* 衣袋
become [bi'kʌm] *vi.*

变得;成为
became [bi'keim]
(过去式)
shout [ʃaut] *vi.*, *vt.* & *n.*
喊;高呼
shout at 对……大声叫嚷
obey [ə'bei] *vt.* & *vi.*
服从,听从
rule [ru:l] *n.* 规则;规定
strict *adj.* 严格的

NOTES

1. "Let him in." "让他进去。"
2. "... What's more, I want to see your pass, too."
   "……而且,我还要看你的通行证。"
3. shout at the guard 冲着警卫嚷

   介词 at 常表示动作的目标或方向。又如:

   Don't laugh at me. 别笑我。

   If any beast comes at you, ... 要是野兽向你扑来,……

GRAMMAR

动词不定式 (The Infinitive) (I)

1. 动词不定式的基本形式是"to+动词原形",有时可以不带to。动词不定式(或不定式短语)没有人称和数的变化,在句子中不能作谓语。动词不定式仍保留有动词的特点,即它可以有自己的宾语和状语。动词不定式同它的宾语或状语构成不定式短语。如: to read the newspaper, to speak at the meeting 等。
2. 动词不定式具有名词、形容词、副词的特征,因此在句子中可以作主语、表语、宾语、宾语补足语、定语和状语。

1) 作宾语

They began ***to read and write.***

He wanted ***to have a cup of tea.***

2) 作状语

She went ***to see her grandma herself.***

He stopped ***to have a look.***

3) 作宾语补足语

The teacher told us ***to do Exercises 1 and 2.***

Peter asked me ***to help him with his lessons.***

We often heard them ***sing.***

Let me ***help you.***

注：在 let, hear 等动词后面的复合宾语中，不定式都不带 "to"。

PRONUNCIATION AND INTONATION

1. Pronounce these sounds, letters and words:

[ə]	a	*a*gain	*a*way	A*m*erica*n*	mag*a*zine
	e	prob*l*em	par*e*nt	chil*d*re*n*	mom*e*nt
	o	se*c*ond	nob*o*dy	t*o*morr*o*w	L*o*ndon
	u	aut*u*mn	Aug*u*st	diffic*u*lt	
	er	teach*er*	Octob*er*	yest*er*day	p*er*haps
	or	doct*or*	monit*or*		
[i]	a	mess*a*ge	com*r*ade	or*a*nge	
	e	b*e*come	r*e*turn	p*o*cket	subj*e*ct
	i	*i*ndeed	pol*i*tics	not*i*ce	off*i*ce
	y	hurr*y*	sorr*y*	angr*y*	hungr*y*

2. Read aloud the following:

'Jus(t) ↗then | a 'young 'man 'came ↘up. ‖ This 'young 'man 'knew ↘Lenin. ‖ He 'sai(d) to the ↗guard: | "'Let him ↘in." ‖

"↘No, | I 'won'(t) 'let him ↘in | if he has 'no ↗pass. ‖ 'What's ↗more, | I 'wan(t) to 'see ↘your pass, ↘too." ‖

EXERCISES

1. Give the three forms of the following verbs after the model:

Model: shout	shouts	shouting	shouted	
try	throw	smell	repair	worry
become	hold	smile	put	fit
forget	leave	obey	teach	return

2. Fill in the blanks with **to, through, into, for, after, around, with** or **between:**

1) We see ___ our eyes and walk ___ our legs.
2) What did Mike say ___ you yesterday?
3) Will you go out ___ a walk ___ lunch?
4) He looked ___ him but saw no one.
5) Their home is next ___ ours.
6) The match is ___ an American team and a Japanese team.
7) Go ___ the back door ___ the garden.

3. Fill in the blanks:

1) Where is Mary? I ___ (想说句话) with her.

2) When did you ___ (开始学习) in the middle school?

3) Will you ___ (去看) the English film?

4) We ___ (正尽力使得) our country stronger.

5) Please ___ (叫) her ___ (带来) her violin.

6) Will you ___ (请) him ___ (打电话) me tomorrow?

4. Answer the following questions:

1) Where was Lenin going one morning?

2) Who stopped Lenin at the gate?

3) What did the guard want Lenin to do?

4) Who came up just then?

5) What did the young man say to the guard?

6) Did the guard let Lenin in?

7) The young man was angry, wasn't he? What did he shout at the guard?

8) Lenin told the young man not to shout at the guard, didn't he? What did he say?

9) Did Lenin find his pass? What did he do then?

10) The guard looked at the pass carefully, didn't he? What did he say to Lenin?

11) Did Lenin think the guard was a good comrade? Why?

5. Give the English for these:

1) 你们的语文老师对工作要求很严格，是吧？

2）昨天参观以后你们都很累，对不对？

3）他们让你进去了，是吗？

4）王同志常常给别人修自行车，是不是？

5）他给我看了一张世界地图，并且问了许多问题。

6）— 你在等谁？

— 等小李。

7）— 后天你有空吗？

— 没空，我有一场足球赛。

LESSON FOURTEEN

The Fourteenth Lesson

TEXT

THE STORY OF LITTLE GAUSS

One afternoon some boys made a lot of noise in class. The teacher got angry. He kept them in the classroom after school. He told them to add all the numbers from 1 to 100 together.

The boys took out their exercise-books. All of them began to write the numbers down except one boy. He was new in the school. He looked out of the window for a few minutes. Then he wrote a number in his exercise-book and put up his hand.

"May I go home, sir?" he asked. "I know the answer now."

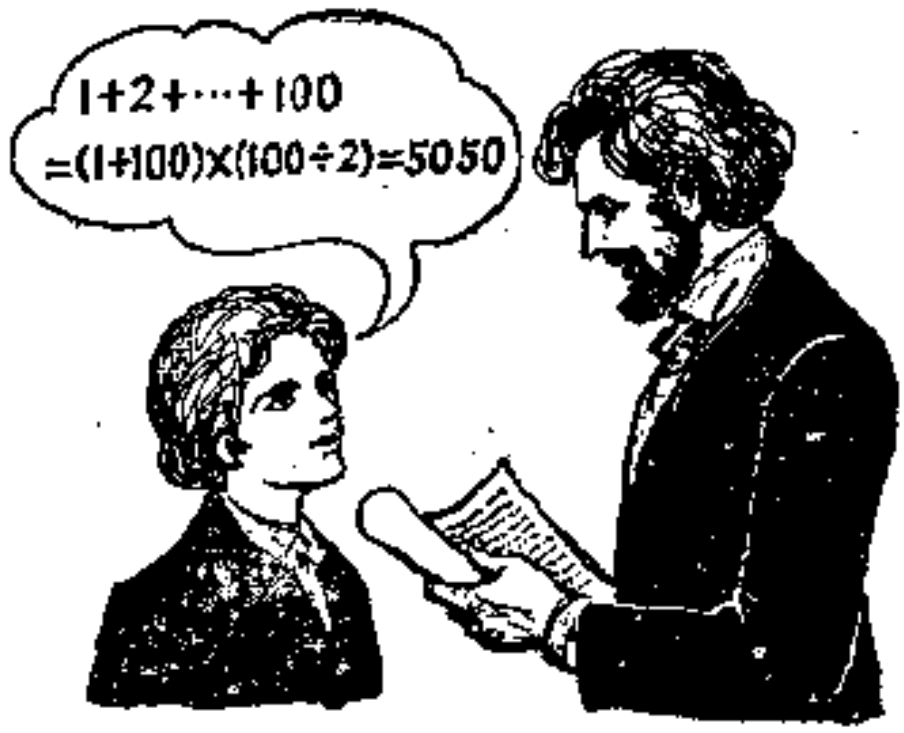
The teacher and the other boys were very surprised.

"Bring it here," said the teacher.

The boy took it to the teacher. The answer was right, so the teacher had to let the boy go home.

The next morning, the teacher asked the boy, "How did you find the answer so quickly?"

"Well, sir," he said, "I didn't want to stay here long. So I tried my best to find the answer quickly. Soon I found it. You see, if you add 100 to 1, you get 101, and 99 and 2 is 101. 98 and 3 is 101 too, and when you reach 51 and 50, you have 101 fifty times. That is 5050."



After this, when the teacher gave the class exercises to do, he gave this boy different exercises. The boy's name was Karl F. Gauss. When he grew up, he became a great scientist.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

make a noise 吵闹

add *vt.* 加;增加

except [ik'sept] (ex-cept) *prep.* 除……之外

put up 举起,抬起

surprise [sə'praiz] (sur-prise) *vt.* 使惊奇,使感到意外

be surprised 感到惊奇

the next morning 第二天早晨(上午)

try one's best 竭尽所能

reach [ri:tʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 到达;达到

time *n.* 次数,次

different ['difrənt] (dif-ferent) *adj.* 不同的,差异的

grow up 成长;长大

NOTES

1. 高斯 (Karl Friedrich Gauss ['kɑ:l 'fri:drik 'gaus], 1777—1855), 德国数学家及天文学家, 是近代数学的奠基者之一。
2. 98 and 3 is 101 too, and when you reach 51 and 50, you have 101 fifty times. 98+3 也是 101。当你算到 51+50 时,你就得到了 50 次101。

EXERCISES

1. Give the English for these:

   1) 第二天早上　　2) 后天

   3) 大约六点半　　4) 过了一会儿

5) 几分钟以后　　6) 一小时以前

7) 在中午　　8) 在白天

9) 在夜间

2. Put the following into Chinese:

1) What time did you **get** to the History Museum?

2) They **got** in a good harvest this year.

3) I **got** up at six this morning.

4) When spring comes it **gets** warmer.

5) I'll go and **get** my book back from Mike.

6) His father **got** angry when he heard the news.

7) The French student **got** tired and hungry after a long walk in the streets.

3. Learn the following by heart:

1)

right —— left	free —— busy
heavy —— light	well —— ill
right —— wrong	living —— dead
cheap —— expensive	near —— far
before —— after	early —— late
quickly —— slowly	easy —— difficult
laugh —— cry	ask —— answer
borrow —— lend	remember —— forget
teach —— learn	wake —— sleep

2)

birthday	afternoon	playground	spaceship
everything	something	nothing	everyone
nobody	schoolgirl	classmate	volleyball
workroom	newspaper	blackboard	handwriting

3) cloud —— cloudy　　wind —— windy

sun —— sunny　　fun —— funny
noise —— noisy　　rain —— rainy
snow —— snowy　　sleep —— sleepy

4. Make sentences with the given words:

Model: we, fly kites; often, now, tomorrow ⟶
We often fly kites.
We're flying kites now.
We're going to fly kites tomorrow.
(We'll fly kites tomorrow.)

1) she, do some washing; every Sunday, now, next Sunday
2) I, clean my room; every day, now, tomorrow morning
3) it, snow; in winter, now, tomorrow
4) they, write the wall-newspaper; once a week, now, next week
5) the baby, cry; often, now, again

5. Read the text and then say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) Karl F. Gauss was a great English scientist. ( )
2) Little Gauss was a new student in that school. ( )
3) Little Gauss and his classmates always listened to their teacher very carefully in class. ( )
4) All the boys wrote the numbers from 1 to 100 down and added them up. ( )
5) It took little Gauss half an hour to finish the

problem. ( )

6) Little Gauss left the classroom much earlier than the other boys. ( )

7) Little Gauss told the teacher how he found the answer so quickly the next day. ( )

8) After this, the teacher gave more difficult work to little Gauss than to the other boys in the class. ( )

LESSON FIFTEEN

The Fifteenth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the three forms of the following verbs after the model:

   Model: hold holds holding held

   try cry stop show become
   reach find remember wash laugh
   notice add trust shout obey

2. Give the comparative and superlative degrees of the following:

   clean cold cool long fine
   ill bad tall new good
   warm angry slowly late young
   quickly careful instructive interesting difficult

3. Give the plural of the following nouns:

   factory holiday library monkey country
   magazine classmate face truck son
   woman policeman knife sheep foot
   dining-room bus-driver picture-book
   pencil-box tomato radio

4. Fill in the blanks:

   1) This watch is ____ (expensive) than that one.

2) My model plane is ____ (light) tha
it flies ____ (fast).

3) That was one of the ____ (interest
that year.

4) This picture looks ____ (good) than
it's also a little ____ (cheap).

5) He is a little ____ (thin) than you
____ (strong) as you.

6) How is Peter today? Is he ____(wei
day? No. He's a little ____ (bad),

7) Comrade Li is as ____ (busy) as a
____ (busy) man in his office.

8) There is ____ (much) meat in this
that one.

5. Fill in each blank with **a, an** or **the**:

1) ____ old man is ____ scientist.

2) It took her half ____ hour to finis

3) I'm going to see ____ film in ____
ma.

4) The king asked ____ artist to c
horse.

5) There is ____ map of ____ world c

6. Fill in the blanks with the proper wc

1) She likes singing, ____ she?(don't,

2) You watched the volleyball match
night, ____ you? (did, didn't, don'

3) We ____ basket-ball yesterday. (p

playing)

4) Look! Who ___ in the fields? (dig, is digging, dug)

5) Where ___ you born? (was, are, were)

6) The peasants ___ ready for the next year now. (are getting, get, got)

7) I usually ___ my homework after supper. (am doing, do, am going to do)

8) Who ___ you geography last year? (teaches, taught, teach)

9) Where did your brother ___ this morning? (went, goes, go)

10) Some English friends ___ our school last Thursday. (visit, visited, are visiting)

7. Answer the following questions:

1) When and where were you born?

2) Where do you live?

3) Which school are you in? Which class are you in?

4) Who teaches you English? How many English classes do you have every week?

5) What do you often do on Sunday? What did you do last Sunday?

6) What time do you get up every morning? What time did you get up this morning?

7) What time did you come to school today?

8) Do you have lunch at school or at home?

9) Do you do morning exercises after the second class?

Do you do eye exercises?

10) Do you have sports every day? Which sport do you like best?

11) Do you have a sports meet every spring? Did you have a sports meet last spring?

12) When do you have your class meeting?

13) Do you like physics? Are you good at it?

14) Is maths difficult for you?

15) Is there a library in your school? Is it big or small?

16) Are there lots of books in your library?

17) Do you read the newspapers every day?

18) Where do you read the newspapers, at home or at the library?

19) What time do you usually go home?

20) What time do you usually do your homework?

21) How long does it often take you to do your homework?

22) What time do you go to bed every evening?

23) Do you often watch TV on Saturday evenings?

24) Do you often go to the cinema?

25) Do you sometimes go to the parks?

8. Give the English for these:

1) 他举手问了老师一个问题。

2) 我将尽力在五点以前完成这项工作。

3) 列宁从衣兜里掏出了通行证，递给警卫看。

4) 我们都应遵守这些规章。

Vocabulary

A

a few 有一些，少数几个 7
a little 一点儿 3
a lot 许多，大量 4
about [ə'baut] *adv.* 大约 6
add [æd] *vt.* 加；增加 14
afraid [ə'freid] *adj.*
(用作表语)怕，害怕
be afraid 恐怕，害怕 4
again [ə'gen] *adv.* 又，再 1
ago [ə'gəu] *adv.* 以前
a moment ago 刚才 4
air [εə] *n.* 空气 9
always ['ɔ:lweiz] *adv.*
总是，一直 1
angry ['æŋgri] *adj.*
发怒的，生气的 5
answer ['ɑ:nsə] *vt.* & *n.*
回答 3
April ['eiprəl] *n.* 四月 4
around [ə'raund] *prep.*
在……周围，环绕着
adv. 在周围，在附近 10
artist ['ɑ:tist] *n.* 美术家；
艺术家 5
as *adv.* 同样地
conj. 象……一样
as ... as 与……一样
not as (so) ... as
与……不一样 9
assistant [ə'sistənt] *n.*
助手；图书管理员 3
at first 起先，开始的时候 7
at last 最后；终于 5
at night 在夜里 9
at the foot of 在……的
脚下 12
at work 在工作 4
August ['ɔ:gəst] *n.* 八月 6
aunt [ɑ:nt] *n.* 姨，姑，伯
母，婶母，舅母 7
away [ə'wei] *adv.* 离开
move away 离开，离去 6

B

bat [bæt] *n.* (网球，乒乓
球等的)球拍 2

bear [bɛə] *n.* 熊 12

beast [bi:st] *n.* 四足动物；兽 12

become [bi'kʌm] *vi.* 变得；成为

became [bi'keim] (过去式) 13

before [bi'fɔ:] *prep.*, *adv.* & *conj.* 在……以前

the day before yesterday 前天 6

between [bi'twi:n] *prep.* 在(两者)之间 2

biology [bai'ɔlədʒi] *n.* 生物学 5

bit [bit] *n.* 一点儿

a bit 有点儿 11

born [bɔ:n] (由动词bear变来的)出生

be born 出生于…… 4

borrow ['bɔrəu] *vt.* 借 3

bottle ['bɔtl] *n.* 瓶

a bottle of 一瓶 11

breath [breθ] *n.* 呼吸；气息

hold one's breath 屏住气 12

bring [briŋ] *vt.* 带来 3

brought [brɔ:t] (过去式)

bring out 取出来 5

brush [brʌʃ] *n.* 刷子；画笔 5

buy [bai] *vt.* 买

bought [bɔ:t] (过去式) 2

by [bai] *prep.* 乘(车、船等) 9

by the way 顺便说，顺便问一下 2

bye-bye ['bai'bai] *interj.* 再会 4

C

call [kɔ:l]

n. 叫声，喊声；通话

vt. 喊，叫；称呼；打电话给……

called (过去式)

a telephone call 一个电话 4

capital ['kæpitl] *n.* 首都；省会 2

care [kɛə] *n.* 照料；保护；小心

take care of 照顾；保管 4

careful ['kɛəful] *adj.* 小心的；仔细的

carefully ['kɛəfuli] *adv.* 小心地；仔细地 9
carriage ['kæridʒ] *n.* 四轮马车 6
chalk [tʃɔ:k] *n.* 粉笔 6
cheap [tʃi:p] *adj.* 廉价的，便宜的 11
cinema ['sinimə] *n.* 电影院；电影 1
go to the cinema 上电影院，去看电影 1
classmate ['klɑ:smeit] *n.* 同班同学 1
clothes [kləuðz] (*pl.*) *n.* 衣服 11
cloudy ['klaudi] *adj.* 多云的，阴天的 7
come at 袭击；向……扑来 12
cover ['kʌvə] *n.* 封面 10
cry [krai] *vi.* 哭；叫喊 7

D

date [deit] *n.* 日期 6
daughter ['dɔ:tə] *n.* 女儿 11
dead [ded] *adj.* 死的 12
December [di'sembə] *n.* 十二月 6
diary ['daiəri] *n.* 日记；日记簿 7
different ['difrənt] *adj.* 不同的，差异的 14
difficult ['difikəlt] *adj.* 难的，困难的 9
do one's best 尽力 1
do one's lessons 做（预习或复习）功课 1

E

each [i:tʃ]
pron. 各个；每个
adj. 各个；每一
each other 彼此 12
easy ['i:zi] *adj.* 容易 1
eat [i:t] *vt.* 吃
ate [et, eit] (过去式) 10
everyone ['evriwʌn] *pron.* 每人，人人 7
everything ['evriθiŋ] *pron.* 每件事，每样东西 9
except [ik'sept] *prep.* 除……之外 14
exciting [ik'saitiŋ] *adj.* 令人兴奋的，使人激动的 9

expensive [iks'pensiv]
adj. 昂贵的 9

F

far away 遥远，很远 9
February ['februəri] *n.*
二月 4
film [film] *n.* 影片，电影 1
finish['finiʃ]*vt.* 完成，结束 3
fish [fiʃ] *vi.* 捕鱼；钓鱼
go fishing (去)钓鱼 11
fit [fit] *vt.* & *vi.*
适合，合身 11
fly [flai] *vi.* 飞；飞行
vt. 放(风筝、飞机模型等)
flew [flu:] (过去式) 9
forest ['forist] *n.* 森林 12
forget [fə'get] *vt.* & *vi.*
忘记
forgot [fə'gɔt](过去式) 11
free [fri:] *adj.* 空闲的；
自由的 11
French [frentʃ]
adj. 法国的，法国人的
n. 法语 6
fun [fʌn] *n.* 有趣的事；
玩笑；娱乐
great fun 很有趣的事 9

G

gate [geit] *n.* 大门 13
geography [dʒi'ɔgrəfi]
n. 地理学 1
get [get] *vt.* 得到，获得
got [gɔt] (过去式) 2
go out for a walk 出去散步 6
great [greit] *adj.* 伟大的；
重大的；(口语)美妙的 2
grow up 成长；长大 14
guard [gɑ:d] *n.* 哨兵，警
卫员 13

H

half an hour 半小时 6
hard [hɑ:d] *adv.* 猛烈地；
剧烈地 7
adj. 困难的；硬的 12
have a look 看一看 6
have a swim 游泳 1
have a word with some-
body 和某人说句话 13
have to 不得不，必须 4
herself [hə:'self] *pron.*
她自己 7

hi [hai] *interj.* 喂(表示问候,或唤起注意) 12
himself [him'self] *pron.* 他自己 5
history ['histəri] *n.* 历史,历史学 6
hold [həuld] *vt.* 抓住;抑制
held [held] (过去式) 12
holiday ['holədi] *n.* 假日;假期 10
hospital ['hɔspitl] *n.* 医院 7
how much 多少 11
hungry ['hʌŋgri] *adj.* 饥饿的 10

I

if [if] *conj.* 假如,如果 3
ill [il] *adj.* 病的 4
in the day 在白天 9
in time 及时 3
indeed [in'di:d] *adv.* 的确;真正地 12
instructive [in'strʌktiv] *adj.* 有教育意义的;有启发的 9
into ['intu, 'intə] *prep.* 到……里 11

J

January ['dʒænjuəri] *n.* 一月 4
Japanese [ˌdʒæpə'ni:z] *adj.* 日本的;日本人的 *n.* 日本人;日语 2
July [dʒu(:)'lai] *n.* 七月 6
jump [dʒʌmp] *vi.* 跳 7
just [dʒʌst] *adv.* 正好,恰好 4
just then 正在那时 6

K

keep [ki:p] *vt.* 保存,保持;留住
kept [kept] (过去式) 3
keep up with 跟上 6
kilometre ['kiləuˌmi:tə] *n.* 千米,公里 9
king [kiŋ] *n.* 国王 5
kite [kait] *n.* 风筝 11

L

last [la:st] *adj.* 刚过去的
last year 去年 1

late [leit] *adv.* & *adj.*
迟(的),晚(的) 2
laugh [lɑ:f] *vi.* & *n.*
笑,发笑 7
learn [lə:n] *vt.* 学;学会 5
leave [li:v]
vt. 离开;剩下;留下
vi. 离去;出发
left [left] (过去式) 7
left [left] *n.* 左,左边
adj. 左,左边的 9
lend [lend] *vt.* 把……借给
lent [lent] (过去式) 3
Lenin ['lenin] 列宁 13
library ['laibrəri] *n.*
图书馆(室) 3
light [lait] *adj.* 轻的 9
like [laik] *prep.* 象;
跟……一样 7
living ['liviŋ] *adj.* 活的;
活着的 9
London ['lʌndən] 伦敦 10
long [lɔŋ] *adv.* 长久 3
look after 照看,照顾 4
love [lʌv] *vt.* 爱;喜欢 5

M

madam ['mædəm] *n.* 夫人,
女士(对妇女的尊称) 11
magazine [ˌmægə'zi:n] *n.*
杂志 10
make a noise 吵闹 14
make faces 做鬼脸 7
match [mætʃ] *n.*
比赛,竞赛
have a match 举行(进行)
一场比赛 2
may [mei] *v. aux.* 可以 3
meet [mi:t] *n.* 会;集会
sports meet 运动会 10
meeting ['mi:tiŋ] *n.*
会,集会
have a meeting 开会 2
message ['mesidʒ] *n.*
消息;信息
take a message for
给……捎个信儿 4
moment ['məumənt] *n.*
片刻;瞬间;时刻 4
monkey ['mʌŋki] *n.* 猴子 7
more [mɔ:] *adj.* (much,
或 many 的比较级)更多
的,较多的
adv. (much 的比较级)更 1
most [məust] *adv.* & *adj.*

(much 或 many 的最高级)
最 9
move [mu:v] *vt.* & *vi.*
移动;搬动
move on 继续向前移动 6
Mrs ['misiz] *n.* 夫人
Mrs Black 布莱克夫人 4
museum [mju(:)'ziəm] *n.*
博物馆
the History Museum
历史博物馆 6
music ['mju:zik] *n.* 音乐 7
myself [mai'self] *pron.*
我自己 12

N

near [niə] *adj.* & *adv.*
近的(地);接近的(地) 9
need [ni:d] *vt.*, *n.* &
v. aux. 需要;必要 1, 3
newspaper ['nju:s,peipə]
n. 报纸 1
nobody ['nəubədi] *pron.*
没有人 4
noise [nɔiz] *n.* 嘈杂声;
响声 6
noon [nu:n] *n.* 中午,正午
at noon 在中午 10
not ... any longer 不再 5
not ... any more 不再 7
notice ['nəutis] *vt.*
注意到 6
November [nəu'vembə]
n. 十一月 6

O

obey [ə'bei] *vt.* & *vi.*
服从,听从 13
October [ɔk'təubə] *n.* 十月 7
office ['ɔfis] *n.* 办公室 13
once [wʌns] *adv.* 一次;
一度;从前
at once 立刻,马上 6
one day 有一天,某一天 5
ourselves [,auə'selvz] *pron.*
我们自己 12

P

palace ['pælis] *n.* 宫,宫殿
the Children's Palace
少年宫 2
the Summer Palace
颐和园 7
pass [pa:s] *n.* 通行证 13

P.E. (physical education) ['fizikəl ˌedju(:)'keiʃən] *n.* 体育 6

physics ['fiziks] *n.* 物理学 1

pile [pail] *n.* 堆
a pile of 一堆的
piles and piles of 一堆堆的 5

playground ['pleigraund] *n.* (学校的)操场;(儿童)游戏场 2

pocket ['pɔkit] *n.* 衣袋 13

politics ['pɔlitiks] *n.* 政治 6

pound [paund] *n.* 英镑(英国货币单位) 11

problem ['prɔbləm] *n.* 问题;习题 6

put ... down 把……放下 12

put up 举起,抬起 14

Q

quarter ['kwɔ:tə] *n.* 一刻钟,四分之一 5

question ['kwestʃən] *n.* 问题 3

quickly ['kwikli] *adv.* 快,迅速 5

R

reach [ri:tʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 到达;达到 14

remember [ri'membə] *vt.* 记得,想起 10

renew [ri'nju:] *vt.* 续借(图书);重新开始 3

repair [ri'pɛə] *vt.* & *n.* 修理;修补 11

restaurant ['restərɔ̃:ŋ, 'restərənt] *n.* 饭馆 10

return [ri'tə:n] *vt.* 还,归还 13

right [rait]
n. 右,右边
adj. 右,右边的 9
right now 立刻,马上 13

rule [ru:l] *n.* 规则;规定 13

run away 逃跑 12

run up 跑上去,跑过去 6

S

science ['saiəns] *n.* 科学
the Science Museum

科学馆 10

scientist ['saiəntist]
n. 科学家 6

second ['sekənd] *n.* 秒 9

September [sep'tembə]
n. 九月 1

shop [ʃɔp] *n.* 商店
vi. 到商店去买东西
do some shopping 买东西
shop assistant 营业员，
店员 11

shout [ʃaut] *vi.*, *vt.*
& *n.* 喊；高呼
shout at 对……大
声叫嚷 13

show [ʃəu] *vt.* 给……看；
出示 10

sir [sə:, sə] *n.* 先生，阁下 10

size [saiz] *n.* 尺寸，大小 11

smell [smel] *vt.* 闻，嗅 12

son [sʌn] *n.* 儿子 9

sorry ['sɔri] *adj.* 难过的；
对不起的 3

spaceship ['speis,ʃip] *n.*
宇宙飞船 9

stadium ['steidjəm] *n.*
体育场
the Capital Stadium
首都体育馆 2

start [stɑ:t] *vt.* 开始
vi. 出发 6

stay [stei] *vi.* 停留；暂住 3

strict [strikt] *adj.*
严格的 13

strong [strɔŋ] *adj.*
强壮的；坚强的 9

subject ['sʌbdʒikt] *n.*
科目 1

sunny ['sʌni] *adj.*
晴朗的；阳光充足的 10

surprise [sə'praiz] *vt.*
使惊奇，使感到意外
be surprised 感到惊奇 14

T

table tennis ['teibl 'tenis]
n. 乒乓球 2

talk [tɔ:k] *n.* & *vi.*
演讲；谈话
give a talk
做讲演(报告) 2

teach [ti:tʃ] *vt.* & *vi.*
教；教书
taught [tɔ:t] (过去式) 11

team [ti:m] *n.* 队;组 2
telephone ['telifəun] *n.* 电话,电话机 4
tennis ['tenis] *n.* 网球 1
term [tə:m] *n.* 学期 1
the Great Wall 长城 11
the next morning 第二天早晨(上午) 14
themselves [ðəm'selvz] *pron.* 他(她,它)们自己 12
thing [θiŋ] *n.* 事情,东西 7
think about 考虑 6
thousand ['θauzənd] *num.* 千 9
through [θru:] *prep.* 通过,穿过 12
throw [θrəu] *vt.* & *vi.* 投掷;摔倒
threw [θru:](过去式) 12
ticket ['tikit] *n.* 票,券 2
time [taim] *n.* 次数,次 14
tired ['taiəd] *adj.* 疲劳的,累的 7
together [tə'geðə] *adv.* 一起 12
tomorrow [tə'mɔrəu] *adv.* & *n.* (在)明天 1
the day after tomorrow 后天 2
tonight [tə'nait] *adv.* & *n.* 今晚 9
trust [trʌst] *vt.* & *n.* 信任 12
try [trai] *vt.* & *vi.* 试;努力
try on 试穿(衣、鞋、帽等) 11
try one's best 竭尽所能 14
turn on 开,旋开(电灯,无线电等)
turn on the radio 打开收音机 7

U

understand [ˌʌndə'stænd] *vt.* 懂得;理解 10
understood [ˌʌndə'stud](过去式)
use [ju:z] *vt.* 用;使用 3

V

violin [ˌvaiə'lin] *n.* 小提琴 5
visit ['vizit] *vt.* & *n.*

访问;参观 6
volleyball ['vɔlibɔ:l]
n. 排球 1

W

waiter ['weitə] *n.*
侍者(服务员) 10
walk on 继续走 12
want [wɔnt] *vt.* 要,
想要; 需要 2
was [wɔz, wəz] (am, is
的过去式)
were [wə:, wə] (are 的
过去式) 4
wash [wɔʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 洗
do some washing
洗衣服 10
way [wei] *n.* 方法;手段 10
while [wail] *n.* 一段时间
after a while
过了一会儿,不久 12
whole [həul] *adj.* 整个的 7
wife [waif] *n.* 妻子 10
will [wil] *v. aux.*
将;会;愿 3
windy ['windi] *adj.*
有风的;风大的 10
wish [wiʃ] *vt.* & *n.*
希望;愿望;祝愿 9
work hard at 努力学习 1
work out 算出;制订出 6
workroom ['wə:krum]
n. 工作室 5
world [wə:ld] *n.* 世界 13
worried ['wʌrid] *adj.*
焦虑的;烦恼的;担忧的 7
worry ['wʌri] *vt.*
(使)担忧
worry about 担心 4
wrong [rɔŋ] *adj.*
错误的;有毛病的 12

Y

yesterday ['jestədi]
adv. & *n.* (在)昨天 4
yet [jet] *conj.* 然而 5
yourself [jɔ:'self] *pron.*
你自己 12

Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Past Tense
be	
am, is	was
are	were
become	became
begin	began
bring	brought [bro:t]
buy	bought
can	could [kud]
come	came
dig	dug
do	did
draw	drew [dru:]
eat	ate [et, eit]
find	found
fly	flew [flu:]
forget	forgot
get	got
give	gave
go	went
grow	grew [gru:]
have	had
hear	heard [hə:d]
hold	held
keep	kept
know	knew [nju:]
learn	learned, learnt
leave	left
lend	lent
let	let
make	made
may	might
put	put
read	read [red]
run	ran
say	said [sed]
see	saw [sɔ:]
shine	shone
show	showed
sing	sang
sit	sat
sleep	slept
smell	smelt, smelled
speak	spoke
stand	stood
sweep	swept

Infinitive	Past Tense	Infinitive	Past Tense
swim	swam	throw	threw
take	took	understand	understood
teach	taught [to:t]	wake	woke, waked
tell	told	will	would
think	thought	write	wrote

Supplementary Readings

1. What Am I?

I was born in a small river. When I was young, the river was my home. I did not know my parents, but I had hundreds of brothers and sisters. I swam about and played all day with them.

At that time I did not look like my parents. I had no legs, but I had a long tail. So I looked like a fish.

Then my tail became shorter and shorter. And now I have four legs and a very short tail.

I know I'm going to have no tail at all soon. I'm going to be like my parents. Then I'm going to jump out of the water. I'm going to live on the land and in the water too. I'm going to eat a lot of insects —— a lot of bad insects.

What Am I?

(A Frog)

swim about 四处游动
tail [teil] *n.* 尾巴
at all 完全，全然
land *n.* 陆地
insect ['insekt] *n.* 昆虫
frog *n.* 蛙

2. The Tiger and the Monkey

Once there lived an old tiger in a forest. He did not often go to look for food himself. Each day he made one of the smaller animals bring him something to eat.

One morning the tiger was very, very hungry. He said to a monkey, "I'm hungry, Monkey. Go and bring me a fat pig."

"I can't do that, Mr Tiger," said the monkey. "There's another tiger in the forest. He's younger and stronger than you are. He told me not to bring you anything."

"What!" shouted the old tiger. "Another tiger? Show me that beast. I'll speak to him."

"Come with me, Mr Tiger," said the monkey. "You'll see him yourself."

The monkey took the tiger to a big river.

"Look into the river," said the monkey. "There he is! See his head? Look at his big teeth. Isn't he bigger than you?"

"Grrr ...! So you told Monkey not to bring me anything! Grrrr ... I'll kill you!"

With these words the tiger jumped into the river. He did not come out again.

"Ha ha ha! Goodbye, Mr Tiger," cried the monkey and he went away.

tiger ['taigə] *n.* 老虎
food [fu:d] *n.* 食物
deep *adj.* 深的
tooth [tu:θ] *n.* 牙齿
teeth (*pl*)
kill *vt.* 杀死

3. A Surprise for Abe (1)

The winter of 1820 was a cold one for the Lincolns. It snowed nearly every day and the snow was high around their little farm house.

Abe Lincoln was just a boy, but he helped his father Tom around the farm. He looked after the house, milked the cow and cut wood. It was hard work and there wasn't much fun for him and his brothers and sisters. Abe wanted to go to school, but there was no school there. Abe was not happy. He was sad most of the time.

Mrs Lincoln, Abe's stepmother,really loved the boy. She tried to think of ways to make Abe happy.

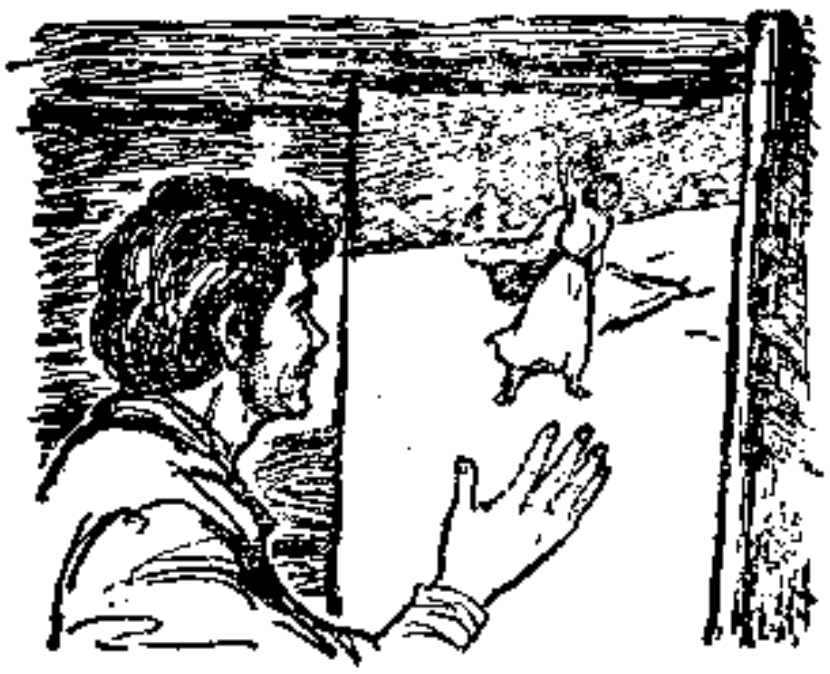
One day Mrs Lincoln got up early in the morning. She took all her pennies from a small box.

"I'm going to town," she said.

"You're going to town?" Tom Lincoln asked. He was surprised. "That's a long way. And the snow is high. What are you going to do in town?"

"It's a surprise," she said.

"Do you want Abe or me to go with you?" Tom asked his wife.



"No. I'll be all right," she said and then went out of the house.

Walking in high snow was very difficult. It took Mrs Lincoln a long time to get to town. She bought something in town and started back. It was late in the evening when she got home.

(To be continued)

surprise *n.* 没有想到的事(礼物)
Abe 艾贝(人名, Abraham ['eibrəhæm] 的昵称)
Lincoln ['liŋkən] 林肯(美第十六任总统, 全名为 Abraham Lincoln)
the Lincolns 林肯一家
nearly ['niəli] *adv.* 几乎, 差不多
farm *n.* 农场
milk *vt.* 挤……的奶
cut *vt.* 切; 割; 砍
wood [wud] *n.* 木柴; 木头
sad *adj.* 悲哀的
stepmother ['step,mʌðə] *n.* 继母
really ['riəli] *adv.* 真正地
make somebody happy 使某人高兴
penny ['peni] *n.* 分(美国或加拿大辅币)
town [taun] *n.* 市镇, 城镇

4. A Surprise for Abe (2)

"So you're back," said Tom. "What's the surprise?"

"You'll find out tomorrow," she said with a smile.

At dinner time the next day, Mrs Lincoln asked, "What day is it, Abe?"

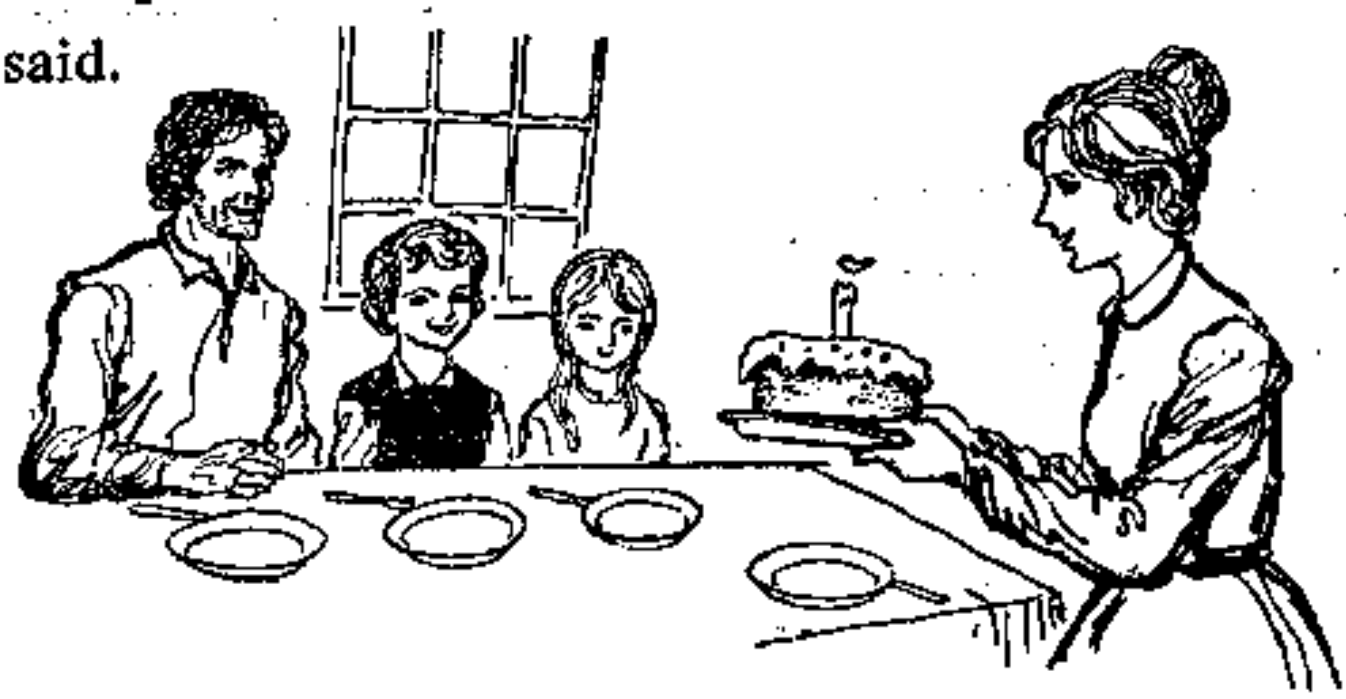
"It's Friday, isn't it?"

"It's February 12, Abe. It's your birthday!" she cried.

"Oh, is it? I forgot," he said. He didn't care. What was a birthday to him? Just another day. He would be a year older, that's all.

"So we're going to have a party!" she said.

She put the food on the table. "Potatoes and fish," she said.



No one said a word. They had potatoes and fish nearly every day that winter.

"I made a small cake too," she said. She brought it out. Everyone smiled. Even Abe smiled, but only a little and not for long.

"That's not all," she said. Then she brought out her

present and put it before Abe.

His eyes became very wide. "A book!" he cried. "A book!"

It was an old book. Part of it was gone, but Abe didn't mind. He looked through it.

"It's got stories," he cried. "Lots of stories."

"Do you like books that much?" asked Tom. "Even an old book?"

"I want to know what's in the book," said Abe. "Even in an old book."

He began to read the stories. A smile came to his face. He looked up at Mrs Lincoln. "Thank you," he said.

"And thank you, Abe," she said. "Your smile is the nicest present I can have."

dinner [ˈdinə] *n.* 正餐(午饭或晚饭)
would [wud] *v.aux.* (will 的过去式)
party [ˈpɑːti] *n.* 聚会
food [fuːd] *n.* 食物
potato [pəˈteitəu] *n.* 土豆,马铃薯
wide *adj.* (眼睛)睁得大大的
part *n.* 部分
gone [gɔn] *vi.* (go 的过去分词) Part of it was gone. 它(指书)的一部分已经没有了。
mind [maind] *vi.& vt.* 介意
look through 浏览
even [ˈiːvn] *adv.* 甚至
Your smile is the nicest present I can have. 你的微笑是我能得到的最好的礼物。

说　明

初级中学课本英语是以《全日制十年制初中课本（试用本）英语》为基础，参考各地教师在试用期间提出的意见编订而成的。

本册由刘道义、司延亭编订。

北京外国语学院邓炎昌教授审订。

初级中学课本

英　语

第三册

人民教育出版社外语室英语组编

*

人民教育出版社出版

北京出版社重印

北京市新华书店发行

北京印刷一厂印刷

*

787×1092毫米　32开本　印张 5　插页 1　字数 82,000

1982年10月第1版　　1987年6月第5次印刷

书号 K7012·0418　　定价 0.46元

初级中学课本

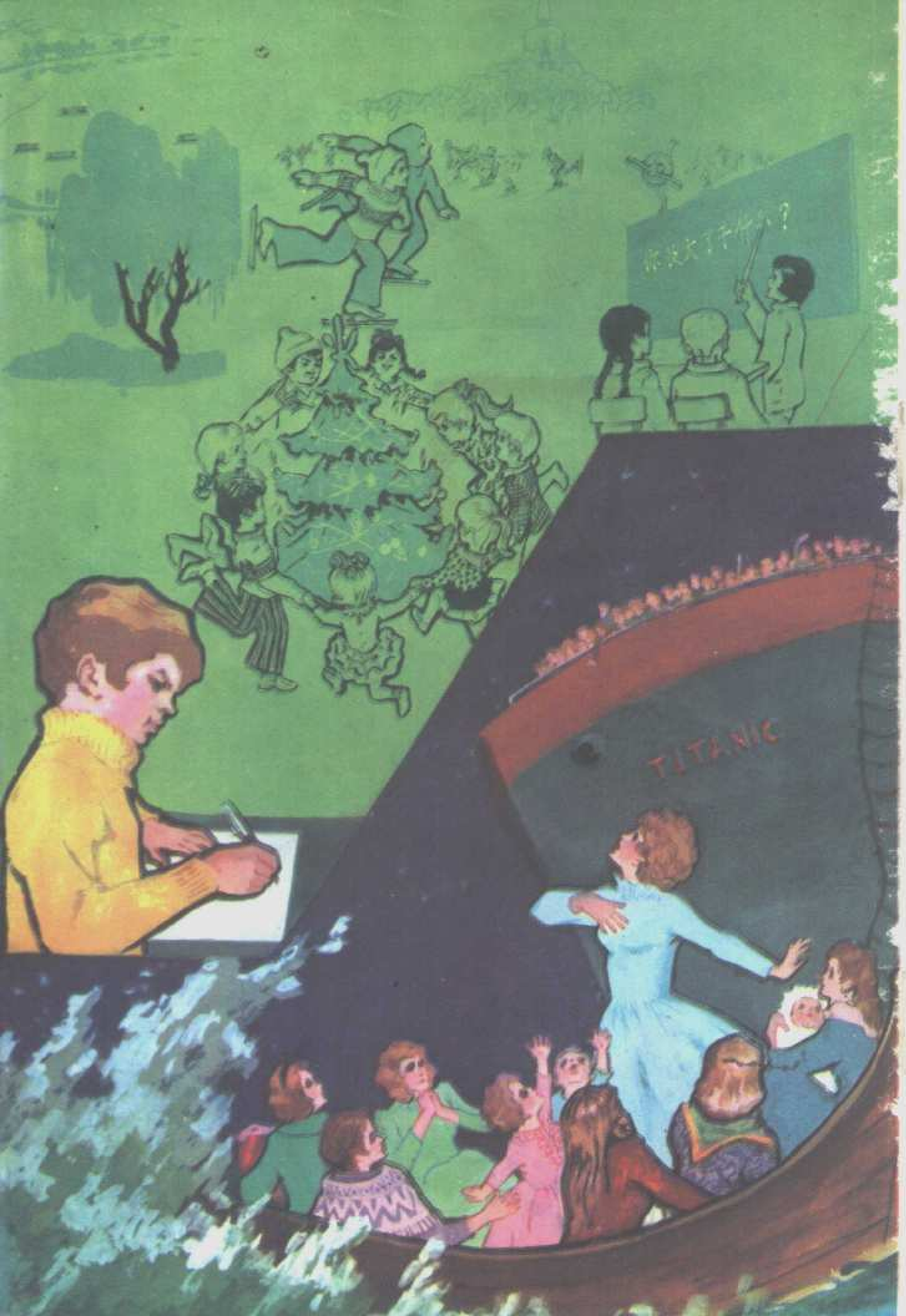
英语

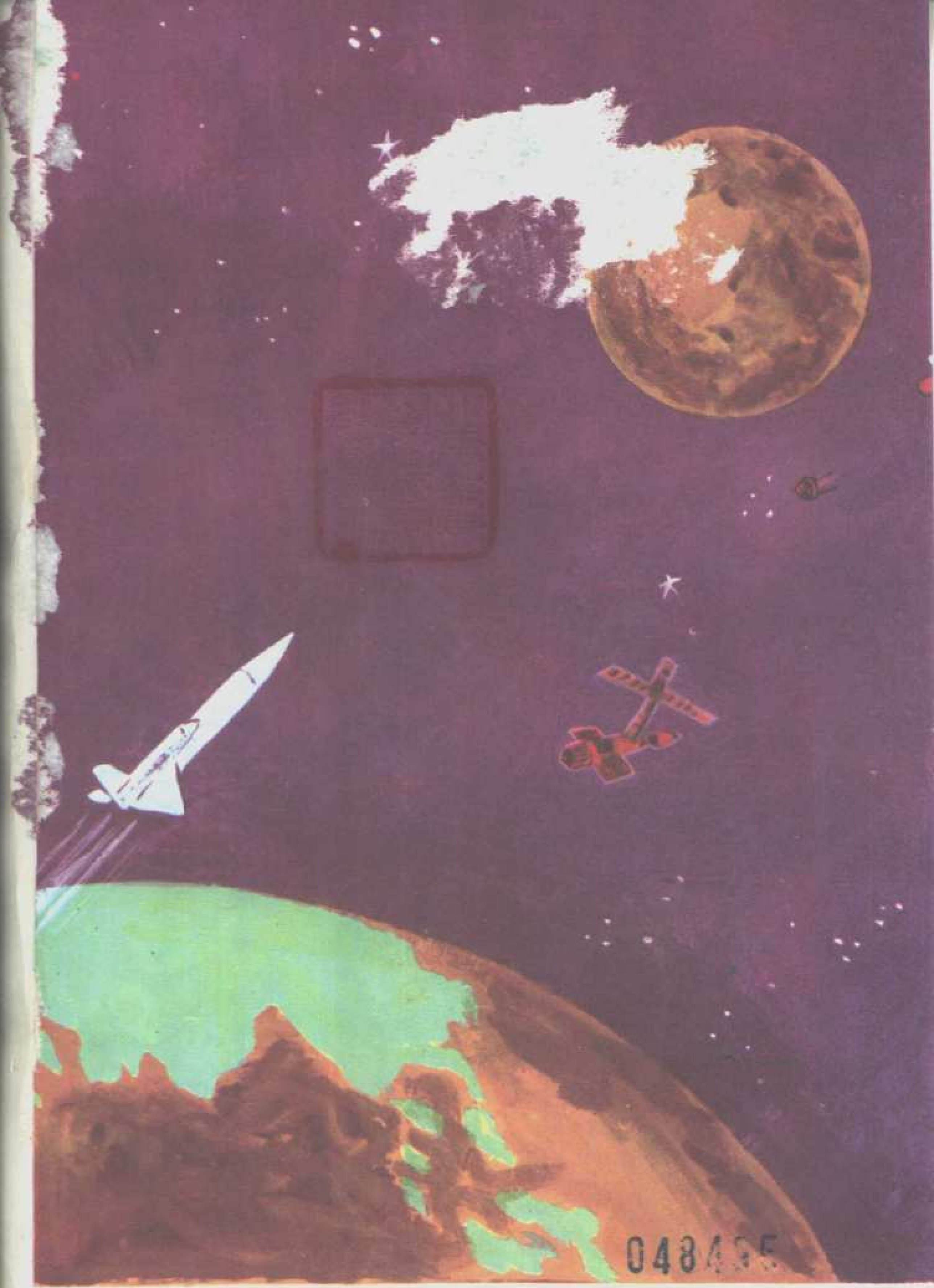
第四册

English

4

人民教育出版社


TITANIC



048485

说　明

初级中学课本英语是以《全日制十年制初中课本(试用本)英语》为基础，参考各地教师在试用期间提出的意见编订而成的。

本册由刘岩、万大林编订。

北京外国语学院邓炎昌教授审订。

CONTENTS

Lesson 1 1

Drills: 1. Shall I get some chalk?

2. What shall we do in our English class tomorrow?

3. When shall we visit the Science Museum?

Dialogue: Let Me Help You

Grammar: The Article

Lesson 2 15

Drills: 1. I was doing some cooking yesterday evening.

2. Were you doing the same thing at that time?

3. What was Jenny doing this time yesterday?

Text: The Monkey and the Crocodile

Grammar: The Interrogative Sentence

Lesson 3 26

Drills: They were doing maths exercises when I left.

Text: The Monkey and the Crocodile (Continued)

Grammar: The Past Continuous Tense

Lesson 4 36

Drills: 1. Was it raining when school was over

yesterday?
2. Where did your brother study before he went to college?
3. I went to bed at about ten after I did my homework.
Text: It's Unfair
Grammar: Types of Sentences
Lesson 5 47
Drills: 1. I'll give the note to Tom as soon as he comes back.
2. I'll go with you to the cinema this afternoon if I'm free.
3. The swimming pool won't be open today because they're changing the water.
Text: It's Unfair (Continued)
Grammar: The Adverbial Clause
Lesson 6 58
Text: The Rails Sing
Lesson 7 (Revision) 67
Lesson 8 73
Drills: 1. Have you returned the book?
Yes, I have. I've just (already) returned it. (No, I haven't.)
2. Has Peter seen the doctor?
Yes, he has. (No, he hasn't.)

Dialogue: What's Wrong with Tom?

Lesson 9 83

Drills: 1. How many pages have you read?

2. Has the plane arrived?

Yes, it has.

When did it arrive?

Half an hour ago.

Text: I Have Sung Already

Lesson 10 93

Drills: 1. You've known each other for about two years.

2. How long has your uncle taught in that village?

He's taught there since 1965.

Text: An Australian Boy in Beijing

Grammar: The Present Perfect Tense (I)

Lesson 11 105

Drills: 1. How long has he been a soldier?

He's been a soldier for about two months.

2. Have you ever been to the Great Wall?

Yes, I have. (No, never.)

Text: The Piano Concert

Lesson 12 115

Drills: 1. Where have you been?

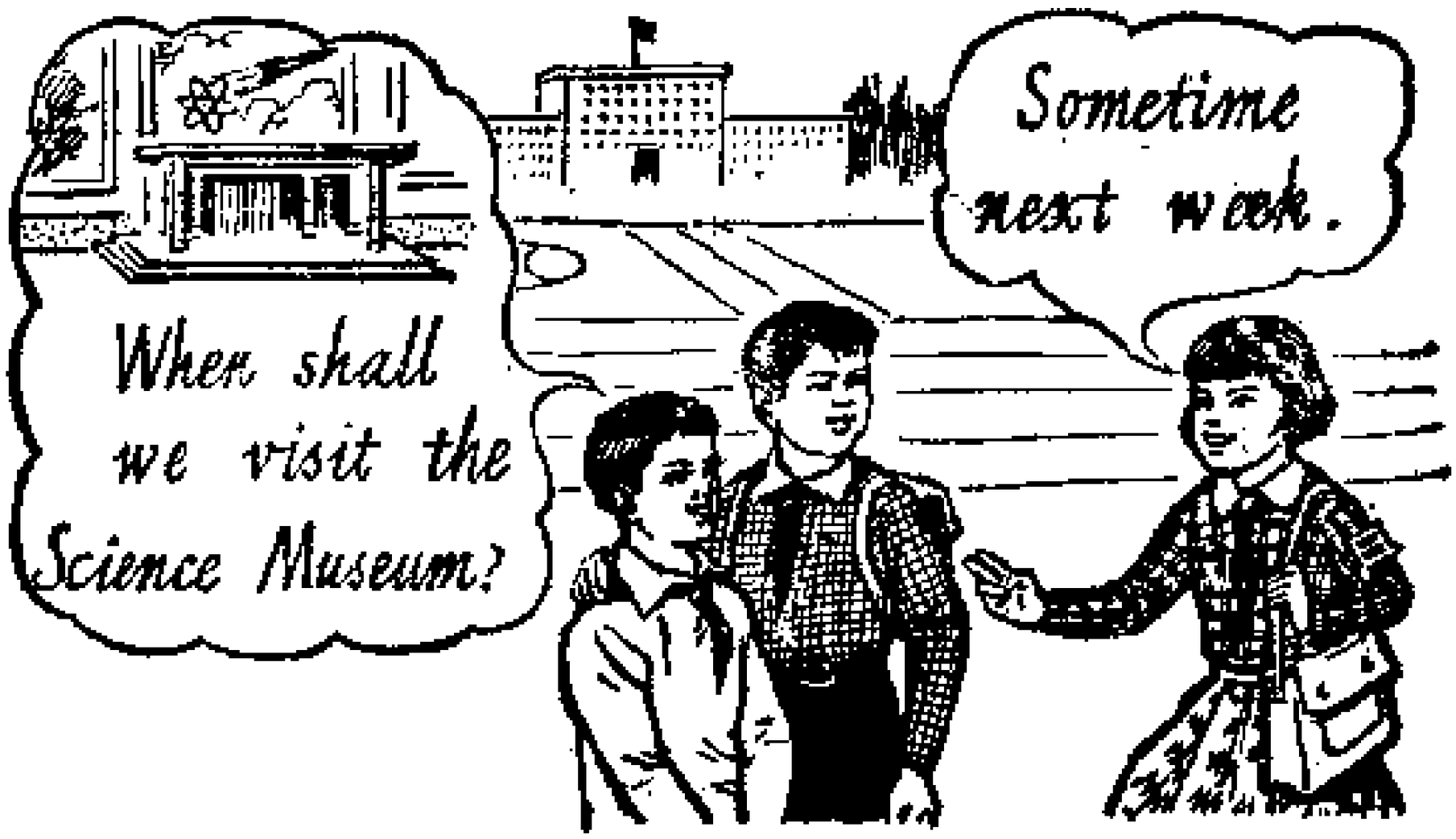
I've just been to the library.

2. Where's Wei Fang?
She's gone to the shop.
Text: The Universe and Man-made Satellites
Grammar: The Present Perfect Tense (II)
Lesson 13 126
Text: Miss Evans
Lesson 14 (Revision) 133
Vocabulary 141
Irregular Verbs 153
Supplementary Readings: 1. Standing Room Only 156
2. "What a Fool I Was!" 158
3. Dolphin Language 160
4. The Arab and the Camel 163

LESSON ONE

The First Lesson

DRILLS



A

A: Shall I	get some chalk?
	change the maps on the wall?
	return these books to the library?

B: Yes, please.

(No, thanks. Let Li Ping do it.)

B

A: What shall we do in our English class tomorrow?

B: We'll | go over the new words.
have a test.
talk about some pictures. |

C

A: When shall we have | the class meeting?
the English evening?
the talk on the history of the Party? |

B: Next Wednesday afternoon.

A: Where shall we have it?

B: In the meeting-room.

DIALOGUE

LET ME HELP YOU

W — Woman

L — Liu Mei

P — Policeman

H — Husband

(*At a street corner.*)

W (*looking very worried*): Oh, dear! What shall I do?

(*Liu Mei is on her way to see a film, but she stops.*)

L: What's the matter, Granny? Can I help you?

W: I'm here to see my husband. He's in hospital. He wrote the name of the hospital in his letter, but I can't find the letter now. What shall I do?

L: It's not in any of your pockets?

W: No.

L: Maybe you put it in your basket.

W (*looking in her basket*): Ah, yes, here it is! (*She shows it to Liu Mei.*)

L: Yes, this is it.

W: How can I get there? I don't know the way.

L: I don't, either, Granny. I'll ask the policeman. (*Runs to the policeman at the corner.*)

L: Excuse me, which is the way to the East Street Hospital?

P: Go down this street, then turn right at the second crossing. At the end of the road you'll find the hospital. It's about half an

hour's walk. But you can get there by bus.

L: Which bus shall I take?

P: The No. 3 bus over there. It'll take you right there.

L: Thank you. (*Runs back to the old woman.*) Granny, the hospital is a bit far from here. Shall we go by bus?

W: All right.

(*Twenty minutes later the old woman finds her husband. How happy they are to see each other!*)

H: But how did you get here?

W: This little girl brought me.

H: Which girl?

(*They look around but Liu Mei is already gone.*)

W: What a good girl!

(Liu Mei is very late for the film, but she doesn't mind.)

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

shall [ʃæl,ʃəl] *v. aux.*
(我,我们)将要
shan't [ʃɑ:nt] = shall not
sometime *adv.* 在某一时候
change [tʃeindʒ] *vt.* & *vi.*
改换;改变 *n.* 变化
go over 过一遍,复习
test *n.* & *vt.* 测验,考查,试验
have a test 进行测验(考查,试验)
talk about 谈到;谈论
evening *n.* (联欢性的)晚会;晚上娱乐时间
an English evening 英语晚会
party ['pɑ:ti] *n.*
政党,党派;聚会
meeting-room *n.* 会议室

* * *

husband ['hʌzbənd] *n.* 丈夫
corner ['kɔ:nə] *n.*
角;(街道)拐角;角落
at a street corner 在街道拐角
dear *interj.* 哎呀(表示焦急、惊奇、伤心等)
on one's way to 往……去的路上
matter ['mætə] *n.*
事情;问题
the matter 麻烦事,毛病
maybe ['meibi:] *adv.*
或许,大概
basket ['bɑ:skit] *n.*
篮子,篓子
either ['aiðə] *adv.* (用于否定句或否定词组后加强语气)也
pron. 两者之一
adj. 任何一个
east *n.* 东,东方

adj. 东方的

adv. 在东方，向东方

crossing ['krɔsiŋ] *n.*

交叉(点)；十字路口

end *n.* 末梢；终点

vt. & *vi.* 结束，终止

at the end of 在……末梢，到……的尽头

road *n.* 路；公路

the end of the road

路之终点

already [ɔ:l'redi] *adv.* 已经

mind [maind] *vi.* 介意

vt. 注意，当心

NOTES

1. When shall we have the talk on the history of the Party? 我们什么时候听党史报告？

on *prep.* 关于。又如：

a book on the radio 一本关于无线电的书。

the Party 指 the Communist Party of China (中国共产党)。

* * *

2. Oh, dear! What shall I do? 哎呀！我怎么办呢？

3. What's the matter, Granny? 老奶奶，您怎么啦？

也可以说：What's the matter with you, Granny?

4. It's not in any of your pockets? (它)不在您口袋里？

这是一种陈述式疑问句。语序保持陈述句形式，通过语调的改变而成为疑问句。常用于口语。又如：

"You're not ill, Son?" his mother asked. "你没有病吧，孩子？"他母亲问。

You often go home on Sunday? 你经常星期天回

家吗？

5. Excuse me, which is the way to the East Street Hospital? 对不起，请问到东大街医院怎么走？

6. Go down this street, then turn right at the second crossing. 顺着这条街走，然后在第二个十字路口向右拐。

down 在这里是介词，"沿马路、胡同、铁路线等"的意思。在这个用法上，用 down 或 up 都可以。又如：

He is walking down (或 up) the road. 他正沿着这条马路走。

7. It's about half an hour's walk. 大约半小时的路程。(大约走半个小时就到了。)

8. Twenty minutes later the old woman finds her husband. 二十分钟以后，这位老太太找到了她的丈夫。

副词 later 在这里是"以后"的意思。

9. They look around but Liu Mei is already gone. 他们往四周看了看，但刘梅已经走了。

gone [gɔn] 是 go 的过去分词，在这里用作表语，"已走了"的意思。

10. Liu Mei is very late for the film,... 刘梅看电影迟到了，……又如：

She was late for school yesterday. 昨天她上学迟到了。

GRAMMAR

冠词 (The Article)

冠词是一种虚词，放在名词的前面，帮助说明名词的含义。冠词分不定冠词 (The Indefinite Article) 和定冠词 (The Definite Article) 两种。a(an)是不定冠词，a 用在辅音之前，如 a book, a man; an 用在元音之前，如 an old woman, an hour 等。the 是定冠词。

1. 不定冠词的用法

   1) 指人或事物的某一种类。这是不定冠词 a (an) 的基本用法。如:

   I am a boy.

   Pass me an apple, please.

   2) 指某人或某物，但不具体说明何人或何物。如:

   A boy is waiting for you.

   He borrowed a story-book from the library.

   3) 表示数量，有"一"的意思，但数的概念没有 one 强烈。如:

   I have a mouth, a nose and two eyes.

   4) 用于某些固定词组中。如: a bit, a few, a little, a lot of, a piece of, a cup of, a glass of, a pile of等。

2. 定冠词的用法

   1) 特指某(些)人或某(些)事物。这是定冠词 the 的基本用法。如:

   Beijing is the capital of China.

The book on the desk is mine.（特指桌上的那本书。注意名词 book 被短语 on the desk 所限定。）

2）指谈话双方都知道的人或事物。如:

Where is the teacher?（双方都知道指的是哪一位教师。）

Open the window, please.（双方都知道指的是哪一扇窗。）

3）指上文提过的人或事物。如:

There was a chair by the window. On the chair sat a young woman with a baby in her arms. The baby was thin.

4）用在世界上独一无二的事物前。如:

The earth is bigger than the moon, but smaller than the sun.

5）用在序数词和形容词最高级前。如:

Mr Green taught the first class.

Alice is the tallest in her class.

6）用在某些专有名词前。如: the Great Wall, the Summer Palace, the History Museum, the Science Museum, the Capital Stadium, the Children's Palace, the East Street Hospital, the Party 等。

7）用在一些习惯用语中。如: in the day, in the morning (afternoon, evening), the day after tomorrow, the day before yesterday, the next morning, by the way 等。

3. 下列情况中一般不用冠词

1) 在专有名词和不可数名词前。如: China, Grade Two, Class Three, science, chalk, ink, paper, water, tea, milk 等。

2) 名词前已有作定语用的 this, that, my, your, some, any 等代词。如:

The letter is in her basket.

Go down this street.

3) 复数名词表示一类人或事物时。如:

My father and mother are teachers.

She likes reading stories.

4) 在节日、日期、月份、季节前。如:

Today is New Year's Day.

It is Sunday (Monday, Tuesday, etc.)

March 8 is Women's Day.

It is cold in winter.

5) 在称呼语或表示头衔的名词前。如:

What's the matter, Granny?

This is Comrade Wang.

6) 在某些习惯用语中的名词前。如: at noon, at night, at first, at last, by bus, in bed, in time, in front of, go to school, go to bed 等。

7) 在三餐饭和球类运动名称前。如:

He goes to school after breakfast.

We are going to play football.

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following:

test — text	ship — sheep
wash — watch	much — March
see — she	John — join
walk — work	daughter — doctor
short — shout	peasant — parent
through — throw	lesson — listen

2. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

pr-	[pr-]	*pr*esent	*pr*oblem		
br-	[br-]	*br*ing	*br*ight	li*br*ary	Feb*r*uary
cr-	[kr-]	*cr*op	*cr*y	*cr*ossing	
gr-	[gr-]	*gr*eat	*gr*anny	an*gr*y	hun*gr*y
fr-	[fr-]	*fr*ee	*fr*ont	*Fr*iday	a*fr*aid
thr-	[θr-]	*thr*ee	*thr*ough	*thr*ow	

3. Choose the correct word for each blank:

1) ____ (Bring, Take) me a basket, please.

2) ____ (Bring, Take) the raincoat (雨衣) to him.

3) In those days there were no factories here, and there was no hospital, ____ (either, too).

4) You were at the Science Museum last Tuesday? Why, we were there, ____ (either, too).

5) The cap is ____ (too, very) big for me.

6) Many students are doing ____ (too, very) well

in English.

7) Can you ___ (borrow, lend) me your bike?

8) May I ___ (borrow, lend) your map?

9) Excuse me, can you ___ (tell, say) me the way to the Capital Stadium?

10) Can you ___ (tell, say) it in English?

11) Do you ___ (talk, speak) English?

12) Let's ___ (talk, speak) about this picture.

4. Fill in the blanks with a, an or the:

1) Mr Li is ___ artist. He is very good at drawing birds and flowers.

2) ___elephant is much stronger than ___ horse.

3) Do you remember ___ name of ___ restaurant?

4) There are ___ hundred and twenty students in Grade Two. There are about forty students in ___ class.

5) Beijing is ___ capital of China.

6) Long, long ago there lived ___ old man in Hunan. ___ old man had ___ beautiful daughter.

7) ——Where shall I put ___ box?
——You'd better put it under ___ bed.

8) ___ earth turns round ___ sun. ___ moon turns round ___ earth.

9) My father usually goes out for ___ walk in

___ evening.

10) There is ___ lake at ___ foot of ___ hill. By ___ lake stand many apple trees.

5. Ask questions about the underlined parts:

1) I'll go over the new words <u>this evening.</u>
2) Her husband will come <u>in an hour</u>.
3) <u>His parents</u> will be free this afternoon.
4) They'll go <u>to the cinema</u> tonight.
5) We'll have a <u>physics</u> test tomorrow.
6) They live <u>at No. 24, Riverside Street.</u>
7) We'll take the <u>No. 5</u> bus.
8) I'll change my seat with <u>Wei Fang.</u>
9) John likes <u>that green basket.</u>
10) I'll get there <u>by bike.</u>

6. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) We ___ (wait) for you at the gate of the Summer Palace at two tomorrow afternoon.
2) I ___ (write) a letter to my father last Friday.
3) It's five o'clock in the afternoon. The students ___ (clean) the room.
4) They ___ (get) to the zoo at nine o'clock yesterday morning.
5) ___ you ___ (clean) your classroom every day?
6) The students of Class Four ___ (go) to the

Great Wall the day before yesterday.

7) — Look at this picture. What ____ the girl ____ (do)?

— She ____ (ask) the policeman the way to the East Street Hospital.

8) — When ____ we ____ (have) the talk on the history of the Party?

— Sometime next week.

7. Give the English for the Chinese sentences:

A: Excuse me, can you tell me the way to the nearest bus stop?

B：可以。你打算到什么地方去？

A: I'm going to the Capital Stadium.

B：顺着这条马路走，到第一个十字路口向左拐，然后继续往前走，你就会看见一家商店。公共汽车站就在商店的附近。

A: Is it far from here?

B：不远，大约走十分钟就到了。

A: Which bus shall I take to get to the Capital Stadium?

B：334路汽车。汽车正好把你带到那里。

A: Thank you very much.

B：没什么。

LESSON TWO

The Second Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Were you at home yesterday evening?

B: Yes. I was

doing some cooking.
doing some washing.
learning English on the radio.

Were you doing the same thing at that time?

A: No, I wasn't. I was doing my homework.

B

A: What	were you were Tom and Peter was Jenny	doing this time yesterday?

B:	We were They were She was	copying the new text.

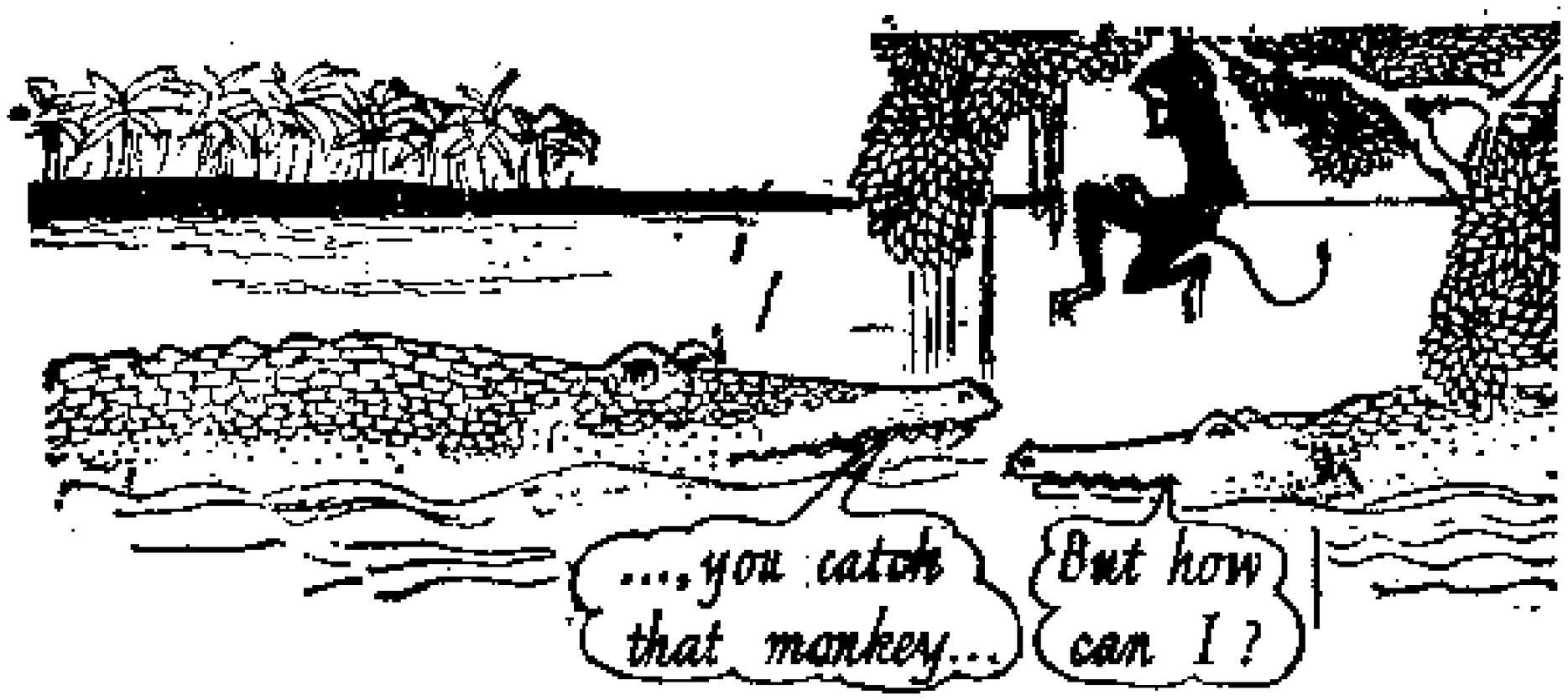
TEXT

THE MONKEY AND THE CROCODILE

One day a little monkey was playing in a tall tree by the river. A crocodile was swimming slowly near the bank with her baby. She looked around for some food. Suddenly she saw the monkey. "Aha, there's my meal," she thought. She then turned to her son, "Do you love me, Son?"

"Why, of course, Mum!" the baby croco-

dile said.



"Well then, you catch that monkey and give me his heart to eat."

"But how can I?" the baby crocodile asked. "Monkeys can't swim, and I can't climb trees."

"You needn't climb the tree," his mother said. "Use your head, then you'll find a way."

The baby crocodile thought hard. Then he had an idea. He swam near the tree and shouted, "Hey, Monkey! Would you like some bananas?"

"Bananas! Mm! I love them," said the monkey. "But where are they?"

"On the other side of the river. There are some banana trees there, and they have lots of bananas on them. I'll take you there on my back."

"Good," the monkey came down and jumped onto the crocodile's back.

(To be continued)

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

sew [səu] (sewed [səud], sewn [səun]) *vi.* 缝纫
vt. 缝制, 缝补
cook *vi.* 烹调, 煮, 烧
n. 厨师, 炊事员
do some cooking
做饭(菜)
same *adj.* 同一的
pron. 同样的事
Jenny ['dʒeni] (女名)詹妮
copy ['kɔpi] *vt.* 抄写, 誊写
n. 抄本, 副本; (书报等的)一本, 一份, 一册

* * *

crocodile ['krɔkədail] *n.* 鳄鱼
bank *n.* (河、海、湖的)岸, 堤
food [fu:d] *n.* 食物
suddenly ['sʌdnli] *adv.* 突然地
meal *n.* (一)餐, (一顿)饭食
catch (caught [kɔ:t], caught) *vt.* 捉; 抓住
vi. 接住, 抓住
heart [hɑ:t] *n.* 心(脏)
idea [ai'diə] *n.* 主意, 念头, 思想
side *n.* 边; 面
on the other side of ...
在(河的)对岸; 在……的另一面

lots of = a lot of

back *n.* 背部;背脊

onto ['ɔntu] *prep.* 到……上面

NOTES

1. Well then, you catch that monkey and give me his heart to eat. 那么,你去捉住那只猴子,把他的心给我吃。

   这是一句有主语的祈使句。祈使句一般不用主语,但是,如果是大人命令小孩,或者对两个或两个以上的人分别布置任务时,可以有主语。又如:

   You sweep the floor, Xiao Li, and you clean the desks, Xiao Wang.

2. Use your head, then you'll find a way. 动动脑筋,你就会想出办法来。

3. Would you like some bananas? 您要吃香蕉吗?

   would [wud] 是 will 的过去式,在这里作情态动词,表示请求或个人的想法、看法,语气比较委婉。又如:

   Would you like another cup of tea? 您想再要一杯茶吗?

   Would you like to go with us? 您和我们一块儿去好吗?

GRAMMAR

疑问句 (The Interrogative Sentence)

英语的疑问句有四种:一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问

句和反意疑问句。

1. 一般疑问句 (The General Question)

用 yes 或 no 回答的疑问句，叫做一般疑问句。这种疑问句通常是把动词 be 或 have，助动词或情态动词放在主语之前，说时用升调。如：

Is she a worker?

Have you any paper?

Does he study English?

2. 特殊疑问句 (The Special Question)

用 what, who, which 等疑问代词和 when, where, why, how 等疑问副词引起的疑问句，叫做特殊疑问句。这种疑问句不能用 yes 或 no 回答，说时用降调。如：

What's this?

Who's the boy over there?

When do you get up?

3. 选择疑问句 (The Alternative Question)

提出两种或两种以上的情况，要求对方选择一种，这种疑问句叫做选择疑问句。它的结构是"一般疑问句＋ or ＋一般疑问句"，但常把后一部分里面和前一部分相同的成分省略。说时 or 前面部分用升调，后面部分用降调。如：

Is her brother a doctor or a teacher?

Do you want a newspaper or a magazine?

Shall we have a meeting this week or next week?

4. 反意疑问句 (The Disjunctive Question)

在陈述句之后附上一个简短问句，对陈述句所叙述的事实提出相反的疑问，这种疑问句叫做反意疑问句。如前一部分为肯定式，后一部分用否定式。反之，如前一部分为否定式，后一部分就用肯定式。说时，反意疑问句的前一部分用降调，后一部分，在表示疑问时用升调，在表示强调时用降调。如：

He's a teacher, ↗ isn't he?

他是教师，是不是？

She's a nurse, ↘ isn't she?

她是护士，不是吗？

对反意疑问句的回答，不管问题的提法如何，若事实是肯定的，就要用 yes，事实是否定的，就要用 no。这和汉语不一样，应特别注意。如：

He isn't a worker, is he?

他不是工人，是吗？

Yes, he is. 不，他是工人。

No, he isn't. 对，他不是工人。

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, paying attention to the word-stress:

1)	dad	sing	large	want
	'daddy	'singing	'larger	'wanted
2)	go	way	get	dear
	a'go	a'way	for'get	i'dea

3) four nine

ˈfourˈteen ˈnineˈteen

2. Pronounce these sounds and words:

[-tn] written certainly

[-dn] garden suddenly

[-sn] lesson listen

[-zn] season

[-fn] often

[-vn] seven eleven

3. Give the three verb forms after the model:

Model: forget ⟶ forgets forgetting forgot

sew cook copy catch change

know have make take read

hear grow tell give become

4. Fill in the blanks:

A. 1) What was your sister doing ___ (昨天这个时候)?

2) She was helping Jenny with her Chinese ___ (那个时候).

3) They were planting trees ___ (在河边) this time yesterday afternoon.

4) Are there any flowers ___ (在……那一边) the lake?

5) Look! There are so many birds ___ (在树上).

B. 1) On Sunday I often help my mother ——(做做饭) and ——(做点钳线活).

2) Think hard, then you'll —— (想出办法来).

3) —— (抄写课文) of Lesson Two, please.

4) He came out and quickly —— (跳到马背上).

5) She often —— (洗洗衣服) on Sunday.

5. Rewrite the following sentences, using the given adverbials of time:

Model: I'm reading the text now. (at seven yesterday evening) →

I was reading the text at seven yesterday evening.

1) My brother is repairing a radio. (at eight yesterday evening)

2) We are copying the new words. (this time yesterday)

3) Jack is now looking for his ruler in the classroom. (at that time)

4) The children are flying kites on the playground. (last Sunday afternoon)

5) Who is talking in the next room? (at that moment)

6) His son is learning English in London. (last autumn)

7) Mr and Mrs Green are teaching biology in Bei-

jing. (in the spring of 1981)

8) Are the students of Class Four having a music lesson now? (at three that afternoon)

6. Tell what kind of question each of the following is, and then answer it:

1) When shall we have the talk?

2) The old woman found her husband, didn't she?

3) Was the girl late for the film?

4) Can you cook and sew?

5) Does your sister go to school by bus or by bike?

6) Where are they going to have the table tennis match?

7) Would you like an orange or an apple?

8) How much are these tomatoes?

7. Answer the following questions:

1) Where was the little monkey playing one day?

2) What was the crocodile doing with her baby near the bank of the river?

3) She saw the monkey, didn't she? What did she tell her son to do?

4) What did the baby crocodile ask?

5) What did his mother say?

6) The baby crocodile thought hard, didn't he? Did he have an idea?

7) What did he do then?

8) Did the monkey want to eat bananas? What did he say?

9) What was the crocodile's answer?

10) Was the monkey glad to hear that? What did he do then?

LESSON THREE

The Third Lesson

DRILLS

I was cooking when she knocked at the door.

A

A: You saw the boys in the classroom just now, didn't you?

B: Yes, I did.

A: What were they doing?

B: They were	doing maths exercises drawing a map of the world putting up some pictures on the wall	when I left.

B

A: Did you see your teacher in the office?

B: Yes, I did.

A: Was she having a meeting?

B: No, she wasn't.

She was	talking to some parents going over our exercises preparing the new lesson with other teachers	when I saw her.

TEXT

THE MONKEY AND THE CROCODILE

(Continued)

Soon they were in the middle of the river. Suddenly the crocodile went down under the water. When he came up again, the monkey

was all wet. "Don't do that!" the monkey cried. "Don't do that again! I can't swim, you know."

"I know, but I have to," answered the crocodile. "My mother wants to eat your heart."

The little monkey was clever. "Why didn't you tell me earlier?" he asked.

"My heart isn't here with me. I left it in that tree over there."

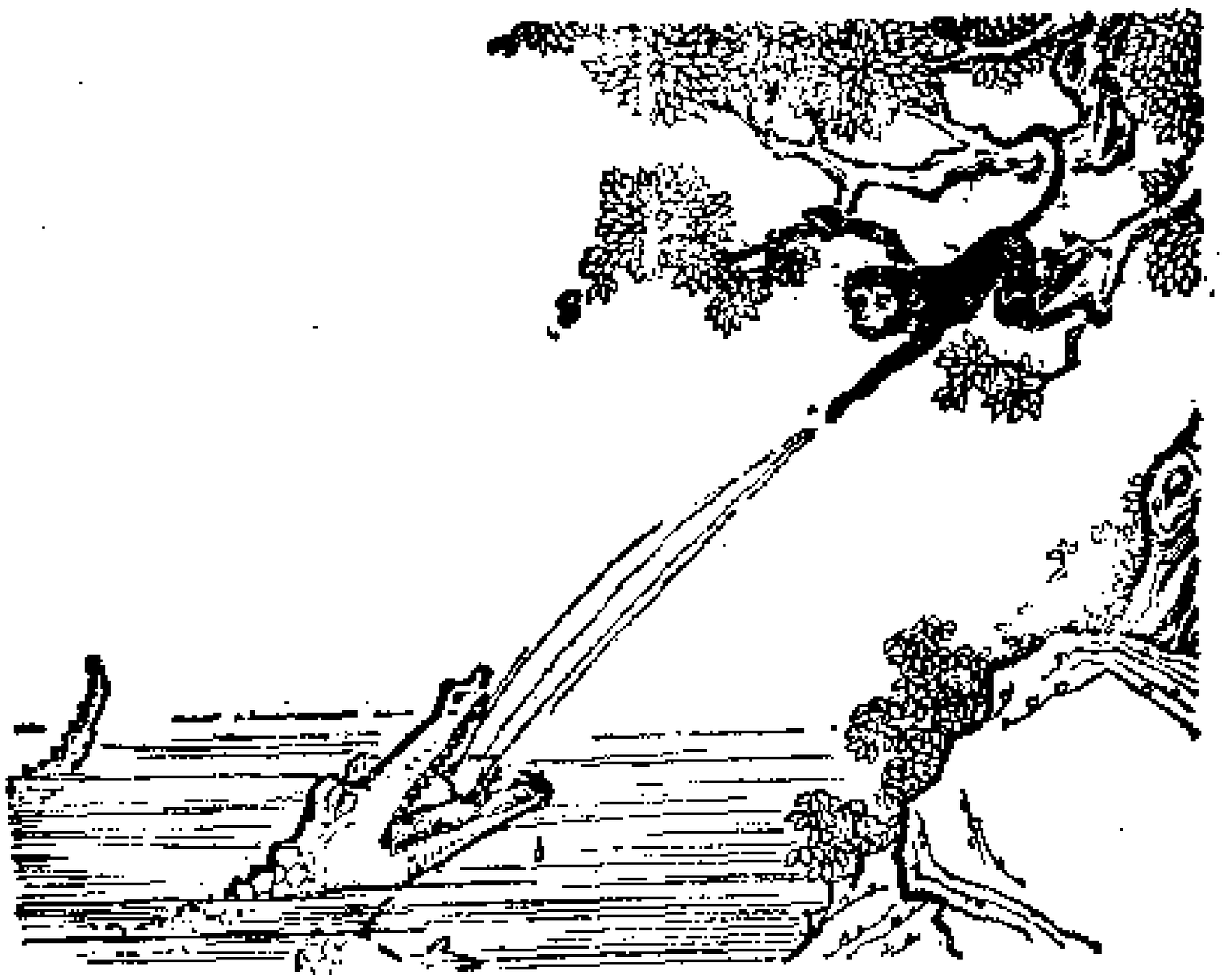
"Then we'll have to go back for it. Mother doesn't want you without your heart." The crocodile turned and swam back to the bank.

Soon they reached the bank. The monkey jumped off the crocodile at once, picked up a big stone and quickly climbed up the tree. The crocodile waited for the monkey to come down again. He waited and waited. As he was waiting, he suddenly heard a voice from above:

"Hey, Crocodile!"

The crocodile looked up. The monkey was hanging from the tree by his tail and laughing.

"Here's my heart. Come up and get it. Don't keep your mother waiting .... You can't come up? Well, catch!"



With these words, he threw the big stone at the crocodile.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

knock *vi.* 敲; 击, 打
  knock at 敲(门, 窗等)
just now 刚才, 不久以前
prepare [pri'pɛə] *vt.* & *vi.* 准备; 预备

* * *

in the middle of
  在……当中

go down 下去;(船等)下沉
wet *adj.* 湿的
clever ['klevə] *adj.*
机灵的,聪明的
without [wi'ðaut] *prep.*
无,没有;不
off *prep.* & *adv.* (离)开,(走)开
jump off 跳离
pick *vt.* & *vi.* 掘;摘;挑选;扒窃
pick up 拾起
stone *n.* 石头
as *conj.* 当……的时候
voice [vɔis] *n.* 说话声,嗓音
above [ə'bʌv] *n.* 上面
prep. 在……上面,
adv. 在上面
adj. 上面的
hang (hung [hʌŋ], hung)
vi. & *vt.* 吊着;悬挂
tail [teil] *n.* 尾巴;尾部

NOTES

1. I was cooking when she knocked at the door. 她敲门的时候我正在做饭。

* * *

2. Mother doesn't want you without your heart. 你没有心,妈妈不要你。

注意介词 without 的用法,又如:

Can you work out this maths problem without help? 没有人帮忙,你能算出这道数学题吗?

She went to school without breakfast yesterday. 她昨天早上没吃早饭就上学去了。

3. As he was waiting, he suddenly heard a voice from above: "Hey, Crocodile!" 当他(鳄鱼)正在等着的时候,

突然听到上边有个声音叫道："嘿，鳄鱼！"

4. The monkey was hanging from the tree by his tail and laughing. 猴子用尾巴吊在树上笑着。

5. With these words, he threw the big stone at the crocodile. 说着，他把那块大石头向鳄鱼扔过去。

GRAMMAR

过去进行时（The Past Continuous Tense）

1. 过去进行时由"was（were）＋现在分词"构成。

2. 过去进行时的用法：表示在过去某一时刻或某一段时间正在进行的动作。这一特定的过去时间，除有上下文暗示以外，一般用时间状语来表示。如：

   1) A: What were you doing this time yesterday?

      B: We were cleaning the classroom.

   2) Mum was doing some washing yesterday evening.

   3) The teacher was talking to some parents when I saw her.

3. 一般过去时与过去进行时用法比较：一般过去时表示在过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态，而过去进行时则表示过去某个时间正在进行的动作。如：

   Mary wrote a letter to her friend last night.

   玛丽昨晚给她的朋友写了封信。（信写完了。）

   Mary was writing a letter to her friend last night.

玛丽昨晚一直在给她的朋友写信。（信不一定写完。）

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, paying attention to the word-stress:

1)	'copy	'party	'onto	'basket
	'corner	'matter	'either	'crossing
	'maybe	'blackboard	'breakfast	'playground
	'birthday	'schoolgirl	'football	'spaceship
2)	i'dea	o'bey	with'out	sur'prise
	ex'cept	Ju'ly	mu'seum	per'haps

2. Fill in the blanks:

   1) Mother ___ （在缝纫） when my aunt knocked at the door.
   2) We ___ （在做练习） when Mr. Li came in.
   3) The teacher ___ （在备课） when I saw him.
   4) Don't ___ （朝……扔东西） the animals when you watch them at the zoo.
   5) Some children ___ （在捡石子） on the road when I saw them.

3. Put the following into Chinese:

   1) John had a talk with his teacher in Chinese yesterday.
   2) An old woman, with a basket by her side, looked very worried at a street corner.

3) I see **with** my eyes and smell **with** my nose.

4) "But my heart isn't here **with** me," said the monkey **with** a smile.

5) What's wrong **with** you, Kate?

6) He wrote the letter **with** a pencil.

7) Mary helped me **with** my French, and I helped her **with** her Japanese.

8) "Hurry! Come **with** me!" **With** these words, he took the child to the hospital.

9) The carriage moved on. Mr Ampère moved **with** it. It moved faster and faster. He could not keep up **with** it any longer.

4. Join each pair of sentences, using **when** after the model:

Model: They were having a meeting. We got there.

→ They were having a meeting **when** we got there.

When we got there, they were having a meeting.

1) He was talking to a friend. The bus came.

2) It was snowing. We stopped work.

3) His mother was doing some sewing. Zhang Hong got home.

4) Li Ping and Wang Lin were still working on the maths problems. I left.

5) Mr Liu was going over his students' exercises. I went to see him.

6) He was thinking about the football match. The teacher asked him a question.

5. Fill in the blanks with **in, on, at, with, about, from, by** or **onto**:

1) They're talking ___ the new film.

2) There is a table ___ the middle of the room.

3) Put the map of China up ___ the wall, please.

4) He climbed ___ the bank of the river.

5) The scientist is going to give us a talk ___ air and water the day after tomorrow.

6) What's wrong ___ you? You don't look well.

7) It takes ten minutes to get there ___ bike.

8) Go down this road. ___ the end of it you'll see the factory.

9) Where did he come ___?

10) Who swam ___ the mother crocodile?

6. Answer the following questions:

1) What did the crocodile suddenly do when he and the monkey were in the middle of the river?

2) What did the monkey say when the crocodile came up again?

3) What did the crocodile say to the monkey?

4) What did the monkey answer? The little monkey

was clever, wasn't he?

5) What did the baby crocodile say to the monkey? And what did he do then? Was he clever, too?

6) What did the monkey do when they got to the bank?

7) What was the crocodile doing when the monkey called him from above?

8) What did the crocodile see when he looked up?

9) What did the monkey say to the crocodile?

10) What did the monkey do to the crocodile?

7. Give the English for these:

1) 我到家的时候，妈妈正在等我。

2) 他进来的时候，我正在修理收音机。

3) 老师走进教室的时候，学生正在开会。)

4) 今天上午刘英在给爷爷写信。

今天上午刘英给爷爷写了一封信。

5) 昨天晚上她在备新课。

昨天晚上她备了新课。

6) 上星期天他们在植树。

上星期天他们植树了。

LESSON FOUR

The Fourth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Was it raining

when you came to school
when school was over
when you took your grandmother to the hospital

yesterday?

B: Yes, it was. It was raining hard.

(No, it wasn't. But the ground was quite wet.)

B

A: Where did your brother study	before he became an artist? before he went to college? before he joined the army?

B: He studied at the No. 2 Middle School.

C

A: When did you go to bed last night?

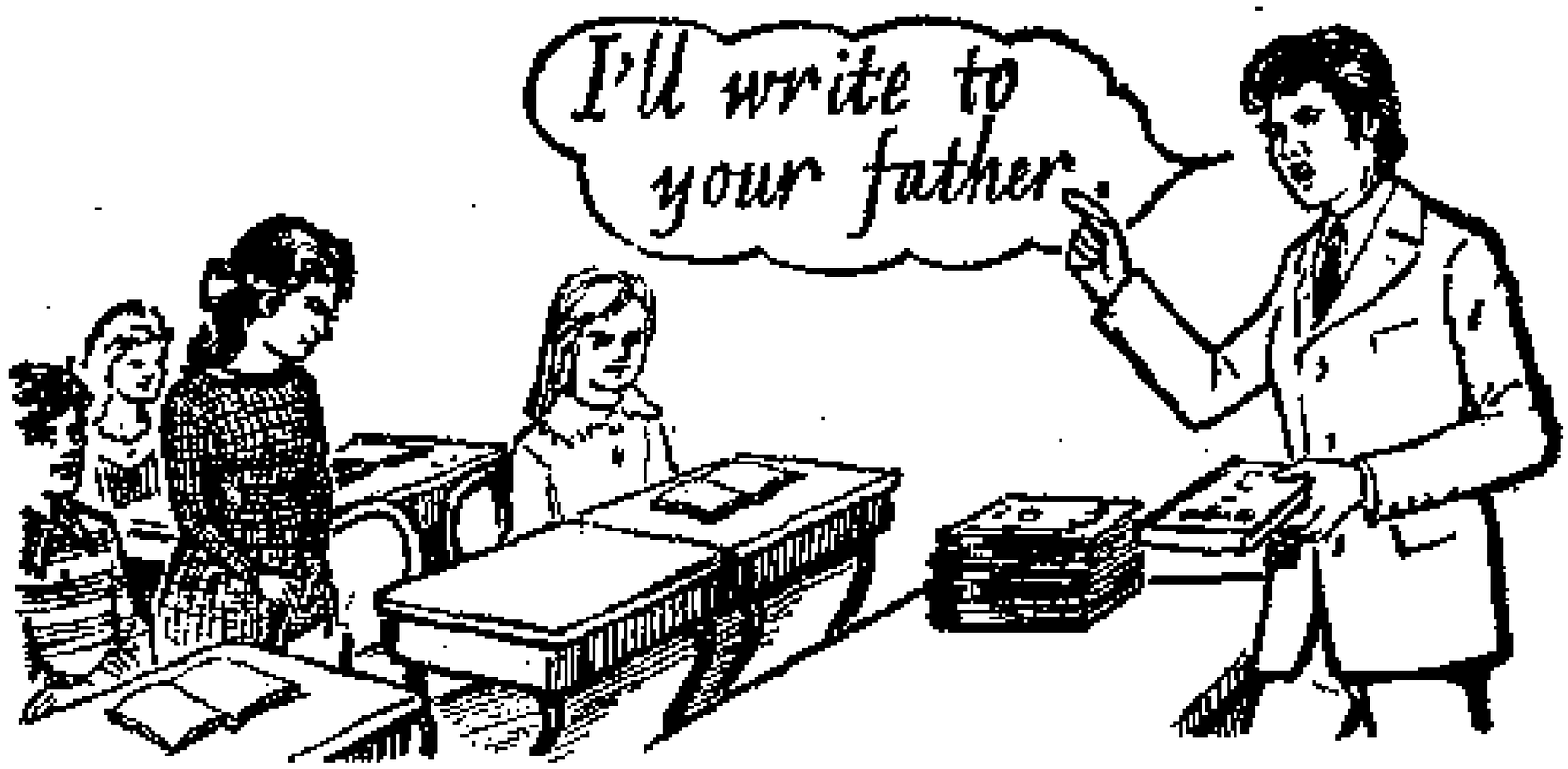
B: I went to bed at about ten	after I did my homework. after I wrote a letter to my grandfather. after the TV play was over.

TEXT

IT'S UNFAIR

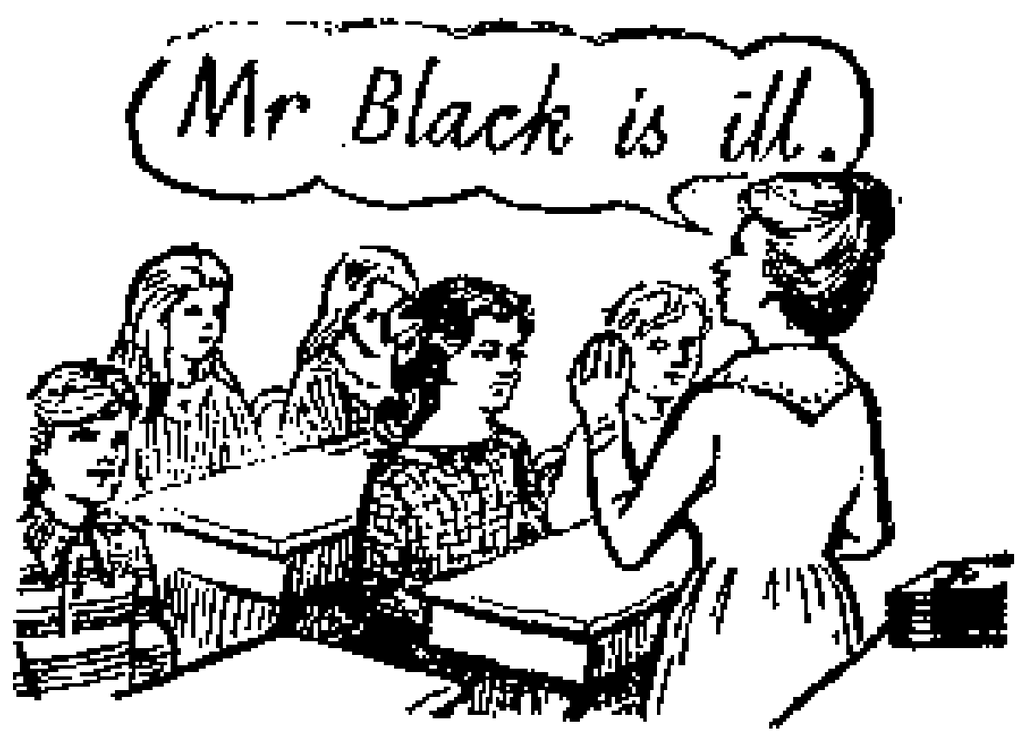
Jenny was a good girl, but she had one shortcoming. She was often late for school. One morning when she came in late, Mr Black, her teacher, got angry.

"I'll write to your father if you aren't



here on time tomorrow," he told her. Jenny didn't want him to do that because her parents were very strict with her.

The next day she got up very early and went to school without breakfast. When the bell rang, she was waiting in her seat. The door opened and the teacher came in. But it wasn't Mr Black. It was Miss Green. Mr Black was ill, so she was taking his class instead. How disappointed Jenny was!



The next morning Jenny got up even earlier. After a quick breakfast she hurried to school. Just before she got to the school gate,

she stopped. There was a wallet lying on the ground.

She picked it up. "Whose is this?" she wondered.

As she stood there, she heard the first bell. "What shall I do?" she asked herself. "I'll turn it in first," she decided. And so she did.

When she hurried into her classroom, Mr Black was already beginning his lesson.

"Jenny White," he said as soon as he saw her. "Didn't I tell you to be here on time?"

(To be continued)

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

over ['əuvə] *adv.*
结束,完了
grandmother ['grænd,mʌðə] *n.* 祖母,外祖母
ground [graund] *n.* 地面
college ['kɔlidʒ] *n.* (综合大学中的)学院,高等专科学校
go to college 上大学
join *vt.* 加入
army ['ɑ:mi] *n.* 军队
join the army 参军
grandfather ['grænd,fɑ:ðə]

n. 祖父，外祖父

play *n.* 戏剧，表演；玩耍

TV play 电视剧

* * *

unfair ['ʌn'fɛə] *adj.*

不公平的

shortcoming [ʃɔ:t'kʌmiŋ]

n. 缺点；短处

Black (姓)布莱克

come in 进来

on time 按时，准时

because [bi'kɔz] *conj.* 因为

be strict with 对……要求严格

bell *n.* 铃，钟

ring (rang [ræŋ], rung [rʌŋ]) *vi.* & *vt.*

(钟、铃等)响；摇铃

Miss *n.* 女士，小姐(对未婚妇女的称呼)

instead [in'sted] *adv.*

代替，顶替

disappointed [ˌdisə'pointid]

adj. 失望的

even ['i:vən] *adv.*

甚至；即使

quick *adj.* 快的，迅速的

wallet ['wɔlit] *n.*

钱夹；皮夹

lie [lai] *vi.* 平躺；(物件)在某处

wonder ['wʌndə] *vt.* & *vi.*

对……感到疑惑，想知道

turn in 交出，上交

decide [di'said] *vi.* & *vt.*

下决心；决定

White (姓)怀特

as soon as 一……就……

NOTES

1. join the army 参军

   join the Young Pioneers 入队

   join the League 入团

   join the Party 入党

* * *

2. Jenny didn't want him to do that because her parents were very strict with her. 詹妮不想让他那样做(指给她父亲写信),因为她父母对她要求很严格。

be strict with somebody 对某人要求严格。又如:

We must be strict with ourselves. 我们必须严格要求自己。

3. Mr Black was ill, so she was taking his class instead. 布莱克先生病了,所以她在代他的课。

4. There was a wallet lying on the ground. 地上有个钱夹。

lying 是动词 lie 的现在分词。

5. "I'll turn it in first," she decided. And so she did. "我要先把它交上去",她决定这样做。接着她就这么做了。

And so she did. = And she did so.

GRAMMAR

句子的类型 (Types of Sentences)

1. 简单句 (The Simple Sentence)

由一个主语(或并列主语)和一个谓语(或并列谓语)构成的句子叫简单句。如:

I get up at six in the morning.

My sister and I go to school together.

2. 并列句 (The Compound Sentence)

由并列连词(如 and, so, but, yet, or 等)把两个或

两个以上的简单句连在一起而构成的句子叫并列句。如:

I help him **and** he helps me.

Mr Black was ill, **so** she was taking his class instead.

Zhang Ying likes English, **but** he needs help.

You can draw a good horse in five minutes, **yet** you kept me waiting for a year.

3. 复合句 (The Complex Sentence)

由一个主句和一个或一个以上的从句构成的句子叫复合句。例如:

I'll tell him **as soon as I see him.** (状语从句)

When the crocodile came up again, the monkey **was** all wet. (状语从句)

I'll go to see you **if I have time.** (状语从句)

I think **you can find him at home.** (宾语从句)

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, paying attention to the word-stress:

1)	ˈanimal	ˈcapital	ˈexercise	ˈcrocodile
	ˈfamily	ˈusually	ˈcertainly	ˈsuddenly
2)	baˈnana	reˈmember	Deˈcember	asˈsistant
	exˈciting	toˈgether	toˈmorrow	inˈstructive
3)	ˌunderˈstand	ˌmagaˈzine	ˌJapaˈnese	ˌdisapˈpointed

2. Give the three verb forms after the model:

Model: hang → hangs hanging hung

put	draw	sing	write	sweep
dig	swim	make	think	sleep
run	see	find	say	speak

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) **Turn on** the TV, please.
2) He went down the street and then **turned left.**
3) The teacher then **turned to** the class and said, "Now please **turn to** page twenty and read the text."
4) "I'm very sorry," he said and his face **turned red.**
5) It's spring again. Flowers come out and the trees **turn green.**
6) The moon **turns round** the earth.
7) Please **turn** the magazine **over** and let's look at its back cover.
8) When Xiao Ming was playing in a park, he saw a wallet under a tree. He picked it up and **turned** it **in** at once.

4. Fill in the blanks:

1) I want to ____ (上大学) when I finish middle school.
2) Please try to ____(准时到这儿). Don't keep us waiting.

3) Teachers must ___ (严格要求) the students.

4) If the pen isn't yours, I'll ___ it ___ (上交).

5) Nobody would like to go with him. He ___ a bit ___ (失望).

6) Her father ___ (入党) in 1956.

5. Join each pair of sentences, using **before** or **after** after the models:

A. Model: He knocked at the door. He came in. →

He knocked at the door **before** he came in.

Before he came in, he knocked at the door.

1) I read some newspapers. I went to bed.

2) Jenny found a wallet. She got into the classroom.

3) My brother worked in a factory. He joined the army.

4) She thought hard. She began to write.

5) They worked with the peasants for two years. They went to college.

B. Model: He played table tennis. School was over. →

He played table tennis **after** school was over.

After school was over, he played table

tennis.

1) I wash my face and have breakfast. I get up.
2) I left the room. The meeting was over.
3) She took her sister to the park. She gave the room a good cleaning.
4) My sister cleaned the table and swept the floor. We finished supper.
5) They went home by bus. They saw the play.

6. Answer the following questions:

1) Was Jenny a good girl? What shortcoming had she?
2) What did Mr Black tell her one day when Jenny came in late?
3) Jenny didn't want Mr Black to write to her father, did she? Why not?
4) Jenny wasn't late for school the next day, was she? Why was she disappointed?
5) Did she get up even earlier the next morning? Did she get to school late?
6) What did she see on the ground near the school gate?
7) What did she do then?
8) What was Mr Black doing when Jenny hurried into her classroom?

9) What did Mr Black say as soon as he saw her?

7. Give the English for these:

1) 你今天早晨离开家时正在下雨吗？

2) 你来我们学校以前在哪里学习？

3) 我是做完作业以后吃晚饭的。

4) 小女孩在花园里玩耍时看见树上有一只美丽的鸟儿。

5) 他们搬到广州以前住在上海。

6) 他们赛完排球以后好好休息了一下。

LESSON FIVE

The Fifth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Will you please give this note to Tom?

B: Certainly. I'll give it to him

as soon as he comes back.
as soon as I see him.
as soon as school is over.

(Sorry, I won't be able to see him today.)

B

A: Will you go with me to the cinema this afternoon?

B: Yes, I will

if I'm free.
if my mother lets me.
if we don't have any homework.

C

A: Will the swimming pool be open today?

B: No, it won't.

A: Why not?

B: Because

they're cleaning the pool.
they're changing the water.
they're making repairs.

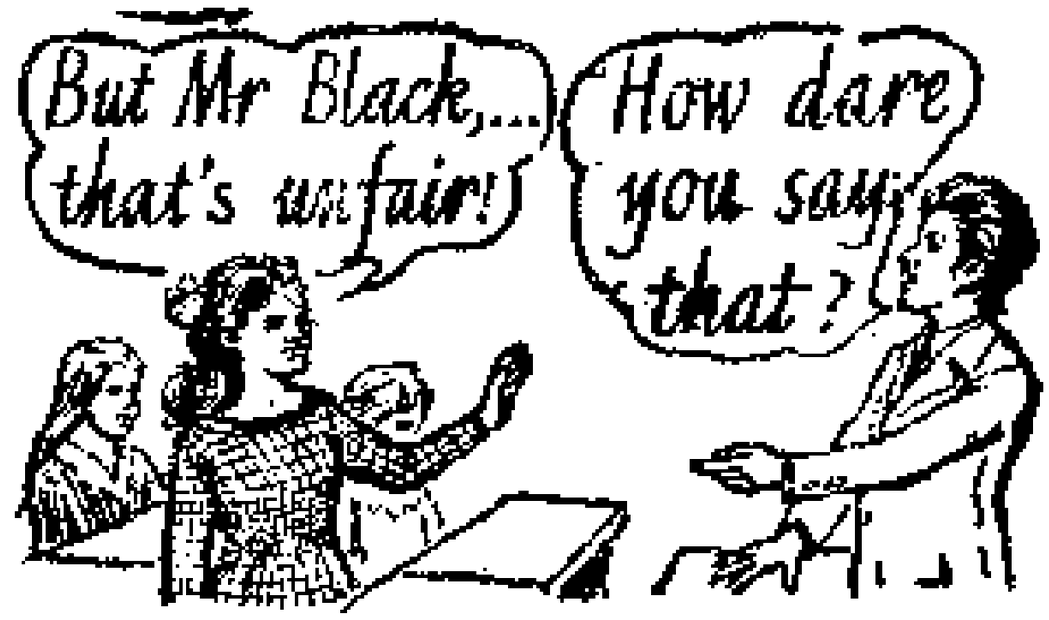
TEXT

IT'S UNFAIR

(Continued)

"I'm sorry, sir," Jenny tried to explain. "I was late because I had to ...."

"I will not listen to any excuse," Mr Black stopped her. "If you can't get here on time, I'll have to write to your father."



"But Mr Black, that's ... that's unfair!"

"Unfair! How dare you say that?" Mr Black said angrily. "I'll report you to the headmaster!"

"I was only trying to do a good deed," Jenny thought, "and now ...." She couldn't keep back her tears.

As soon as the bell rang for the break, the door opened and in came Mr Smith, the headmaster. He was holding a wallet in his hand. "Excuse me, Mr Black," he said, "but is this wallet yours?"

"Why, yes. It is mine." Mr Black was surprised. "I didn't know I lost it."

"One of our girls found it and turned it in just before school started," Mr Smith said.

"Oh? Who was it?" Mr Black asked. "I

must thank her."

"It was Jenny White."

Mr Black's face slowly turned red. He looked at Jenny and said, "I'm very sorry, Jenny. I take back what I said."

"And I'm sorry, Mr Black. I'll try not to be late again," Jenny said.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

note *n.* 便条,短笺

able ['eibl] *adj.* 有能力的;能干的

be able to 能;会

pool [pu:l] *n.* 小池;水塘

swimming pool 游泳池

open *adj.* 开着的;开放的

* * *

explain [iks'plein] *vt.* & *vi.* 解释,说明

excuse *n.* 藉口;托辞

dare [dɛə] *v. aux.* 敢;敢于

angrily ['æŋgrili] *adv.* 发怒地,愤怒地

report [ri'pɔ:t] *vt.*, *vi.* & *n.* 报告,汇报

headmaster ['hed'mɑ:stə] *n.* (英)中小学校长

deed *n.* 行为;事迹

do a good deed 做一件好事

tear [tiə] *n.* (常用复数)眼泪;泪珠

keep back 保留;阻止……向

前

break [breik] *n.* (课间、工间)休息时间,暂停;中断 *vt.* 打破

Smith (姓)史密斯

lose [lu:z] (lost, lost) *vt.* & *vi.* 失去,丢失

NOTES

1. Will you go with me to the zoo this afternoon? Yes, I will if the rain stops.

I will if the rain stops. = I will go with you to the zoo this afternoon if the rain stops.

注意:在以 if 引导表示将来动作的条件状语从句中,动词用一般现在时。又如:

I will go with you to the cinema this evening if I am free.

2. Will you please give this note to Tom? 请你把这张便条给汤姆好吗?

Will you please +动词原形…? (请你……好吗?)表示一种客气的、委婉的语气,口语中常用。又如:

Will you please lend me the book?

* * *

3. Unfair! How dare you say that? 不公平!你怎么敢这么说?

dare 是情态动词,和 can, may, must 一样,没有人称和数的变化,后面跟动词原形。又如:

How dare you do a thing like that?

She dare not go out by herself at night.

4. As soon as the bell rang for the break, the door opened and in came Mr Smith, the headmaster. 课间休息铃声一响，门就打开了，校长史密斯先生走了进来。

... in came Mr Smith, the headmaster. 是个倒装句，正常的语序是：... Mr Smith, the headmaster, came in. 使用这种倒装句，可以生动地表达出一种情景。又如：

Here comes the bus! 公共汽车来了！

5. "Oh? Who was it?" Mr Black asked. "哦？是谁？"布莱克先生问。

it 指前面所说的人。

6. I take back what I said. 我收回我说过的话。

7. I'll try not to be late again. 我一定争取不再迟到了。

not to be late again 是不定式的否定形式，用作动词 try 的宾语。

GRAMMAR

状语从句 (The Adverbial Clause)

在复合句中修饰主句中的动词、形容词或副词等的从句叫做状语从句。状语从句根据它表达的意思的不同可分为时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、让步、比较(或：方式)和条件等类。

1. 时间状语从句　由 when, before, after, as soon as, as 等连词引导。

Was it raining **when** you came to school yesterday?

Where did your brother study **before** he joined the army?

I went to bed **after** the TV play was over.

I'll give the note to him **as soon as** I see him.

As the crocodile was waiting, he suddenly heard a voice from above.

2. 条件状语从句由 if 等连词引导。

I'll go with you to the cinema this afternoon **if** I'm free.

3. 原因状语从句由 because 等连词引导。

The swimming pool won't be open today **because** they're changing the water.

4. 比较(或: 方式)状语从句 由 than, as ... as, not as (so) ... as 等引导。

The earth is bigger **than** the moon (is).

This story is **as** interesting **as** that one (is).

Betty is **not as** tall **as** Rose (is).

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, paying attention to the word-stress:

1) ˈeverything　　ˈeveryone　　ˈnobody

ˈvolleyball　　ˈdining-room　　ˈbus-driver

2) ˈafterˈnoon ˈseven ˈteen

3) ˈhand,writing ˈnews,paper

2. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

pl-	[pl-]	*pl*ane	*pl*ease	ex*pl*ain
bl-	[bl-]	*bl*ue	*bl*ack	pro*bl*em
cl-	[kl-]	*cl*ock	*cl*ose	*cl*ever
gl-	[gl-]	*gl*ad	*gl*ass	
fl-	[fl-]	*fl*oor	*fl*y	
sl-	[sl-]	*sl*ow	*sl*eep	

3. Choose the correct word for each blank in its proper tense:

A. 1) Come and ___ (see, look) at this picture. It's so beautiful!

2) I ___ (see, look) but ___ (see, look) nothing.

3) I'm not sure. Let me ___ (see, look).

4) ___ (See, Look) out of the window. Do you ___ (see, look) anything there?

B. 1) What are you ___ (look for, find)?

2) That's my watch. I lost it a week ago. Who ___ (look for, find) it?

3) Why, here's my pen! I ___ (look for, find) it just now, but I didn't ___ (look for, find) it.

4) Where did you ___ (look for, find) it?

4. Put the following into Chinese:

1) **Go back** to your seat, please.

2) Father **came back** very late yesterday.

3) Mr Black **isn't back** yet. Shall I take a message for him?

4) He **sat back** quietly with a smile on his face.

5) Shall we **walk back**?

6) Sorry, I **take back** what I said.

7) **Throw** the ball **back** to me, please, will you?

8) Will you **bring** it **back** soon?

5. Join each pair of sentences, using **as soon as, if or because** after the models:

A. Model: I'll go with you. I finish my work. →
I'll go with you **as soon as** I finish my work.
As soon as I finish my work, I'll go with you.

1) I'll write back to you. I get your letter.

2) The child stopped crying. He saw his mother.

3) I told him about the news. He came home.

4) She opened the door. She heard her father's voice.

B. Model: You'll be late. You don't hurry. →
You'll be late **if** you don't hurry.

If you don't hurry, you'll be late.

1) He'll do better in English. He works harder.
2) We won't be able to get there on time. We don't go now.
3) They'll stay at home. It rains.
4) You'd better go to see the doctor. You are ill.

C. Model: He won't come. He's very busy. →
He won't come because he's very busy.

1) They can't go swimming now. They're having a meeting.
2) I had to take a bus. It's a bit too far.
3) Liu Mei was late for the film. She took the old woman to the hospital.
4) We didn't have the sports meet last Saturday. It rained hard.

6. Answer the following questions:

1) Did Jenny try to explain why she was late?
2) Did Mr Black wait for her to finish? What did he say to Jenny?
3) What did Jenny say?
4) Mr Black became very angry, didn't he? What did he want to do?
5) Jenny couldn't keep back her tears, could she?
6) Who came into the classroom when the bell

rang for the break?

7) What was Mr Smith holding in his hand? And what did he ask Mr Black?

8) Was Mr Black surprised when he saw his wallet?

9) Who found the wallet and turned it in?

10) What did Mr Black say to Jenny then? And what did Jenny say?

7. Give the English for these.

1) 我一到北京就去看你的父亲。

2) 妈妈必须留在家里，因为奶奶病了。

3) 下星期日如果天气好，我们就去颐和园。

4) 请你一见到彼得就把这个纸条交给他。

5) ——前天你为什么没去看电影？
——因为我很忙。

LESSON SIX

The Sixth Lesson

TEXT

THE RAILS SING

This story is about a bright boy in a small village in Europe. He worked in a town far away. Every day he went there by train.

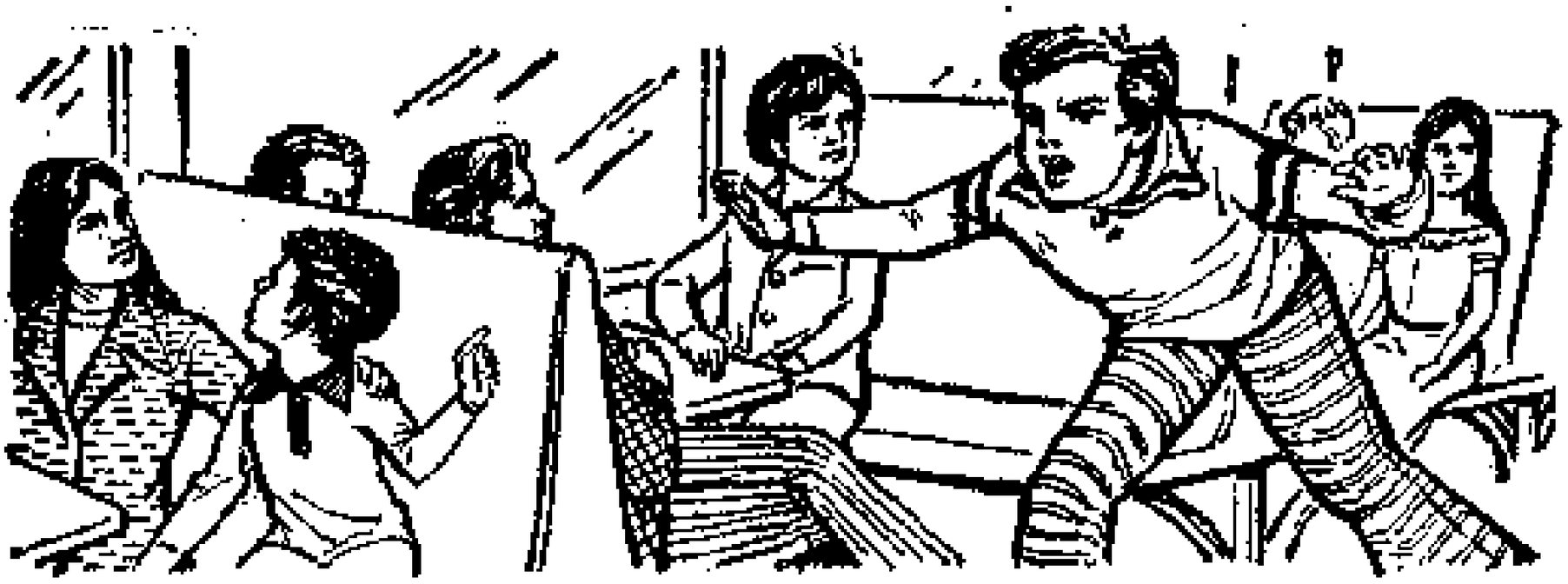
In those days, trains ran very slowly. Few people liked taking trains. But this boy didn't mind because he enjoyed listening to the click, click of the rails.

One evening after work,the boy was going home on the train. He sat in his seat quietly. He was listening to the click of the rails. Suddenly there was a break in the singing of the rails.

"Something is wrong," said the boy to himself.

He stood up. "Stop the train!" he cried.

"Something is wrong with that boy," someone said.



One man shouted at the boy, "Be quiet, boy! What's the matter with you?"

Another man said, "Don't be foolish, boy!"

But the boy would not be quiet. "Stop the train! Stop the train! There's danger ahead!" he cried.

He went to look for the conductor of the train.

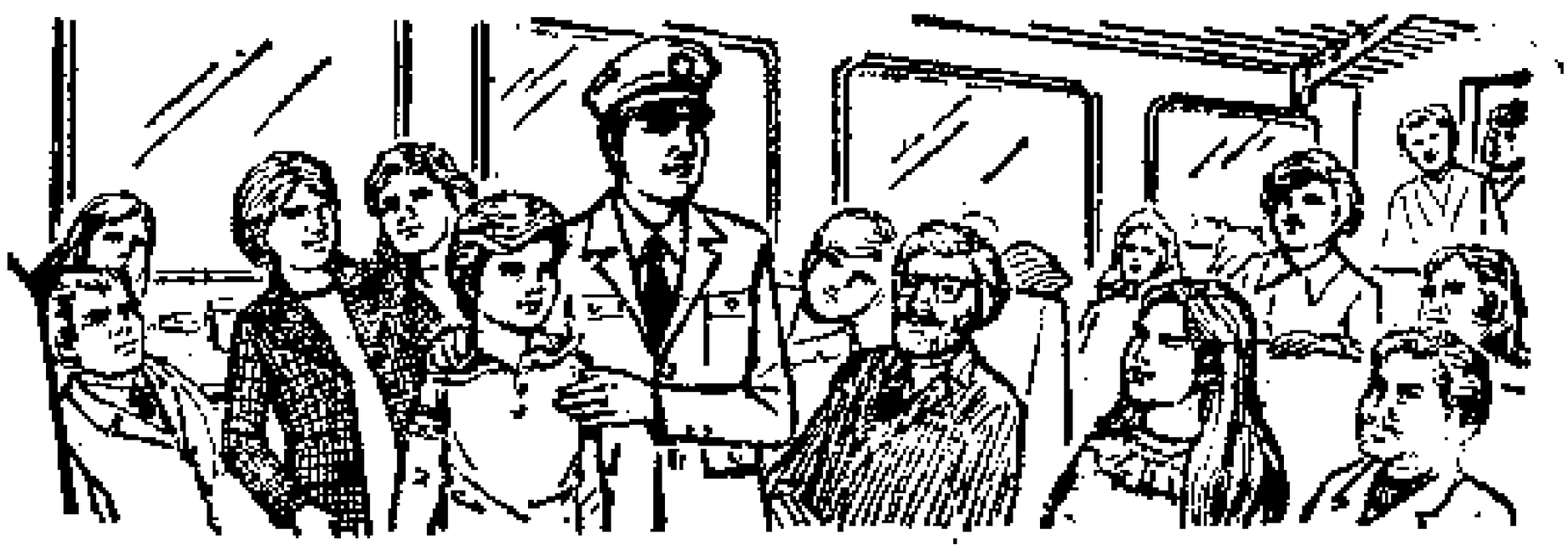
"Conductor," he said when he found the man. "Please listen to the click of the rails. Something is wrong."

The conductor listened. Then he said, "You're quite right, boy. We must stop the train."

The train stopped. The conductor got off

and checked the rails.

When he got on the train again, he said to the others, "The boy was right. There's something wrong with one of the rails about thirty metres ahead. He saved our lives."



This boy later became a musician. Many people like his music. When you listen to one of his pieces, you can hear click, click, click. It sounds like the singing of rails.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

rail [reil] *n.* 铁轨；轨道；铁路

bright *adj.* 聪明的，伶俐的

village ['vilidʒ] *n.* 村庄，乡村

Europe ['juərəp] *n.* 欧洲

town [taun] *n.* 市镇，城镇

train [trein] *n.* 火车

by train 乘火车

few *adj.* 少数的，不多的

n. (表示否定)很少数，几乎没有

enjoy [in'dʒɔi] *vt.* 喜欢；享受……的乐趣

click *n.* 卡嗒声

vi. 发出卡嗒声

quiet ['kwaiət] *adj.* 安静的，平静的

quietly ['kwaiətli] *adv.* 安静地，平静地

someone ['sʌmwʌn] *pron.* 某人，有人

foolish ['fu:liʃ] *adj.* 愚蠢的，傻的，笨的

danger ['deindʒə] *n.* 危险

ahead [ə'hed] *adv.* 在前面，在前头

conductor [kən'dʌktə] *n.* (汽、电车上的)售票员；(火车上的)列车员

get off 下来，从……下去

check *vt.* & *n.* 检查；核对

metre ['mi:tə] *n.* 公尺，米

save *vt.* 救，挽救

life *n.* 生命，生活(*pl.* lives [laivz])

musician [mju(:)'ziʃən] *n.* 音 作曲家

、文艺作品的)篇，首

sound [saund] *vi.* 听起来

n. 音，声音

NOTES

1. Few people liked taking trains. 很少有人喜欢乘火车。

few 可作名词，也可作形容词，意思是"很少数"、"几乎没有"，表示否定；a few 的意思是"少数，有几个"，表示肯定。试比较：

I know a few of these people. 这些人当中我认识几个。

I'm sorry I know so few of these people. 很抱歉，这些人我几乎一个也不认识。

2. ... he enjoyed listening to the click, click of the

rails.……他喜欢听铁轨的卡嗒、卡嗒声。

动词 enjoy 后面常接名词或动名词，表示"享受……的乐趣"。又如：

enjoy one's dinner 津津有味地吃饭

enjoy reading books 喜爱读书

3. Something is wrong. 出了毛病啦。

Something is wrong with that boy. 那个男孩有毛病(有些不正常)。

There's something wrong with one of the rails about thirty metres ahead. 前面大约三十米处有一节铁轨出了毛病。

4. But the boy would not be quiet. 但是这个男孩不肯安静下来。

5. It sounds like the singing of rails. 听起来有点像铁轨发出的歌声。

这里 sound 作连系动词，是"听起来"的意思。

EXERCISES

1. Choose the correct word for each blank in its proper tense:

A. 1) ____(Listen, Hear)! Can you____(hear, listen to) anything?

2) I____(hear, listen to) the radio every day.

3) Please____(hear, listen to) the click of the rails, sir.

4) He ___ (hear, listen to) a sound in the next room and got up.

5) Li Ping, you're sitting far from me. Can you ___ (hear, listen to) me?

B. 1) I have ___ (few, a few) friends here and I often visit them.

2) Jack has ___ (few, a few) friends. He likes to stay at home and play by himself.

3) There aren't many apples on the tree now, but you can pick ___ (few, a few) if you want to.

4) He is a man of ___ (few, a few) words.

5) ___ (Few, A few) people live to be 150, but ___ (few, a few) people can live to be 100.

2. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) The students of Class One ___ (play) basket-ball now on the playground. They usually ___ (play) basket-ball after school.

2) Wei Fang ___ (go) to the Great Wall with her sister by train tomorrow morning.

3) Please come to our meeting if you ___ (have) time.

4) It often ___ (rain) in summer. It ___ (rain)

hard last night. It ____ (not rain) now.

5) — You ____ (go) with me to the cinema tomorrow, won't you?

— Yes, I ____.

6) — What ____ you ____ (do) at four yesterday afternoon?

— I ____ (play) the violin in my room.

7) Where ____ we ____ (listen) to the report this evening?

8) Where did Comrade Li work before he ____ (come) to teach in this school?

3. Fill in the blanks:

1) I joined the Young Pioneers ____ (我七岁的时候).

2) She wants to be a nurse ____ (她长大以后).

3) The teacher explains the text ____ (学生读课文之前).

4) You must think carefully ____ (你发言之前).

5) I went home ____ (电影完了以后).

6) The students went out of the classroom ____ (铃响了以后).

7) I will tell her about it ____ (我一看到她).

8) The film began ____ (我们一到电影院).

9) Come to my office ____ (如果你有问题要问的话).

10) You won't be able to catch the train ____ (如果你不赶快的话).

4. Read the text and then say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) This text is a story about an American musician. ( )

2) When the musician was young, he worked in a town far from his home, so he went there by train every day. ( )

3) At that time people didn't like taking trains because trains didn't run very fast. ( )

4) The boy liked listening to the singing of rails. ( )

5) The boy shouted, "There's danger ahead!" when he found something wrong with the train. ( )

6) People on the train thought something was wrong with the boy and told him to be quiet. ( )

7) The boy stopped crying and sat in his seat quietly. ( )

8) The conductor of the train noticed the break in the singing of the rails, so he stopped the train. ( )

9) There was something wrong with one of the rails about fifty metres ahead. ( )

10) When the boy grew up, he became a musician. In one of his pieces of music people can hear something like the singing of rails. ( )

5. Give the English for these:

1) 这孩子爱听音乐。(enjoy doing something)

2) 格林小姐喜欢唱歌。(like doing something)

3) 一位汽车司机救了那孩子的命。(save one's life)

4) 请安静!咱们开会吧。(be quiet)

5) 那音乐听起来像鸟儿在歌唱。(sound like)

LESSON SEVEN

The Seventh Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the past form of the following verbs:

1)	join	check	seem	decide	prepare
	pick	report	save	mind	wonder
	enjoy	dare	sound	knock	explain
2)	be	eat	buy	bring	leave
	throw	lend	keep	hold	teach

2. Put the following into English:

1) 上学迟到　　2) 想出办法来
3) 有了好主意　　4) 参军
5) 上大学　　6) 给张先生代课
7) 严格要求学生　　8) 救某人的命
9) 做件好事　　10) 尽量不迟到
11) 复习生词　　12) 乘火车
13) 往……去的路上　　14) 前面五公里处

3. Put the following into Chinese and tell what part of speech each of the words in bold-faced type is:

1) Excuse me, can you tell me the way to the Summer Palace?
I won't listen to any **excuse.**

2) I like to **watch** TV plays.

What time is it by your **watch**?

3) It's not far from here. Let's **walk** there together.

Shall we go out for a **walk** after supper?

4) The teacher is now **talking** with Mary.

Are you free now? I want to have a **talk** with you.

5) They are **playing** volleyball now.

I saw a very good **play** last night.

4. Fill in the blanks with **want, like, decide, begin, start** or **wish**:

1) Tom ____ to fly to the moon in a spaceship one day.

2) She ____ to go to Europe and she asks me to go with her, too.

3) The train ____ to run fast now.

4) I ____ to learn English when I was thirteen.

5) Do you ____ to read stories or plays?

6) Jenny ____ to turn the wallet in first.

5. Fill in the blanks with **a, an** or **the** where necessary:

1) My sister was already twenty-four when she went to ____ college.

2) Was Mary ____ most careful girl in her class?

3) Wu Qing is studying ____ history of ____ Party.

4) ___ second bell was already ringing when he went into ___ classroom.

5) ___ child saw ___ ball on ___ ground and picked it up.

6) He thought hard. Soon he had ___ idea.

7) Would you like ___ milk or ___ tea?

8) — Are they all in ___ same class?

— No. Some of them are in ___ Class One and some are in ___ Class Three.

9) Do you know ___ way to ___ nearest post office?

10) ___ doctor worked for five hours without ___ rest.

6. Fill in the blanks with **at, in, by, with, like** or **without**:

1) We must be strict ___ ourselves.

2) It takes more than two hours to get to Nanjing ___ plane.

3) The baby looks very much ___ her mother.

4) Don't look ___ the child like that. He is afraid.

5) Fish can't live ___ water.

6) Scientists are very strict ___ their work.

7) There's something wrong ___ my watch.

7. Tell what kind of question each of the following is, and then answer it:

1) Why was Liu Mei late for the film?

2) Liu Mei did a good deed, didn't she?

3) Who wanted to eat the monkey's heart, the mother crocodile or the baby crocodile?

4) Did the mother crocodile try to catch the monkey herself?

5) Do you think the monkey was clever?

6) The crocodile didn't get the monkey's heart, did he? What did he get instead?

7) Was Jenny a good student or a bad one?

8) Who found Mr Black's wallet?

9) Was there anything wrong with one of the rails?

10) The boy saved the people on the train, didn't he?

8. Ask questions about the underlined parts:

1) We had a geography test <u>last Friday</u>.

2) The English evening will start <u>at seven o'clock.</u>

3) Comrade Zhao speaks French <u>very well.</u>

4) <u>About a thousand</u> people went to the meeting.

5) It took me <u>a week</u> to finish that work.

6) That is a map <u>of Europe.</u>

7) My aunt works <u>at the Capital Hospital.</u>

8) <u>The conductor of the train</u> checked the rails.

9. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

The Dog and His Piece of Meat

Once a dog ___ (take) away a piece of meat from a butcher's shop. The butcher ___ (run) after him with a stick, but it ___ (be) too late. The dog ___ (run) faster than the butcher. He ___ (get) away with the piece of meat in his mouth.

"What a nice lunch I ___ (have)!" the dog ___ (think) as he ___ (run). Soon he ___ (come) to a river with a bridge over it. On the other bank of the river there ___ (be) a tall tree. "It ___ (be) very nice over there under the tree," the dog ___ (say) to himself. "I ___ (have) my lunch there."

As he ___ (run) over the bridge, he ___ (look) into the water under it. There he ___ (see) another dog, also with a piece of meat in his mouth. "That piece of meat ___ (look) quite good," he ___ (think). "I ___ (want) to have it."

He ___ (open) his mouth to bite the other dog. But, before he ___ (know) it, his piece of meat fell into the water.

butcher ['butʃə] *n.* 屠夫
butcher's shop 肉铺
stick *n.* 棍,棒
bite *vt.* 咬
fall *vi.* 落下 fell(过去式)
bridge [bridʒ] *n.* 桥

10. Give the English for these:

1）他一看见我就从马上跳了下来。

2）如果你不反对的话，我想现在同你谈一谈。

3）我离家以前，我父亲在修一台电视机。

4）我们到家的时候，全身都湿了。

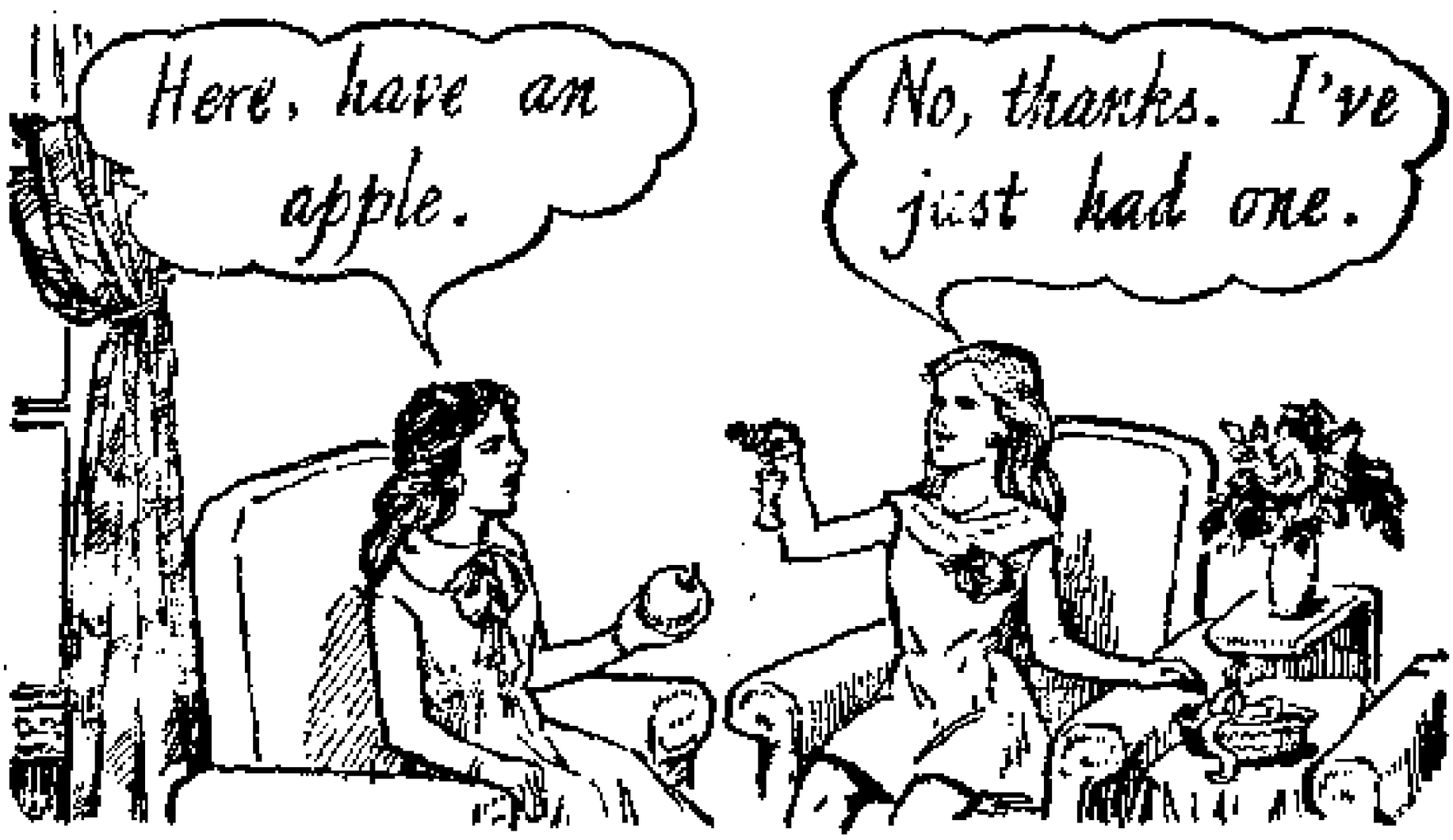
5）她不能把儿子独自留在家里，因为他太小。

6）她妈妈画完一幅画以后开始做晚饭。

LESSON EIGHT

The Eighth Lesson

DRILLS



A

A: When are you going to	renew the book?	
	post the photos?	
	visit the farm?	
B: I've already	**renewed the book.**	
	posted the photos.	
	visited the farm.	

B

A: Have you

returned the book?
borrowed any English magazines?
bought an English-Chinese dictionary?

B: Yes, I have. I've just

returned it.
borrowed one.
bought one.

C

A: | Has Peter / Has Jenny / Have they | seen the doctor?

B: No, | he hasn't. / she hasn't. / they haven't. | But | he's / she's / they're | going to see him this afternoon.

DIALOGUE

WHAT'S WRONG WITH TOM?

Tom was very quiet this morning. He said

he felt sick. "Oh, ooh! I feel terrible," he said. "Mum, I can't go to school today." So his mother took him to see the doctor.

(*At the doctor's.*)

Mother: Good morning, Doctor.

Doctor: Good morning, Mrs Brown. Good morning, Tom. What's your trouble, young man?

Tom: I ... I've got a headache and .... (*Begins to cough.*)

M: Why, Tom, you're coughing too!

T: Ooh ... I feel terrible!

D: Have you taken his temperature?

M: Yes, I have. He hasn't got a fever.

D: Tom, open your mouth and say "ahh".

T: Ahh!

D (*to Tom's mother*): How long has he been like this?

M: Ever since this morning.

D: Has he had anything to eat?

M: He's had some bread, two eggs, a glass of milk and an orange.

D: Did you give him any medicine?

M: No. He hasn't had any medicine.

D: Mmm. How are you feeling now, young man?

T: Very bad, Doctor. In fact, I feel even worse. Ooh! Ooh! I think I'm going to die.

D: Die! You won't die, Tom. You'll be all right soon.

M: So it's nothing serious, Doctor?

D: No. Your son will be all right by supper time. Tom's trouble is very common to boys these days. It comes and goes very quickly.

M: But I don't understand, Doctor.

D: This afternoon, the biggest football game of the year will be on TV. If your son feels well enough to watch TV by then, he'll be fine after the game. You wait and see.

M: Oh, I see! Thank you very much, Doctor. Come along, Tom.

D: Goodbye!

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

post [pəust] *vt.* 投寄，邮寄
n. 邮政；邮局
photo ['fəutəu] *n.* 相片
farm *n.* 农场
dictionary ['dikʃənri] *n.* 词典，字典

* * *

feel (felt, felt) *vi.* 感觉
sick *adj.* 患病的；恶心的
terrible ['terəbl] *adj.* 可怕的；感到极不舒服的
Brown [braun] (姓)布朗
trouble ['trʌbl] *n.* 疾病；困难；麻烦；烦恼
vt. 麻烦；使烦恼
headache ['hedeik] *n.* 头痛
cough [kɔf] *vi.* & *n.* 咳嗽
temperature ['tempritʃə] *n.* 温度
take one's temperature 量体温
fever ['fi:və] *n.* 发烧
ever ['evə] *adv.* 曾经
since *conj.*, *prep.* & *adv.* 从……以来；自从
ever since 从那时起一直到现在
anything ['eniθiŋ] *pron.* 任何事(物)
medicine ['medsin] *n.* (内服)药
fact *n.* 事实；实际
in fact 实际上
worse [wə:s] *adj.* (bad 的比较级)更坏的，更差的
die [dai] *vi.* 死
serious ['siəriəs] *adj.* 严重的，严肃的
by *prep.* 不迟于；到……时为止
common ['kɔmən] *adj.* 普通的，一般的
these days 现在，如今
game *n.* 游戏，运动，比赛
enough [i'nʌf] *adj.* 足够的，充分的
adv. 足够地，充分地
n. 足够，充分
along [ə'lɔŋ] *adv.* 一道，一起
prep. 沿着

NOTES

1. an English-Chinese dictionary 英汉词典

又如: a Chinese-English dictionary 汉英词典

a Japanese-Chinese dictionary 日汉词典

a Russian-Chinese dictionary 俄汉词典

* * *

2. At the doctor's. = At the doctor's office. 在医生诊所;在医务室。

又如: at Mr Black's = at Mr Black's house 在布莱克先生家

3. What's your trouble, young man? 年轻人, 你怎么啦?(你哪儿不舒服?)

这里医生称呼 Tom 为 young man, 表示亲热。

4. I've got a headache. 我头痛。

英语口语中常用 have got 代替 have。例如:

have (have got) a fever 发烧

have (have got) a cold 感冒

have (have got) a cough 咳嗽

5. How long has he been like this? 他象这样有多长时间了?

Ever since this morning. = He has been like this ever since this morning. 从早上开始(他一直是这样)。

6. have some bread 吃些面包

have a glass of milk 喝杯牛奶

have some medicine 吃些药

7. So it's nothing serious, Doctor? 因此并不严重，是不是，大夫？

8. by supper time 晚饭以前

by then 到那时以前

by = not later than (不迟于)

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, paying attention to the mute letters:

dictio*n*ary	temperature	medi*c*ine	interesting
hi*s*tory	les*s*on	g*u*ard	g*u*ess

* * *

climb	We*d*nesday	*h*our
autum*n*	lis*t*en	ans*w*er

2. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

tr- [tr-]	*tr*ain	*tr*ouble	*tr*ousers	coun*tr*y
dr- [dr-]	*dr*aw	*dr*iver	chil*dr*en	hun*dr*ed

3. Learn the following by heart:

am, is	was	been	have	had	had
are	were	been	feel	felt	felt
see	saw	seen	buy	bought	bought
go	went	gone	get	got	got
take	took	taken	teach	taught	taught
ring	rang	rung	leave	left	left

4. Put the following into Chinese:

1) The American artist went there **by** train.

2) Lots of children were playing **by** the lake **last** Sunday morning.

3) **By** the way, do you know the bus-driver?

4) Aunt Wang **couldn't** leave her child **by** himself in the room.

5) Can people go to the moon **by** spaceship **now?**

6) Mike is writing **by** the window, isn't he?

7) Can you finish the work **by** Friday?

8) The scientist will get ready **by** lunch time.

5. Answer the following questions after the model:

Model: Have you finished your homework? →

Yes. I've **just** finished my homework.

Yes. I've **already** finished my homework.

1) Has Jenny posted her letter?

2) Have the conductors had their lunch yet?

3) Has the peasant woman seen the doctor?

4) Have you prepared your lessons yet?

5) Has Mrs Brown taken her son's temperature?

6) Have you gone over the text?

7) Has Miss Green visited the farm?

8) Have the students checked their exercises?

6. Make the following sentences interrogative, then negative:

Model: He has cleaned the windows. →

Has he cleaned the windows?

He hasn't cleaned the windows.

1) We have visited that college.

2) The train has stopped.

3) The headmaster has gone to his office.

4) Jack's parents have bought him a wallet.

5) Mrs Black has taught in that town for years now.

6) John has returned the Chinese-English dictionary.

7) The teacher has gone over the students' copy-books.

8) Alice has checked her test paper.

7. Give the English for the Chinese sentences:

Jack: Good morning, Doctor.

Doctor: 早上好,杰克。你怎么了,小伙子?

J: I've got a headache.

D: 你量过体温了吗?

J: Yes, I have. I've got a fever.

D: 你象这样有多久了?

J: Ever since yesterday afternoon.

D: 吃过药了吗?

J: No, I haven't taken any medicine.

D: 吃过早饭了吗?

J: No, not yet.

D: 嗯,把这药吃了,到晚饭的时候,你会感觉好一些。

好好休息，过几天就会好的。

8. Give the English for these:

1) ——你看过这些照片了吗？

——看过了。

2) ——第二遍铃响过了吗？

——还没有。

3) 她丈夫吃过午饭了。

4) 火车刚刚开走。

5) 这位医生挽救了许多人的生命。

6) 我们已经有过一次物理测验。

7) 这位音乐家刚从欧洲回来。

8) 你们把这个消息报告校长了吗？

LESSON NINE

The Ninth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: What are you doing?

B: I'm

reading *Snow-white and Rose-red.*
doing my geography exercises.
making paper flowers.

A: How many

pages
exercises
flowers

have you

read?
done?
made?

B: Five.

B

A: Has

the plane arrived?
the ship left?
the train gone?

B: Yes, it has.

A: When did it

arrive?
leave?
go?

B: Half an hour ago.

TEXT

I HAVE SUNG ALREADY

Once a rich woman invited Martin Brown, a famous singer, to her house. She wanted him to sing for her friends. But she didn't invite him to have dinner with them. She told him to eat downstairs with the servants.

The singer was surprised. But he said nothing and went downstairs.

After the meal he stood up and said to the servants:

"Now, my good friends, I shall sing for you."

Of course, the servants were quite pleased. He sang them several songs. There was no piano in the room, but he didn't mind. When they asked for more, he sang more.

At nine o'clock the rich woman asked the singer to come up to the sitting-room. When he came in, the guests were all seated and waiting for the concert.

"We are ready now, Mr Brown," said the woman, "you may begin."

"Ready for what?" asked the singer.

"For your songs of course," she answered.

"But I have sung already," said Mr Brown, "and I can't sing twice in one evening."

"You have sung already!" said the rich woman in surprise. "But when? And where did you sing?"

"Just now, downstairs."

"Impossible!" she cried.

"But it's quite true, madam," said the singer. "I sang for the people after I had supper with them, you know."

And with a polite "Good night", he left the rich woman's house.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

take photos 照像，拍照

arrive[ə'raiv] *vi.* 到达，抵达某地

* * *

rich *adj.* 有钱的，富裕的；丰富的

invite [in'vait] *vt.* 邀请，招待

Martin ['mɑ:tin] (男名) 马丁

famous ['feiməs] *adj.* 著名的

singer ['siŋə] *n.* 歌唱家

dinner ['dinə] *n.* 正餐；宴会

downstairs ['daun'stɛəz] *adv.* 在楼下；到楼下

servant ['sə:vənt] *n.* 仆人，佣人

pleased [pli:zd] *adj.* 高兴的

be pleased 高兴

several ['sevrəl] *adj.* & *pron.* 几个，数个（至少三个）
song *n.* 歌曲
piano [pi'ænəu] *n.* 钢琴
ask for 请求；询问；向……要
sitting-room *n.* 起居室
guest [gest] *n.* 客人
be seated 就坐；坐下
concert ['kɔnsət] *n.* 音乐会；演奏会
twice [twais] *adv.* 两次；两倍
surprise *n.* 惊奇，诧异
in surprise 惊奇地
impossible [im'pɔsəbl] *adj.* 不可能的
true [tru:] *adj.* 真的；真实的
polite [pə'lait] *adj.* 有礼貌的

NOTES

1. When they asked for more, he sang more. 当他们要求再唱几首歌时，他就又唱了几首。

   这里 more 后面省略了名词 songs。

2. Ready for what? = You're ready for what? 你们准备好干什么？

   For your songs of course. 当然是准备好听你唱歌罗。

3. And with a polite "Good night", he left the rich woman's house. 他很有礼貌地道了声"晚安"，便离开了这位有钱的妇人的家。

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words, then put

in the missing letters:

ch, tch — [tʃ]	*ch*ange, ri*ch*	ch _____	ch _____
		_____ch	_____ch
		_____tch	_____tch
gh — [—]	— ri*gh*t	_____ght	_____ght
gh — [f]	— enou*gh*	_____gh	_____gh
ph — [f]	— ele*ph*ant	ph _____	ph _____
sh — [ʃ]	— *sh*all, wi*sh*	sh _____	sh _____
		_____sh	_____sh
th — [θ]	— *th*ing, bo*th*	th _____	th _____
		_____th	_____th
th — [ð]	— *th*ese, ei*th*er	th _____	th _____
		_____ther	_____ther
wh — [w]	— *wh*ile	wh _____	wh _____
wh — [h]	— *wh*o	wh _____	wh _____

2. Learn the following by heart:

do	did	done	read	read	read
sing	sang	sung		[red]	[red]
draw	drew	drawn	make	made	made
know	knew	known	lose	lost	lost
write	wrote	written	learn	learned	learned
come	came	come	find	found	found

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) After breakfast Betty goes to school.

2) Father goes to work at six every day.

3) Miss White **went over** the whole lesson yesterday.

4) Shall we **go** by plane or by train?

5) May I **go with** you, Dad?

6) The sun **went down** behind the hill.

7) Mrs Smith **has gone out** to do some shopping.

8) It was raining when I **went out** for a walk this morning.

9) Be quiet, please. The baby has just **gone to** sleep.

10) I usually **go to bed** at half past nine.

4. Make sentences after the model:

Model: you, buy, an English-Chinese dictionary; last week →

Have you bought an English-Chinese dictionary?

Yes, I have.

When did you buy it?

I bought it last week.

1) they, see, the TV play; last Sunday

2) you, do, the maths exercises; yesterday evening

3) the artist, draw, a few pictures; several days ago

4) Miss Green, buy a basket; yesterday afternoon

5) the woman musician, sing us, several songs; half an hour ago

6) the conductor, check, all the tickets; just now

5. Fill in each blank with one of the expressions given:

at once, at that time, at the end of, at first, at last, at home, at the corner, on time

1) How long did her husband wait for her ____ of the street?
2) Mr Smith has just seen his wife ____ that road.
3) ____ the woman singer was living in Europe.
4) That young musician is usually late, but this time he came to this concert ____.
5) It took the old man a long time but he got to the village ____.
6) The headmaster isn't ____. He's at school.
7) As soon as all the guests were seated, the concert began ____.
8) ____ we didn't know each other, but now we've become good friends.

6. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) He ____ (check) his test paper twice already.
2) I ____ (cough) a lot last night.
3) The children ____ (enjoy) themselves in the park last Sunday morning.
4) All shops ____ (open) at nine o'clock in the morning.
5) The train ____ just ____ (arrive).
6) She ____ (feel) terrible at this time yesterday.

7) We ___ (invite) many friends from other countries to China every year.

8) They ___ (join) the Young Pioneers six years ago.

9) The famous singer said, "I ___ (already sing) several songs for them."

7. Answer the following questions:

1) Who was Martin Brown?

2) Why did the rich woman invite him to her house?

3) Did she invite the singer to have dinner with her friends? Where did she tell him to eat?

4) After his meal with the servants, what did the singer do? The servants were quite pleased, weren't they?

5) What did the rich woman ask the singer to do at nine o'clock?

6) Were the guests already seated in the sitting-room? What were they doing?

7) What did the rich woman say to the singer?

8) What did Mr Brown say?

9) Mr Brown didn't sing for the rich woman and her guests, did he?

10) What did the singer do in the end?

8. Give the English for these:

1) ——你在拍照片,是吗?

——是的。

——你拍了多少张了？

——大约二十四张。

2) ——14 次列车到了吗？

——到了。

——什么时候到的？

——一刻钟以前。

LESSON TEN

The Tenth Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: When did you	get to know Jack? begin to learn English? come to this school?	

B: The year before last.

A: Then you've	known each other learned English been here	for about two years.

B: That's right.

B

A: How long has your uncle

taught in that village?
lived in that street?
worked on that farm?

B: He's

taught
lived
worked

there since

1965.
he came to this city.
he left the army.

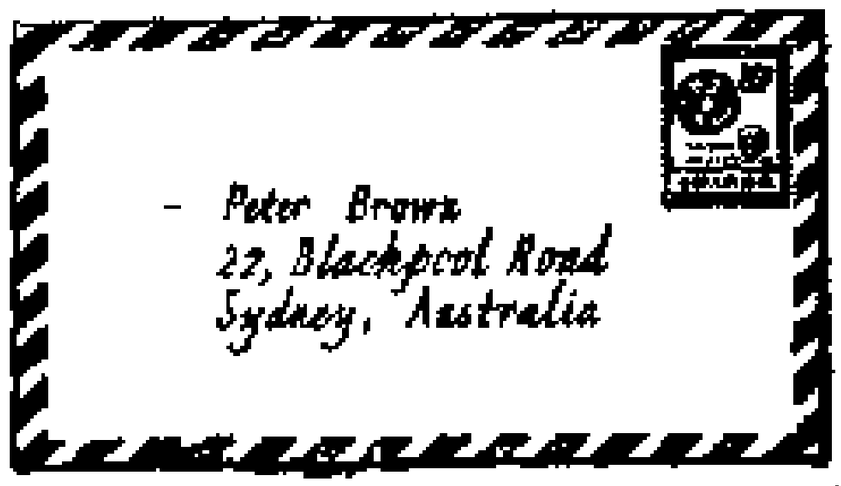
TEXT

AN AUSTRALIAN BOY IN BEIJING

809 West Chang'an Street
Beijing, China
December 21st, 1983

Dear Peter,

I've been here in Beijing for half a year now. Beijing is in the north of China, so it's quite cold in winter. It has just snowed twice here.



I'm going to have the first "White Christmas" in my life! It's hard to believe, isn't it — so warm in Australia and so cold here?

Thank you for the wonderful stamp! I've collected over three hundred Chinese stamps since I came here. I'm sending some Monkey King stamps to you. I think you will like them.

Now to answer some of your questions. Yes, I'm learning Chinese. Chinese is quite a difficult language for me. Last time Mum asked for some quilts in a shop. They showed her some cups. Dad and I had a good laugh over that. I've learned about five hundred Chinese words. I can even write a little Chinese now. Have you looked at the words on the Christmas card? I wrote them myself!

No, I'm not swimming. Instead, I'm learning to skate on real ice! I've had so many falls that I'm black and blue all over. But I'm learning fast.

I've travelled to several places in South China with Mum and Dad since we came to China. I've seen a lot of interesting things. I've made quite a few good friends, too.

I have to finish this letter now. Ask Uncle John and Aunt Alice to bring you, too, when they come in August. We'll have a good time together then.

Yours,

Mike

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

get to know 认识

uncle ['ʌŋkl] *n.* 叔,伯,舅,姨父,姑父

on a farm 在农场

city ['siti] *n.* 城市

* * *

Australia [ɔs'treiljə] *n.* 澳大利亚

Australian [ɔs'treiljən] *adj.* 澳大利亚的;澳大利亚人的

n. 澳大利亚人

west *n.* 西部,西方

adj. 西部的,西方的

adv. 在西部,在西方

north [nɔ:θ] *n.* 北部,北方

adj. 北部的,北方的

adv. 在北部,在北方

Christmas ['krisməs] *n.* 圣诞节

believe [bi'li:v] *vt.* & *vi.* 相信;认为

wonderful ['wʌndəful] *adj.* 极好的,精彩的

stamp *n.* 邮票

collect [kə'lekt] *vt.* 收集;搜集

vi. 聚集

over ['əuvə] *adv.* & *prep.* (表示数目、程度)在……以上,超过

send (sent, sent) *vt.* 送;派遣;发射

language ['læŋgwidʒ] *n.* 语言

quilt *n.* 被子

have a good laugh over ... 对……笑了一个够

real [riəl] *adj.* 真的

ice *n.* 冰

fall (fell, fallen ['fɔ:lən])

n. & *vi.* 落下;跌倒

so ... that ... 如此……以致……

all over 遍及……的每一部分;浑身

travel ['trævl] *vi.* & *n.* 旅行

place *n.* 地方,地点,位置

south [sauθ] *n.* 南部,南方

adj. 南部的,南方的

adv. 在南部,在南方

make friends 交朋友

quite a few 相当多;颇有几个

NOTES

1. the first "White Christmas" in my life 我有生以来第一次过"白色的圣诞节"

圣诞节是十二月二十五日。这时，如适逢大雪，大地一片洁白，能给节日增添欢乐的气氛，称为"白色的圣诞节"。澳大利亚地处南半球，圣诞节是一年中最热的时候，不会有雪。所以迈克说，北京最近刚下了两次雪，他将是有生以来第一次过"白色的圣诞节"。

2. It's hard to believe, isn't it — so warm in Australia and so cold here? 很难相信在澳大利亚那么热，而这里却这么冷，是吗？

3. Now to answer some of your questions. = Now I'm going to answer some of your questions. 现在我来回答你提出的一些问题。

4. Yes, I'm learning Chinese.

No, I'm not swimming.

以上两句话是用来回答对方来信中所提出的问题的。

5. I'm learning to skate on real ice! 我正在真正的冰上学滑冰哩！

从信中这句话来看，迈克在来中国以前，没有在真正的冰上滑过冰。

6. I've had so many falls that I'm black and blue all over. 我跌了这么多跤，以致全身都是青一块，紫一块的。

so ... that （如此……以致）引导的是表示结果的状语从句。

GRAMMAR

现在完成时(The Present Perfect Tense) (I)

1. 现在完成时的构成

助动词 have(has)+过去分词

(规则动词的过去分词的构成与动词过去式相同。不规则动词的过去分词见本书末《不规则动词表》。)

2. 现在完成时的基本概念和用法

1) 表示过去发生的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果，如:

I have already posted the photos.

我已经把照片邮寄了。("邮寄"是过去发生的动作，对现在造成的结果是"照片不在我这里"。)

2) 表示过去已经开始，持续到现在的动作或状态，往往和表示一段时间的状语连用，如:

He has learned English for about two years.

They have lived in Beijing since 1980.

3) 和现在完成时连用的时间状语

现在完成时属于现在时态范围，因而不能和表示过去时间的状语连用，如 yesterday, last week, three years ago, in 1960 等，但可以和 already, never (从来没有), ever, just, yet 等状语连用，如:

He has already done his exercises.

I haven't learned the word yet.

现在完成时还可以和表示从过去某时刻延续到现在(包括"现在"在内)的一段时间的状语连用，像 today,

these days, since ..., for a long time 等。例如:

Have you seen her these days?

We have lived in that street for a long time.

He has taught at this school since 1963.

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, paying attention to the word-stress:

1)	re'new	a'bove	a'gain	a'round
	be'lieve	be'cause	in'stead	in'vite
	col'lect	en'joy	po'lite	ex'plain
2)	to'mato	Aus'tralia	con'ductor	ex'pensive

2. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

tw-	[tw-]	*tw*ice	*tw*elve	*tw*enty	be*tw*een
qu-	[kw-]	*qu*ilt	*qu*ite	*qu*arter	*qu*estion

3. Learn the following by heart:

bring	brought	brought	stand	stood	stood
buy	bought	bought	lend	lent	lent
think	thought	thought	send	sent	sent
teach	taught	taught	say	said	said
catch	caught	caught	hear	heard	heard
feel	felt	felt	hold	held	held
keep	kept	kept	tell	told	told
smell	smelt	smelt	shine	shone	shone
sleep	slept	slept	sit	sat	sat
sweep	swept	swept	hang	hung	hung

4. Fill in the blanks with the correct word:

A. 1) Guangzhou is in the ____ (south, north) of China. And Changchun is in the ____ (south, north).

2) In winter it's cold in ____ (South, North) China, but warm in ____ (South, North) China.

3) England (英国) is in the ____ (east, west) of Europe.

4) Where's Shanghai? Is it in the south?

No. It's in the ____ (east, west) of China.

B. I'm Mr Black. My ____ is Mrs Black. I'm her ____. We have two children, a ____ and a ____. Peter is our ____ and Mary is our ____. Peter is Mary's ____ and Mary is his ____. I'm their ____ and my wife is their ____. We are their ____. My mother is their ____ and my father is their ____. I have two brothers and a sister. My brothers are Peter and Mary's ____, and my sister is their ____.

5. Rewrite the following sentences after the model:

Model: He came to study at this school in 1982. →

He has studied at this school since 1982.

He has studied at this school for about two years.

1) Peter's uncle started teaching at our school in 1979.
2) My family came to live in this town last year.
3) His daughter began to learn music last summer.
4) Jenny and Wei Fang got to know each other the year before last.
5) Mr Smith came to work in this city last January.
6) Mrs Brown went to work in the west of Australia in 1981.

6. Ask questions about the underlined parts:

1) Miss Brown has taught physics <u>for 15 years.</u>
2) Peter has lost <u>his ticket for the concert.</u>
3) He has planted some trees <u>in front of his house.</u>
4) The Australian boy has collected <u>some Chinese stamps.</u>
5) Mr Brown has travelled by train <u>for about a week.</u>
6) They have found a tortoise <u>on the river bank.</u>
7) The two Australian teachers have visited that village <u>twice.</u>
8) <u>A famous singer</u> has just come to our school and sung for us.
9) The baby has just had <u>some medicine.</u>
10) Kate has just returned <u>a Chinese-English dictionary</u> to the library.

7. Answer the following questions:

1)Who has Mike written the letter to?

2)Why does Mike say he's going to have the first "White Christmas"in his life?

3) How many Chinese stamps has Mike collected since he came to Beijing?

4) What stamps is he sending to peter?

5) Mike is learning Chinese, isn't he? Is it an easy or a difficult language for him?

6) What did the shop assistant show to Mike's mother when she once asked for some quilts? Mike and his father had a good laugh over that, didn't they?

7) Can Mike write a little Chinese now?

8) How many Chinese words has he learned?

9) Is Mike swimming now? What is he doing instead? He's had many falls, hasn't he?

10) Has Mike travelled to any places in China? Where?

11) What does Mike ask Peter to tell Uncle John and Aunt Alice to do? Mike and Peter will have a very good time together then, won't they?

8. Give the English for these:

1) 迈克学照像已经两个多月了。

2) 从上星期三以来，华南地区下了两场雨。

3) 这位列车员在火车上工作二十年了。

4) 自 1980 年以来，这位歌手在音乐会上唱过许多精彩的歌。

5) 刘梅加入少先队以来，做了许多好事。

6) 艾丽斯去年到中国以来，已给约翰寄了十多封信。

7) 自从她成为一名大夫，她已挽救了二十多人的生命。

8) 自从我姑姑去澳大利亚，她已收集了相当多的精美邮票。

LESSON ELEVEN

The Eleventh Lesson

DRILLS

A

A: Your brother is	a soldier, a League member, in Guangzhou, in England,	isn't he?

B: Yes, he is.

A: How long has he been	a soldier? a League member? there? there?

B: For about two months.

B

A: Have you ever been to

the Great Wall?
Xi'an?
England?

B: No, never. What about you?

A Yes, I have.

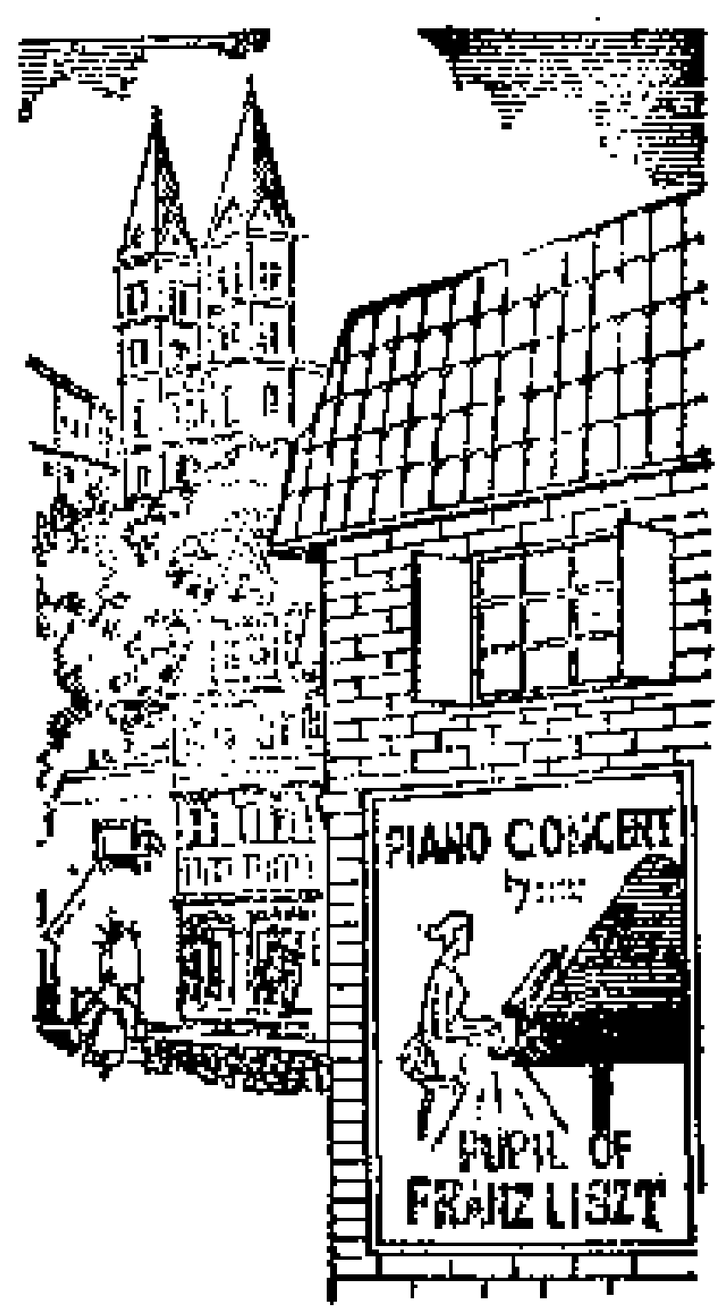
B How many times have you been there?

A: Only once

TEXT

THE PIANO CONCERT

A young woman in a small German town was going to give a piano concert. Her posters said she was a pupil of Franz Liszt, the great Hungarian pianist.



This was not true.

One day the woman learned that Liszt himself

was in town. Now people would find out and she would never be able to give a concert again. What should she do?

Finally she went to see the famous man himself. She told him everything. Her parents were dead and she was alone. She had to make a living. She decided to give piano lessons to rich children. But who would send their children to an unknown young woman? So she told people Franz Liszt was her teacher.

"I believe you," Liszt said. "You've done wrong, but I can see you are truly sorry about it. That's enough. Now let me hear you play."

The young woman was shy at first. But then she saw Liszt smiling. It made her feel better. Now she wasn't afraid any more. She started playing. She put her heart into it and she played wonderfully. Liszt was quite pleased.

When she finished, she turned to look at

Liszt. There was a smile on his face. She could see he was pleased. Then Liszt gave her some advice. After he finished, he said, "Now you really are my pupil. Go ahead with your concert. And you can add a note to the posters. Say that your teacher himself will be there. He will play the last piece."

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

America [ə'merikə] *n.* 美国;美洲

never ['nevə] *adv.* 从来没有;决不

soldier ['səuldʒə] *n.* 士兵,战士

league [li:g] *n.* 联盟

member ['membə] *n.* 成员

League member 团员

England ['iŋgləndˌ] *n.* 英格兰;(泛指)英国

* * *

German ['dʒə:mən] *adj.* 德国的;德国人的;德语的

n. 德国人,德语

poster ['pəustə] *n.* 海报,招贴

pupil ['pju:pl] *n.* 小学生;学生

Hungarian [hʌŋ'gɛəriən]

adj. 匈牙利的;匈牙利人的;匈牙利语的

n. 匈牙利人;匈牙利语

pianist ['piənist] *n.* 钢琴家

find out 找出,发现,查出(真相等)

give a concert 举行音乐会

finally ['fainəli] *adv.* 最后,末了

alone [ə'ləun] *adj.* (只作表语)单独的

adv. 单独地,独自

living *n.* 生活;谋生

make a living 谋生，度日

give lessons to 给……上课

unknown ['ʌn'nəun] *adj.* 不为人所知的;不出名的

do wrong 做错事;做坏事

truly ['tru:li] *adv.* 真正地;真实地

shy *adj.* 害羞的

put one's heart into ... 全神贯注于……之中

wonderfully ['wʌndəfuli] *adv.* 极好地,精彩地

advice [əd'vais] *n.* 忠告,建议

really ['riəli] *adv.* 确实,真正地

go ahead with 继续进行

NOTES

1. Have you ever been to the Great Wall? 你去过长城吗?

   No, never. What about you? 从来没有去过。你呢?

* * *

2. Franz Liszt ['frænts 'list] 弗朗兹·李斯特(1811—1886,匈牙利钢琴家及作曲家)
3. Now people would find out and she would never be able to give a concert again. 现在人们就会发现真相,她将再也不能举行音乐会了。
4. What should she do? 她该怎么办呢?

   should [ʃud] 是 shall 的过去式，在这里作情态动词,是"该"的意思。
5. She had to make a living. 她得维持生活。
6. But who would send their children to an unknown

young woman? 但是谁会愿意把孩子送到一个不出名的年轻女子那里去(学钢琴)呢?

7. So she told people Franz Liszt was her teacher. 因此她对人们说,弗朗兹·李斯特是她的老师。

8. Now let me hear you play. 现在让我听你演奏。

句中 play 是不带 to 的不定式,作宾语 you 的补足语,构成复合宾语。hear 也是不带 to 的不定式,作 me 的补足语,构成复合宾语。类似 let, hear 可以带复合宾语的,还有 help, watch, make 等动词。如:

I often help them wash their clothes. 我常帮助他们洗衣服。

I watched them play tennis for an hour. 我看他们打网球看了一个钟头。

It made her feel better. 这使她感到好受一些。

9. She put her heart into it and she played wonderfully. 她全神贯注地来演奏,结果她演奏得好极了。

10. Go ahead with your concert. 继续举行你的音乐会吧。

11. Say that your teacher himself will be there. He will play the last piece. 就说你的老师将亲自参加,并将亲自演奏最后一首。

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following words, and mark their word-stresses:

Hungarian America Christmas

biology	geography	impossible
crocodile	disappointed	kilometre

2. Pronounce these sounds and words:

[-pl]	pupil	people	apple
[-bl]	able	trouble	terrible
[-tl]	little	hospital	capital
[-dl]	middle	model	

3. Learn the following by heart:

let	let	let	eat	ate	eaten
put	put	put		[et]	
become	became	become	show	showed	shown
give	gave	given	sew	sewed	sewn
fall	fell	fallen	break	broke	broken
lie	lay	lain	speak	spoke	spoken
forget	forgot	forgotten	wake	woke	woken

4. Learn the following by heart:

A.

n.	adj.	n.	adj.
America	American	Australia	Australian
China	Chinese	England	English
Europe	European	Germany	German
	[ˌjəurəˈpiən]		['dʒə:məni]
Hungary	Hungarian	Japan	Japanese
['hʌŋgəri]		[dʒəˈpæn]	

B.

adj.	adv.	adj.	adv.
quiet	quietly	real	really

polite — politely	careful — carefully
quick — quickly	wonderful — wonderfully
slow — slowly	final — finally
angry — angrily	true — truly
happy — happily	terrible — terribly

5. Rewrite the following sentences after the model:

Model: He went to the meeting-room about an hour ago. (there, for about an hour) →

He has been there for about an hour.

1) The American musician arrived here about two weeks ago. (here, for about two weeks)
2) Her husband got to the hospital about half an hour ago. (there, for about half an hour)
3) The servants started to work in the rich woman's house five years ago. (there, for five years)
4) Comrade Liu went to England in 1981 and 1983. (to England, twice)
5) My uncle joined the Party in 1978. (a Party member, for over six years)
6) A French pianist came to China last month. (here, for about a month)

6. Fill in the blanks with for or since:

1) Mr Brown's daughter has collected stamps ____ quite a few years.
2) The musicians have prepared for the concert ____

two weeks.

3) Has Mike ever been to the famous museum in London ___ he got to England?

4) Her husband has never been ill ___ he left the hospital last winter.

5) I have been away from my home town ___ about five years.

6) Have you ever sent your TV set for repairs ___ you bought it?

7. Read the text and then say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) The young woman was going to give a violin concert. ( )

2) Her posters told people her teacher was Franz Liszt, the great Hungarian pianist. ( )

3) She was very happy when she learned that Liszt was in town. ( )

4) The young woman decided to tell Liszt about her posters. ( )

5) Liszt got very angry after the young woman told him everything. ( )

6) The young woman was truly sorry about it and cried. ( )

7) Liszt wanted the young woman to play a piece for him. ( )

8) Liszt was quite pleased because the girl played wonderfully. ( )

9) The young woman became Liszt's pupil because she had told him everything. ( )

10) Liszt said he was going to the concert and was going to play the last piece. ( )

8. Give the English for these:

1) ——你姐姐是团员吗？

——是。

——她入团多久了？

——一年多了。

——她什么时候入团的？

——去年春天。

2) ——王同志是中学校长，是不是？

——是。

——她当校长有多久了？

——大约八年了。

——她教过课吗？

——教过。她教过汉语。

3) ——这位美术家去过澳大利亚吗？

——从来没有。但他去过一次英国。

4) ——你去过南方吗？

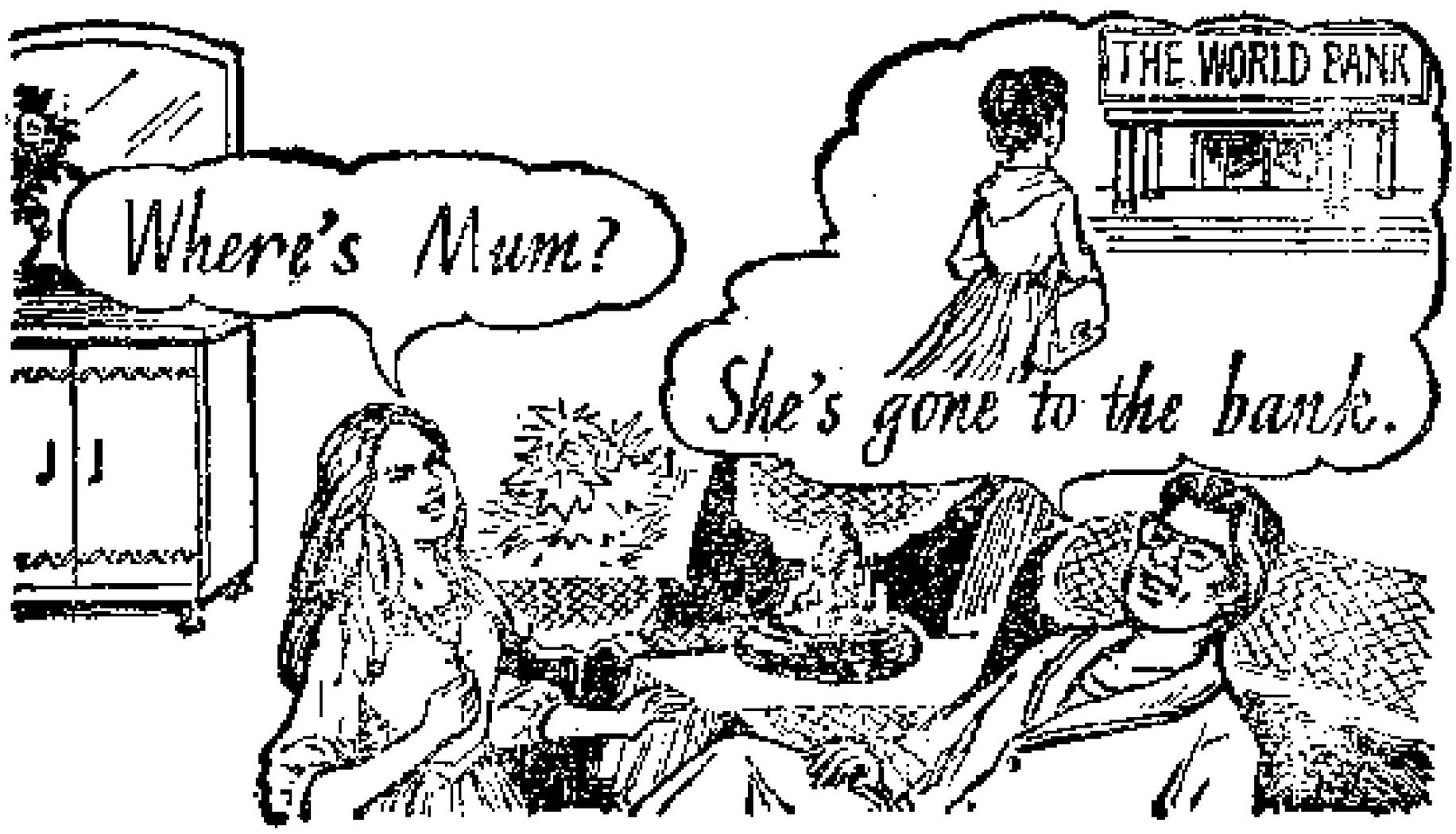
——去过。我曾经去过一次桂林。你呢？

——我也去过一次桂林，还去过两次广州。

LESSON TWELVE

The Twelfth Lesson

DRILLS



A

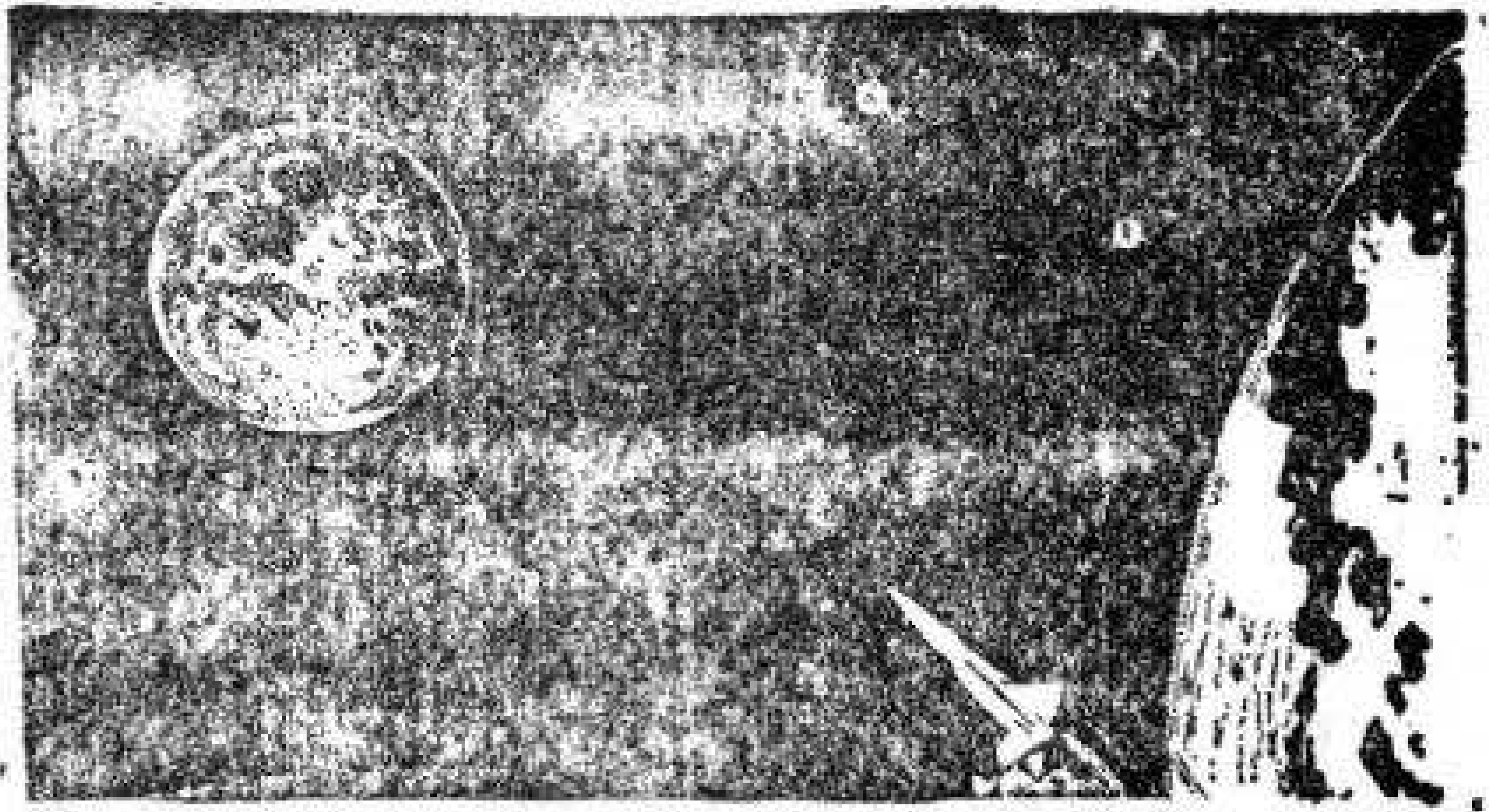
A: Where have you been?

B: I've just been to

the library.
the League office.
the reading-room.

Did anybody ask for me?

A: Yes, Li Ping did. He wanted his book back.



B

A: Where's Wei Fang?

B: She's gone to

the shop.
the post office.
the playground.

A: Please tell her to come to the teachers' office as soon as she comes back.

B: All right. I'll do that.

TEXT

THE UNIVERSE AND MAN-MADE SATELLITES

When we talk about the universe, we mean not only the earth, the sun, the moon and the stars, but also all the things too far away to see.

In the past fifty years or so, scientists have been able to "see" farther and

farther into the sky. They have found many "new" stars. Those stars are not really new. They have been there millions of years.

Of all the stars the sun is the nearest to the earth. Millions of other stars are even bigger and brighter than the sun. They look small only because they are much farther away. You can't see them in the daytime. But if you go out at night, you'll be able to see thousands of them.

The earth is one of the sun's planets, and the moon is our satellite. It is our nearest neighbour in space, and men have visited it already. No man has travelled farther than the moon, but spaceships without people have reached other planets.

Many countries have sent up man-made satellites to circle the earth. With their help, people have done much research in many fields of science.

Our country sometimes uses man-made satellites to send and receive TV programmes. This has helped the people of China and other

countries to understand each other better.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

bank *n.* 银行

reading-room *n.* 阅览室

anybody ['eni,bɔdi] *pron.* 任何人

* * *

universe ['ju:nivə:s] *n.* 宇宙

man-made ['mæn'meid] *adj.* 人造的;人工的

satellite ['sætəlait] *n.* 卫星

mean (meant[ment],meant) *vt.* 意思是……

not only ... but also ... 不但……而且……

star *n.* 星

too ... to ... 太……而不能……

or so 大约……,……上下

farther ['fɑ:ðə] *adv.* & *adj.* (far 的比较级)较远;更远

sky *n.* 天空

million ['miljən] *num.* & *n.* 百万;百万个(人或物)

millions of 成百万的;许许多多的

daytime *n.* 白天,白昼

in the daytime 在白天,在白昼

thousands of 成千上万的

planet ['plænit] *n.* 行星

neighbour ['neibə] *n.* 邻居;邻人

space *n.* 空间;太空

in space 在空间

send up 把……往上送;发射

circle ['sə:kl] *vt.* 环绕,盘旋

n. 圆

research [ri'sə:tʃ] *n.* 调查;研究

field *n.* 领域

receive [ri'si:v] *vt.* 收到,接到

programme ['prəugræm] *n.* 节目

pq ədt bəqlənd

NOTES

1. He wanted his book back. 他要索回他的书。

句中 back 是副词，作 book 的补足语，构成复合宾语。类似的用法还有：

Let him in.

I must get the bat back from him.

* * *

2. When we talk about the universe, we mean not only the earth, the sun, the moon and the stars, but also all the things too far away to see. 当我们谈到宇宙时，我们不但指地球、太阳、月亮和星星，而且还指远得看不到的一切东西。

句中 too far away to see 用作定语，修饰 things。

3. In the past fifty years or so, scientists have been able to "see" farther and farther into the sky. They have found many "new" stars.

see 是"用眼睛看"的意思，而现在对太空的观察不限于用肉眼，还可以通过仪器，所以在 see 这个词上加引号。

在 new 这个词上也加上了引号，这是因为那些恒星早已存在，并不是新产生的。

4. Of all the stars the sun is the nearest to the earth. 在所有的恒星当中，太阳是离地球最近的。

5. With their help, people have done much research in many fields of science. 人们借助人造卫星，在许多科学

领域进行了广泛的研究。

with their help = with the help of man-made satellites

GRAMMAR

现在完成时（The Present Perfect Tense）（II）

4）现在完成时和一般过去时的区别

现在完成时表示过去发生的某一动作对现在造成的影响或结果，强调的是现在的情况，所以它不能和表示过去时间的状语连用。而一般过去时只单纯表示过去的动作或状态，和现在不发生关系，它可以和表示过去时间的状语连用。如：

I have seen the film.

我看过这个电影。（我了解这个电影的内容。）

I saw the film last week.

我上星期看了这个电影。（只说明上星期看了这个电影，不涉及现在的情况。）

He has lived here since 1972.

1972年以来他一直住在这里。（他现在还在这里住。）

He lived here in 1972.

1972年他住在这里。（不涉及他现在是否还住在这里。）

5）"have (has) been" 和 "have (has) gone" 的区别

表示"曾到过某地"要用 "have (has) been"，不能用

"have (has) gone"。比较下面的句子:

Where has he been?

他刚才到哪儿去了?(他已回来。)

Where has he gone?

他上哪儿去了?(他现在不在这里。)

She has been to Shanghai.

她到过上海。(她现在已不在上海了。)

She has gone to Shanghai.

她到上海去了。(她可能在去上海的路上,或者已到上海,总之,现在不在这里。)

EXERCISES

1. Read aloud the following:

be — bee	son — sun	so — sew
meat — meet	I — eye	no — know
too — two	by — buy	hear — here
new — knew	right — write	their — there
father — farther	our — hour	hair — hare

2. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

sp-	[sp-]	*sp*ace	*sp*eak	*sp*ort
st-	[st-]	*st*ar	*st*one	*st*amp
		*st*adium	*st*ory	*st*udy
sk-	[sk-]	*sk*y	*sk*ate	*sk*irt
str-	[str-]	*str*eet	*str*ict	in*str*uctive

3. Give the past and past participle forms of the

following verbs:

see	do	go	know	draw	throw
fly	begin	sing	ring	run	swim

4. Make up compound words by joining a word from Column I with a word from Column II:

I	II
picture-	made
bus-	book
basket-	box
harvest-	ball
pencil-	driver
sitting-	time
reading-	room
man-	room

5. Ask questions about the underlined parts:

1) My neighbour has been away <u>for about a month.</u>
2) Miss Brown has just bought <u>a violin.</u>
3) The headmaster hasn't come <u>because he is ill.</u>
4) The League members have cleaned <u>the dining-room.</u>
5) The doctor has gone <u>to the sitting-room.</u>
6) <u>The soldiers</u> have planted some trees on the river bank.
7) My grandfather has been to Beijing <u>only once.</u>

6. Join each pair of sentences after the models:

A Model: She is our teacher. She is also our friend.

→ She is **not only** our teacher **but also** our friend.

1) London has a lot of old buildings. It also has many new ones.
2) The scientist knows English very well. He also knows Russian and German very well.
3) The pupil is good at maths. He is also good at physics.
4) The pianist gave them a lot of advice. He also played some wonderful pieces for them.

B Model: The girl felt very sick. She couldn't go to school. →

The girl felt **too** sick **to** go to school.

1) The woman is very old. She can't carry the box.
2) Mr Smith is very tired. He can't go on with his research.
3) The doctor is very busy. He can't go to the concert.
4) The elephant is very big. It can't go through the door.

K. Complete each of the following sentences with the correct statement:

1) When we talk about the universe, we mean ____.

a. the earth, the sun, the moon and the stars

b. all the things around us

c. the earth, the sun, the moon, the stars and all the things too far away to see

2) The sun is brighter than all the other stars because ____.

a. it is the biggest star

b. it is the nearest star to the earth

c. the light of the other stars is not as strong as that of the sun

3) The earth is ____.

a. the sun's only planet

b. the moon's satellite

c. one of the sun's planets

4) The moon is ____.

a. as far from us as the sun

b. farther away from us than the sun

c. much nearer to us than the sun

8. Give the English for these:

1) ——你刚才去哪儿了？

——我去银行了。有人找我吗？

——刘英想取回她的字典。

2) ——李明在哪儿？

——他去邮局了。他要去买几张新邮票。

3) ——艾丽斯去买东西了，是不是？

——是的，她刚离开这儿。

4) ——中国发射过人造卫星，是不是？

——是的，发射过。

——中国是什么时候发射第一颗人造卫星的？

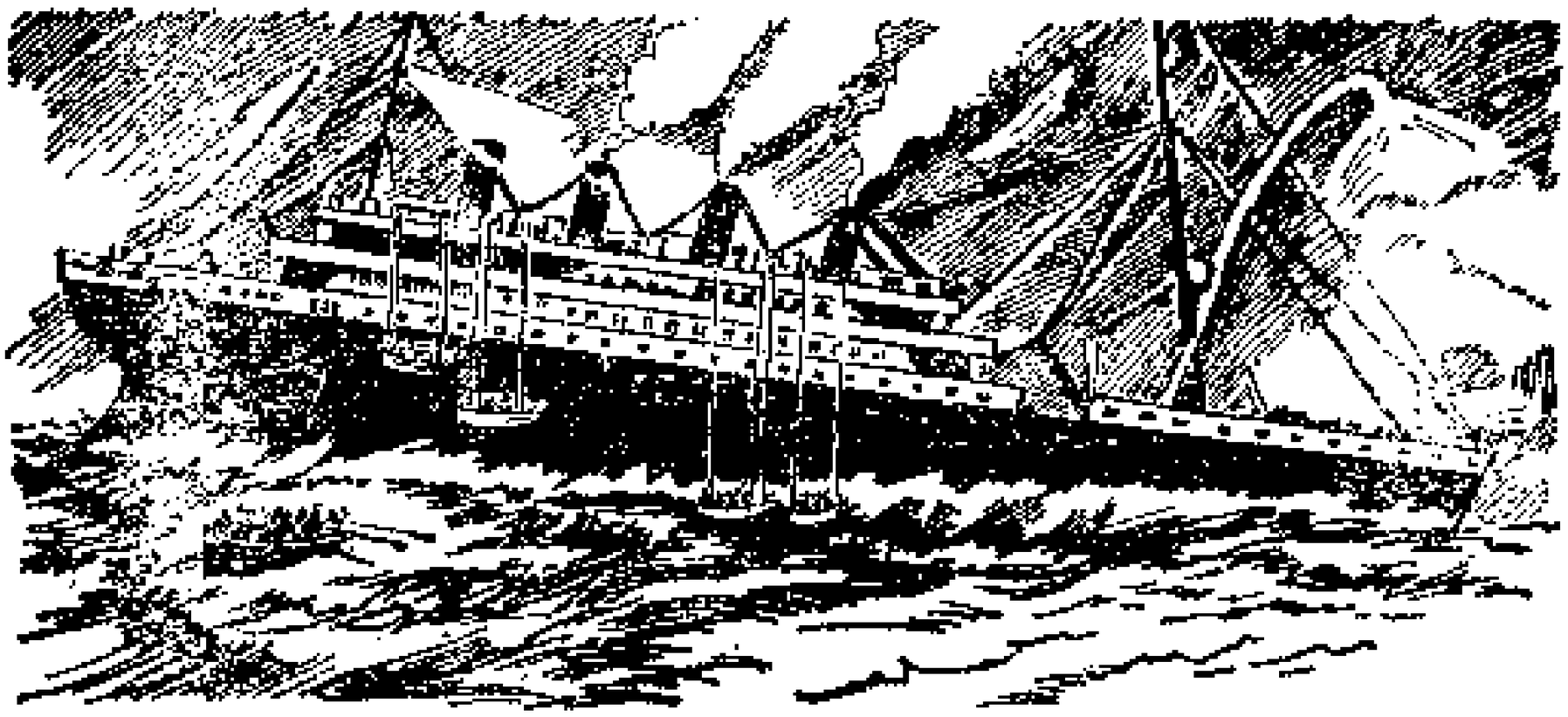
——1970 年。

LESSON THIRTEEN

The Thirteenth Lesson

TEXT

MISS EVANS



Have you ever heard the story about Miss Evans? It is a true story. Maybe many people have read about it.

One afternoon in April 1912, a new ship set off from England to America on its first trip. It was one of the largest and finest ships at that time and on it were over 2,200 people.

It was cold, but the trip was pleasant and people were enjoying themselves. The next day was even colder. People could see icebergs here

and there.

It was night. Suddenly the man on watch shouted, "Look out! Iceberg! Iceberg ahead!"

It was too late. The ship hit the iceberg and came to a stop. There was a very big hole in the ship and water began to come inside. Slowly the ship started to go down.

People had to leave the ship. Women and children were the first to get into the lifeboats. Suddenly a woman shouted, "Please make room for me. My children are in that boat. I must go with them! Please!"

"There's no more room here," someone shouted back. The children heard their mother and began to cry.

A young woman was sitting near the poor children. She stood up. "Here," she shouted. "Take my place! I'm not married and I have no children."

She got out and the thankful mother joined her children in the lifeboat.

Soon after that, the ship went down. More than 1,500 people lost their lives. Among those

was the young woman.

Who was she? Her name was Miss Evans and she was going home to Boston. But nobody knew more about her than that.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

Evans ['evənz] (姓) 埃文斯(伊文思)

set (set, set) *vi.* (日，月)落，下沉

vt. 放；安置

set off 出发，动身

trip *n.* 旅行；旅程

pleasant ['plezнt] *adj.* 令人愉快的，舒适的

enjoy oneself 过得快乐

iceberg ['aisbə:g] *n.* 冰山

here and there 到处，处处

watch *n.* 看守，守卫

on watch 守望；值班

hit (hit, hit) *vt.* 打；击中；撞

hole *n.* 洞，坑，孔

inside ['in'said] *prep.* 在……的里面，在……之内

adv. 在里面，在内部

get into 进入

lifeboat ['laifbəut] *n.* 救生艇

room *n.* 地位，空间；余地

poor [puə] *adj.* 可怜的；贫穷的；不好的

take one's place 坐某人的座位；代替某人的职务

marry ['mæri] *vt.* 结婚

be married 已婚

get out 离开；出去

thankful ['θæŋkful] *adj.* 感激的，感谢的

among [ə'mʌŋ] *prep.* 在……当中

Boston ['bɔstən] *n.* 波士顿(美国城市)

NOTES

1. It was one of the largest and finest ships at that time and on it were over 2,200 people. 它是当时最大的和最好的轮船之一，船上载客二千二百多人。

   on it were over 2,200 people = over 2,200 people were on it

2. Suddenly the man on watch shouted, "Look out! Iceberg! Iceberg ahead!" 突然，值班的人大喊，"当心呀！冰山！前面有冰山！"

   Look out! = Be on the watch, be careful! 当心！小心！

3. The ship hit the iceberg and came to a stop. 轮船撞着了冰山，停了下来。

4. Women and children were the first to get into the lifeboats. 妇女和儿童是首批进入救生船的。

5. "Please make room for me ...." "请给我让出点地方……"

   "There's no more room here," someone shouted back. "这儿没有地方了，"有人大声回答说。

   room 在这里是不可数名词，"空间，地位"的意思。

6. Take my place! 坐我的位置！

7. But nobody knew more about her than that. 但是，关于她的情况，没有人知道得更多（人们知道的就是那么多）。

EXERCISES

1. Give the past and past participle forms of the following verbs:

1)	knock	mind	shout	change	decide
	seat	sound	marry	arrive	collect
	start	cough	invite	report	travel
2)	sew	set	break	come	read
	see	take	tell	run	put

2. Put the following into Chinese:

1) **Look at** these colour photos. Aren't they beautiful!

2) **Look**! The famous artist is coming.

3) What's your neighbour doing? Is he **looking for** someone?

4) That red jacket **looks** even better.

5) The moon **looks** so bright and near tonight, but in fact, it isn't as near as it **looks**.

6) Our monitor is a League member. He **looks after** us like a big brother.

7) You were **looking for** your wallet all morning, weren't you? Have you found it?

8) Jenny doesn't **look like** her mother, but she **looks like** her father.

3. Fill in the blanks with **been** or **gone**:

1) The woman singer has ____ to Europe. She's

there now.

2) The pupils have ____ to the Palace Museum today. They're back now.

3) The French student isn't here. He's ____ to the restaurant.

4) Mr and Mrs White have ____ to Boston now. They've ____ there twice already.

5) The artist has ____ to Australia this year. She is now telling her pupils about her trip.

6) All the League members have ____ to the meeting-room to listen to a talk on the history of the Party.

7) Where's Betty? She isn't here now. She's ____ to the bank.

8) Miss Green has never ____ to East China.

4. Read the text and then say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) The story about Miss Evans is true. ( )

2) In April 1912, a new ship set off from America to England on its first trip. ( )

3) People were all enjoying themselves because the trip was pleasant. ( )

4) One night the ship hit a very big stone and began to go down. ( )

5) When the ship started to go down slowly, most

of the people left the ship and got into the lifeboats. ( )

6) Suddenly a woman began shouting. She wanted to join her children in the lifeboat. ( )

7) A young woman in the lifeboat took the children to join their mother in the ship. ( )

8) The young woman was married and had children with her. ( )

9) The mother was very thankful to the young woman and joined her children in the lifeboat at last. ( )

10) The young woman's name was Miss Evans. She lost her life, but she did so for others. ( )

5. Give the English for these:

1) 当轮船开出的时候，天很冷。 (set off)

2) 你能给这位老奶奶让出点地方吗？ (make room)

3) 刘梅请一位老大爷坐在她的位子上。(take one's place)

4) 你旅途愉快吗？ (have a trip)

5) 我的姑姑结婚了，但没有小孩。 (be married)

6) 昨天这个时候小学生在操场上玩得可开心呢。 (enjoy oneself)

7) 彼得和他的父母已经在中国西部旅游了好几处地方。 (travel)

8) 他发现天空中有一颗"新的"星星。其实，这颗星星已存在好几百万年了。 (in fact)

LESSON FOURTEEN

The Fourteenth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the past and past participle forms of the following verbs:

1)	watch	save	enjoy	prepare	receive
	pick	join	post	believe	ask
	copy	cook	check	circle	explain
2)	ring	feel	send	fall	catch
	hit	lose	lie	mean	hang

2. Learn the following:

A.

everything	everyone (everybody)
something	someone (somebody)
anything	anyone (anybody)
nothing	no one (nobody)

B.

teach — teacher	learn — learner
wait — waiter	farm — farmer
write — writer	dance — dancer
own — owner	speak — speaker
sing — singer	think — thinker
read — reader	report — reporter

3. Choose the correct word for each blank:

1) Please be ____ (quite, quiet) and listen to Miss Brown.

2) I'm ____ (quite, quiet) sure that we will finish the work by supper time.

3) Li Ping ____ (past, passed) his mother his bowl and asked for some more rice.

4) It's half ____ (past, passed) four now. Let's have sports.

5) Both animals and ____ (plants, planets) are living things.

6) Mars (火星) is one of the sun's ____ (plants, planets).

4. Put the following into Chinese:

1) Do you **get up** as early as your parents?

2) Joan will become a very good teacher when she **grows up.**

3) The boy saw a watch lying on the ground. He **picked** it **up** and turned it in at once.

4) John worked hard to **keep up with** the class.

5) As soon as Mr Ampère saw a "blackboard" in front of him, he **ran up to** it at once.

6) This maths problem is a bit difficult. Have you **worked it out?**

7) Kate **is out.** Can I take a message for her?

8) With a polite "Good night" to the rich woman,

Mr Brown **went out of** the house.

9) The girl did wrong and she was afraid that people would **find out.**

10) Miss Evans told the mother to take her place and she **got out of** the lifeboat.

5. Fill in the blanks with **a, an** or **the:**

Do You Know How He Did It?

Once ____ man wanted to go from one side of ____ river to the other in ____ boat. He had to take with him ____ sheep, ____ wolf (狼) and ____ basket of vegetables (蔬菜). But he could take only one of them at a time, because ____ boat was very small. "If I leave ____ wolf and ____ sheep together, ____ wolf may eat ____ sheep," he said to himself. "If I leave ____ sheep and ____ vegetables together, ____ sheep may eat ____ vegetables." He thought and thought. At last, he had ____ idea. And he was able to get to ____ other side of ____ river. Do you know how he did it?

6. Choose the correct preposition for each blank:

1) The Japanese students were ____ (for, in, on) their way to the Summer Palace.

2) My grandmother found her glasses ____ (in, by, on) the corner of the room.

3) The ship set off from Australia to America ____

(on, out, off) its first trip.

4) The conductor picked ____ (in, up, with) a ticket from the floor.

5) Who is knocking ____ (in, to, at) the door?

6) If you start too late, you won't be able to get there ____ (on, to, at) time.

7) The teacher has put up a map of Europe ____ (on, at, in) the middle of the blackboard.

8) Her uncle has arrived here ____ (on, in, by) train.

9) Lots of people have been ____ (to, on, at) England.

10) Has the teacher given you any advice ____ (on, with, from) your English study?

7. Fill in the blanks:

1) She ____ the piano when I went to see her last night. (was playing, plays, played)

2) What ____ you ____ at eight yesterday evening? (are ... doing, were ... doing, did ... do)

3) Your grandfather ____ the post office when I saw him. (passed, is passing, was passing)

4) I ____ the film twice already. (saw, have seen, see)

5) How long ____ you ____ in this house? (do ... live, have ... lived, are ... living)

6) You will go to the League meeting, ____ you? (don't, aren't, won't)

7) She ____ at this school for two years already. (studies, is studying, has studied)

8) His brother ____ at this school two years ago. (studies, studied, has studied)

9) My sister ____ in that post office since she left college three years ago. (worked, works, has worked)

10) My uncle ____ to study in England in 1982. (has gone, went, has been)

11) His father ____ a Party member for five years. (is, has been, became)

12) ____ you ever ____ to Xi'an? (Have ... gone, Have ... been)

13) The woman pianist ____ a concert tomorrow evening. (gave, gives, is going to give)

14) There ____ a talk on spaceships next Tuesday. (has, is going to be, will have)

15) They ____ to that small village several times. (are, have been, have come)

8. Fill in the blanks:

1) My grandfather started to work for his living ____ (当他只有十岁的时候).

2) ____ (我抄完课文以后), I did my lessons for the

next day.

3) My aunt has lived in this village ____ (自从她结婚以来).

4) All the pupils sat quietly and waited for their teacher ____ (一打铃).

5) The German friends have been to quite a few interesting places ____ (自从他们来到中国).

6) Please come and join us in the table tennis match ____ (如果你明天有空).

7) Peter won't go to see the film ____ (因为他把票丢了).

8) Comrade Wu won't be able to do the research work ____ (因为他已经去北京了).

9) The ship will set off for the north tomorrow morning ____ (如果天气好的话).

10) She sang a song ____ (在她结束报告之前).

9. Give the English for these:

1) 你见过那位著名的歌手吗?

2) 我舅舅从来没有到过欧洲的东部和北部。

3) 你参军以前在哪儿学习?

4) 这位音乐家不但去过英国,还去过澳大利亚。

5) 他到我们学校以来,做了许多好事。

6) 这位姑娘演奏小提琴之后,老师给她做了些指导。

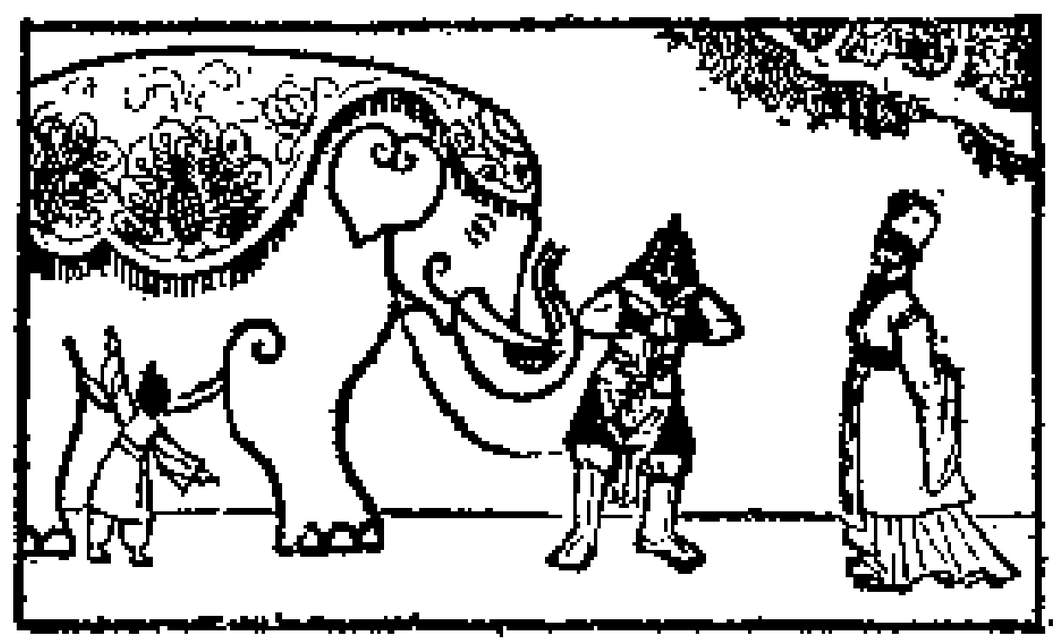
7) 孩子们一到河边,就开始种树。

8) 自从这些医生来到这个村,已经挽救了好几个人的生命。

10. Talk about the following pictures:

Cao Chong Weighs the Elephant

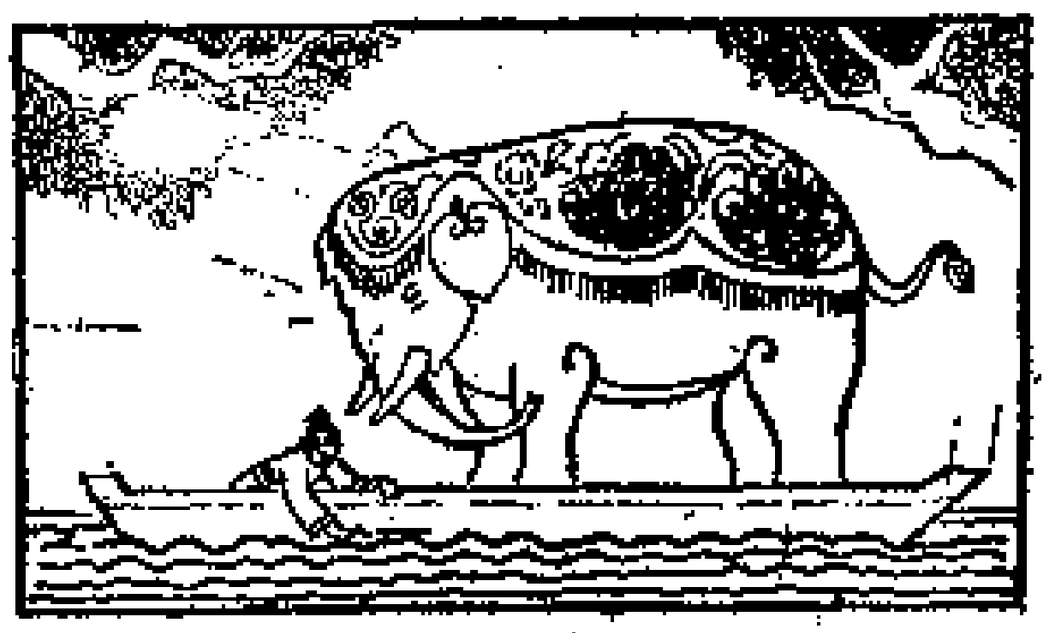
This happened about one thousand and seven hundred years ago. One day somebody sent Cao Cao, King of Wei, an elephant. Cao Cao wanted to know its weight. "Who can think of a way to weigh it?" he asked.



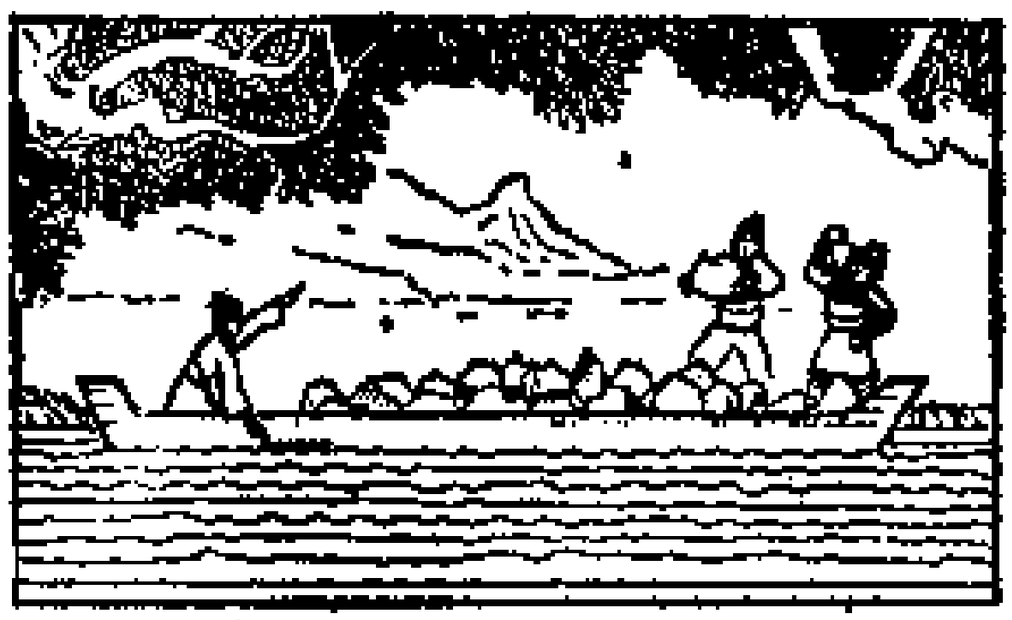
But nobody knew what to do, because there was nothing big enough to weigh it.

Then Cao Chong, one of the king's young sons, came up and said, "Father, I've got an idea. Let me have a big boat and a lot of heavy stones, and I'll be able to find out the weight of the elephant."

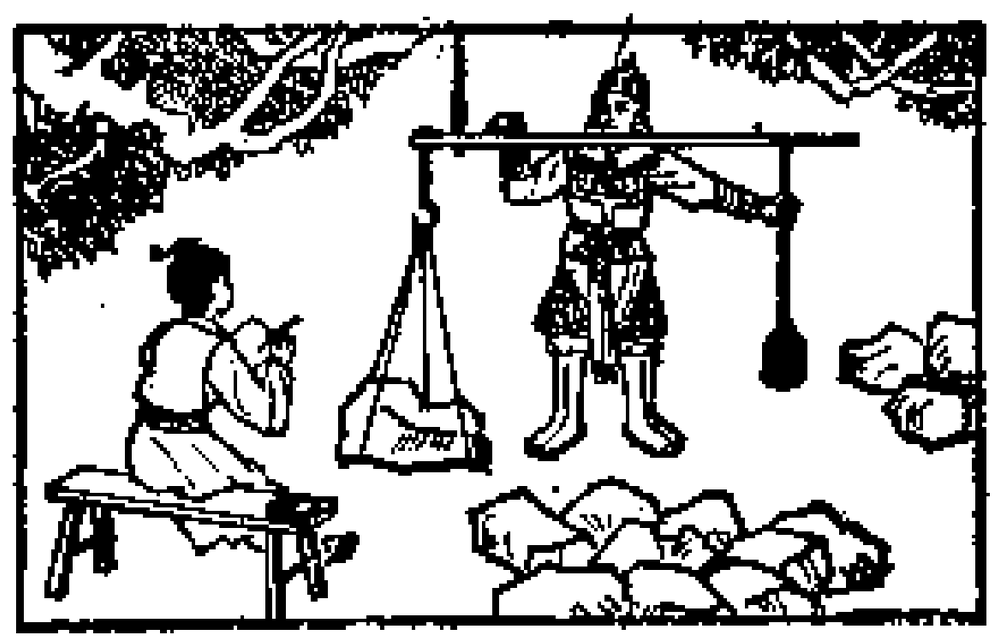
Cao Cao was surprised, but he told his men to do as the boy asked.



When the boat was ready, the boy told a man to lead the elephant down into it. The elephant was very heavy, and the water came up very high along the boat's sides. Cao Chong made a mark along the water line.



After that the man drove the elephant onto the bank. Cao Chong then told the men to put heavy stones into the boat until the water again came up to the line.



Cao Chong then told the men to take the stones off the boat and weigh them one by one. He wrote down the weight of each stone and then added up all the weights. In this way he got the weight of the elephant.

Cao Chong 曹冲	line 线
weigh 称	mark 记号
happen 发生	drive 驱赶
Cao Cao 曹操	until 直到
weight 重量	add up 加起来
lead 引导	

Vocabulary

A

able [ˈeibl] *adj.*
有能力的;能干的
be able to 能;会 5

above [əˈbʌv] *n.* 上面
prep. 在……上面,
adv. 在上面,
adj. 上面的 3

advice [ədˈvais] *n.*
忠告,建议 11

ahead [əˈhed] *adv.*
在前面,在前头 6

all over 遍及……的每一部分;浑身 10

alone [əˈləun] *adj.*
(只作表语)单独的
adv. 单独地,独自 11

along [əˈlɔŋ] *adv.*
一道,一起
prep. 沿着 8

already [ɔːlˈredi] *adv.*
已经 1

America [əˈmerikə] *n.*
美国;美洲 11

among [əˈmʌŋ] *prep.*
在……当中 13

angrily [ˈæŋgrili] *adv.*
发怒地,愤怒地 5

anybody [ˈeniˌbɔdi]
pron. 任何人 12

anything [ˈeniθiŋ] *pron.*
任何事(物) 8

army [ˈɑːmi] *n.* 军队
join the army 参军 4

arrive [əˈraiv] *vi.*
到达,抵达某地 9

as [æz, əz] *conj.*
当……的时候 3

as soon as ——……就…… 4

ask for 请求;询问;向……要 9

Australia [ɔsˈtreiljə] *n.*
澳大利亚 10

Australian [ɔsˈtreiljən]
adj. 澳大利亚的;澳大利亚人的 *n.* 澳大利亚人 10

B

back [bæk] *n.* 背部;背脊 2

bank [bæŋk] *n.*
(河、海、湖的)岸,堤 2
n. 银行 12
basket ['bɑ:skit] *n.*
篮子,篓子 1
be seated 就坐;坐下 9
be strict with ...
对……要求严格 4
because [bi'kɔz] *conj.*
因为 4
believe [bi'li:v] *vt.* & *vi.*
相信;认为 10
bell [bel] *n.* 铃,钟 4
Black [blæk] (姓)布莱克 4
Boston ['bɔstən] *n.*
波士顿(美国城市) 13
break [breik] *n.* (课间、工间)休息时间,暂停;中断
(broke[brəuk], broken ['brəukən]) *vt.* 打破 5
bright [brait] *adj.*
聪明的,伶俐的 6
Brown [braun] (姓)布朗 8
by [bai] *prep.*
不迟于;到……时为止 8

C

catch(caught[kɔ:t],caught)
vt. 捉,抓住
vi. 接住,抓住 2
change [tʃeindʒ] *vt.* & *vi.*
改换;改变
n. 变化 1
check [tʃek] *vt.* & *n.*
检查;核对 6
Christmas ['krisməs] *n.*
圣诞节 10
circle ['sə:kl] *vt.*
环绕,盘旋
n. 圆 12
city ['siti] *n.* 城市 10
clever ['klevə] *adj.*
机灵的,聪明的 3
click [klik] *n.* 卡嗒声
vi. 发出卡嗒声 6
collect [kə'lekt] *vt.*
收集;搜集
vi. 聚集 10
college ['kɔlidʒ] *n.*
(综合大学中的)学院,高等专科学校
go to college 上大学 4

come in 进来 4

common ['kɔmən] *adj.*
普通的，一般的 8

concert ['kɔnsət] *n.*
音乐会；演奏会 9

conductor [kən'dʌktə] *n.*
(汽、电车上的)售票员；
(火车上的)列车员 6

cook [kuk] *vi.* 烹调，煮，烧
n. 厨师，炊事员
do some cooking
做饭(菜) 2

copy ['kɔpi] *vt.* 抄写，誊写
n. 抄本，副本；(书报等的)
一本，一份，一册 2

corner ['kɔ:nə] *n.* 角；
(街道)拐角；角落
at a street corner
在街道拐角 1

cough [kɔf] *vi.* & *n.*
咳嗽 8

crocodile ['krɔkədail] *n.*
鳄鱼 2

crossing ['krɔsiŋ] *n.*
交叉(点)；十字路口 1

D

danger ['deindʒə] *n.* 危险 6

dare [dɛə] *v. aux.*
敢；敢于 5

daytime 白天，白昼
in the daytime
在白天，在白昼 12

dear [diə] *interj.* 哎呀
(表示焦急、惊奇、伤心等) 1

decide [di'said] *vi.* & *vt.*
下决心；决定 4

deed [di:d] *n.* 行为；事迹
do a good deed
做一件好事 5

dictionary ['dikʃənri] *n.*
词典，字典 8

die [dai] *vi.* 死 8

dinner ['dinə] *n.*
正餐；宴会 9

disappointed [ˌdisə'pointid]
adj. 失望的 4

do wrong 做错事；做坏事 11

downstairs ['daun'stɛəz]
adv. 在楼下；到楼下 9

E

east [i:st] *n.* 东,东方
adj. 东方的
adv. 在东方,向东方 1
either ['aiðə] *adv.* (用于否定句或否定词组后加强语气)也
pron. 两者之一
adj. 任何一个 1
end [end] *n.* 末梢;终点
vt. & *vi.* 结束,终止
at the end of 在……末梢,到……的尽头 1
England ['iŋgland] *n.*
英格兰;(泛指)英国 11
enjoy [in'dʒɔi] *vt.*
喜欢;享受……的乐趣 6
enjoy oneself 过得快乐 13
enough [i'nʌf] *adj.*
足够的,充分的
adv. 足够地,充分地
n. 足够,充分 8
Europe ['juərəp] *n.* 欧洲 6
Evans ['evənz] (姓)埃文斯(伊文思) 13
even ['i:vən] *adv.*
甚至;即使 4
evening ['i:vniŋ] *n.*
(联欢性的)晚会;晚上娱乐时间
an English evening
英语晚会 1
ever ['evə] *adv.* 曾经 8
excuse [iks'kju:s] *n.*
藉口;托辞 5
explain [iks'plein]
vt. & *vi.* 解释,说明 5

F

fact [fækt] *n.* 事实;实际
in fact 实际上 8
fall [fɔ:l] (fell, fallen ['fɔ:lən]) *n.* & *vi.*
落下;跌倒 10
famous ['feiməs] *adj.*
著名的 9
farm [fɑ:m] *n.* 农场 8
farther ['fɑ:ðə] *adv.* & *adj.*
(far 的比较级)较远;更远 12
feel [fi:l] (felt, felt)
vi. 感觉 8
fever ['fi:və] *n.* 发烧 8

few [fju:] *adj.*
少数的，不多的
n. (表示否定)很少数，几乎没有 6
field [fi:ld] *n.* 领域 12
finally ['fainəli] *adv.*
最后，末了 11
find out 找出，发现，查出(真相等) 11
food [fu:d] *n.* 食物 2
foolish ['fu:liʃ] *adj.*
愚蠢的，傻的，笨的 6

G

game [geim] *n.*
游戏，运动，比赛 8
German ['dʒə:mən] *adj.*
德国的；德国人的；德语的
n. 德国人，德语 11
get into 进入 13
get off 下来，从……下去 6
get on 上车 6
get out 离开；出去 13
get to know 认识 10
give a concert
举行音乐会 11
give lessons to 给……上课 11
go ahead with 继续进行 11
go down 下去；(船等)下沉 3
go over 过一遍，复习 1
grandfather ['grænd,fɑ:ðə]
n. 祖父，外祖父 4
grandmother ['grænd,mʌðə]
n. 祖母，外祖母 4
ground [graund] *n.* 地面 4
guest [gest] *n.* 客人 9

H

hang [hæŋ] (hung [hʌŋ], hung) *vi.* & *vt.* 吊着；悬挂 3
have a good laugh over ...
对……笑了一个够 10
headache ['hedeik] *n.*
头痛 8
headmaster ['hed'mɑ:stə]
n. (英)中小学校长 5
heart [hɑ:t] *n.* 心(脏) 2
here and there 到处，处处 13
hit [hit] (hit, hit) *vt.*
打；击中；撞 13
hole [həul] *n.* 洞，坑，孔 13
Hungarian [hʌŋ'gɛəriən]
adj. 匈牙利的；匈牙利人

的；匈牙利语的

n. 匈牙利人；匈牙利语 11

husband ['hʌzbənd] *n.*

丈夫 1

I

ice [ais] *n.* 冰 10

iceberg ['aisbə:g] *n.*

冰山 13

idea [ai'diə] *n.*

主意，念头，思想 2

impossible [im'pɔsəbl]

adj. 不可能的 9

in the middle of

在……当中 3

inside ['in'said] *prep.*

在……的里面，在……之内

adv. 在里面，在内部 13

instead [in'sted] *adv.*

代替，顶替 4

invite [in'vait] *vt.*

邀请，招待 9

J

Jenny ['dʒeni] (女名)詹妮 2

join [dʒɔin] *vt.* 加入

join the army 参军 4

just now 刚才，不久以前 3

K

keep back

保留；阻止……向前 5

knock [nɔk] *vi.* 敲；击，打

knock at 敲(门，窗等) 3

L

language ['læŋgwidʒ] *n.*

语言 10

league [li:g] *n.* 联盟

League member 团员 11

lie [lai] (lay [lei], lain [lein]) *vi.* 平躺；(物件)在某处 4

life [laif] *n.* 生命，生活

(*pl.* lives [laivz]) 6

lifeboat ['laifbəut] *n.*

救生艇 13

living ['liviŋ] *n.*

生活；谋生

make a living

谋生，度日 11

lose [lu:z] (lost, lost)

vt. & *vi.* 失去，丢失 5

lots of = a lot of 2

M

make friends 交朋友 10
make repairs 修补 5
man-made ['mæn'meid]
adj. 人造的;人工的 12
marry ['mæri] *vt.* 结婚
be married 已婚 13
matter ['mætə] *n.*
事情;问题
the matter 麻烦事,毛病 1
maybe ['meibi:] *adv.*
或许,大概 1
meal [mi:l] *n.* (一)餐,
(一顿)饭食 2
mean [mi:n](meant[ment],
meant) *vt.* 意思是…… 12
medicine ['medsin] *n.*
(内服)药 8
meeting-room ['mi:tiŋrum]
n. 会议室 1
member ['membə] *n.* 成员
League member 团员 11
metre ['mi:tə] *n.* 公尺,米 6
million ['miljən] *num.* &
n. 百万;百万个(人或物)
millions of 成百万的;许许
多多的 12
mind [maind] *vi.* 介意
vt. 注意;当心 1
Miss [mis] *n.* 女士,小姐
(对未婚妇女的称呼) 4
musician [mju(:)'ziʃən]
n. 音乐家;作曲家 6

N

neighbour ['neibə] *n.*
邻居;邻人 12
never ['nevə] *adv.*
从来没有;决不 11
north [nɔ:θ] *n.* 北部,北方
adj. 北部的,北方的
adv. 在北部,在北方 10
not only ... but also ...
不但……而且…… 12
note [nəut] *n.* 便条,短笺 5

O

off [ɔf] *prep.* & *adv.*
(离)开,(走)开
jump off 跳离 3
on a farm 在农场 10
on one's way to
往……去的路上 1

on time 按时，准时 4
onto ['ɔntu] *prep.*
到……上面 2
open ['əupən] *adj.*
开着的；开放的 5
or so 大约……，……上下 12
over ['əuvə] *adv.*
结束，完了 4
adv. & *prep.* (表示数目、程度)在……以上，超过 10

P

party ['pɑ:ti] *n.*
政党，党派；聚会 1
photo ['fəutəu] *n.* 相片 8
pianist ['piənist] *n.*
钢琴家 11
piano [pi'ænəu] *n.* 钢琴 9
pick [pik] *vt.* & *vi.*
掘；摘；挑选；扒窃
pick up 拾起 3
piece [pi:s] *n.*
(文艺作品的)篇，首 6
place [pleis] *n.*
地方，地点，位置 10
planet ['plænit] *n.* 行星 12
play [plei] *n.*
戏剧，表演；玩耍
TV play 电视剧 4
pleasant ['pleznt] *adj.*
令人愉快的，舒适的 13
pleased [pli:zd] *adj.*
高兴的
be pleased 高兴 9
polite [pə'lait] *adj.*
有礼貌的 9
pool [pu:l] *n.* 小池；水塘
swimming pool 游泳池 5
poor [puə] *adj.* 可怜的；贫穷的；不好的 13
post [pəust] *vt.* 投寄，邮寄
n. 邮政；邮局 8
post office ['pəust,ofis]
n. 邮政局 12
poster ['pəustə] *n.*
海报，招贴 11
prepare [pri'pɛə] *vt.* & *vi.*
准备；预备 3
programme ['prəugræm]
n. 节目 12
pupil ['pju:pl] *n.*
小学生；学生 11
put one's heart into ...

全神贯注于……之中 11

Q

quick [kwik] *adj.*
快的，迅速的 4

quiet ['kwaiət] *adj.*
安静的，平静的

quietly ['kwaiətli] *adv.*
安静地，平静地 6

quilt [kwilt] *n.* 被子 10

quite a few
相当多；颇有几个 10

R

rail [reil] *n.*
铁轨；轨道；铁路 6

reading-room ['ri:diŋrum]
n. 阅览室 12

real [riəl] *adj.* 真的 10

really ['riəli] *adv.*
确实，真正地 11

receive [ri'si:v] *vt.*
收到，接到 12

repair [ri'pɛə] *n.* 修补
make repairs 修补 5

report [ri'pɔ:t] *vt.*, *vi.*
& *n.* 报告，汇报 5

research [ri'sə:tʃ] *n.*
调查；研究 12

rich [ritʃ] *adj.* 有钱的，
富裕的；丰富的 9

ring [riŋ] (rang [ræŋ],
rung [rʌŋ]) *vi.* & *vt.*
(钟、铃等)响；摇铃 4

road [rəud] *n.* 路；公路
the end of the road
路之终点 1

room [rum] *n.*
地位，空间；余地 13

S

same [seim] *adj.* 同一的
pron. 同样的事 2

satellite ['sætəlait] *n.*
卫星 12

save [seiv] *vt.* 救，挽救 6

send [send] (sent, sent)
vt. 送；派遣；发射 10

send up 把……往上送；
发射 12

serious ['siəriəs] *adj.*
严重的，严肃的 8

servant ['sə:vənt] *n.*
仆人，佣人 9

set [set] (set, set) *vi.*
(日,月)落,下沉
vt. 放;安置
set off 出发,动身 13
several ['sevrəl] *adj.* &
pron. 几个,数个(至少三个) 9
sew [səu] (sewed[səud], sewn [səun]) *vi.* 缝纫
vt. 缝制,缝补 2
shall [ʃæl, ʃəl] *v. aux.*
(我,我们)将要
shan't [ʃɑ:nt] = shall not 1
shortcoming [ʃɔ:t'kʌmiŋ]
n. 缺点;短处 4
shy [ʃai] *adj.* 害羞的 11
sick [sik] *adj.*
患病的;恶心的 8
side [said] *n.* 边;面
on the other side of ...
在(河的)对岸;在……的另一面 2
since [sins] *conj.*, *prep.* & *adv.* 从……以来;自从
ever since
从那时起一直到现在 8
singer ['siŋə] *n.* 歌唱家 9
sitting-room ['sitiŋrum]
n. 起居室 9
sky [skai] *n.* 天空 12
Smith [smiθ] (姓)史密斯 5
so ... that ...
如此……以致…… 10
soldier ['səuldʒə] *n.*
士兵,战士 11
someone ['sʌmwʌn]
pron. 某人,有人 6
sometime ['sʌmtaim]
adv. 在某一时候 1
song [sɔŋ] *n.* 歌曲 9
sound [saund] *vi.* 听起来
n. 音,声音 6
south [sauθ] *n.* 南部,南方
adj. 南部的,南方的
adv. 在南部,在南方 10
space [speis] *n.* 空间;太空
in space 在空间 12
stamp [stæmp] *n.* 邮票 10
star [stɑ:] *n.* 星 12
stone [stəun] *n.* 石头 3
suddenly ['sʌdnli] *adv.*
突然地 2
surprise [sə'praiz] *n.*

惊奇,诧异
in surprise 惊奇地 9

T

tail [teil] *n.* 尾巴;尾部 3
take one's place 坐某人的座位;代替某人的职务 13
take photos 照相,拍照 9
talk about 谈到;谈论 1
tear [tiə] *n.*
(常用复数)眼泪,泪珠 5
temperature ['temprit∫ə] *n.* 温度
take one's temperature 量体温 8
terrible ['terəbl] *adj.*
可怕的;感到极不舒服的 8
test [test] *n.* & *vt.*
测验,考查,试验
have a test
进行测验(考查,试验) 1
thankful ['θæŋkful] *adj.*
感激的,感谢的 13
these days 现在,如今 8
thousands of 成千上万的 12
too ... to ...
太……而不能…… 12
town [taun] *n.* 市镇,城镇 6
train [trein] *n.* 火车
by train 乘火车 6
travel ['trævl] *vi.* & *n.*
旅行 10
trip [trip] *n.* 旅行;旅程 13
trouble ['trʌbl] *n.* 疾病;困难;麻烦;烦恼
vt. 麻烦;使烦恼 8
true [tru:] *adj.*
真的;真实的 9
truly ['tru:li] *adv.*
真正地;真实地 11
turn in 交出,上交 4
twice [twais] *adv.*
两次;两倍 9

U

uncle ['ʌŋkl] *n.* 叔,伯,舅,姨父,姑父 10
unfair ['ʌn'fɛə] *adj.*
不公平的 4
universe ['ju:nivə:s] *n.*
宇宙 12
unknown ['ʌn'nəun] *adj.*
不为人所知的;不出名的 11

V

village ['vilidʒ] *n.*
村庄,乡村 6

voice [vɔis] *n.*
说话声,嗓音 3

W

wallet ['wɔlit] *n.*
钱夹;皮夹 4

watch *n.* 看守,守卫
on watch 守望;值班 13

west [west] *n.* 西部,西方
adj. 西部的,西方的
adv. 在西部,在西方 10

wet [wet] *adj.* 湿的 3

White [wait] (姓)怀特 4

without [wi'ðaut] *prep.*
无,没有;不 3

wonder ['wʌndə] *vt.* &
vi. 对……感到疑惑,
想知道 4

wonderful ['wʌndəful]
adj. 极好的,精彩的 10

wonderfully ['wʌndəfuli]
adv. 极好地,精彩地 11

worse [wə:s] *adj.* (bad
的比较级)更坏的,更差的 8

Irregular Verbs

Infinitive	Past Tense	Past Participle
be {am, is, are}	was, were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break [breik]	broke	broken ['brəukən]
bring	brought [brɔ:t]	brought
buy [bai]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought
catch	caught [kɔ:t]	caught
come	came	come
dig	dug [dʌg]	dug [dʌg]
do	did	done [dʌn]
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]
eat	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tn]
fall	fell	fallen ['fɔ:lən]
feel	felt	felt
find [faind]	found [faund]	found
fly [flai]	flew [flu:]	flown [fləun]
forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɔt]	forgotten [fə'gɔtn]
get	got	got
give [giv]	gave	given ['givn]

go	went	gone [gɔn]
grow [grəu]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəun]
hang	hung	hung
have (has)	had	had
hear [hiə]	heard [hə:d]	heard
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
keep	kept	kept
know [nəu]	knew [nju:]	known [nəun]
learn	learned	learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie [lai]	lay [lei]	lain [lein]
lose [lu:z]	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant [ment]	meant
put	put	put
read	read [red]	read [red]
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said [sed]	said
see	saw [so:]	seen
send	sent	sent
set	set	set

sew [səu]	sewed [səud]	sewn [səun]
shine	shone [ʃɔn]	shone [ʃɔn]
show [ʃəu]	showed [ʃəud]	shown [ʃəun]
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelt	smelt
speak	spoke	spoken ['spəukən]
stand	stood	stood
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken ['teikən]
teach	taught [tɔ:t]	taught
tell	told [təuld]	told
think	thought [θɔ:t]	thought
throw	threw [θru:]	thrown [θrəun]
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken ['wəukən]
write [rait]	wrote [rəut]	written ['ritn]

Supplementary Readings

I. Standing Room Only

Look at your watch for just one minute. During that time, 239 babies were born in the world.[1] Perhaps you think that isn't much. In the next hour, over 14,000 more babies will be born on the earth. So it goes, hour after hour. In one day people have to feed about 340,000 mouths more. Just think how many more there will be in one year! What will happen in a hundred years?

The population problem may be the greatest one of the world today. Two thousand years ago, there were only 250 million people on the earth. Four hundred years ago, the figure was over 500 million. By the beginning of this century, however, the world's population was

① 根据美国人口咨询社 1981年资料推算。

about 1,700 million. In 1970, this figure was over 3,600 million. People say that by the year 2,000, it may be 8,000 million. According to a UN report, in about 600 years there will be standing room only on the earth.

during ['djuəriŋ] *prep.*
在……期间

So it goes hour after hour.
就这样一个钟头接一个钟头地进行下去。

feed *vt.* 喂养

happen ['hæpən] *vi.* 发生

population [ˌpɔpju'leiʃən] *n.*
人口

figure ['figə] *n.* 数字

by the beginning of ... 到……之初

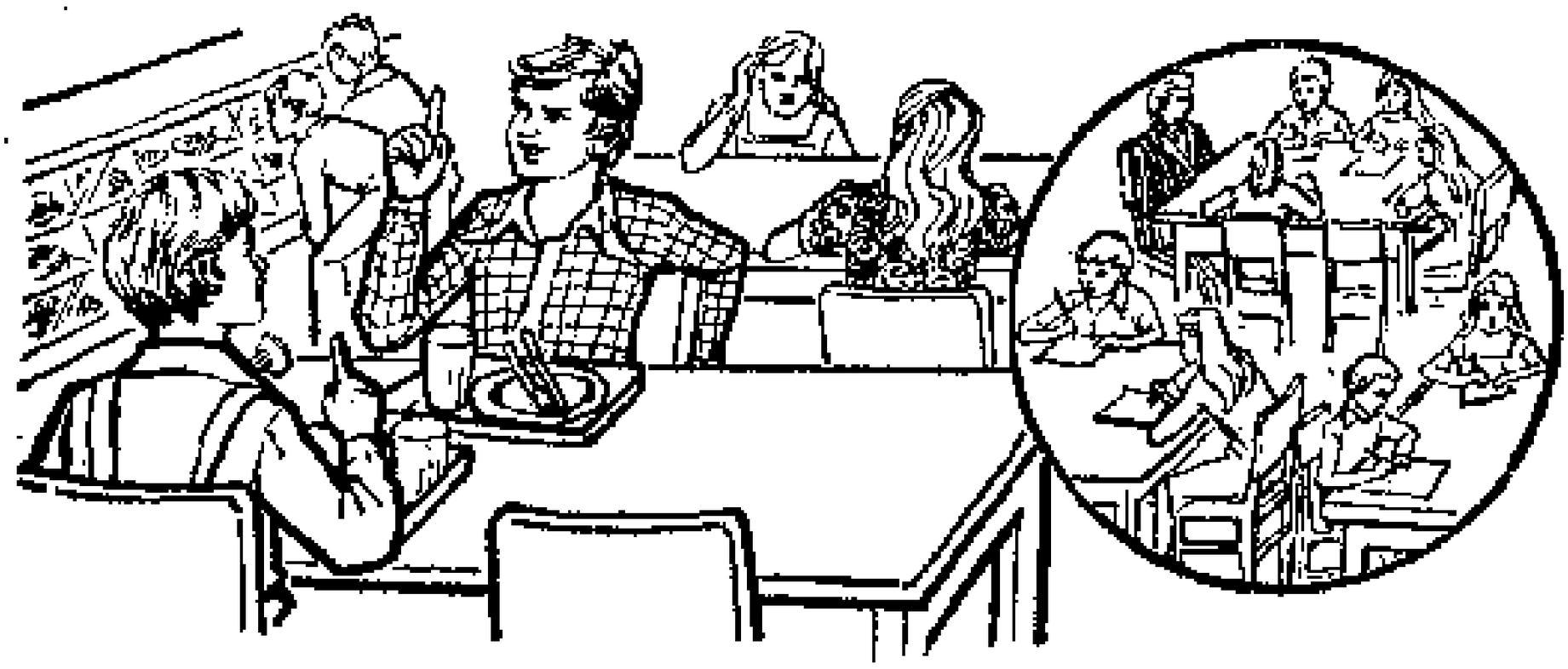
century ['sentʃuri] *n.* 世纪

however [hau'evə] *adv.* 然而

according [ə'kɔ:diŋ] to
根据……所说

UN (United Nations)
[ju:'naitid 'neiʃənz] 联合国

2. "What a Fool I Was!"



On April 1, Mike decided to play a joke on his friends. At lunch-time he said to Tom, "I think we're going to have a science test this afternoon."

"A test?" said Tom. "Really?"

"Yes, it's quite true," said Mike. "When I was passing by Mr Hill's room, he was talking with another teacher about a test. I think there will be a science test this afternoon. Tell Paul and Kathy about it."

Later, Tom told Paul and Kathy about the test. Soon, almost all the students in Mr Hill's science class knew about it. They quickly went into the classroom and began to study.

But not Mike. He was laughing to himself at his classmates. "What fools!" he thought. "April fools."

When class began, Mr Hill said to the students, "Class, we're going to have a test today."

Mike was surprised. He could not believe his ears. When Mr Hill handed out the papers, the students began to write. But not Mike. He had to think and think and think. As soon as class was over, the students gathered

around Mike. All of them were very grateful to him. But he could only smile. "What a fool I was!" he thought.

It really was April Fools' Day for Mike.

fool *n.* 蠢人，傻子
joke *n.* 玩笑
play a joke on somebody 开某人的玩笑
pass by 经过
Hill（姓）希尔
Paul [pɔ:l]（男名）保罗
Kathy ['kæθi]（女名）凯茜
almost ['ɔ:lməust] *adv.* 几乎，差不多
April fool 愚人节中的受愚弄者
hand out 散发；把……拿出来
gather ['gæðə] *vi.* 聚集
grateful ['greitful] *adj.* 感激的
be grateful to somebody 感谢某人
April Fools' Day 愚人节（根据西方习俗，四月一日叫愚人节，在这一天，可以说谎愚弄人。）

3. Dolphin Language

One day Mr Green, the science teacher, asked his class, "What do you want to be when you grow up?"

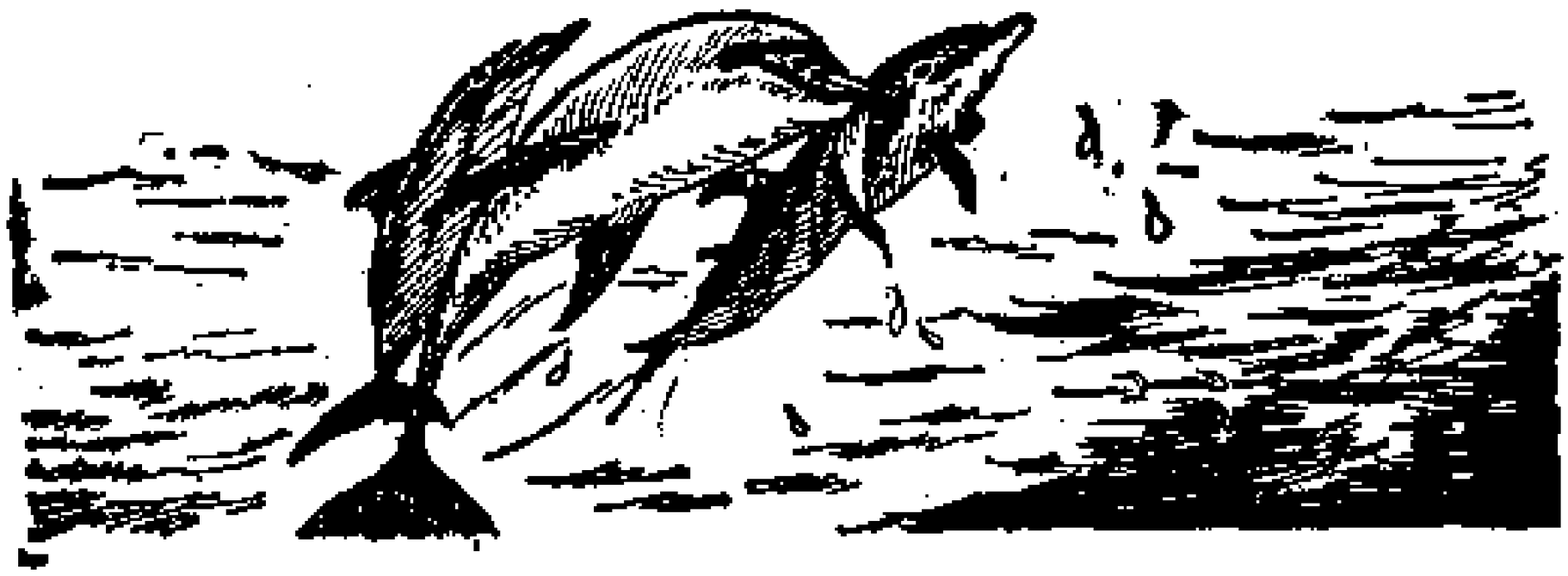
"I want to be a dolphin trainer like my uncle, "Mike answered.

"Why do you want to be a dolphin trainer?" asked Mr Green.

"Because I'm interested in dolphin language."

"Dolphin language? Tell us more."

"All right," answered Mike. "My uncle tells me that dolphins are very clever. One day my uncle saw a sick dolphin in the pool. It couldn't come up for air. So it whistled to the other dolphins for help. They came to their friend and made some strange sounds. They looked sad. Then together they pushed the sick dolphin's head up above the water. Soon it got well."



Mike went on with his story.

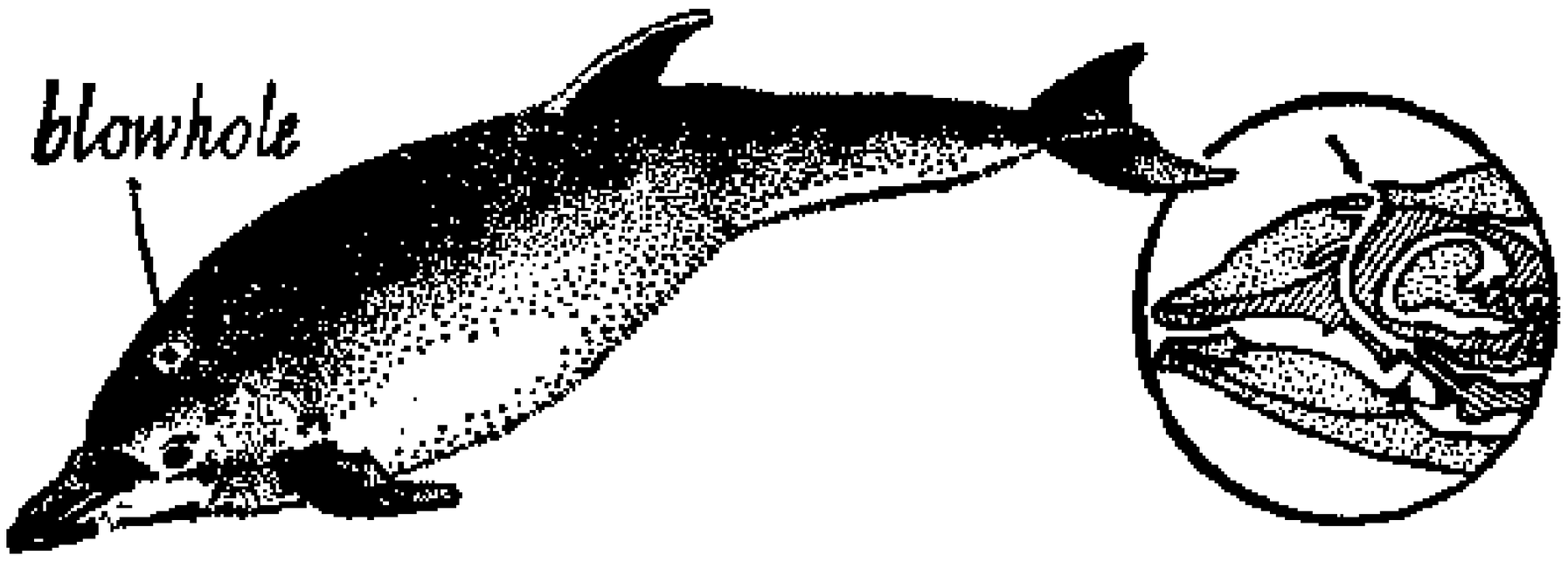
"Some scientists once said to my uncle, 'If you live with a dolphin and talk to it all day, maybe you can teach it some words.' My uncle decided to do that. He lived with a dolphin. The dolphin loved to play ball so he decided to teach the word 'ball' first. He threw a ball to the dolphin and said the word 'ball' many times. Soon the dolphin started to say the word."

When Mike finished, John asked, "Can dolphins learn to speak Chinese, too?"

Mike said, "I think so. They're like children. Children learn their first words in the language of their parents. Maybe a Chinese can teach a dolphin its first words in Chinese."

Kate asked, "How do they make sounds?"

Mike didn't know.



"They make sounds through blowholes in their heads," said Mr Green. "Scientists know a little about dolphin language, but they have a lot more to learn."

"That's why I want to be a dolphin trainer," said Mike.

dolphin ['dɔlfin] *n.* 海豚

trainer ['treinə] *n.* 训练者

a dolphin trainer 训练海豚的人

interested ['intristid] *adj.* 感兴趣的

be interested in 对……感兴趣

come up for air 游上来吸取空气

whistle ['wisl] *vi.* (兽)啸叫

strange [streindʒ] *adj.* 奇怪的

sad [sæd] *adj.* 忧愁的

push [puʃ] ... up 把……向上推

live with 与……生活在一起

throw ... to ... 把……扔给……

make sounds 发出声音

blowhole ['bləuhəul] *n.* (海豚,鲸鱼等的)鼻孔

4. The Arab and the Camel

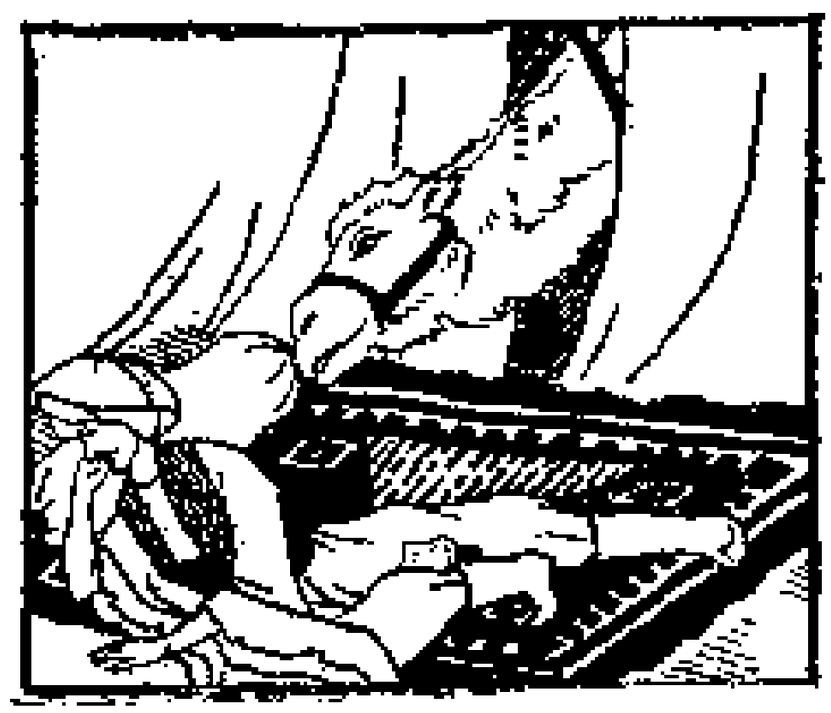
Once an Arab was travelling on his camel. When the sun started to go down, he stopped and set up his tent. Then he made a fire, ate his meal and lay down to sleep.

Suddenly it began to blow. It became colder and colder. The camel put his head inside the tent. "Master, could you let me put my head in the tent? It's so cold outside."

The Arab was a kind man. "Why, yes," he said. "Put your head in and get warm."

Then he went back to sleep. But before long, the camel woke him. "My head is quite warm now, but my neck is cold. Could I bring it inside, too?"

"All right," the Arab said. And the camel put his neck in.



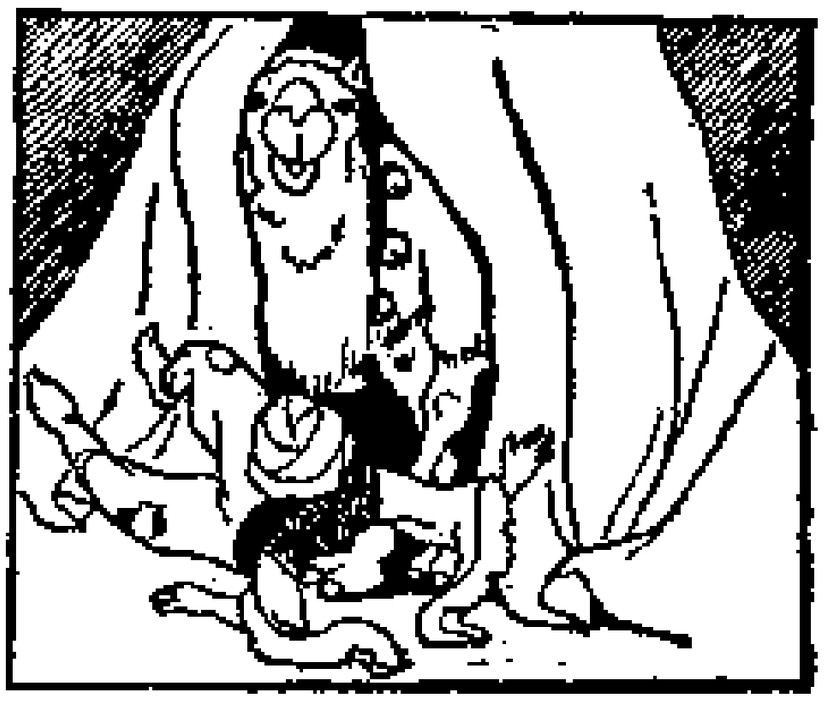
There wasn't much room in the tent now, as the camel had a long neck.

Again the Arab went back

to sleep, but again the camel woke him up. "Master, I really must ask you to move over a bit. I've warmed my head and neck, but I'd like to bring my front legs inside and warm them up, too."

The Arab moved over. He had to sit up now, for there wasn't enough room for him to lie down and sleep.

"What next?" he wondered. Just then the camel said: "This tent is really too small for both of us. Besides, my other two legs are still out in the cold. Why don't you go out and leave the tent to me?"



And with that, the camel kicked the poor man out.

Give a greedy person an inch and he will take a foot.

Arab ['ærəb] *n.* 阿拉伯人
Arabian [ə'reibjən] *adj.* 阿拉伯的，阿拉伯人的
camel ['kæməl] *n.* 骆驼
set up 搭起……
tent *n.* 帐篷
lie down 躺下
blow [bləu] (blew[blu:], blown [bləun]) *vi.* & *vt.* (风)吹
master ['mɑ:stə] *n.* (男)主人
outside ['aut'said] *adv.* & *prep.* 在外面；在……外
kind [kaind] *adj.* 仁慈的；和蔼的
put in 把……放进来

neck *n.* 颈,脖子
as *conj.* 由于,因为
move over 挪过去
warm [wɔ:m] *vt.* (使)暖和
warm ... up 使……暖和
sit up 坐起来
What next? 下一步会怎么样呢?
besides [bi'saidz] *adv.* 而且
kick *vt.* 踢
kick ... out 把……踢出去
greedy ['gri:di] *adj.* 贪婪的
person ['pə:sn] *n.* 人
inch *n.* 英寸
foot *n.* 英尺

(京)新登字 113 号

初级中学课本

英　语

第四册

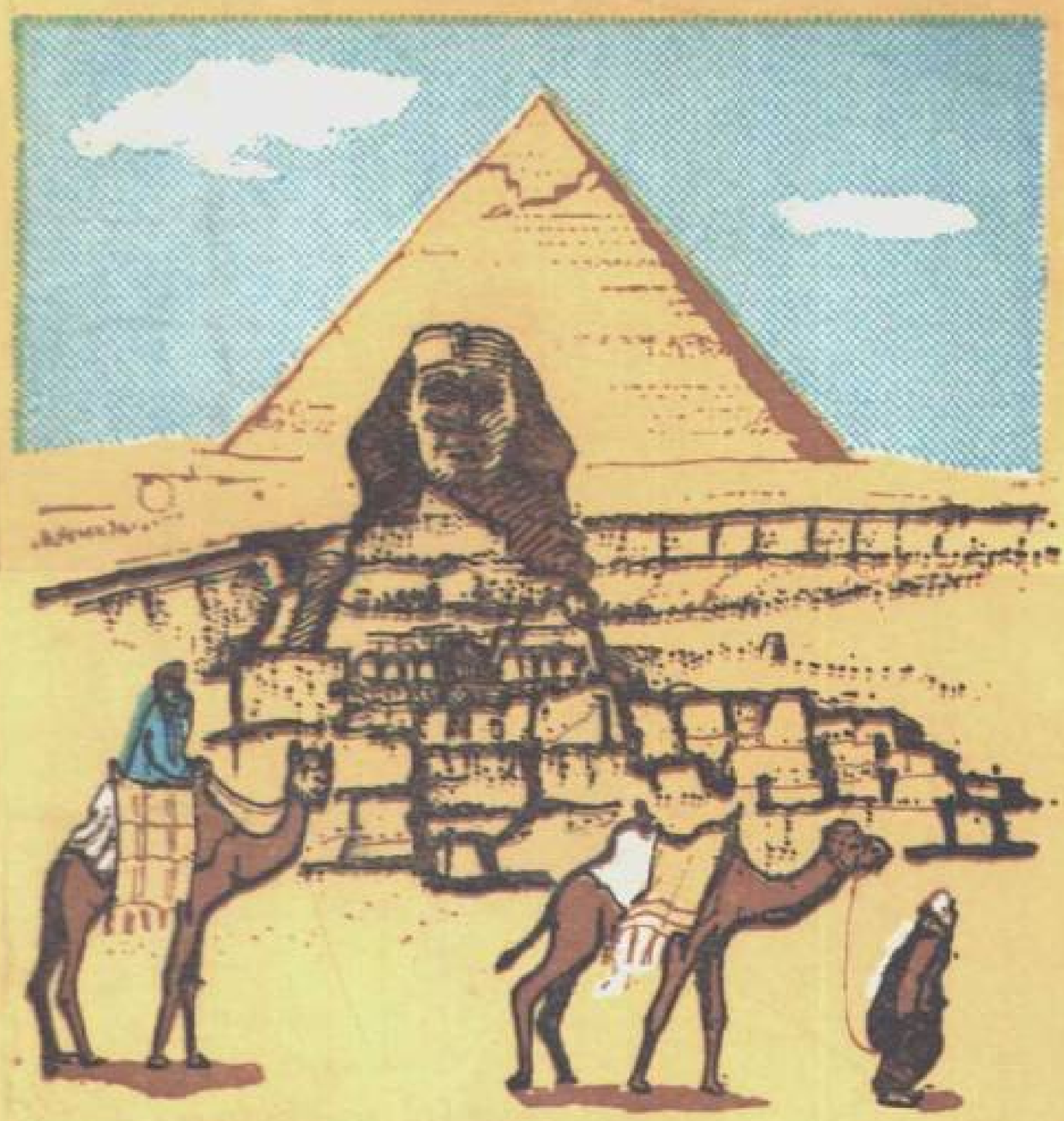
人民教育出版社外语室英语组编订

*

人民教育出版社出版
北京出版社重印
北京市新华书店发行
北京印刷一厂印刷

*

787×1092毫米　32开本　印张5.25　插页1　字数110,000
1983年5月第1版　1992年1月第9次印刷
印数 1—109000
ISBN 7-107-00119-1
G·176(课)　定价 1.10 元



初级中学课本

英语

第五册

English

5

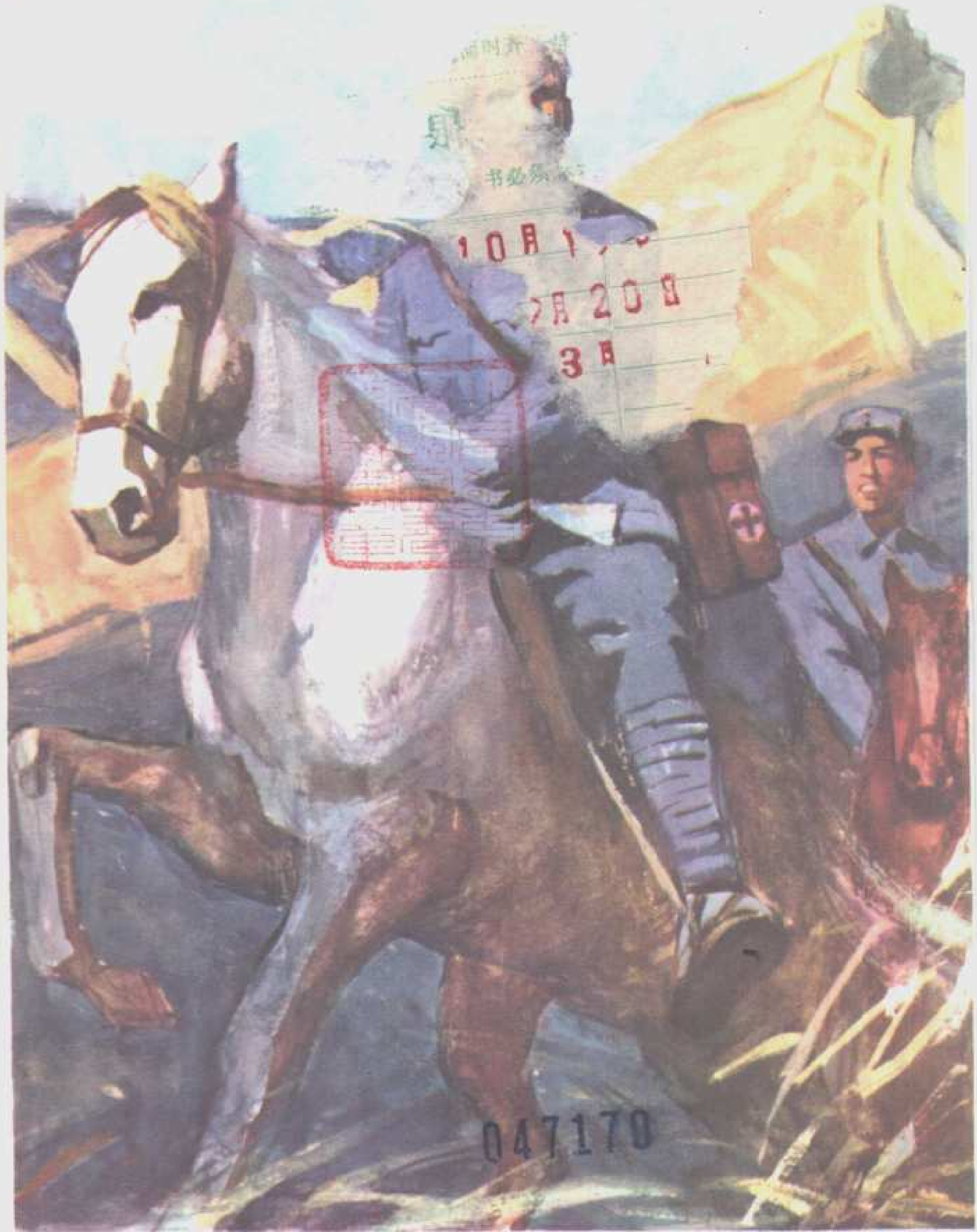
人民教育出版社

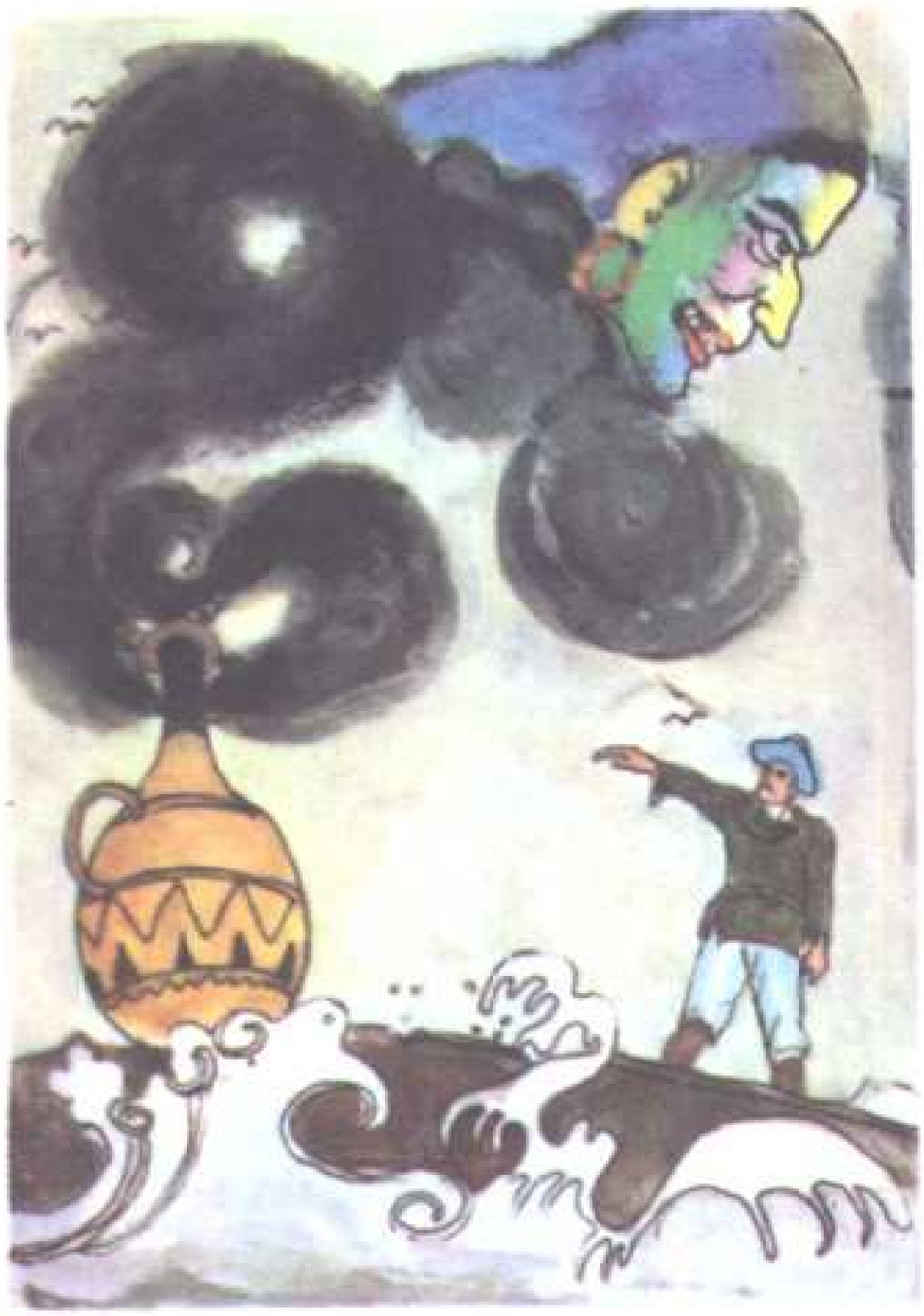
说　　明

初级中学课本英语是以《全日制十年制初中课本(试用本)英语》为基础，参考各地教师在试用期间提出的意见编订而成的。

本册由刘道义、司延亭编订。

北京外国语学院邓炎昌教授审订。


10月1
7月20日
3日
047170



CONTENTS

Lesson 1 1

Drills: 1. I hear he'll be back in a month.

2. She said she was much better than before.

3. Do you know who (whom) they're waiting for?

Text: Why the Bat Comes Out Only at Night

Lesson 2 13

Drills: 1. He asked who could answer the question.

2. Can you tell me where the No. 3 bus stop is?

3. Could you tell us if (whether) it snows in winter in Australia?

Text: Nathan Hale

Grammar: The Object Clause

Lesson 3 29

Drills: 1. He asked if (whether) Mr Howe had come back.

2. The lights had already gone out when I got to the cinema.

Text: A Question of Pronunciation

Lesson 4 40

Drills: 1. How many English songs had you

learned by the end of last term?
2. How long had Comrade Wu lived in the south before he came here?
3. I didn't give the chemistry book to Wei Fang because she had already bought a copy for herself.
Text: The Arab in the Desert
Grammar: The Past Perfect Tense
Lesson 5 ……54
Text: The Seagulls of Salt Lake City
Lesson 6 (Revision) ……64
Lesson 7 ……71
Drills: 1. She said she was going to prepare for her trip.
2. She said they would go there by air.
Text: The Pyramids
Grammar: The Future-in-the-Past Tense
Lesson 8 ……84
Drills: 1. Mr Smith said that John was a good worker.
2. Bob's wife told him that he had forgotten his wallet that morning.
3. John told Bob that he hadn't seen his wallet.
Text: Once a Thief, Always a Thief?
Grammar: Direct Speech and Indirect Speech (I)

Lesson 9 ·····99
Drills: 1. He asked if our party was going to start at 7 o'clock.
2. He asked what size dress you wore.
Text: Edison's Boyhood
Grammar: Direct Speech and Indirect Speech (II)
Lesson 10 ·····113
Drills: 1. She told us to speak a little louder.
2. Granny told you not to be late for school.
Text: Dr Bethune
Grammar: Direct Speech and Indirect Speech (III)
Lesson 11 ·····128
Text: The Fisherman and the Genie
Lesson 12 (Revision) ·····140
Vocabulary ·····151
Supplementary Readings: 1. Ben's Paddles ·····163
2. The Pot of Gold ·····166
3. The Broken Lantern (1) ·····169
4. The Broken Lantern (2) ·····172
5. The "Lady with the Lamp" ·····175

LESSON ONE

The First Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: Where's Mr Evans?

B: He's gone to Washington.

A: When will he be back, do you know?

B: I [hear / think / believe] he'll be back in a month.

2

A: Have you heard from Joan recently?

B: Yes. She wrote to me only yesterday.

A: What did she say?

B: She said [she was much better than before. / she hoped to be back soon. / she missed us very much.]

3

A: They're | waiting for somebody, / looking for something, / talking about a film, | aren't they?

B: Yes, they are.

A: Do you know | who (whom) they're waiting for? / what they're looking for? / which film they're talking about? |

B: Sorry, I don't.

TEXT

WHY THE BAT COMES OUT ONLY AT NIGHT

Long, long ago, there was a war between the birds and the beasts. No one knows what they fought about.

The bat did not know whose side he should take. He thought and thought, then decided he must try to be on the side of the winners.

So he watched from far away. After a while, it seemed that the birds were going to win. He flew over to join them.

"What on earth are you doing here?" a bird shouted at him.

"Can't you see I'm a bird?" the bat said with a smile. "Look, I have wings, just like you."

"Come along, then," said the bird. "Don't hide behind others."

But things changed soon. Now it seemed that the beasts were winning. So the bat left the birds in a hurry and went over to the beasts.

"What are you doing on our side?" an animal called out to him. "Are you spying on

us?"

"Don't you know I'm one of you?" asked the bat, showing his teeth. "Look. Can't you see I've got teeth, too?"

"Who are you trying to fool?" said the animals. "We saw you fighting on the side of the birds just now."

So the beasts drove him off. Of course the birds refused to take him back.

When the beasts and the birds saw neither side could win, they decided to stop fighting.

Neither beasts nor birds would have the bat as their friend, so he was afraid to leave his home. Ever since then, he comes out only at night.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

Washington ['wɔʃiŋtən] *n.* 华盛顿(地名或人名)

hear from 收到……的来信

recently ['ri:sntli] *adv.* 近来

hope *vt.* & *n.* 希望

miss *vt.* 怀念; 错过; 没看到

whom [hu:m, hum] *pron.* 谁(宾格)

* * *

bat *n.* 蝙蝠

war [wɔ:] *n.* 战争

fight(fought [fɔ:t], fought) *vi.* & *vt.* 打仗(架); 与……打仗(架) *n.* 战斗

take (be on) the side of 支持某人(方)

winner ['winə] *n.* 获胜者

seem *vi.* 好象

win (won [wʌn], won)*vi.* 获胜

vt. 赢得

wing *n.* 翅膀

hide (hid, hidden ['hidn]) *vi.* & *vt.* 藏

in a hurry 匆忙

go over 走到另一边去; 改变立场

call out 大声叫唤

spy *vi.* & *vt.* 侦察; 刺探

n. 间谍

spy on 窥探

tooth [tu:θ] *n.* 牙齿

teeth (*pl.*)

fool [fu:l] *vi.* & *vt.* 愚弄, 欺骗

n. 傻子

drive (drove, driven ['drivn]) *vt.* & *vi.* 驱赶; 驾驶(马车、汽车等)

drive off 赶走

refuse [ri'fju:z] *vt.* & *vi.* 拒绝

neither ['naiðə] *adj.* & *pron.* (两者)都不

conj. & *adv.* 也不

nor *conj.* 也不

neither ... nor ... 既不……也不……

as *prep.* 作为

NOTES

1. When will he be back, do you know? 他什么时候回来，你知道吗？

   do you know 是插入语。

2. Do you know who (whom) they're waiting for? 你知道他们在等谁吗？

   who (whom) they're waiting for 这个从句作 know 的宾语，叫宾语从句。whom 在从句中作宾语，口语中常用 who 代替。

* * *

3. After a while, it seemed that the birds were going to win. 过了一会儿，看来鸟儿们好象要赢了。

   It seemed that ... 看起来好象……

   又如：

   It seems that the headmaster will come to our class.

4. "What on earth are you doing here?" "你究竟在这儿干什么？"

   on earth 有"究竟、到底"的意思，用在疑问句中以加强语气。又如：

   What on earth is the matter there? 那里究竟发生了什么事？

5. "Come along, then," said the bird. "那么，就来吧。(意即：我们收下你了。)"鸟儿说。

6. "Don't you know I'm one of you?" asked the bat, showing his teeth. "难道你们不知道我是你们这边的成员?"蝙蝠露出自己的牙齿问道。

showing his teeth 是现在分词短语，作状语，修饰谓语动词 asked，表示伴随动作。

7. Of course the birds refused to take him back. 当然，鸟儿们也不肯再收留他。

8. Neither beasts nor birds would have the bat as their friend, so he was afraid to leave his home. 兽类和鸟群都不愿把蝙蝠当作他们的朋友，因此，蝙蝠害怕离开自己的家。

EXERCISES

1. Put **al, ar, au** or **aw** in the following words, then read them out:

w__	dr__	ch__k	qu__ter
f__l	w__k	w__m	bec__se
t__k	sm__l	__gust	__stralian
c__ght	t__ght	__tumn	d__ghter

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
hear from	say "no" to
just now	not long ago
neither side	a short time ago

recently	become a member of
join	not this side nor the other
refuse	get a letter from

3. Join each pair of sentences, using **neither ... nor:**

Model: He won't go.

I won't go, either. ⟶

Neither he nor I will go.

1) That book isn't interesting.

This one isn't interesting, either.

2) This shirt doesn't fit me.

That one doesn't fit me, either.

3) Jack hasn't seen the film.

I haven't seen it, either.

4) She couldn't answer the question.

He couldn't answer it, either.

5) The birds wouldn't take back the bat.

The beasts wouldn't take him back, either.

4. Answer the following questions twice, first using **already**, then **yet:**

Model: Has the train arrived yet?

Yes, it has already arrived.

No, it hasn't arrived yet.

1) Have you prepared your lessons yet?

2) Has the old woman found her husband yet?

3) Has your brother repaired the radio for you

yet?

4) Have you finished sewing yet?

5) Has she decided yet?

5. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

A. 1) The Hungarian student ___ (stay) in Beijing since he ___ (come) to China.

2) His father ___ (go) to Nanjing. He ___ (leave) early this morning.

3) I ___ (just have) my lunch. I ___ (have) it at school.

4) They ___ (know) each other since they ___ (begin) to work in that factory.

5) My brother ___ (join) the Party in 1979. He ___ (be) in the Party for about five years.

6) We ___ (not hear) from Liu Ying since he ___ (go) to college last autumn.

B. 1) I ___ (see) your aunt when I ___ (walk) in the street.

2) It ___ (rain) hard when I ___ (go) home yesterday afternoon.

3) He ___ (ask) which film they ___ (talk) about.

4) The boy ___ (listen) to the click of the

rails. Suddenly there ___ (be) a break in the singing of the rails.

5) They ___ (say) they ___ (wait) for a bus.

6) When I first ___ (see) him, he ___ (read) a magazine in the library.

6. Join each pair of sentences, using an object clause as in the model:

Model: Who is she writing to? Do you know?⟶

Do you know who she is writing to?

1) Who is he looking after? Do you know?

2) Which bank is she going to? Do you know?

3) How many posters have they put up on that wall? Do you know?

4) Who is your father talking with? Do you know?

5) What do they study German for? Do you know?

6) What are they listening to? Do you know?

7. Fill in the blanks:

1) I hope ___ (他一个星期以后回来).

2) I believe ___ (我们的排球队会赢).

3) I hear ___ (他们很想念我们).

4) The birds said ___ (他们不能收留蝙蝠).

5) The American students said ___ (他们希望访问中国).

6) She said ____ (她感觉好多了).

8. Tick off the correct answer to each of the following questions according to the text:

1) Why couldn't the bat decide which side he should take in the war between the birds and the beasts?

a. Because he didn't know what they were fighting about.

b. Because he was afraid of the war.

c. Because he didn't know which side would win.

2) How did the bat make the birds believe that he was on their side?

a. He said he had wings just like other birds.

b. He said he could sing as well as the birds.

c. He said he could help them fight the beasts.

3) How did the bat try to make the beasts believe that he was one of them?

a. He told them he didn't like the birds.

b. He told them he had teeth.

c. He told them he wanted very much to help them.

4) Neither beasts nor birds would have the bat as a friend. Why?

a. Because he was neither a bird nor a beast.

b. Because he was a spy.

c. Because he had tried to fool both the birds and the beasts.

5) Why does the bat come out only at night?

a. Because he can find something to eat at night.

b. Because he is afraid to leave his home in the daytime.

c. Because he likes to come out at night.

LESSON TWO

The Second Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: What did the teacher ask?

B: He asked

- who could answer the question.
- whose handwriting was the best.
- which exercise was the most difficult.

2

A: Excuse me,
can you tell me

- where the No.3 bus stop is?
- when the train will arrive?
- why the train is late?

B: Certainly.

It's on the other side of the street.
It'll arrive in half an hour.
They're repairing a bridge.

A: Thank you.

B: That's all right.

3

A: May we ask you some questions now, Mr White?

B: Yes, please.

A: Could you tell us if (whether)

it snows in winter in Australia?
there's plenty of rain in your country?
you grow cotton in your country?

B: Yes, I'm coming to that.

TEXT

NATHAN HALE

The young American stood quietly while the British guards searched his clothes. They

found nothing. "If they don't find the maps in my boot," he thought, "maybe they will let me go. Then I'll try to send the maps to General Washington."

"Take off your boots," one of the guards ordered. The American's heart beat faster. He took off his boots and handed them to the guard.

The guard looked inside one boot, then the other.

"Use your knife, man!" ordered the British officer nearby.

The guard brought out his knife and cut one boot open. He stopped suddenly and the American knew what it meant. The maps of the British army's defence works!

The guards took the American to General Howe. The general looked at the maps. "I see you've made some

drawings of our defence works," he said. "This can only mean one thing."

"Yes, sir."

"Do you have anything to say for yourself?"

"No, nothing."

"What's your name?"

"Nathan Hale."

"Rank?"

"Captain."

The general studied the maps a few more minutes. "Captain Hale," he said finally. "I've never seen such fine drawings. You know, we could use a man like you. Why not join us? You won't have to worry about rank or pay."

Nathan Hale looked straight at the general. "Nothing could make me turn against my country!"

"Then there's only one thing I can do, you understand?"

"Yes, sir."

"You will be hanged as a spy early tomor-

row morning."

* * *

Nathan Hale looked around as a British soldier put the rope around his neck.

"Now, Nathan Hale," said the British officer. "Let's hear what you have to say before you die."

Nathan Hale took a last look at his beautiful country and said, "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

bridge [bridʒ] *n.* 桥
if *conj.* 是否
whether ['weðə] *conj.* 是否
plenty ['plenti] *n.* 充足；大量
plenty of 充足的；相当多的
grow [grəu] *vt.* 种植
vi. 渐渐变得
cotton ['kɔtn] *n.* 棉花

* * *

while *conj.* 当……的时候；和……同时；然而
British ['britiʃ] *adj.* 英国的

search [sə:tʃ] *vt.* & *vi.*
搜查;探索
boot [bu:t] *n.* 长统靴
general ['dʒenərəl] *n.* 将军
take off 脱下(衣，帽、鞋等);拿掉
order ['ɔ:də] *vt.* & *n.* 命令
n. 顺序
beat (beat, beaten ['bi:tn]) *vi.* (心脏等)跳动
vi. & *vt.* 敲打
hand *vt.* 传递;交给
officer ['ɔfisə] *n.* 军官
cut (cut, cut) *vt.* 割,砍,切
defence [di'fens] *n.* 防御;保卫
works *n.* 工事;工程
defence works 防御工事
Howe [hau] 豪(姓)
drawing ['drɔ:iŋ] *n.* 图(指素描或工程图样)
rank *n.* 军衔
captain ['kæptin] *n.* 陆军上尉;船长;(足球队等)队长
such [sʌtʃ, sətʃ] *adv.* 那么
adj. 这样(种)的
pron. 这样的人(事物)
pay (paid [peid], paid)
vt. & *vi.* 给……报酬;付款
n. 工资
straight [streit] *adv.* & *adj.* 直地(的)
against [ə'ɡeinst] *prep.* 反对;对着
turn against 背叛
hang (hanged, hanged)
vt. 绞死;吊死
rope *n.* 绳子
neck [nek] *n.* 颈,脖子
take a look 看一看
regret [ri'gret] *vt.*, *vi.* & *n.* 遗憾,抱歉;悔恨

NOTES

1. Could you tell us if (whether) it snows in winter in Australia? 请问，澳大利亚冬天下不下雪？（请告诉我们澳大利亚冬天下不下雪，好吗？）

   在表示请求的问句中，用 could 比用 can 语气委婉一些。

2. Yes, I'm coming to that. 可以，我就要谈到那个问题呢。

   come 在这个句子中有"谈到"的意思。

   go，come 等动词的现在进行时态可用来表示就要发生的动作。

*　　*　　*

3. Nathan Hale ['neiθən 'heil]内森·黑尔(1755—1776)是美国独立战争(1775—1783)中的民族英雄。战争爆发时，黑尔是教师，后来参加军队，当了军官。他志愿到长岛（Long Island）去探听英国军队情报，不幸被捕，处以绞刑。临刑时，他说的那句话，已成为名言，广为传诵。

4. General Washington 指的是 George Washington ['dʒɔːdʒ 'wɔʃiŋtən]（1732—1799），美国独立战争时担任联军总司令。1789—1797 年任美国第一任总统。

5. He stopped suddenly and the American knew what it meant. 他（指卫兵）突然停了下来，这个美国人（指 Nathan Hale）就知道这意味着什么。

6. The maps of the British army's defence works! 英

军防御工事(地)图!

这是一个感叹句。英语中为了表示强烈的感情，一个陈述句，一个词组，甚至一个单词也都可以用作感叹句。如: Great! (好极了!)

7. General Howe 指的是 William Howe['wiljəm 'hau] (1729—1814) 美国独立战争期间，任驻美英军总司令。

8. "Nothing could make me turn against my country!" "什么也不能使我背叛祖国!"

9. "Then there's only one thing I can do, you understand?" "那么，我能做的就只有一件事了，你明白吗?"

句末的 you understand 是以陈述句语序表达的一般疑问句，疑问的意思靠句末的升调来体现。

10. "You will be hanged as a spy early tomorrow morning." "明天清早你将作为一个间谍被绞死。"

11. "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country." "我唯一感到遗憾的是: 我仅有一次生命可以贡献给祖国。"

句中 but = only; 不定式短语 to lose for my country 作定语，修饰名词 life。

GRAMMAR

宾语从句 (The Object Clause)

宾语从句在复合句中作主句的宾语。宾语从句通常由下面一些词引导:

1. 由连词 that 引导 (that 在口语或非正式文体中常常省

略)

1) I hear (*that*) *physics isn't easy.*

2) He said (*that*) *he felt sick.*

3) I think(*that*) *you will like the stamps.*

4) She told people (*that*) *Franz Liszt was her teacher.*

5) Can't you see (*that*) *I'm a bird?*

2. 由连接代词或连接副词引导(这种宾语从句中的主、谓语次序不颠倒)

1) I take back *what I said.*

2) Do you know *which film they're talking about?*

3) I can't tell *who is there.*

4) Do you know *who (whom) they are waiting for?*

5) He asked *whose dictionary this was.*

6) Can you tell me *how I can get to the Summer Palace?*

7) Do you know *how many pictures they've drawn?*

8) Please tell me *when we'll have the meeting.*

9) I don't know *why he hasn't come yet.*

10) Can you tell me *where he is?*

3. 由连词 whether 或 if 引导(口语中常用 if)

1) I want to know *whether (if) he lives there.*

2) He asked me *whether (if) I could help him.*

EXERCISES

1. Put **or**, **ore**, **oor** or **ou** in the following words, then read them out:

sh__t	d__	__der	bef__
fl__	m__	c__ner	rep__t
h__se	n__th	f__ty	t__toise
b__ght	f__ght	br__ght	th__ght

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
plenty of	only
search	perhaps
take a look	feel sorry for
but (*adv.*)	have a look
regret	a lot of
maybe	look carefully to try to find something

3. Fill in each blank with one of the words or phrases given:

A. of, off

1) On the other side ____ the river, there are some banana trees, and they have lots ____bananas on them.

2) It's very hot in the room. You'd better

take ____ your coat.

3) Let's get ____ the bus at the next stop.

4) There's something wrong with one ____ the rails about thirty metres ahead.

5) I dare not jump ____ the truck. It's too high!

6) ____ all the stars the sun is the nearest to the earth.

7) That's very kind ____ you!

8) They drove ____ the fox.

B. when, before, as soon as, if, because, as

1) ____ his father was a child, he could not go to school ____ his family was poor.

2) She would not be able to give a concert ____ people knew she was an unknown young woman.

3) He was late ____ he missed the early bus.

4) Please give him this note ____ he comes back.

5) I must finish reading the book ____ I go to bed.

6) The bat showed his teeth ____ he said, "Look. Can't you see I've got teeth, too?"

4. Complete the following sentences in two ways, using since first, then for:

Model: I've lived in this house .... ⟶
I've lived in this house since I was born.
I've lived in this house for fourteen years.

1) She's known him ....
2) The baby has slept ....
3) Mother has been ill ....
4) I haven't heard from my grandpa ....
5) He hasn't been to the swimming pool ....
6) They have been good friends ....

5. Join each pair of sentences, using an object clause:

A. Model: Why is the bus late? Can you tell me?
⟶Can you tell me why the bus is late?

1) Why didn't he come yesterday? Can you tell me?
2) When will the train leave? Can you tell me?
3) How can I get to the History Museum? Can you tell me?
4) Where does his uncle live? Can you tell me?
5) Why didn't they obey the rules? Can you tell me?
6) How do you do it? Can you tell me?
7) Where will the meeting be? Can you tell me?
8) Why did he try to fool us? Can you tell me?

B. Model: Does Mr Brown live in that house?
Could you tell us? ⟶
Could you tell us if(whether)Mr Brown lives in that house?

1) Does Kate's father work in that hospital? Could you tell us?
2) Were Jenny's parents very strict with her? Could you tell us?
3) Will Tom be back soon? Could you tell us?
4) Is his brother's rank captain? Could you tell us?
5) Can Mike drive a car? Could you tell us?
6) Is Joan from England? Could you tell us?
7) Did Alice work out the problem herself? Could you tell us?
8) Are they preparing for the sports meet? Could you tell us?

6. Fill in the blanks:

1) He asked ___ (谁是你们班上年纪最大的).
2) He asked ___ (哪张画是琼的).
3) The teacher asked ___ (谁能给他拿些粉笔来).
4) She asked ___ (谁的飞机模型飞得最高).
5) He asked ___ (昨天谁去钓鱼了).
6) She asked ___ (谁的画最美).
7) The little boy asked ___ (哪一颗星离地球最

近).

8) The teacher asked ___ (空中有多少颗人造卫星正围绕着地球旋转).

7. Tick off the correct answer to each question according to the text:

1) Why did Nathan Hale's heart beat faster when one of the guards ordered him to take off his boots?

a. Because he was afraid the guard would hit him with the boots.

b. Because he was afraid the guard would take his boots away.

c. Because he was afraid the guard would find the maps in one of his boots.

2) Why did the guard stop suddenly when he cut one boot open?

a. Because he found a letter in it.

b. Because he found the maps of the British army's defence works in it.

c. Because he cut his own (自己的) hand.

3) Why did General Howe think he could use a man like Nathan Hale?

a. Because Nathan Hale was an American.

b. Because Nathan Hale was young and brave (勇敢的).

c. Because Nathan Hale drew maps very well.

4) Why wouldn't Nathan Hale join the British army?

a. Because he wouldn't turn against his country.

b. Because General Washington had told him not to.

c. Because General Howe wouldn't give him more pay.

5) Why did Nathan Hale take a last look at his beautiful country before he was going to die?

a. Because he regretted that he would die.

b. Because he regretted that he could not get the maps to General Washington.

c. Because he loved his country, but now he could not work for her any more.

8. Read the following, then put it into Chinese:

The Cat and the Parrot

A French writer tells a story about his cat and a parrot.

A friend of his came to visit him one day. The friend said, "I'm going away for a short time. Will you please look after my parrot for me?"

The writer said he would do so, and his friend brought the parrot to the house.

The cat saw the parrot and wanted to know if it was a bird or not. If so, it would be nice to eat. Very slowly the cat came nearer and nearer. It was thinking how nice it would be to have this animal for its meal.

The poor parrot was very much afraid. It kept quiet and didn't move until the cat was near enough to jump on it. Then, suddenly, the parrot asked, "Haven't you had your breakfast?"

The cat was afraid. It ran away as fast as it could. Perhaps it was saying to itself, "That thing can speak. It can't be a bird. It must be a man."

cat *n.* 猫
parrot ['pærət] *n.* 鹦鹉
writer ['raitə] *n.* 作者;作家
until [ən'til] *prep.* & *conj.* 直到
not ... until 直到……才

LESSON THREE

The Third Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: Martin called you a moment ago.

B: Did he? What did he say?

A: He asked if (whether)

Mr Howe had come back.
you had met Mr Howe at the railway station.
you had written to Peter.
your parents had bought a pair of boots for you.

2

A: You were late for the film yesterday, weren't you?

B: Yes.

The lights had already gone out
The newsreel had almost finished
The film had already begun
The film had been on for five minutes

when I got to the cinema.

TEXT

A QUESTION OF PRONUNCIATION

This happened in London. It was November and the weather was very wet and cold.

A Frenchman had caught a very bad cold. He coughed day and night. So he decided to go and get some medicine for his cough. As he did not know much English, he got out his dictionary and looked up the word "cough". But the dictionary did not tell him how to pronounce the word. He thought it over and remembered that he had learned the word "plough". He remembered that it was pronounced [plau]. So he thought that c-o-u-g-h must be pronounced [kau].

Then he put on his coat and hat and went to a chemist's shop. When the man in the shop asked him what he wanted, the Frenchman said:

"I want something for my *cow*, please."

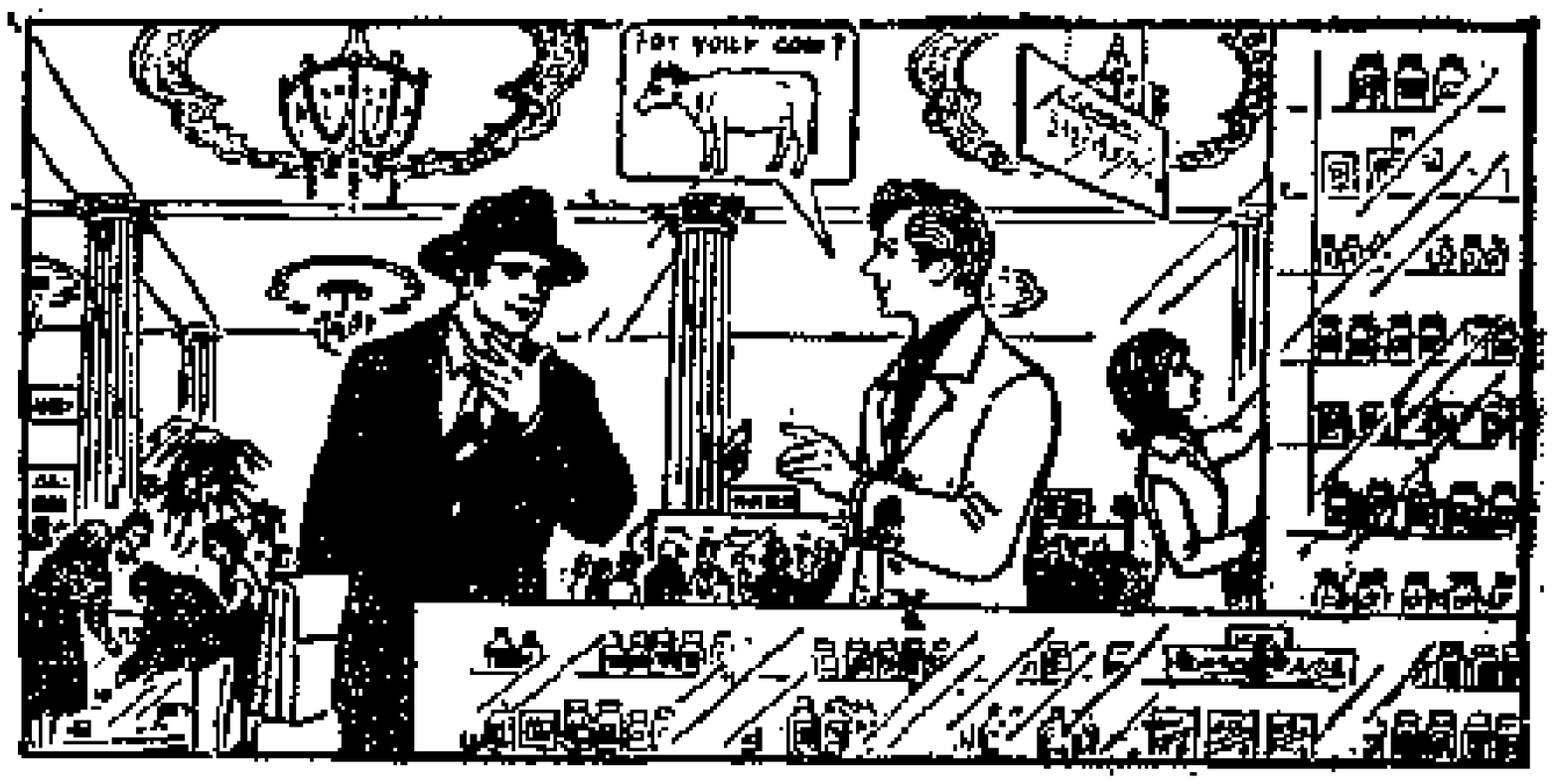
The man in the shop looked at him. Had

he heard him correctly?

"I beg your pardon, sir?" he asked.

The Frenchman repeated: "I want some medicine for my *cow*."

"For your cow?" asked the man. "Are you a farmer?"



"A farmer?" said the Frenchman in surprise. "What makes you think I'm a farmer? I come from Paris. I'm not a farmer."

"Where's your cow, then?" asked the man in the shop.

"It's here!" replied the Frenchman. He put his hand on his chest and began to cough. "Here it is!" he said. "I've a very bad *cow* here."

Then the man in the shop understood what

the Frenchman meant. He wanted some medicine for his cough.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

meet (met, met) *vt.* & *vi.* 遇见;迎接
railway ['reilwei] *n.* 铁路
station ['steiʃən] *n.* 站;所;车站
pair *n.* 一对,一双
a pair of 一对,一双
light *n.* 光;灯(光)
adj. 明亮的;淡色的
go out (灯,火)熄灭
newsreel ['nju:zri:l] *n.* 新闻影片
almost ['ɔ:lməust] *adv.* 几乎,差不多
be on 进行

* * *

pronounce [prə'nauns] *vt.* 发音
pronunciation [prə'nʌnsi'eiʃən] *n.* 发音
happen ['hæpən] *vi.* (偶然)发生
Frenchman ['frentʃmən] *n.* 法国人
catch a cold 伤风,感冒
day and night 日日夜夜
as *conj.* 因为,由于
look up (在词典、参考书中)查寻
think over 仔细考虑
plough [plau] *n.*, *vt.* & *vi.* 犁
put on 穿上(衣服);戴上(帽子等)
hat *n.* 帽子(一般指有边的帽子)
chemist ['kemist] *n.* 化学家;药剂师
a chemist's shop 药房
correctly [kə'rektli] *adv.* 正确地;恰当地
beg *vt.* & *vi.* 请求,乞求
pardon ['pa:dn] *n.* & *vt.* 原谅,宽恕

repeat [ri'pi:t] *vt.*, *vi.* & *n.* 重复;重说(做)

farmer ['fɑ:mə] *n.* 农夫;农场主

Paris ['pæris] *n.* 巴黎(法国首都)

reply [ri'plai] *vt.* & *n.* 回答;答复

chest *n.* 胸部

NOTES

1. The film had been on for five minutes when I got to the cinema. 我到达电影院时,电影已经放映五分钟了。

此句中过去完成时态 (had been) 表示从电影开场到说话人到达电影院时为止。句中的 on 作 be 的表语。又如:

What's on at that cinema?

* * *

2. But the dictionary did not tell him how to pronounce the word. 但是词典却没有告诉他怎样念这个词。

how to pronounce the word 是以 how 引导的不定式短语,在句中作 did not tell 的直接宾语。又如:

Could you tell us how to make this model plane fly higher?

3. He remembered that it was pronounced [plau]. 他记得这个词念[plau]。

So he thought that c-o-u-g-h must be pronounced [kau]. 因此,他认为 c-o-u-g-h 一定念[kau]。

4. Had he heard him correctly? 他听明白他的话了吗？

句中 he 指 the man in the shop, him 指 the Frenchman。

5. "I beg your pardon, sir?" "请您再说一遍，先生。"

I beg your pardon. 原意是"对不起"，"请原谅"，这里表示没有听清楚对方的话，请对方再说一遍。说时用升调。也可以说：Beg your pardon. 或 Pardon. 也都用升调。

EXERCISES

1. Put **ai, ay, ei** or **ey** in the following words, then read them out:

w__t	p__	__ght	str__ght
st__	pl__	ob__	expl__n
r__n	th__	aw__	n__ghbour
m__	t__l	afr__d	r__lw__

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
catch a cold	right (not wrong)
day and night	answer
correctly	find a word in a dictionary
repeat	say again
reply	bring out something
look up a word	have a cold

get out something all the time

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) He isn't as old as he looks.

2) Nobody noticed him as he went into the artist's workroom.

3) Hide yourself behind the door as soon as you hear him come.

4) He thinks much of himself but little of others. How can you have him as your monitor?

5) As he wasn't feeling well, I went there alone.

6) As Liszt was smiling, she decided she needn't be afraid any more.

4. Fill in the blanks with **over, up, out, in** or **on**:

1) Let the girls ___ first.

2) Is your mother ___?

3) When he saw the birds were winning, the bat flew ___ to join them.

4) The light in my room was ___ when I got home yesterday evening, but nobody was ___.

5) May I use your dictionary for a minute? I want to look ___ a word.

6) Has the film begun yet?

Yes. It has been ___ for ten minutes already.

7) I looked ___ and saw him standing ___ front of me.

8) Xiao Wang called ___. to us, "Hey, Comrades! Come ___ and join us."

9) I can't answer the question right now. Let me think it ___.

10) He was walking so fast that I couldn't keep ___ with him.

5. Make sentences after the models:

A. Model: He hasn't heard from her recently.

(He said ....) ⟶

He said he hadn't heard from her recently.

1) He has just drawn a picture of the West Lake. (The artist said ....)

2) Mike has never been to Australia. (Mike said ....)

3) His mother has bought a pair of new shoes for him. (He said ....)

4) Two more students in our class have just joined the League. (I told my mother ....)

5) I've changed my seat with Zhang Hong's. (I told the teacher ....)

B. Model: Have you watered the flowers?

(He asked ....) ⟶

He asked if you had watered the flowers.

1) Has the light gone out? (He asked ....)

2) Have you returned the book to the library? (She asked ....)

3) Has Wu Dong been to the Great Wall? (He asked ....)

4) Have you washed your face? (Aunt Ding asked ....)

5) Have you read anything about Nathan Hale before? (The English teacher asked ....)

C. Model: he, reach Shanghai, the ship, already set off ⟶

When he reached Shanghai, the ship had already set off.

1) he, get to the railway station, the train, leave

2) she, arrive, the meeting, be on for half an hour

3) I, finish drawing the map, my sister, go to bed

4) the hare, wake up, the tortoise, already get to the tall tree

5) the policeman, come, we, already catch the spy

6. Answer the following questions:

1) What is the story about?

2) What was wrong with the Frenchman?

3) What did he decide to do?

4) He didn't know much English, did he?

5) Did he know the word "cough"?

6) Did his dictionary tell him how to pronounce the word?

7) Why did he think "cough" was pronounced [kau]?

8) What did he do then?

9) What did he say to the man in the chemist's shop?

10) Why did the man in the shop think the Frenchman was a farmer?

11) How did the Frenchman show he wanted some medicine for his cough?

12) Did the man in the shop understand him at last?

7. Give the English for these:

1) 当你不知道一个生词怎么念时，必须查词典。

2) 我走过去看那边发生了什么事。

3) 老师问，中国最近是否发射了一颗人造地球卫星。

4) 刘英说她妹妹到药店里去给她买治咳嗽的药去了。

5) 林华病了两天了。他得了重感冒，发高烧，头痛得很厉害，日夜咳嗽。今天放学后我去看了他。我问他是不是去过医务室了。他说大夫已经来看过他了。

8. Read the following and then underline the verbs in the past perfect tense:

Earthquake!

I asked Mr Smith, a friend of mine, what happened that night. He said he had just got into bed about half past eleven when he felt the floor shaking under him. The bed was also shaking. He got out of bed and went to look out of the window. He saw the houses on the other side of the street were shaking, too. Then he knew what was happening. Earthquake! Quickly he took his clothes and ran out into the street.

"Hadn't the newspapers said that there might be an earthquake?" I asked.

"Well, I had read something about it, but I hadn't given it much thought," he replied.

earthquake ['ə:θkweik] *n.* 地震
shake *vi.* 摇动
may (might) *v. aux.* 可能，或许
thought *n.* 思考

LESSON FOUR

The Fourth Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: How many English | songs / stories / parties | had you | learned / read / had | by the end of last term?

B: Four.

2

A: How long had Comrade Wu | lived / studied / taught |

in the south before he came here?

B: For less than five years.

3

A: Did you give the chemistry book to Wei Fang yesterday?
B: No, I didn't, because she had already

bought a copy for herself.
borrowed one from the library.
gone back to her home town.

TEXT

THE ARAB IN THE DESERT

An Arab was walking alone through the desert when he met two men. The men looked worried. It seemed that they had lost

something. The Arab went over to them.

"Have you lost one of your camels?" he asked them.

"Yes," they said.

"Was he blind in the right eye and lame in the left foot?" asked the Arab.

"Yes, he was."

"Had he lost a tooth and was he carrying corn?"

"Yes,"said the men. "Please tell us where he is."

"I don't know where he is," said the Arab. "I've never seen such an animal."

"Did someone tell you about him?"

"No."

The two men looked at each other in surprise. They could not believe the Arab's words. Finally, they came up close to him, took hold of him, and shouted:

"Where's the animal? And what have you done with our goods?"

The Arab insisted that he had never seen the camel. At last the men took him before

a judge. They said that the Arab had stolen their camel.

"I've never seen their camel," insisted the Arab. "But I'm a man of the desert, and I've learned to look carefully at everything I see. This morning I saw the tracks of a lost camel. I knew this because there were no man's tracks near those of the camel. I also saw that the camel must be blind in the right eye, because he had only eaten the grass on his left side and had not touched the grass on his right. The animal was lame because with one foot he left a track much lighter than any of the others. He had lost a tooth, because wherever he ate grass, there was always a small space left untouched. I also found groups of ants near the tracks of the camel. They were pulling pieces of corn. From these facts I was able to tell what goods the animal was carrying."

The judge and the two men were satisfied with what the Arab had said. Together the four men set out to look for the lost animal.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

by the end of 在……结束时;到……末为止
less than 不到,少于
chemistry ['kemistri] *n.* 化学
home town 故乡,家乡

* * *

Arab ['ærəb] *n.* 阿拉伯人
desert ['dezət] *n.* 沙漠;荒地
camel ['kæməl] *n.* 骆驼
blind [blaind] *adj.* 瞎的
lame *adj.* 跛的,瘸的
corn *n.* 谷物;玉米
close [kləus] *adv.* & *adj.* 靠近地(的)
take hold of 握住,抓住
do with 对付,处置
goods [gudz] *n.* 商品;货物
insist [in'sist] *vt.* & *vi.* 坚持;坚决主张
judge [dʒʌdʒ] *n.* 法官
steal [sti:l] (stole, stolen ['stəulən]) *vt.* 偷,窃取
track *n.* 足迹;(火车等的)轨道
lost *adj.* 丢失的;迷途的
grass *n.* 草;草地
touch [tʌtʃ] *vt.* 触摸;接触
wherever [wɛər'evə] *adv.* 无论在(到)哪里;在(到)任何地方
space *n.* 空地;间隙
untouched ['ʌn'tʌtʃt] *adj.* 原样的;未动过的
group [gru:p] *n.* 组,团体;群
a group of 一群(组)
ant *n.* 蚂蚁
pull [pul] *vt.* & *vi.* 拉,拖;拔
satisfy ['sætisfai] *vt.* 使满意;使满足
be satisfied with 对……感到满意
set out 出发;开始

NOTES

1. An Arab was walking alone through the desert when he met two men. 一个阿拉伯人正独自在沙漠里行走，这时他碰见了两个人。

   这里 when 的意思相当于 and at that moment。

2. "Was he blind in the right eye and lame in the left foot?" "他是不是右眼瞎，左腿瘸？"

3. But I'm a man of the desert, and I've learned to look carefully at everything I see. 但是我是沙漠里长大的人，我学会了仔细观察我所看到的一切事物。

   I see 是定语从句，修饰 everything。

4. The animal was lame because with one foot he left a track much lighter than any of the others. 这头牲口瘸腿，因为他一只蹄子留下的蹄印比别的蹄印要浅得多。

5. He had lost a tooth, because wherever he ate grass, there was always a small space left untouched. 他掉了一颗牙，因为无论他在哪儿吃草，总有一小块草没吃到。

6. From these facts I was able to tell what goods the animal was carrying. 从这些情况看，我能够说出这头牲口驮的是什么货。

7. The judge and the two men were satisfied with what the Arab had said. 法官和那两个人对这个阿

拉伯人所说的话感到满意。

what the Arab had said 作介词 with 的宾语。

GRAMMAR

过去完成时 (The Past Perfect Tense)

1. 过去完成时的构成

过去完成时由"助动词 had（通用于各种人称和数）+过去分词"构成。

2. 过去完成时的用法

1) 过去完成时表示在过去某一时间或动作之前已经发生或完成了的动作。它表示动作发生的时间是"过去的过去"。表示过去某一时间常用以下几种方式:

a. 用 by, before 等构成的短语

How many English films had you seen *by the end of last term*?

We had reached the station *before ten o'clock*.

b. 用 when, before 等引导的从句

The film had already begun *when I got to the cinema*.

Wang Lin had checked the radio *before his brother returned*.

注: 如果时间状语从句的动作发生在主句的动作之前，则从句用过去完成时，主句用一般过去时。

When he **had finished** his work, he **left** his office.

After I **had done** my homework, I **went** to bed.

c. 通过上下文表示

The Arab *insisted* that he had never seen the camel.

The students started working in the fields at eight o'clock. The rain had stopped and the sun was shining.

2) 过去完成时还可以表示，从过去某一时间开始，持续到过去另一时间的动作或状态。往往和由for或since引导的、表示一段时间的短语或从句连用。

He had worked in the north *for five years* before he moved here.

I saw Li Ping yesterday. We had not seen each other *since I left Beijing.*

By the end of last month, my brother had been on that ship *for two years.*

注：当一个由 before, after, as soon as 等连词引导的从句所表示的动作与主句的动作前后紧接时，由于连词本身已经说明两个动作发生的先后关系，这两个动作都可用一般过去时来表示。

Where did your brother study *before* he *joined* the army?

After he *closed* the door, he left the house.

As soon as the bell *rang* for the break, the door opened and in came Mr Smith, the headmaster

EXERCISES

1. Put **o**, **u** or **ou** in the following words, then read

them out:

s__ch	tr__st	am__ng	r__bber
c__t	m__nkey	__ncle	L__ndon
t__ch	j__dge	en__gh	bec__me
tr__ck	c__ver	tr__ble	c__ntry
fr__nt	y__ng	h__ngry	h__sband

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
finally	not able to see
less than	near
set out	start
close (*adv.*)	at last
be able to	not so many (much) as
blind	can

3. Put the following into English:

1) 自那以后　　2) 日日夜夜
3) 到……末为止　　4) 互相
5) 许多　　6) 很久很久以前
7) 大量　　8) 到处
9) 事实上　　10) 匆忙
11) 既不……也不　　12) 一群
13) 不但……而且　　14) 一双

4. Make sentences after the models, using the past perfect tense:

A. Model: the end of last term, she, read ten English story-books ⟶

By the end of last term she had read ten English story-books.

1) the end of last year, scientists, find many "new" stars
2) the end of 1982, they, plant 10,000 trees
3) 5:30 yesterday afternoon, he, finish writing the book
4) last August, she, give seven concerts
5) then, the doctor, save more than eighty lives

B. Model: she, work on a farm for three years, she, become a shop assistant ⟶

She had worked on a farm for three years *before* she became a shop assistant.

1) Mr White, teach in Europe for fifteen years, he, go to Australia
2) his grandfather, study in England for seven years, he, come back to China in 1949
3) they, pick all the cotton, we, get to the fields
4) I, cut the meat into pieces, my mother, start cooking
5) Mr and Mrs Brown, live in Boston, they,

move to Washington

5. Join each pair of sentences after the model:

Model: It started snowing early in the morning. So I did not go to town yesterday. ⟶ I did not go to town yesterday because it had started snowing early in the morning.

1) Mr Howe fell ill. So Miss Brown took his class yesterday.
2) The rich woman didn't invite the singer to have dinner with her and her guests. So he wouldn't sing for them.
3) Her parents died. So she had to make a living herself.
4) He has already refused to do it before. So I won't ask him again.
5) I did not finish reading the book. So I did not return it to the library.

6. Read the text and then say *Yes* or *No* to the following sentences:

1) One day, while he was walking alone through the desert, the Arab saw two men looking worried. ( )
2) The Arab knew why they were worried and what they had lost. ( )
3) The lost camel was blind in the left eye and

lame in the right foot. ( )

4) The two men thought that the Arab had seen the animal, or somebody had told him about it. ( )

5) They looked at each other in surprise, as they were wondering how the Arab could know their lost camel so well. ( )

6) They took the Arab to a judge, because the Arab had stolen the camel. ( )

7) The Arab saw that there was no man beside the camel, so he thought it was a lost camel. ( )

8) The camel did not eat the grass on his right side and left small spaces untouched, because he did not want to eat so much. ( )

9) Groups of ants went along the tracks of the camel to pull pieces of corn. ( )

10) The judge and the two men were satisfied, because the Arab knew where the camel was. ( )

7. Give the English for these:

1) 到上星期末，小李读完了一本很有教育意义的书。

2) 昨天开会我迟到了。当我到达那里时，会议已经开了半个小时。

3) 他上中学之前，已经学会了两百个英语单词。

4) 麦克坚持说他从未偷过东西。

5) 那匹马的左眼一定是瞎的，因为它只吃了右边的草，而左边的草没有动。

6) 英国军官知道内森·黑尔是个美国间谍，因为他们已经发现他画了几张防御工事图并想送给华盛顿将军。

8. Read the following, then fill in the blanks with prepositions:

A One-Eyed Camel

A mother camel was walking ___ her son ___ the desert. They were looking ___ water and grass.

The son asked his mother what water and grass looked ___. The mother replied that water looked ___ the sky, blue and clear, while grass was green, fresh and nice.

After they had walked a day and a night, her son suddenly cried, "Look, Mother, there's water and grass over there!"

"What foolish talk, child!"

The water and grass were ___ the left, while the desert was ___ the right. Because the mother camel had been blind ___ her left eye since she was a baby, she saw only a sea ___ yellow sand ___ her right eye.

After they had gone on another day and night, the young camel found a second oasis, but his mother still did not believe him. She said that was not an oasis, but a desert. She said she knew more than her son and couldn't be wrong.

Her son got angry. When he saw an oasis ___ the third time, he left his mother ___telling her. He ran ___ the grass and ate his fill.

one-eyed *adj.* 一只眼的
clear [kliə] *adj.* 清澈的
fresh *adj.* 新鲜的
sand *n.* 沙,沙地
oasis [əu'eisis] *n.* (沙漠中的)绿洲
eat one's fill 吃个饱

LESSON FIVE

The Fifth Lesson

TEXT

THE SEAGULLS OF SALT LAKE CITY

Salt Lake City is a beautiful city in the west of North America. The name comes from a great salt lake nearby. The city lies in a valley with high mountains all around it. But long ago there was almost nothing in this place and there were very few people living here.

More than a hundred years ago, a group of men, women and children moved from the east to the west. They had travelled a long way. At last these brave people came to the great mountains by the salt lake. They crossed the mountains and reached this quiet place. They decided to stay here, and so they built their homes and made their farms. This was

where Salt Lake City now lies.

The people had to work hard on their farms, because their lives depended on their crops.

One day while they were working in the fields, some farmers saw something strange in the sky.

"What's that?" asked one of them.

"Where?" asked another, as he stopped to look.

"Over there," was the reply.

They saw something like a cloud coming, but it was too low in the sky. As they watched, it came nearer and nearer. Suddenly a shout went up: "Locusts! Millions of them!"

The words put fear into the hearts of all, because they knew what locusts could do, and they had never seen so many of them before.

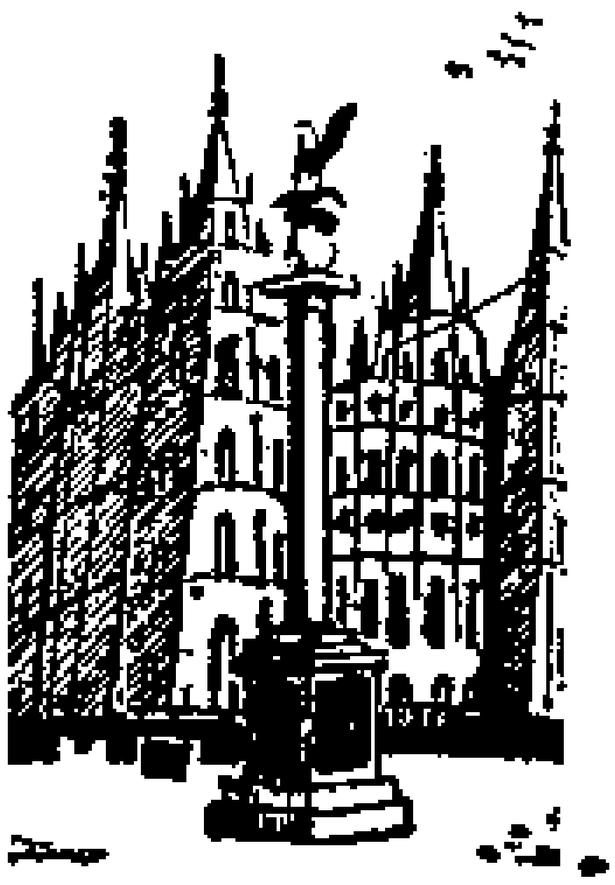
In no time the locusts came down and started eating everything — the wheat, the corn, the grass and even the leaves on the trees.

The farmers brought out things to fight the locusts. They tried everything. But while they were killing the locusts in one place, millions more arrived in another. What could the farmers do?

Suddenly there was a great noise. As they looked up, they saw another cloud coming towards them. To their surprise, they saw not locusts this time, but seagulls. The farmers cried out, "They've come to eat what the locusts have left."

But to their joy, they found that the seagulls had come to eat not the crops, but the locusts. They had seen or smelled the locusts and had come from the Great Salt Lake. Now

they were eating the locusts! In a short while they ate up millions of them. The farmers' crops were saved!



The people were very thankful. They decided that from then on no one should ever kill a seagull. And today, if you go to Salt Lake City, you can see a monument with seagulls on top of it.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

sea *n.* 海洋,海
seagull ['si:gʌl] *n.* 海鸥
salt [sɔ:lt] *n.* 盐
Salt Lake City 盐湖城
lie *vi.* 存在;位于
valley ['væli] *n.* 流域;(山)谷
mountain ['mauntin] *n.* 山;山脉
brave *adj.* 勇敢的
cross *vt.* 越过,穿过
build [bild] (built [bilt], built) *vt.* & *vi.* 建设;建立;建造
depend [di'pend] *vi.* 依靠
depend on 依赖,依靠
strange [streindʒ] *adj.* 奇怪的;陌生的
cloud [klaud] *n.* 云
low [ləu] *adj.* 低的;浅的
locust ['ləukəst] *n.* 蝗虫
fear [fiə] *vi.*, *vt.* & *n.* 害怕;恐惧
in no time 立刻;很快
wheat *n.* 小麦
leaf *n.* 叶

leaves (*pl.*)
kill *vt.* & *vi.* 杀死;弄死
towards [tə'wɔ:dz] *prep.*
向,朝;对于
to one's surprise 使某人惊奇的是
joy *n.* 欢乐;高兴
to one's joy 使某人高兴的是
in a short while 不久
eat up 吃光
from then on 从那时起
monument ['mɔnjumənt] *n.*
纪念碑;纪念物
top *n.* 顶部;(物的)上面
on top of 在……的上面

NOTES

1. This was where Salt Lake City now lies. 这就是盐湖城现在所处的位置。

   where Salt Lake City now lies 是表语从句。

2. Suddenly a shout went up, "Locusts! ..." 突然间有人大喊一声:"蝗虫!……"

   shout 在这里作名词。

3. The words put fear into the hearts of all, because they knew what locusts could do, ... 这些话使大家深感恐惧,因为他们知道蝗虫会带来什么(样的灾害),……

4. They tried everything. 他们使尽了各种办法。

5. To their surprise, they saw not locusts this time, but seagulls. 使他们惊奇的是,这次他们看到的不是蝗虫,而是海鸥。

6. The farmers' crops were saved! 农民们的庄稼得救了!

EXERCISES

1. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
nearby	be afraid of
low	very soon (quickly)
in no time	not high or tall
from then on	close by
in a short while	in a short time
reach a place	after that
fear	get to a place

2. Make the following sentences interrogative, then negative:

A. Model: He needs **some** help. ⟶
Does he need **any** help?
He doesn't need **any** help.
He needs **no** help.

1) He wants some water.
2) I had some milk for my breakfast.
3) She has bought some stamps.
4) There's some exciting news in today's paper.

B. Model: She said **something** at the meeting. ⟶
Did she say **anything** at the meeting?
She didn't say **anything** at the meeting.

She said **nothing** at the meeting.

1) They found something in his pocket.
2) He knew something about the matter.
3) I saw something different.
4) There was something strange about what he had said.

3. Make sentences after the models, using the past perfect tense:

A. Model: the bell, ring, I, finish the exercises ⟶

When the bell rang, I had finished the exercises.

1) I, come to the musician's home, he, go out for a walk
2) the man on watch, see the iceberg, the ship, hit it
3) we, hurry to the station, the train, leave
4) the seagulls, come to the fields, the locusts, eat up a lot of the crops
5) my uncle, be forty years old, he, teach in that village for twenty years

B. Model: I, do my work, I, take a little rest ⟶

After I had done my work, I took a little rest.

1) the seagulls, eat up all the locusts, they,

fly away

2) the bat, join the birds, the war, still go on

3) the workers, repair the bridge, they, leave the place

4) he, go to a chemist's shop, he, put on his coat and hat

5) he, draw the map, he, cut open his boot and hide it there

4. Make the following sentences negative, then interrogative and answer them:

Model: The party had begun when he came. ⟶
The party had not begun when he came.
Had the party begun when he came?
Yes, it had. No, it hadn't.

1) He had done much research when he was thirty.

2) By yesterday evening she had read 200 pages of this book.

3) The doctor had taken his temperature before he listened to his chest.

4) She had visited China before she came last September.

5) He had gone to the postoffice when Mary called.

6) The general had finished his talk with the

captain when a soldier came in.

5. Answer the following questions:

1) In which part of America is Salt Lake City and where does it lie?
2) Where does the name of the city come from?
3) What was the place like long ago?
4) When did the first group of people come to this place?
5) How did they get to this place?
6) What did they do then?
7) Why did the people work hard on their farms?
8) What happened one day while some farmers were working in the fields?
9) Why were the farmers in great fear when they saw the locusts coming towards them?
10) Did the farmers try to fight the locusts? Could they kill them all?
11) What happened next?
12) How did the farmers feel when they first saw the seagulls? Why?
13) What did the seagulls really eat?
14) Were the farmers' crops saved?
15) How did the people of Salt Lake City show their thanks to the seagulls?

6. Give the English for these:

1) 黄河位于中国的北部。(lie)

2) 从那以后他们彼此就不再打架了。(from then on, fight each other)

3) 使大家惊奇的是,小高斯只用了几分钟就解出了那道难题。(to everyone's surprise)

4) 老太太双目失明,依靠女儿生活。(be blind, depend on)

5) 在很短的时间内海鸥吃掉了数百万只蝗虫。(eat up)

LESSON SIX

The Sixth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the four forms of the following verbs after the model:

   Model: break — breaks — breaking — broke — broken

win	cut	lie	mean	fly	teach
fight	pay	build	keep	forget	throw
hide	meet	eat	sew	hold	sing
drive	catch	hit	set	leave	sleep
grow	steal	feel	buy	run	sweep
beat	sit	lose	become	bring	wake

2. Put the following into English:

   1) 接到……的信　　2) 赶走
   3) 背叛　　4) 出发
   5) 对……感到满意　　6) 脱掉
   7) 过桥　　8) 仔细考虑
   9) 依靠　　10) 吃完
   11) 支持某人(方)　　12) 穿上

3. Put the following into Chinese and tell what part

of speech each of the italicized words is:

1) Wash your *hands* before each meal.
2) Nathan Hale *handed* his boots to the British guard after he had taken them off.
3) When John *hurried* into the room, Mr Howe had begun his talk.
4) The bat left the birds in a *hurry* and went over to join the beasts.
5) A beast wondered if the bat was a *spy*, because he had seen him fighting on the side of the birds.
6) "We caught this man near our defence works. He was *spying* on us," said the soldier to the officer.
7) When he got to the stadium, the sports *meet* had just begun.
8) They had written letters to each other before they *met*.
9) Remember to turn off the *light* when you leave the room.
10) He carried the heavy box and let his sister carry the *light* one.
11) Could you tell me how much you *paid* for the tomatoes?
12) General Howe said Nathan Hale wouldn't have

to worry about rank or *pay* if he joined them.

4. Learn the following by heart:

1) slow — slowly wonderful — wonderfully
final — finally beautiful — beautifully
recent — recently true — truly
brave — bravely correct — correctly
angry — angrily happy — happily

2) sing — singer farm — farmer
wait — waiter drive — driver
write — writer win — winner

5. Put the following into Chinese:

1) He looked out of the window and **saw** a group of children **playing** football on the playground.
2) She could **feel** her heart **beating** fast.
3) When they came to a forest, they suddenly **heard** somebody **calling** for help.
4) At the school gate, Jenny **found** a wallet **lying** on the ground.
5) Did you **watch** us **playing** tennis yesterday afternoon?
6) Did you **notice** somebody **standing** in front of the monument?

6. Fill in the blanks with **in, from, on, at, to, between, with, into, behind, over** or **of**:

1) I think he'll be back ____ a minute.

2) We'll have to walk a bit quicker to keep up ___our monitor.

3) — Have you written ___ Liu Ying recently?
— No, but I haven't heard ___ her, either.

4) There's a railway ___ these two cities.

5) Don't shout ___ the old woman. You should be more polite ___ her.

6) Have plenty ___ water and plenty ___ sleep. You'll feel better soon.

7) The boys are hiding ___ the wall.

8) Have you got a book ___ English pronunciation?

9) ___ the river there is a stone bridge.

10) I saw him run ___ the house.

11) The bus stop is ___ the other side ___ the street.

12) There is a picture ___ the blackboard ___ the wall.

7. Complete the following sentences:

1) I think ___ (我们应当互相帮助).

2) Do you know ___ (这是谁的杂志)?

3) Do you know ___ (他们在照料谁)?

4) Can you tell me ___ (洞庭湖位于什么地方)?

5) Can you tell me ___ (南方春天是否雨水很多)?

6) Could you tell me ___ (音乐会什么时候开始)?

7) Could you tell me ____ (到邮局怎么走)?

8) They believe ____ (他们会赢).

9) She said ____ (她昨天发烧了).

10) She asked him ____ (他是否买了一本物理书).

11) The teacher asked ____ (她为什么上学又迟到了).

12) A student asked ____ (蝙蝠为什么离开鸟儿).

13) I heard ____ (他已离开巴黎,正在归途中).

14) She said ____ (到上月末，他们已举行了三次俄语晚会).

8. Read the following, then fill in the blanks with a, an or the where necessary:

The Rabbit and the Fox

Once there was ____ very naughty rabbit. He liked to play tricks, and this made ____ other beasts angry. But it was very difficult to catch him.

One day ____ fox said to ____ wolf, "Let's think of ____ way to catch ____ rabbit for our supper." After ____ while, ____ wolf said, "I've got ____ idea. You go back home and get into ____ bed. I'll go to ____ rabbit and tell him that you are dead. Then he'll come near you to see if you are dead or not. You can then jump up and catch him."

"That's ___ good idea," said ___ fox. "I'll do that." ___ fox ran home and got into ___ bed. ___ wolf went to ___ rabbit's house. He stood at ___ door and called, "Mr Rabbit, Mr Rabbit!"

"What is it?" said ___ rabbit.

"Have you heard ___ fox is dead?" said ___ wolf, then he went away.

"Really? I haven't heard anything about it," ___ rabbit said to himself. So he decided to go and see if it was true. He went to ___ fox's house. He looked in through ___ window, and there he saw ___ fox lying in ___ bed. He opened ___ door and went in. He looked at ___ fox and said, "Mr Wolf says Mr Fox is dead, but he doesn't look like ___ dead fox. You can always tell if ___ fox is dead, for ___ dead fox always opens his mouth."

When ___ fox heard this, he thought, "I'll show him that I am dead." So he opened his mouth.

When ___ rabbit saw ___ fox open his mouth, he knew that ___ fox was not dead. He jumped up and ran out of ___ house as fast as he could.

rabbit ['ræbit] *n.* 兔子

naughty ['nɔ:ti] *adj.* 淘气的

trick *n.* 恶作剧

wolf [wulf] *n.* 狼

LESSON SEVEN

The Seventh Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: Kate asked me to give you a message.

B: What is it?

A: She said

she was going to spend her holiday with her parents in Egypt.
she wasn't going to be free this Saturday.
she was going to prepare for her trip.

B: Thanks for telling me.

2

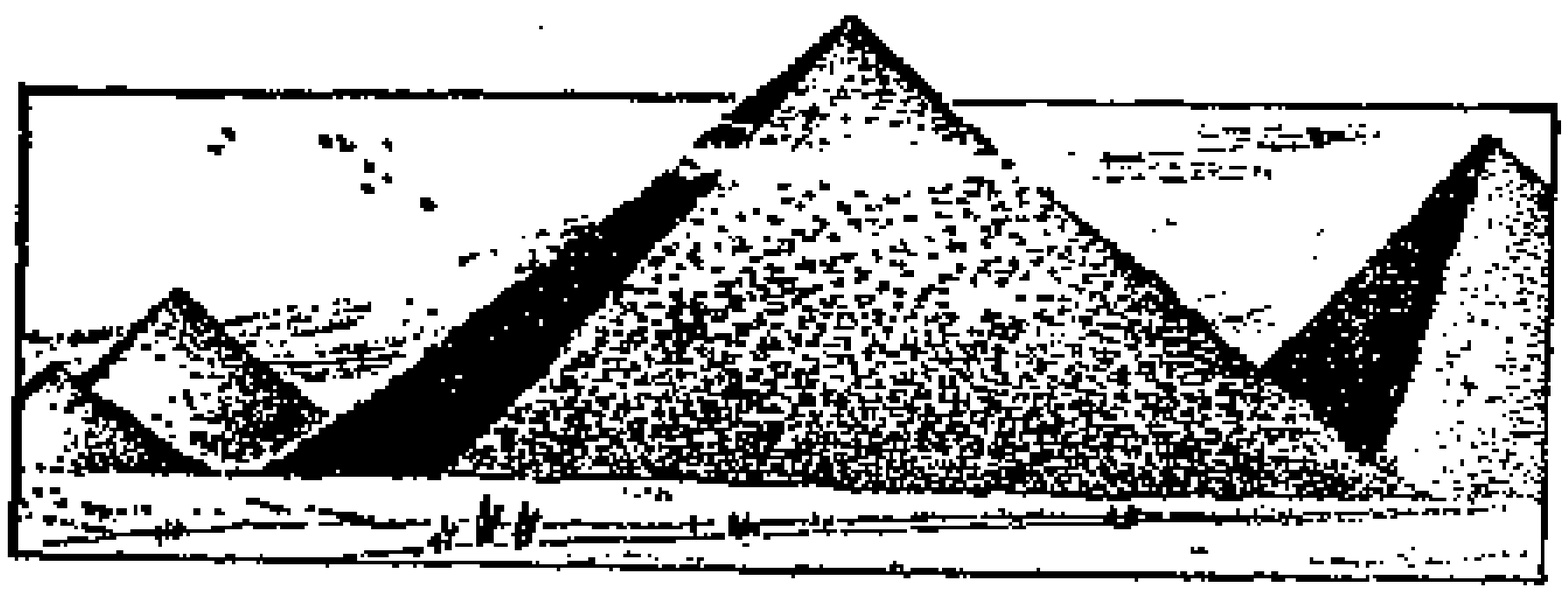
A: Did you ask Kate

whether they would fly to Egypt?
what they would do there?
when they would return?

B: Yes. She said	**they would go there by air.** **they would visit the pyramids.** **they would return before the end of this month.**

TEXT

THE PYRAMIDS



Thousands of years ago, the kings of Egypt built strong tombs for themselves. Over these tombs they built pyramids. They thought their bodies would be well kept in these until they could come back to life. They also hoped the world would look on the pyramids as monuments to them and would remember them for ever.

There are around 80 pyramids in Egypt. But the Great Pyramid is the biggest of all. It is nearly 5,000 years old. It is about 137 metres high today, but it was once higher. It is made of 2,300,000 huge stones. Most of them are higher than a man and weigh about two and a half tons each. Some weigh as much as fifteen tons. It took more than 100,000 men twenty years to build the Great Pyramid.

When you look at the pyramids, you can't help wondering how the Egyptians were able to build them thousands of years ago. How did they cut, carry and lift such huge stones? Each stone fits so well, yet they didn't have our modern machines! Scientists have studied the pyramids, but nobody can tell just how the Egyptians built them so long ago.

Inside the pyramids are the rooms for the bodies of the kings and queens. There are lots of wonderful treasures in the pyramids, too. Thieves have broken into some of the pyramids and taken away many of the treasures to foreign countries. They have even stolen the

mummies. Today some of the mummies and treasures are on show in museums in different countries. When the kings had the pyramids built for them, they perhaps never thought this would happen.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

spend (spent, spent) *vt.* 度过;花费(金钱,时间等)
Egypt ['i:dʒipt] *n.* 埃及
Egyptian [i'dʒipʃən] *n.* 埃及人 *adj.* 埃及的
go by air 坐飞机去
pyramid ['pirəmid] *n.* 金字塔

* * *

strong *adj.* 坚固的;强有力的
tomb [tu:m] *n.* 坟墓
body ['bɔdi] *n.* 身体;尸体
until [ən'til] *conj.* & *prep.* 直到……为止
come back to life 苏醒过来;复活
look on ... as 把……看作
for ever 永远
nearly ['niəli] *adv.* 将近;几乎
be made of 由……制(构)成
huge [hju:dʒ] *adj.* 巨大的
weigh [wei] *vi.* 重(若干) *vt.* 称……的重量
ton [tʌn] *n.* (重量单位)吨
lift *vt.* & *vi.* 举起,抬起
modern ['mɔdən] *adj.* 现代的
machine [mə'ʃi:n] *n.* 机器
queen *n.* 女王;王后
treasure ['treʒə] *n.* 金银财宝
thief [θi:f] *n.* 贼 thieves (*pl.*)
break into 破门而入,闯入

take away 拿走
foreign ['forin] *adj.* 外国的

mummy ['mʌmi] *n.* 木乃伊；干尸
be on show 展览

NOTES

1. They thought their bodies would be well kept in these until they could come back to life. 他们以为自己的尸体在复活前将会在这些金字塔里保存得很好。
2. They also hoped the world would look on the pyramids as monuments to them and would remember them for ever. 他们还希望人们把金字塔看作为他们树立的纪念碑，而且永远纪念他们。

   the world 世人，众人
3. It is made of 2,300,000 huge stones. 它是用二百三十万块巨石砌成的。

   2,300,000读作 two million three hundred thousand。
4. Some weigh as much as fifteen tons. 有些石头重达十五吨。
5. It took more than 100,000 men twenty years to build the Great Pyramid. 建成这座大金字塔，十万余人费了二十年时间。
6. When you look at the pyramids, you can't help wondering how the Egyptians were able to build

them thousands of years ago. 当你看着这些金字塔时，你不禁会感到惊奇：几千年以前埃及人是怎样把这些金字塔建成的。

cannot help doing 是"忍不住"、"情不自禁"的意思。又如：

I can't help laughing.

She can't help crying.

7. Each stone fits so well, yet they didn't have our modern machines! 每块石头(大小、形状)都那么合适，而他们(当时)并没有我们现代的机器啊!

8. When the kings had the pyramids built for them, they perhaps never thought this would happen. 当初那些国王叫人为他们修建金字塔时，他们恐怕从来没有想到会发生这种事情(指被偷盗一事)。

had the pyramids built 这种"have＋名词(或代词)＋过去分词"的结构，表示"请或让人做某事"的意思。又如：

I'll have my hair cut tomorrow. 我明天要理发(请人给我理发)。

We had the machine repaired. 我们请人把机器修理了。

GRAMMAR

过去将来时 (The Future-in-the-Past Tense)

1. 过去将来时的构成

过去将来时由“助动词 would + 动词原形”构成。would 常简缩为 'd, 如 I'd, you'd, he'd 等; would not 常简缩为 wouldn't。

2. 过去将来时的用法

过去将来时表示从过去某一时间看来将要发生的动作或存在的状态。过去将来时常用在宾语从句中。

Betty said she **would visit** her uncle next Saturday.

Liu Ying asked me who **would give** the talk.

He told us where we **would have** the table tennis match.

He said **there would be** a concert that evening.

I was sure (that) they **would do** that.

过去将来时也可以用“was (were) going to + 动词原形”来表示。例如:

Betty said she **was going to visit** her uncle next Saturday.

He said **there was going to be** a concert that evening.

I was sure (that) they **were going to do** that.

EXERCISES

1. Put **ea**, **ee**, or **ie** in the following words, then read them out:

b__st	sw__p	th__f	m__l	l__gue
p__ce	t__ch	t__th	d__d	rep__t

qu__n f__ld wh__t l__f betw__n

ch__p b__t st__l __sy bel__ve

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
go by air	almost
carry	go by plane
nearly	very big
huge	the wife of a king
lift	take up and put in a higher place
weigh	show how heavy a thing is
visit	take up something and move it from one place to another
queen	go to see somebody or a place

3. Fill in each blank with one of the words given:

high long tall old

1) The Great Wall is around 6,700 kilometres ____.
2) She is one and a half metres ____.
3) The Yellow River is 5,464 kilometres ____.
4) The Ming Tombs are more than 500 years ____.
5) The Nanjing Changjiang River Bridge is 6,772 metres ____.
6) That mountain is over 1,500 metres ____.

Put the following into Chinese:

1) It takes about twenty minutes to walk from

my home to the school.

2) It takes about two hours to go from Beijing to Tianjin by train.

3) It took the workers about ten months to build the Capital Stadium.

4) It took us nearly two hours to find our neighbour's two little children.

5) It will take us a long time to do such research work.

5. Rewrite the following sentences, using the future-in-the-past tense:

A. Model: She's going to lend you her table tennis bat. (She said ....) ⟶
She said she was going to lend you her table tennis bat.

1) He's going to meet his aunt and uncle at the station at eight. (He said ....)

2) It's going to rain soon. (I thought ....)

3) He's not going to be there. (He told me ....)

4) They're going to work in Xinjiang. (They decided ....)

5) He's going to wait for me at the gate of the Palace Museum. (He said ....)

6) We're going to have a geography test next week. (The teacher told us ....)

7) They're going to climb that mountain next Sunday. (I heard ....)

8) The birds are going to fly south before long. (She knew ....)

B. Model: Will our team win? (I wondered ....)

→

I wondered if our team would win.

1) Will he be able to join us?(I wondered ....)

2) When will the meeting end? (He asked ....)

3) What will happen next?(They wondered ....)

4) Will the two Australian musicians come to visit our city? (We didn't know ....)

5) Where will the basket-ball match be? (Dad wanted to know ....)

6) How will they go to Paris? (They asked ....)

7) Who will give the message to Mr Evans? (Mr Brown asked ....)

8) Why won't he go with us?(I wondered ....)

6. Answer the following questions:

1) In what country can you find the pyramids?

2) Where did the Egyptian kings build the pyramids?

3) Why did they build them?

4) How many pyramids are there in Egypt?

5) Which is the biggest of all?

6) Say a few words about the biggest pyramid in Egypt:

a. What's its name?

b. How high is it?

c. Who built it?

d. When did they build it?

e. How many people built the Great Pyramid? How long did it take them to build it?

f. What is it made of?

g. How much does each stone weigh?

h. How much does each of the heaviest stones weigh?

7) What are inside the pyramids?

8) Has anybody ever been into some of the pyramids?

9) What things from the pyramids are on show in some museums today?

10) Did the kings ever think what would happen to the pyramids?

11) Do you hope to visit the pyramids some day?

7. Give the English for these:

1) 我姐姐说，她准备学习一门外语。(a foreign language)

2) 凯特说，她将永远记住她那次愉快的埃及之行。(for ever)

3) 那个男孩问妈妈，死人是否真会复活。(come back to life)

4) 我问李同志，那些新式机器什么时候展出。(be on show)

5) 当我们听到他说的话时，忍不住大笑起来。(can't help laughing)

8. Fill in the blanks with **to, at, in, of, behind, around, from, near, with, after, among** or like:

The Wolf in a Sheep's Skin

A wolf once saw some sheep eating grass ___ the foot ___ a hill. The wolf was hungry and wanted very much to catch one and eat it. But he could not go ___ the sheep, because there was a man ___ them. The man was a shepherd. He was looking ___ his sheep. Then the wolf had an idea. He put on a sheep's skin and went in among the sheep. He killed a lot___them. Of course the shepherd did not know the wolf was ___ his sheep, because his enemy was ___ a sheep's skin.

Every day the wolf ate one or two ___ the sheep. The shepherd was worried. "Who is killing my sheep?" he wondered. "I'll catch him and hang him."

But still, more sheep were killed. Now more than ten were dead. The shepherd became very

angry. He walked about ____ the sheep day and night, and watched carefully. One day he saw that one ____ his sheep did not eat grass and did not walk ____ the others.

"That's not a sheep," he thought. He came up close ____ it and looked ____ it carefully. He saw it was really a wolf ____ a sheep's skin! "That's the enemy. He's killed my sheep," the shepherd said____himself. Then he took a rope and walked quietly ____ the wolf. Suddenly he threw the rope ____ the wolf's neck. Then he pulled the wolf ____ a tree nearby and hanged him. ____ that time two other shepherds were passing the place. They were very surprised when they saw a sheep hanging ____ a tree. But after they heard the story, they said, "You've done the right thing. A wolf ____ a sheep's skin is our most dangerous enemy."

wolf [wulf] *n.* 狼
in *prep.* 穿着
skin *n.* 皮，皮肤
shepherd ['ʃepəd] *n.* 牧羊人
enemy ['enimi] *n.* 敌人
dangerous ['deindʒrəs] *adj.* 危险的

LESSON EIGHT

The Eighth Lesson

DRILLS

1

(1) Mr Smith said, "John *is* a good worker."
Mr Smith said that John *was* a good worker.

(2) John said, "*I want* to forget the past."
John said that *he wanted* to forget the past.

(3) John said, "*I can* get on well with the people here."
John said that *he could* get on well with the people there.

2

(1) Mr Smith said, "John *told me* all about his past three weeks *ago*."
Mr Smith said that John *had told him* all about his past three weeks *before*.

(2) Bob's wife said, "Bob, you *forgot your* wallet *this* morning."

Bob's wife told him that he *had forgotten his* wallet *that* morning.

3

(1) John said to Bob, "*I haven't seen your* wallet."

John told Bob that *he hadn't seen his* wallet.

(2) Mr Smith said to the workers, "John *has worked* very hard and *I want* him to stay."

Mr Smith told the workers that John *had worked* very hard and that *he wanted* him to stay.

TEXT

ONCE A THIEF, ALWAYS A THIEF?

Mr Smith, the boss of a small factory, once hired a young worker called John Hill. On the first day, Mr Smith took John to one of his workshops and introduced him to the other workers. The men introduced themselves

to John and showed him around the factory. Then John started to work.

John was good at his job. Soon he got a rise. And he got on well with his workmates. He hoped they would like him.

But one morning John noticed that his workmates were looking at him and talking in low voices. Then Bob, one of his work mates, came up to him and asked whether it was true that he had been a thief and had just come out of prison. John's heart sank. He had been afraid of this all along. He told them that he had been in prison, but he was no longer a thief and wanted to forget the past.

The workers went to Mr Smith and asked him to fire John. Mr Smith explained to them that John had told him all about his past when he asked for a job in his factory. That showed John was honest. Since a lot of people make mistakes in life, Mr Smith wanted to give John a chance. The workers went back and John stayed. But after that they were

not as friendly to him as before.

One afternoon about a week later, Bob could not find his wallet. He went to John and asked whether he had seen his wallet. But John said he knew nothing about it. When Bob tried to catch hold of his arm, John hit him in the face. Bob fell to the ground and blood ran down his nose.

Mr Smith came out to see what was happening. The workers again asked him to let John go. They said they would all leave if John stayed. Mr Smith knew what that would mean. So he had to give in and say sorry to John.

Just at that moment, in came a woman. It was Bob's wife. She called out, "Bob, you forgot your wallet when you left home this morning. I thought you would need it, so I brought it over to you."

Everyone looked at Bob.

"John, I ... I'm sorry," said Bob with a red face.

"John, I want to apologize — for us all,"

said Mr Smith. "Please stay with us. This is a lesson for Bob, for me, and for all of us."

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

past *n.* 过去
get on well with
　与……相处融洽
Bob 鲍勃(男名)

*　　*　　*

boss *n.* 老板
hire ['haiə] *vt.* & *n.*
　雇用;租用
Hill 希尔(姓)
workshop ['wə:kʃɔp] *n.*
　车间
introduce [ˌintrə'dju:s]
　vt. 介绍
show ... around ...
　带领(某人)参观……
job *n.* 工作
rise (rose, risen ['rizn])
　vi. & *n.* 升高;增长
workmate ['wə:kmeit] *n.*
　工友;同事
in a low voice 低声地
prison ['prizn] *n.* 监狱
sink (sank, sunk) *vi.*
　下沉;消沉
all along 一直,始终
no longer 不再
fire ['faiə] *vt.*
　开火;射击;(口语)解雇

n. 火

honest ['onist] *adj.*

诚实的，正直的

since *conj.* 由于；既然

mistake [mis'teik] *n.* 错误

make a mistake 犯错误

in life 一生中

chance [tʃɑ:ns] *n.* 机会

friendly ['frendli] *adj.*

友好的

catch hold of 抓住

blood [blʌd] *n.* 血

give in 屈服，让步

apologize [ə'pɔlədʒaiz]

vi. 道歉

NOTES

1. ONCE A THIEF, ALWAYS A THIEF? 做过一次贼，就永远是贼吗？

2. ... a young worker called John Hill. ……一个名叫约翰·希尔的青年工人。

   过去分词短语 called John Hill 在这里作定语，修饰名词 worker。

3. Soon he got a rise. 不久，给他加了工资。

4. Then Bob ... asked whether it was true that he had been a thief and had just come out of prison. 接着鲍勃……问他是不是真的当过小偷并刚从监狱里出来。

   宾语从句 whether it was true that he had been a thief ... 中，it 是形式主语，真正的主语是以 that 引导的从句，这个从句叫主语从句。

5. He had been afraid of this all along. 他一直害怕会发生这种事(即害怕别人查问他的过去)。

6. **That showed John was** honest. 那表明约翰是诚实的。

John was **honest** 作谓语动词 **showed** 的宾语，是宾语从句，它前面的连词 that 省略了。

7. **John hit him in the face.** 约翰打了他的脸。

类似的说法：

The stone hit him on the head. 石头击中了他的头部。

The policeman caught him by the arm. 警察抓住了他的胳膊。

8. So he had to give in and say sorry to **John.** 因此，他不得不让步，不得不向约翰表示歉意。

sorry 在这里是名词，作动词 **say** 的宾语。

GRAMMAR

直接引语和间接引语 (Direct Speech and Indirect Speech) (I)

直接引述别人的原话，叫直接引语。用自己的话转述别人的话，叫间接引语。间接引语在多数情况下构成宾语从句。直接引语一般前后要加引号；间接引语不用引号。

直接引语：**Mr Black said, "I'm busy."**

间接引语：**Mr Black said that he was busy.**

1. 陈述句　直接引语如果是陈述句，变为间接引语时，用连词 that 引导（that 在口语中常省略），从句中的人称、时态、指示代词、时间状语、地点状语等要作相应的变化。

1）人称的变化

a) He said, "*I* like it very much." ⟶
He said that *he* liked it very much.

b) He said, "*I*'ve left *my* book in *your* room."
⟶He told me that *he* had left *his* book in *my* room.

2) 时态的变化　如主句的谓语动词是一般过去时，直接引语变间接引语时，从句的谓语动词在时态方面要作以下的变化：

直接引语	间接引语
一般现在时	一般过去时
现在进行时	过去进行时
现在完成时	过去完成时
一般过去时	过去完成时
过去完成时	过去完成时(不变)
一般将来时	过去将来时

例如：

a) He said, "I saw the film yesterday."⟶
He said that he had seen the film the day before.

b) She said, "I have seen the film. It is good."
⟶She said that she had seen the film, and that it was good.

注：直接引语如果是客观真理，变为间接引语时，时态不变。例如：
He said, "Light travels much faster than sound." ⟶
He said that light travels much faster than sound.

3) 指示代词、时间状语和地点状语的变化

a) She said, "I will come *this* evening."⟶
She said that she would go *that* evening.

b) He said, "My sister was *here* three days *ago*, but she is not *here now*." ⟶
He said that his sister had been *there* three days *before* but she was not *there then*.

现将这几种变化列表如下:

	直接引语	间接引语
指示代词	this these	that those
时间状语	now today tonight this week(month, etc.) yesterday last week(month, etc.) three days (a year, etc.) ago tomorrow next week (month, etc.)	then that day that night that week(month, etc.) the day before the week(month, etc.) before three days(a year, etc.) before the next day the next week (month, etc.)
地点状语	here	there
动词	come	go

以上这些变化，要根据说话的实际情况来定，不要机械照搬。假如就在当地转述，here 就不必改为 there。如果就在当天转述，yesterday，tomorrow 等时间状语也不必改变。

EXERCISES

1. Put **ou**, **ow** or **oa** in the following words, then read them out:

1) h__	n__	c__	ar__nd	tr__sers
cl__d	d__n	m__th	with__t	th__sand
t__n	sh__t	pl__gh	pron__nce	m__ntain
2) kn__	J__n	gr__	g__t	borr__
c__t	sh__	b__l	thr__	yell__
sl__	r__d	sn__	unkn__n	wind__

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
no longer	tell two people each other's names to get them to know each other
all along	go down
introduce	not any longer
sink	a piece of work
apologize	all the time
job	say sorry

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) How is your new classmate getting **on** with all

of you?

2) I like that shirt on show there very much. Could you let me try it on?

3) From then on no more locusts came to their village.

4) — The light was on the whole night. Who turned it on?

— I did. I'm very sorry I forgot to turn it off before I left.

5) John's parents are dead, so he has to depend on himself.

6) The man on watch noticed something strange on the sea.

7) It was cold. He put on his coat and walked on.

8) It seemed that somebody was spying on him.

9) We all look on Mr Evans, our physics teacher, as a very good friend of ours.

10) Yesterday a space scientist came and gave a talk on space travel for one and a half hours.

4. Turn the following into indirect speech:

Model: "Class is over," said the teacher. ⟶

The teacher said that class was over.

1) "I am very happy to visit your factory," he said.

2) "I can climb up that tree," said the boy.

3) "I don't want to listen to the music now," she said.

4) "I want to say a few words about this afternoon's meeting," said Mr Smith.

5) "There's something wrong with the machine," said the worker.

6) "I've a very bad *cow* here," the Frenchman put his hand on his chest and said.

7) "From one of the windows of my house I can see the railway station," said Wu Qing.

8) "I don't know where the camel is," said the Arab.

5. Turn the following into indirect speech:

A. Model: "I saw a note on my desk," she said.

⟶ She said that she had seen a note on her desk.

1) "We stayed there for two weeks," he told me.

2) "This morning I saw the tracks of a lost camel," said the Arab.

3) "He was here a few weeks ago, and he came again yesterday," she said.

4) "I received two letters from my parents last month," he said.

B. Model: "I'll go to your farm tomorrow," he

said to her. ⟶

He told her that he would go to her farm the next day.

1) "I'll be here tonight," said Li Hua.

2) "I'll come and play table tennis with you at about four o'clock," he said to her.

3) "I'm leaving next week," my sister said to me.

4) "We're going to visit the East Lake next Tuesday," they said.

6. Rewrite the following sentences after the models:

A. Model: "I'm listening to you." (he answered) ⟶ He answered that he was listening to me.

1) "We're working on our lessons now." (they said)

2) "He's telling the judge what happened." (she said)

3) "John is flying a kite on that hill." (they said)

4) "We're having a rest." (he told the boss)

B. Model: "I've worked here since 1976." (the worker said) ⟶

The worker said that he had worked there since 1976.

1) "We've known each other for about three years." (the young man told him)

2) "I haven't seen her these days." (he said)

3) "I've never heard anything about it." (she told him)

4) "The TV play has been on for half an hour." (Wei Fang said)

7. Answer the following questions:

1) Who was Mr Smith?

2) Mr Smith once hired a worker called John Hill, didn't he?

3) What did Mr Smith do on John's first day at work?

4) Why did Mr Smith give John a rise very soon?

5) Why had John been in prison before he worked at Mr Smith's factory?

6) Had John told Mr Smith about his past when he asked Mr Smith for a job?

7) Why did Mr Smith still give John the job even when he knew about his past?

8) What happened to Bob one day? Who did Bob think had taken his wallet?

9) Why did John hit Bob?

10) How did Bob feel when his wife brought him the wallet?

11) Is it right to say"once a thief, always a thief"?

12) What have you learned from the text?

8. Give the English for these:

1) 李明告诉我刘英刚才来要她的词典了。(ask for)

2) 他说他已不再是学生,而是一个医生了。(no longer)

3) 他们说他们决不屈服。(give in)

4) 杰克小声说，他在这次地理测验中出了不少错。(make mistakes)

5) 我姨妈告诉我，她打算领我看看他们的医院。(show ... around)

6) 老板告诉约翰,他不得不解雇他。(fire)

LESSON NINE

The Ninth Lesson

DRILLS

1

Mr Howe:

Is your party going to start at 7 o'clock?
Will all of you take part in it?
Are you preparing for it?

Mrs Brown (to Mary): Did you catch what he said?

Mary: Yes. He asked

if our party was going to start at 7 o'clock.
if all of us would take part in it.
if we were preparing for it.

2

Shop Assistant: What size dress do you wear, Madam?
Which one do you like best?
What else would you like?

Mrs Hill: What did he say, Jack?

Jack: He asked what size dress you wore.
which one you liked best.
what else you would like.

TEXT

EDISON'S BOYHOOD

Thomas Edison was born in 1847. When he was a child, he liked to find out how things worked. One day when he was five, his father saw him sitting on some eggs, and asked

what he was doing that for. Tom did not reply. Instead, he asked his father why he was not able to hatch chickens while hens could.

Young Tom was in school for only three months. During those three months, he asked a lot of questions. Most of them had nothing to do with his lessons. His teacher did not understand why the boy had so many strange questions. He told Tom's mother that Tom was not bright and was not worth teaching. His mother took him out of school and taught him herself. The boy read a lot. He became very interested in science.

By the time he was ten, he had already built a chemistry lab for himself. He planted vegetables in his garden and sold them to buy what he needed for his lab.

Once his mother was ill and she sent for a doctor. The doctor said she needed an operation at once. But it was night and the lamp in the room gave poor light. Edison thought hard. Finally he had an idea. He collected

all the lamps in the house and put them on a long table. Then he placed a big mirror behind them. Now there was enough light, so the doctor could operate. Edison's mother was saved.

At the age of twelve, Edison began selling newspapers on a train. When he was free, he printed a newspaper and sold copies to the railway workers.

One day in August, 1862, Edison saw a little boy playing on the tracks at a station. A train was coming near quickly, and the boy was too frightened to move. Edison rushed out and carried the boy to safety. The boy's father was so thankful that he taught Edison

how to send messages by railway telegraph. Edison soon became very good at it and later he left home to work in different cities. This gave him a start in life. At that time he was just a boy of sixteen.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

part *n.* 部分;角色
take part in 参加
dress *n.* 女服;(统指)衣服(尤指外衣)
wear [wɛə] (wore [wɔ:], worn [wɔ:n]) *vt.* 穿,戴
else [els] *adj.* 别的,其他的
adv. 另外,其他

* * *

boyhood ['bɔihud] *n.* 少年时代
hatch *vt.* & *vi.* 孵出,孵(卵)
during ['djuəriŋ] *prep.* 在……的期间
have nothing to do with 和……无关
worth [wə:θ] *adj.* 值得……的,有……的价值的
be worth (doing) 值得(做)
interest ['intrist] *vt.* 使发生兴趣
n. 兴趣;趣味
interested ['intristid] *adj.* 感兴趣的;关心的
be (become) interested in 对……感兴趣
lab *n.* 实验室
vegetable ['vedʒitəbl] *n.* 蔬菜
sell (sold [səuld], sold) *vt.* & *vi.* 卖
send for 派人去叫(请)
operate ['ɔpəreit] *vi.* & *vt.* 动手术;操作
operation [ˌɔpə'reiʃən] *n.* 手术;操作

lamp *n.* 灯
place *vt.* 放置
mirror ['mirə] *n.* 镜子
age *n.* 年龄
at the age of 在……岁时
print *vt.* & *n.* 印刷
frighten ['fraitn] *vt.* 吓唬
frightened ['fraitnd] *adj.* 受惊的，害怕的
rush *vi.* 冲，奔
rush out 冲出
safety ['seifti] *n.* 安全；保险
telegraph ['teligrɑ:f] *n.* 电报(指通讯方式)；电报机

NOTES

1. Did you catch what he said? 你听懂他说的是什么意思吗？

动词 catch 在这里作"听懂"、"理解"讲。

* * *

2. Thomas Edison ['tɔməs 'edisn] 托玛斯·爱迪生(1847—1931)，美国的科学家和发明家。

Tom 是 Thomas 的昵称。

3. ... he liked to find out how things worked. ……他爱弄明白各种事物的来龙去脉。

things (复数)泛指"情况"、"形势"或"事物"。又如：

But things are different now. 但是现在情况不同了。

4. Instead, he asked his father why he was not able to hatch chickens while hens could. 他反而问他父亲，为什么他不能孵出小鸡，而母鸡却能。

连词 while 在这里作"而"讲。

while hens could 相当于 while hens could hatch chickens。

5. By the time he was ten, he had already built a chemistry lab for himself. 他十岁的时候，就已经给自己建立了一间化学实验室。

By the time he was ten 在这个句子里作时间状语，其中 he was ten 作定语，修饰名词 time。

6. At the age of twelve, Edison began selling newspapers on a train. 爱迪生十二岁时，开始在火车上卖报纸。

此句中的 selling 是动名词，作 began 的宾语。

7. The boy's father was so thankful that he taught Edison how to send messages by railway telegraph. 孩子的父亲非常感激，于是就教爱迪生怎样通过铁路电报传达讯息。

8. This gave him a start in life. 这给了他开始自己事业的机会。

这里 start 是名词，意思是"(生活、事业的)开始"。

GRAMMAR

直接引语和间接引语 (Direct Speech and Indirect Speech) (II)

2. 疑问句　直接引语如果是疑问句，变为间接引语时，要把疑问句语序变为陈述句语序(主语在谓语的前面)，句末

用句号。主语的人称、时态和状语等也要作相应的变化。

1) 一般疑问句　直接引语如果是一般疑问句，变为间接引语时，要用连词 whether 或 if 引导。主句中的谓语动词是 said 时，要改为 asked，没有间接宾语的，可以加一个间接宾语(me, him 或 us 等)。例如:

a) He said, "Are you ready?" ⟶
He **asked** (us) *if* we were ready.

b) He said, "Did you see him last night?" ⟶
He **asked** (me) *whether* I had seen him the night before.

2) 特殊疑问句　直接引语如果是特殊疑问句，变为间接引语时，仍用原来的疑问词引导。例如:

a) "What do you want?" he asked me. ⟶
He **asked** me *what* I wanted.

b) She said to Tom, "How are you feeling now?" ⟶
She **asked** Tom *how* he was feeling *then*.

c) She said, "Where have you been, Mike?" ⟶
She **asked** Mike *where* he had been.

EXERCISES

1. Put **car, ere, air** or **are** in the following words, then read them out:

c__	h__	b__	d__	rep__
w__	h__	p__	c__ful	prep__

wh__ ch__ th__ wh__ver unf__

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
send for	make young birds come out from eggs
place	be afraid
hatch	ask somebody to come
be frightened	have (clothes) on the body
be interested in	put something in a place
wear	like to know and learn about

3. Fill in each of the blanks with one of the expressions given in its proper tense form:

be good at	be strict with
be worth	be born
be interested in	be ready to
be able to	be satisfied with

1) Nathan Hale ____ drawing maps.

2) Lu Xun ____ in 1881.

3) Betty ____ always ____ space science. She wishes to fly in a spaceship one day.

4) We ____ receive TV programmes from many parts of the world through man-made satellites.

5) Mr Black ____ his students. He did not want

them to be late for class.

6) The headmaster ___ what Jenny had done.

7) This dictionary is expensive, but it ___ buying, because it helps a lot in our study.

8) When Lenin was young, he ___ always ___ help others.

4. Turn the following into indirect speech:

A. Model: "Does everyone want to go?" he asked.

⟶ He asked if everyone wanted to go.

1) "Do you have anything tosay for yourself?" the officer asked Nathan Hale.

2) "Did you understand what he said?"Li Hua asked.

3) "Was he here yesterday?" asked Mary.

4) "Have you lost one of your camels?" the men asked the Arab.

5) "Are you going to your home town this summer?" she asked.

6) "Can you tell me how to pronounce this word?" the girl asked.

7) "Are you leaving today or tomorrow?" Joan asked Kate.

8) "Can I speak to Comrade Wang?" asked the boy.

B. Model: "Who has taken my mirror?" Yu Ming asked. ⟶

Yu Ming asked who had taken her mirror.

1) "Why does he have so many strange questions?" the teacher asked her.
2) "Where are you going to grow vegetables?" she asked him.
3) "When will they start building a physics lab?" she asked.
4) "How did you find your way here?" he asked her.
5) "Where did you spend your holiday this year?" he asked me.
6) "Which dress do you like best?" Mrs Hill asked Alice.
7) "What have you done with our goods?" the two men asked the Arab.
8) "How long did it take you to finish the operation?" I asked the doctor.

5. Make dialogues after the model:

Model: What time is it? ⟶

— What time is it?

— I beg your pardon?

— I asked you what time it was.

1) Where's Mr Evans?
2) What are you doing here?
3) What else do you want me to do?
4) Who is talking in the next room?
5) What size shoes does Martin wear?
6) Why did they refuse to have Mike as their friend?
7) How many factories have they built in their town?
8) How long has he been a League member?
9) When will you wake him up?
10) Which restaurant did you go to yesterday?

6. Answer the following questions:

1) Have you ever heard of Thomas Edison? Can you say something about him?
2) Why did Edison sit on some eggs one day when he was only five?
3) Did Edison stay in school long? How long was he in school?
4) Why did the teacher say that Edison was not bright and was not worth teaching?
5) What did his mother do after Edison left school?
6) How did Edison get what he needed for his chemistry lab?
7) What did Edison do to help the doctor operate

on (给……动手术) his mother?

8) What did Edison do when he was twelve?

9) How did Edison save a boy one day in August, 1862?

10) What did the boy's father do to thank Edison?

7. Give the English for these:

1) 王海说他与这件事无关。(have nothing to do with)

2) 我听说许多人参加了运动会。(take part in)

3) 那男孩告诉他父亲,那位战士是怎样救他的。(save)

4) 我问他是否想派人去叫医生。(send for)

5) 他们问,是谁冲出去把孩子抱到了安全的地方。(rush out, carry ... to safety)

6) 爱迪生没有回答父亲的问题,反而问他,为什么母鸡能孵蛋,而他不行呢。(instead, hatch eggs)

8. Fill in the blanks with **a**, **an** or **the** where necessary:

The Cat and the Bell

Once there were ___ lot of mice in ___ old house. They ate up ___ lot of food. So ___ owner of ___ house got ___ cat. ___ cat killed many of ___ mice.

One day ___ oldest mouse said, "All ___ mice must come to my hole tonight, and we'll decide

what we can do about ___ cat."

All ___ mice came. They thought hard and tried to find ___ way to save their lives. Many of them spoke, but no one knew what to do. At last ___ young mouse stood up and said, "Why not tie ___ bell around ___ cat's neck? Then, when ___ cat comes near, we'll hear ___ bell and run away and hide. Then ___ cat won't catch any more of us."

___ oldest mouse said, "That's ___ good idea. If we can tie ___ bell around ___ cat, it will save many of our lives." After ___ moment he asked, "But who's going to do it?"

None of ___ mice answered.

He waited but still no one said anything.

At last he said, "It's easy to say ___ things, but not so easy to do them."

cat *n.* 猫
mouse [maus] *n.* 老鼠
mice(*pl.*)

tie [tai] *vt.* 系,拴
none [nʌn] *pron.*
没有人(没有任何东西)

LESSON TEN

The Tenth Lesson

DRILLS

1

Teacher:

Stop writing and listen to me. Make sentences with these words. Speak a little louder. Pay attention to your pronunciation.

Student A: What did the teacher tell us to do?

Student B: She told us

to stop writing and listen to her. to make sentences with those words. to speak a little louder. to pay attention to our pronunciation.

2

Granny:

Don't play with the cat any more. Don't be late for school, Xiao Hai. Don't drink this water. Don't get your hands dirty.

Xiao Hai: What did Granny say just now?

Yu Lin: Granny told you

not to play with the cat any more.
not to be late for school.
not to drink that water.
not to get your hands dirty.

TEXT

DR BETHUNE

It was late on the night of October 20, 1939, when Dr Bethune was busy working in a field hospital. An Eighth Route Army man riding a horse came from the front. He told Dr Bethune that the front was in great need of medical workers. Immediately, Dr Bethune set off with a medical team.

On their way, they met a group of wound-

ed Eighth Route Army men. They took the wounded soldiers into a small temple at once and Bethune began to operate on them.

Dr Bethune went on working throughout the night. When someone asked him to have a rest, he just went on working. To him, the most important thing was to save lives. He had no time to think about rest.

The next day while an operation was going on, a young man ran in and said to the doctors, "Several hundred enemy soldiers are coming." Soon they heard the sound of guns. But Dr Bethune still went on with his work.

Twenty minutes later, when Bethune was operating on the leg of the last wounded soldier, the guns sounded much closer. Again the young man rushed in and told Dr Bethune not to go on operating any more. "Comrade Bethune, you must leave now!" he cried.

"Let me go on with the operation," said one of the doctors. "You must leave right now, Dr Bethune. Hurry!"

"Please go, Doctor," begged the wounded soldier himself. "It's not a bad wound. Take me with you, or leave me here, but please go before the enemy comes."

"Never mind, my boy, it won't take long," said Dr Bethune. "If I spend a few more minutes on it now, I can save your leg. But if I don't, you'll lose it."

The guns sounded still closer now, but Dr Bethune worked on. He and the other doctors did not leave until the operation was over.

By that time the Japanese were already very near. As Bethune and the other doctors were climbing the hills, they could see the enemy entering the village in the valley below.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

sentence ['sentəns] *n.* 句子
make sentences with 用……造句

loud [laud] *adv.* & *adj.* 大声地(的)

attention [ə'tenʃən] *n.* 注

意

pay attention to 注意

cat *n.* 猫

drink (drank, drunk) *vt.* & *vi.* 喝

n. 饮料

dirty ['dəːti] *adj.* 脏的

* * *

Dr = Doctor

be busy doing 忙着做

field hospital 战地医院；野战医院

route [ruːt] *n.* 路；路线

the Eighth Route Army 八路军

ride (rode, ridden['ridn]) *vt.* & *vi.* 骑(马、自行车等)

front *n.* 前线

in (great) need of (很)需要

medical ['medikəl] *adj.* 医学的；医疗的

immediately [i'miːdjətli] *adv.* 立即

wound [wuːnd] *vt.* 使受伤

n. 伤口

wounded ['wuːndid] *adj.* 受伤的

temple ['templ] *n.* 庙宇；寺院

operate on 给……动手术

go on doing 继续做

throughout [θru(ː)'aut] *prep.* 遍及；在整个……的期间

important [im'pɔːtənt] *adj.* 重要的

enemy ['enimi] *n.* 敌人；敌军

gun *n.* 枪，炮

go on with one's work 继续自己的工作

Never mind. 不要紧。

spend ... on 在……上花费(时间、金钱)

enter ['entə] *vt.* 进入

below [bi'ləu] *adv.* 在下面；向下

prep. 在……以下

NOTES

1. Don't get your hands dirty. 不要把你的手弄脏了。

形容词 dirty 作宾语 hands 的补足语。又如:

The guard cut one boot open. 卫兵把一只靴子割开了。

* * *

2. Norman Bethune ['nɔ:mən be'θju:n] 诺尔曼·白求恩（1890—1939）是国际主义战士，加拿大共产党党员，著名的胸外科医师。

3. It was late on the night of October 20, 1939, when Dr Bethune was busy working in a field hospital. 1939年10月20日深夜，白求恩大夫正在战地医院紧张地工作着。

"be busy doing" 是"忙于做……"的意思。又如:

He's busy working on a model ship. 他正在忙着做轮船模型。

4. An Eighth Route Army man riding a horse came from the front. 一位八路军战士骑着马从前线赶来。

分词短语 riding a horse 用作定语，修饰 man。

5. To him, the most important thing was to save lives. 对他来说，最重要的是挽救(伤员的)生命。

动词不定式短语 to save lives 在这个句子里作表语。

6. He and the other doctors did not leave until the

operation was over. 他和其他的大夫一直到手术完毕才撤离。

not ... until 直到……才

GRAMMAR

直接引语和间接引语 (Direct Speech and Indirect Speech) (III)

3. 祈使句　直接引语如果是祈使句，变为间接引语时，要用 tell (ask, order) someone (not) to do something 这个句型，就是把动词原形变为动词不定式，并在动词不定式之前用 tell, ask, order 等动词及其宾语。如果祈使句为否定式，在动词不定式的前面加 not。

1) She said to us, "Please have a rest." ⟶
   She asked us to have a rest.
2) He said, "Go away." ⟶
   He ordered him (me, her, the boy, etc.) to go away.
3) One of the doctors said, "Let me go on with the operation, Dr Bethune." ⟶
   One of the doctors asked Dr Bethune to let him go on with the operation.
4) He said to Dr Bethune, "Don't go on operating any more." ⟶
   He told Dr Bethune not to go on operating any more.

EXERCISES

1. Put **er, ir, or, ur** or **ear** in the following words, then read them out:

t__m	f__st	w__d	ret__n	G__man
w__k	t__n	h__s	__ly	th__ty
sk__t	w__ld	__th	d__ty	s__vant
n__se	l__n	th__d	s__ch	Th__sday
y__	w__th	w__se	c__cle	c__tainly

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
dirty	at once
work on	go in a car, or on a horse or a bike
immediately	come or go into
ride	go on working
rush	not clean
enter	move suddenly and quickly

3. Give the opposite of each of the following words:

much	never	poor	same	high	heavy
clean	better	clever	many	famous	cheap
reply	fall	give	find	buy	leave
open	begin	cry	lend	forget	sleep
friend	safety	without	up	behind	

4. Turn the following into indirect speech, using the

verbs given in brackets:

Model: "Wait for me, please," the girl said to her mother. (ask) ⟶

The girl asked her mother to wait for her.

1) "Stop talking!" the monitor said to the class. (tell)
2) "Repeat it three times," the teacher said to her. (ask)
3) "Don't make a noise," she said to me. (tell)
4) "Please tell me what happened," Li Hai said to her. (ask)
5) "Stay here!" the officer said to the soldier. (order)
6) "Don't take off your coat," she said to her sister. (ask)
7) "Don't forget to give the message to my wife," he said to Li Ping. (tell)
8) "Don't hide behind others," the bird said to the bat. (tell)
9) "Use your knife to cut the boots open," the officer said to the guard. (order)
10) "Lie down!" Martin said to his dog. (order)

5. Turn the following into direct speech after the models:

A. Models: a. John said he knew nothing about

it. ⟶

John said, "I know nothing about it."

b. She asked us if we could go with her. ⟶

She said to us, "Can you go with me?"

1) Li Hai said he had never been to Hangzhou.
2) She asked if I would go to the cinema that evening.
3) They asked the children if they had touched the things in the lab that morning.
4) Mr Howe said that we must pay more attention to our pronunciation from then on.
5) He told her that her son was not bright and was not worth teaching.
6) Bob asked whether it was true that John had just come out of prison.

B. Models: a. His father asked the boy what he was doing that for. ⟶

His father asked the boy, "What are you doing this for?"

b. Wei Fang asked him to give it to her. ⟶

"Give it to me, please," Wei Fang

said to him.

1) We asked him who he was trying to fool.
2) She asked her sister not to worry about her.
3) He asked the boy why he had made so many mistakes in the test that time.
4) She asked the policeman to tell her the way to the East Street Hospital.
5) I asked him where he came from.
6) He told them to prepare for the operation at once.
7) She asked me when I would return from London.
8) Mother told me not to spend too much time on football.

6. Answer the following questions:

1) When did the story happen?
2) What was Dr Bethune doing when a soldier came from the front?
3) Why did Dr Bethune set off for the front with a medical team immediately?
4) Who did they meet on the way to the front? What did they do then?
5) Dr Bethune worked throughout the night without rest, didn't he? Why did he work so hard?
6) What happened the next day while an operation

was going on?

7) What was Dr Bethune doing twenty minutes later when the guns sounded much closer?

8) What did the young man, the other doctors and the wounded soldier ask Dr Bethune to do?

9) What did Dr Bethune say to the wounded soldier?

10) When did Dr Bethune and his medical team leave the temple?

11) Where were they when the enemy were entering the village?

12) What can you learn from Dr Bethune?

7. Give the English for these:

1) 他说我们现在对生物学比过去重视多了。(pay attention to)

2) 他问我是否会用 "impossible" 这个词造个句子。(make a sentence with)

3) 他向新战士说明，八路军是为什么进行战斗的。(fight for, the Eighth Route Army)

4) 爸爸说时间很晚了，叫我不要继续写了。(go on)

5) 伤员请白求恩大夫别在他腿上花费更多的时间了。(spend ... on)

6) 刘同志对我妈妈说，他家乡非常需要英语教师。他问她能否帮他找到几位。(in great need of)

8. Read the following:

A Story About Thomas Edison

Late one night, Mr and Mrs Edison could still hear the sound of the telegraph coming from downstairs. Al was sending messages to his friend Jim.

"That boy should be in bed by now," Mrs Edison said. Mr Edison called out to his son, "It's past your bedtime, Al."

"Yes, Pa. I'll be right up." Al tapped out "Good night" to Jim, then went to bed.

Al wanted to stay up late, but his parents would not let him do so. Then he had an idea.

The next night Al came home without the newspaper for his father. When Mr Edison asked for his paper, Al apologized and said he had left it at Jim's house. Mr Edison was disappointed.

After supper, Mr Edison sat down to read. Al watched his father and could see that he was not enjoying his book.

"Pa," he said, "I think I can get the news for you."

"How?"

"We can ask Jim to send the news by telegraph," Al said.

"That would take all night," said Mr Edison.

"No, it won't," Al said, "Jim's not as fast as I am, but he's quite good."

"Well," said Mr Edison slowly, "let's try it."

So Al sent a message to Jim. Soon the telegraph was working away. Al wrote down the news for his father to read.

For the next two nights Al "forgot" to bring the newspapers. He and his father sat listening to the telegraph.

Finally Mr Edison understood. "I see what you mean," he said laughing. "You bring me the newspaper, and I'll let you stay up until half past twelve to practise on your telegraph."

Al [æl] 是 Alva 的节略。(节略的人名常用于关系较为密切的人们中间，常常带有亲昵的语气。Thomas Alva Edison 是发明家爱迪生的全名。在一般场合，中间名 Alva 常省略。)

bedtime ['bedtaim] *n.* 就寝时间

pa [pɑ:] *n.* papa(爸爸)的略体

tap *vt.* (连续)轻打，轻拍

tap out 打出

stay up 不睡觉

work away 继续工作

practise ['præktis] *vt.*
练习

LESSON ELEVEN

The Eleventh Lesson

TEXT

THE FISHERMAN AND THE GENIE

Once upon a time there was an old fisherman. He went fishing very early every morning, but he never cast his net more than four times a day.

One morning, he went out early to the sea. He cast his net for the first time, and drew in the body of an animal. He cast it a second time, and drew in an old basket full of sand. He cast it a third time, and drew in a lot of stones. It seemed he would have nothing to take home that morning.

Day had now broken, and he cast his net for the last time. After some time, he began to draw the net in. He found it was very heavy. But there were not any fish in it. Instead he found a jar with a lid. He shook the

jar, but could hear nothing. So he took off the lid and looked inside. He could see nothing. After a while a light smoke came slowly out of the jar. Then little by little, the smoke grew heavier and thicker until finally it turned into a terrible Genie!

"Get down on your knees," said the Genie, "for I'm going to kill you."

"Why? Didn't I set you free from the jar?"

"That's why I'm going to kill you, but I'll let you choose how you're going to die."

"But why?"

"Listen, and I will tell you my story."

"I was one of the spirits in heaven. But I did not want to obey Solomon's orders. So

one day, he put me in this jar and threw it into the sea.

"During the first hundred years of my stay in the sea, I made a promise that if anyone set me free I would make him very rich. But no one came. During the second hundred years, I promised that if anyone set me free I would show him all the treasures in the earth. But still no one came. During the third hundred years, I promised that if anyone came to set me free, I would make him king over the earth.

"Still no one came. Then I became very angry, and decided that if anyone should set me free I would kill him at once. Now you have come and set me free. So you must die, but I will let you say how you want to die."

The fisherman was not frightened. He said: "Since I must die, I must. But before I die, answer me one question."

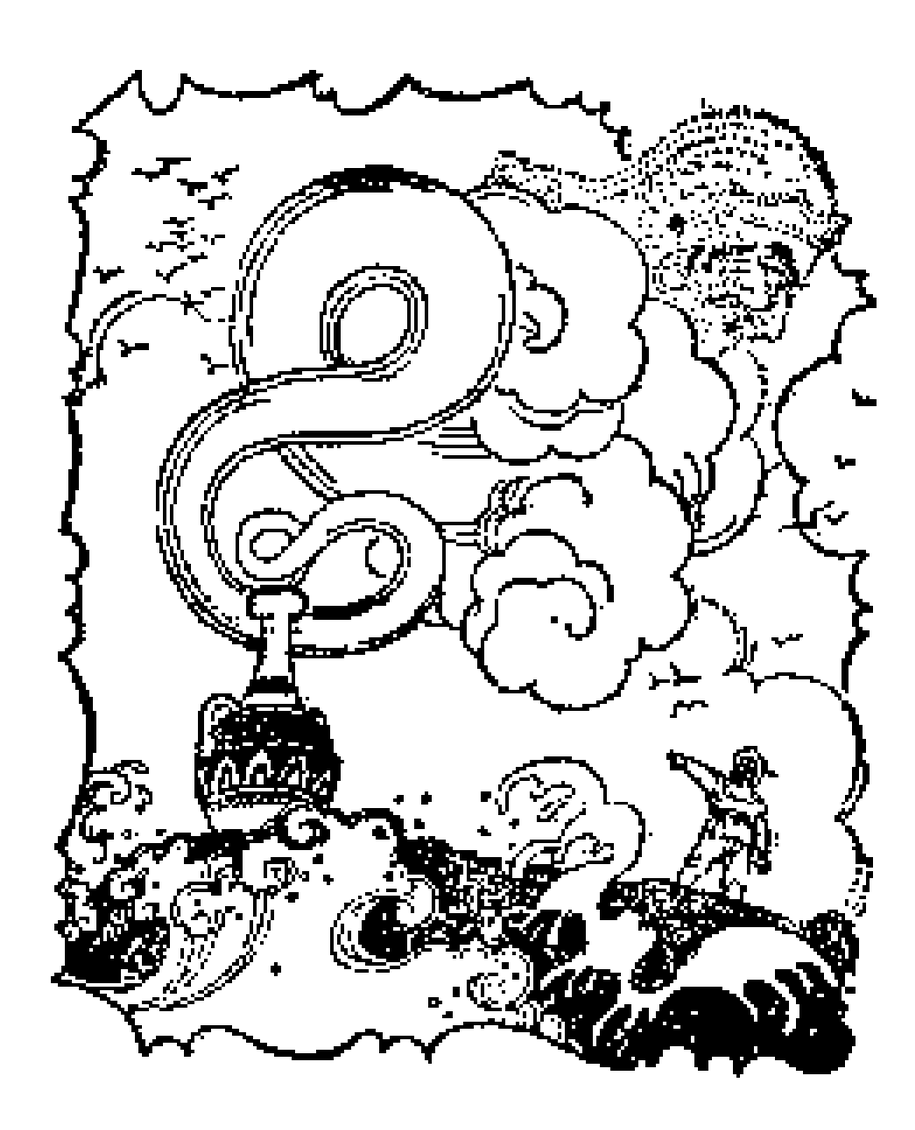
"All right, but be quick."

"Were you really in the jar? You are so big and the jar is so small that it could hard-

ly hold one of your feet."

"Of course I was in the jar. Don't you believe me?"

"No, and I won't until I've seen you in the jar with my own eyes."



When he heard this, the Genie changed again into smoke. Slowly the smoke went back into the jar. When all of it was in the jar, the fisherman quickly put the lid on and threw it back into the sea.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

fisherman ['fiʃəmən] *n.* 渔夫

genie ['dʒiːni] *n.* 妖怪

upon [ə'pɔn] *prep.* 在……

上面

once upon a time 从前

cast [kɑ:st] (cast, cast)

vt. & *vi.* 投掷

net *n.* 网

cast a net 撒网

draw [drɔ:] *vt.* & *vi.* 拉;牵;引出

draw in 收(网)

full [ful] *adj.* 满

full of 充满

sand *n.* 沙,沙地

jar *n.* 坛子;罐子;缸

lid *n.* (坛子、壶等)盖子

shake (shook[ʃuk], shaken ['ʃeikən]) *vt.* & *vi.* 摇动,震动

smoke *n.* 烟

vi. & *vt.* 冒烟;吸烟

little by little 逐渐地

thick *adj.* 厚的;浓的

turn into 变成

knee *n.* 膝盖

set ... free 释放

choose [tʃu:z] (chose [tʃəuz], chosen ['tʃəuzn])

vt. & *vi.* 选择

spirit ['spirit] *n.* 妖怪;精神

heaven ['hevn] *n.* 天国,天堂;天空

promise ['promis] *n.* 诺言

vt. & *vi.* 答应

make a promise 答应,许下诺言

anyone (= anybody)

pron. 任何人

hardly ['hɑ:dli] *adv.* 几乎不

own [əun] *adj.* 自己的

NOTES

1. Day had now broken, ... 这时天已亮了,……

2. But there were not any fish in it. 但是网里什么鱼也没有。

指鱼的条数时,复数可用 fish,也可用 fishes,如

one fish, three fish(es)。指鱼的种类时，复数需用 fishes，如 fishes of the lake（湖中的鱼类）。

3. "Get down on your knees," said the Genie, "for I'm going to kill you." "跪下，"妖怪说，"因为我要杀死你。"

连词 for 在这里的意思是"因为"，表示原因，说明上文未交代过的情况，但语气比 because 弱。

4. That's why I'm going to kill you, ... 这就是为什么我要杀死你，……

why I'm going to kill you 是表语从句。

5. But I did not want to obey Solomon's orders. 但是我不愿听从所罗门的命令。

Solomon ['sɔləmən] 所罗门，古代以色列的国王。传说他有一颗刻着神符的印，可以用来对天上地下的鬼神发号施令，谁不服从，就给予惩罚。

6. ... I promised that if anyone came to set me free, I would make him king over the earth. ……我许下诺言：谁来把我放了，我就让他当世界之王。

句中 king 是宾语 him 的补足语，over the earth 是定语，修饰 king。king 在这里表示职位，前面可以不加冠词。

make him king 是"使他成为国王"的意思。又如：

We made him our monitor. 我们推选他当我们的班长。

7. Then I ... decided that if anyone should set me

free I would kill him at once. 于是我……拿定了主意，万一有人把我放了，我就立刻杀死他。

8. Since I must die, I must. 既然我非死不可，那我就死好了。

在主句 I must 后面省略了 die。

9. You are so big and the jar is so small that it could hardly hold one of your feet. 你的个子这么大，坛子这么小，它甚至盛不下你的一只脚。

hold 在这里是"容纳，盛"的意思。

10. No, and I won't until I've seen you in the jar with my own eyes. =No, and I won't believe you until I've seen you in the jar with my own eyes. 是的，我要亲眼看见你在坛子里才会相信。

EXERCISES

1. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
once upon a time	move from side to side or up and down
cast	say one will or will not do something
shake	almost not
turn into	at some time in the past
promise	change into

hardly throw

2. Put the following into English:

1) 坐飞机 2) 展出 3) 逐渐 4) 低声地

5) 一直 6) 不再 7) 非常需要 8) 医务工作者

9) 八路军 10) 药房 11) 一个十二岁的女孩

12) 战地医院 13) 从前 14) 在九十岁时

15) 通宵 16) 在一九八四年五月六日的晚上

17) 一本厚的词典 18) 在过去三年期间

19) 永远 20) 到去年年底

3. Join each pair of sentences, using so ... that:

A. Model: The book is very interesting. Everybody in our class wants to read it. ⟶ The book is so interesting that everybody in our class wants to read it.

1) That box is very strong. She couldn't open it.

2) The stories about Monkey King are very interesting. People, old and young, enjoy listening to them.

3) This question was very difficult. Nobody in our class was able to answer it.

4) There were many locusts. The farmers could not kill them all.

B. Model: She was very angry. She couldn't speak. ⟶

She was **too** angry **to** speak.

She was **so** angry **that** she couldn't speak.

1) He is very tired. He can't go any further.

2) His father was very poor. He couldn't send his son to school.

3) They were frightened. They couldn't say a word.

4) That huge jar is very heavy. Nobody can lift it.

5) This pair of trousers is very dirty. My brother won't wear it.

4. Put the following into Chinese:

A. 1) a jar full of water 2) a basket full of vegetables

3) a room full of people 4) a box full of cards

5) a bag full of corn 6) a bottle full of milk

7) a bowl full of rice 8) a cup full of tea

B. 1) You've **made** a mistake. The winner is a girl, not a boy.

2) When the teacher was writing on the blackboard, Xiao Hua **made** faces at his classmates.

3) We are trying to **make** Beijing, our capital,

a more beautiful city.

4) The chemist's shop isn't open today because they are **making** repairs.

5) The old woman **made** a promise that she would marry her daughter to the young man.

6) The boss **made** them work over ten hours a day.

7) To **make** a living, the boy had to sell newspapers at the age of 12.

8) He was the youngest, but still they decided to **make** him their captain.

9) — What is the kite **made** of?
— It is **made** of paper.

10) The machine **made** such a terrible noise that we couldn't hear each other.

11) As soon as they reached the valley, they began to **make** farms and build houses.

12) With glass people can **make** all kinds of beautiful things.

5. Rewrite the following sentences, using **not ... until**:

Model: I will believe it when I hear it with my own ears. ⟶
I won't believe it until I hear it with my own ears.

1) The guard will let you go in if you show him your pass.
2) My brother learned English after he entered the college.
3) The man in the chemist's shop knew what the old woman wanted when she put her hands on her chest and began to cough.
4) The doctor started the operation when the room was bright enough.
5) Dr Bethune and his medical team left the village after the last operation was over.

6. Read the text and then say Yes or No to the following sentences:

1) The old fisherman went fishing very early every morning, because he wanted to cast his net more than four times a day. ( )
2) One morning the fisherman got nothing but a jar with a lid on it after he had cast his net four times. ( )
3) When the fisherman took off the lid and looked into the jar, he saw something strange in it. ( )
4) The Genie was going to kill the fisherman because he had set the Genie free too late. ( )
5) Solomon put the Genie in the jar and threw it

into the sea because he had refused to do what Solomon ordered him to. ( )

6) The Genie stayed in the sea as long as three hundred years. ( )

7) The fisherman asked the Genie if he had really been in the jar, because he did not believe that the Genie could be in such a small jar. ( )

8) The fisherman was brave and clever. He saved his own life at last. ( )

LESSON TWELVE

The Twelfth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Read out the following pairs of words and tell their different meanings or pronunciation:

1)	one — won	way — weigh	I — eye
	son — sun	meat — meet	right — write
	for — four	sea — see	war — wore
	no — know	hole — whole	father — farther
	here — hear	wear — where	new — knew
	our — hour	there — their	weather—whether
2)	sea — say	wheat — wait	straight — street
	still — steal	lift — left	cat — cut
	send — sand	feel — fell	quite — quiet
	back — bike	did — deed	rail — real
	fool — full	work — walk	run — ran

2. Put the following into English:

1) 同……相处很好	2) 破门而入	3) 屈服
4) 参加	5) 派人请	6) 注意
7) 释放	8) 复活	9) 把……看做
10) 由……制成	11) 拿走	12) 带某人参观

13) 抓住　　14) 接着做　　15) 对……感兴趣

16) 冲出去　　17) 收网　　18) 变成

19) 给……动手术　20) 在……花费(时间或钱)

3. Put the following into Chinese:

A. 1) Grandma will **give** Tom a present on Christmas Day.

2) When the German girl **gave** her concert, Liszt played the last piece.

3) He **gives** Japanese lessons to some Chinese medical workers in the evening twice a week.

4) Could you **give** a message to my aunt?

5) The fire **gave** so little light that I could hardly see the words on the wall.

6) He will **give** you some cotton. Then you'll have enough for your quilt.

7) The enemy beat him, but he didn't say a word. He would never **give** in.

8) That chance **gave** him a start in life.

9) The general will come and **give** a talk on the history of our army.

10) The musician watched the boy play the violin for a while, then **gave** him some advice.

B. 1) Mr Howe has **taken** more than 100 photos of the three cities in China.

2) Go and ask the nurse to take your temperature before you go to the doctor.

3) It's getting colder. Don't take off your jacket.

4) He took another look at his boy before he left.

5) Several men came up close to the thief. Two of them took hold of him and sent him to the police station.

6) Last night somebody broke into Mr White's house and took away a lot of things.

7) Did many people take part in Rose's birthday party?

8) He took five *yuan* out of his wallet and gave it to the shop assistant.

9) It took them over two years to build that bridge.

4. For each noun in Column I find a word with the same root in Column II:

I	II
operation	foolish
pronunciation	different
fool	sunny
cloud	sandy
safety	difficult

sun	**draw**
sand	**cloudy**
drawing	**operate**
difficulty	**safe**
difference	**pronounce**

5. Fill in the **blanks** with **in, on, by, for, of, towards, during, through, throughout** or **without**:
   1) They had finished printing 50,000 copies ___ half past five yesterday afternoon.
   2) The doctor gave me some medicine ___ my cold.
   3) My uncle had worked ___ Egypt ___ almost four years before he returned home.
   4) Will you get a copy ___ the new dictionary ___ me?
   5) There are trees ___ both sides of the road.
   6) ___ the summer holidays, I travelled to the north and had a wonderful time.
   7) Did you really go ___ the forest alone?
   8) ___ the winter the peasants were busy building new houses.
   9) We could see a ship coming ___ us.
   10) There is no smoke ___ fire.
6. Fill in each blank with the correct tense of the given verb:

1) A: ___ you ___ (go) to the play "Tea House (茶馆)" last night?

B: No, I ___.

A: Why ___ you ___ (not go) to see it?

B: Because I ___ (see) it recently.

A: When ___ you ___ (see) it?

B: I ___ (see) it last Wednesday.

2) Joan and I ___ (go) to a concert the night before. But we ___ (be) a little late. The concert ___ already ___ (begin) when we ___ (get) there.

3) Mr Hill ___ (come) to our country last year. He ___ (study) Chinese for one and a half years in Australia. But he ___ (not learn) to speak Chinese well. When he first ___ (come), he ___ (find) people ___ (can not understand) him. Now he ___ (speak) very good Chinese.

4) One day, when my father and I ___ (visit) the Science Palace, we ___ (meet) Comrade Chen Hua, an old friend of my father's. They ___ (not see) each other for about thirteen years. They ___ (be) very glad to see each other. Comrade Chen ___ (tell) my father that he ___ (come) to take part in

a meeting. He ____ (say) he ____ (stay) here for half a month and ____ (ask) my father to go and see him. My father ____ (promise) he ____ (go) as soon as he ____ (have) time.

7. Join each of the sentences or phrases in Column I with a proper one in Column II:

I	II
1) Bob and his workmates said they would leave the factory if Mr Smith refused to fire John. That meant	1) that his workmates were not as warm to him as before.
2) Nathan Hale gave his life for his country. Did you know	2) Mr Smith would have to close his factory.
3) The man in the shop did not quite understand the Frenchman. He looked at him and wondered	3) that he had seen ants pulling pieces of corn near the tracks of the camel.
4) The two men asked the Arab how he knew the camel was carrying corn. He answered	4) they were going to win.
5) John told Bob it was	5) he was just twenty-

true that once he had been a thief. From then on he noticed	one when he was hanged?
6) After he had watched for a while, the bat flew over to join the birds, because he thought	6) he would immediately set off for the front with a medical team.
7) When Dr Bethune heard that the front needed medical workers, he promised that	7) if he had heard him correctly.

8. Put the following into Chinese:

1) Will you please buy some stamps for me when you pass the post office?
2) Can you pass him another piece of cake?
3) I was reading the evening paper when suddenly the lights went out.
4) The peasants went out early to get in the wheat.
5) Look down. Don't look up.
6) How strange! I looked up the word in my dictionary but couldn't find it.
7) Children must not play with fire.
8) The workers tried to get Mr Smith to fire

John.

9) He said in his letter that all his family **missed** us very much.

10) Dick got to the station too late and **missed** the train.

9. Give the English for these:

1) 我告诉他，到昨天下午为止，我们把地里的稻子全部割完了。

2) 他问我寒假期间是否回家乡。

3) 他说他正忙着印报纸，不能早回家。

4) 老板说他已雇了十五个工人了。

5) 那妇女哀求救生船上的人给她让个地方。

6) 那位有钱的妇人叫歌唱家在楼下同伴人们一起吃晚饭。

7) 母鳄鱼命令她孩子捉住猴子，把猴子的心送给她吃。

8) 刘梅问警察她该乘哪一路公共汽车。

9) 火车上的人叫那男孩不要喊，但他坚持说前面有危险，火车必须立即停下。

10) 她向奶奶解释说，很多星球看上去很小，只是因为它们距离地球远得多。

11) 我的祖母十岁的时候就开始在一家工厂干活了。老板常常让她一天工作十一、二个小时。她很瘦，时常生病。

12) 那位战士又跑了进来，叫白求恩大夫立刻离开那座庙。枪声更近了，可是白求恩大夫不着急，仍然继续

做手术。

10. Read the following:

The Clever Cock

Four friends were drinking in a village pub. Their jackets were hanging on the backs of their chairs. Suddenly one of them, Jack, shouted that he had lost five pounds. Fred said he was sure nobody there had stolen the money. Tom suggested they should all empty their pockets on the table. But the owner of the pub would not let them do that because money all looks the same. Nobody knew what to do. Just then, Jim, a traveller, stood up. He said he could help them find the money.

"You know how clever some animals are," he said. "I've found out that cocks are good at catching thieves. Let's borrow the pub owner's cock."

Jim took a big black pot and put it upside down on the table. Then he put the cock under it. "After I turn off the lights," he said, "you must come up one by one and touch the bottom of the pot with your right hand. When the thief does so, the cock will crow."

The others did not know whether they should

believe him. One by one they went past the table in the dark, but the cock never made a noise.

"I'm afraid it was a waste of time," Fred said when the light went on.

"I'm not sure it was," Jim said. Then he asked everybody to show his right hand. He looked at each hand in turn, then took Fred's hand. "Fred, give the five pounds back to Jack."

"But the cock never crowed!" said Fred.

Jim told Fred to look at all the hands. "They're all black with soot except yours. Can you explain why you didn't dare touch the pot, Fred?"

Fred's face went white. He hung his head

pub *n.* 酒店
money ['mʌni] *n.* 钱
suggest [sə'dʒest] *vt.* 建议
empty ['empti] *vt.* 把……倒空
traveller ['trævlə] *n.* 旅客
pot *n.* 锅
upside ['ʌpsaid] down 颠倒
bottom ['bɔtəm] *n.* 底
crow [krəu] *vi.* (公鸡)啼
dark *n.* 黑暗;暗处
waste [weist] *n.* & *vt.* 浪费
in turn 依次

soot [su:t] *n.* 煤烟

go white 变白

hang (hung, hung) *vt.*

垂下

VOCABULARY

A

against [ə'geinst] *prep.*
反对；对着
turn against 背叛 2
age [eidʒ] *n.* 年龄
at the age of 在……岁时 9
all along 一直，始终 8
almost ['ɔ:lməust] *adv.*
几乎，差不多 3
ant [ænt] *n.* 蚂蚁 4
anyone (= anybody)
pron. 任何人 11
apologize [ə'pɔlədʒaiz]
vi. 道歉 8
Arab ['ærəb] *n.*
阿拉伯人 4
as [æz, əz] *prep.* 作为 1
conj. 因为，由于 3
attention [ə'tenʃən] *n.*
注意
pay attention to 注意 10

B

bat [bæt] *n.* 蝙蝠 1
be busy doing 忙着做 10
be made of
由……制(构)成 7
be on 进行 3
be on show 展览 7
beat [bi:t] (beat,
beaten ['bi:tn]) *vi.*
(心脏等)跳动
vi. & *vt.* 敲打 2
beg [beg] *vt.* & *vi.*
请求，乞求 8
below [bi'ləu] *adv.*
在下面；向下
prep. 在……以下 10
blind [blaind] *adj.* 瞎的 4
blood [blʌd] *n.* 血 8
Bob [bɔb] 鲍勃(男名) 8
body ['bɔdi] *n.* 身体；
尸体 7
boot [bu:t] *n.* 长统靴 2
boss [bɔs] *n.* 老板 8
boyhood ['bɔihud] *n.*
少年时代 9

brave [breiv] *adj.*
勇敢的 5
break into 破门而入，闯入 7
bridge [bridʒ] *n.* 桥 2
British ['britiʃ] *adj.*
英国的 2
build [bild] (built [bilt], built) *vt.* & *vi.*
建设；建立；建造 5
by the end of 在……结束时；到……末为止 4

C

call out 大声叫唤 1
camel ['kæməl] *n.* 骆驼 4
captain ['kæptin] *n.*
陆军上尉；船长；(足球队等)队长 2
cast [kɑ:st] (cast, cast) *vt.* & *vi.* 投掷 11
cat [kæt] *n.* 猫 10
catch a cold 伤风，感冒 3
catch hold of 抓住 8
chance [tʃɑ:ns] *n.* 机会 8
chemist ['kemist] *n.*
化学家；药剂师
a chemist's shop 药房 3
chemistry ['kemistri]
n. 化学 4
chest [tʃest] *n.* 胸部 3
choose [tʃu:z] (chose [tʃəuz], chosen ['tʃəuzn]) *vt.* & *vi.*
选择 11
close [kləus]
adv. & *adj.* 靠近地(的) 4
cloud [klaud] *n.* 云 5
come back to life
苏醒过来；复活 7
corn [kɔ:n] *n.* 谷物；玉米 4
correctly [kə'rektli] *adv.*
正确地；恰当地 3
cotton ['kɔtn] *n.* 棉花 2
cross [krɔs] *vt.*
越过，穿过 5
cut [kʌt] (cut, cut) *vt.*
割，砍，切 2

D

day and night 日日夜夜 3
defence [di'fens] *n.*
防御；保卫 2

depend [di'pend] *vi.*
依靠
depend on 依赖,依靠 5
desert ['dezət] *n.*
沙漠;荒地 4
dirty ['də:ti] *adj.* 脏的 10
do with 对付,处置 4
Dr = Doctor 10
draw [drɔ:] *vt.* & *vi.*
拉;牵;引出
draw in 收(网) 11
drawing ['drɔ:iŋ] *n.* 图
(指素描或工程图样) 2
dress [dres] *n.* 女服;
(统指)衣服(尤指外衣) 9
drink [driŋk] (drank
[dræŋk], drunk
[drʌŋk]) *vt.* & *vi.* 喝
n. 饮料 10
drive [draiv] (drove
[drəuv], driven
['drivn]) *vt.* & *vi.*
驱赶;驾驶(马车、汽车等)
drive off 赶走 1
during ['djuəriŋ] *prep.*
在……的期间 9

E

eat up 吃光 5
Egypt ['i:dʒipt] *n.* 埃及
Egyptian [i'dʒipʃən]
n. 埃及人
adj. 埃及的 7
else [els] *adj.*
别的,其他的
adv. 另外,其他 9
enemy ['enimi] *n.*
敌人;敌军 10
enter ['entə] *vt.* 进入 10

F

farmer ['fɑ:mə] *n.*
农夫;农场主 3
fear [fiə] *vi.*, *vt.* & *n.*
害怕;恐惧 5
field hospital
战地医院;野战医院 10
fight [fait] (fought
[fɔ:t], fought)
vi. & *vt.* 打仗(架);与
……打仗(架)
n. 战斗 1
fire ['faiə] *vt.* 开火;射击;

(口语)解雇

n. 火 8

fisherman ['fiʃəmən]

n. 渔夫 11

fool [fu:l] *vi.* & *vt.*

愚弄,欺骗

n. 傻子 1

for ever 永远 7

foreign ['forin] *adj.*

外国的 7

Frenchman ['frentʃmən]

n. 法国人 3

friendly ['frendli] *adj.*

友好的 8

frighten ['fraitn] *vt.*

吓唬

frightened ['fraitnd]

adj. 受惊的,害怕的 9

from then on 从那时起 5

front [frʌnt] *n.* 前线 10

full [ful] *adj.* 满

full of 充满 11

G

general ['dʒenərəl] *n.*

将军 2

genie ['dʒi:ni] *n.* 妖怪 11

get on well with

与……相处融洽 8

give in 屈服,让步 8

go by air 坐飞机去 7

go on doing 继续做 10

go on with one's work

继续自己的工作 10

go out (灯,火)熄灭 3

go over 走到另一边去;

改变立场 1

goods [gudz] *n.* 商品;

货物 4

grass [gra:s] *n.* 草;草地 4

group [gru:p] *n.* 组,团

体;群

a group of 一群(组) 4

grow [grəu] *vt.* 种植

vi. 渐渐变得 2

gun [gʌn] *n.* 枪,炮 10

H

hand [hænd] *vt.* 传递;

交给 2

hang [hæŋ] (hanged,

hanged) *vt.* 绞死;吊死 2

happen ['hæpən] *vi.*

(偶然)发生 3

hardly ['ha:dli] *adv.* 几乎不 11
hat [hæt] *n.* 帽子（一般指有边的帽子） 3
hatch [hætʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 孵出，孵(卵) 9
have nothing to do with 和……无关 9
hear from 收到……的来信 1
heaven ['hevn] *n.* 天国，天堂；天空 11
hide [haid] (hid [hid], hidden ['hidn]) *vi.* & *vt.* 藏 1
Hill [hil] 希尔(姓) 8
hire ['haiə] *vt.* & *n.* 雇用；租用 8
home town 故乡，家乡 4
honest ['ɔnist] *adj.* 诚实的，正直的 8
hope [həup] *vt.* & *n.* 希望 1
Howe [hau] 豪(姓) 2
huge [hju:dʒ] *adj.* 巨大的 7

I

if [if] *conj.* 是否 2
immediately [i'mi:djətli] *adv.* 立即 10
important [im'pɔ:tənt] *adj.* 重要的 10
in a hurry 匆忙 1
in a low voice 低声地 8
in a short while 不久 5
in life 一生中 8
in (great) need of (很)需要 10
in no time 立刻；很快 5
insist [in'sist] *vt.* & *vi.* 坚持；坚决主张 4
interest ['intrist] *vt.* 使发生兴趣
n. 兴趣；趣味
interested ['intristid] *adj.* 感兴趣的；关心的
be (become) interested in 对……感兴趣 9
introduce [ˌintrə'dju:s] *vt.* 介绍 8

J

jar [dʒɑ:] *n.*
坛子;罐子;缸 11
job [dʒɔb] *n.* 工作 8
joy [dʒɔi] *n.* 欢乐;高兴
to one's joy 使某人高兴的是 5
judge [dʒʌdʒ] *n.* 法官 4

K

kill [kil] *vt.* & *vi.*
杀死;弄死 5
knee [ni:] *n.* 膝盖 11

L

lab [læb] *n.* 实验室 9
lame [leim] *adj.* 跛的,瘸的 4
lamp [læmp] *n.* 灯 9
leaf [li:f] *n.* 叶
leaves (*pl.*) 5
less than 不到,少于 4
lid [lid] *n.* (坛子、壶等)盖子 11
lie [lai] *vi.* 存在;位于 5
lift [lift] *vt.* & *vi.*
举起,抬起 7
light [lait] *n.* 光;灯(光)
adj. 明亮的;淡色的 3
little by little 逐渐地 11
locust ['ləukəst] *n.* 蝗虫 5
look on ... as 把……看作 7
look up (在词典、参考书中)查寻 3
lost [lɔst] *adj.* 丢失的;迷途的 4
loud [laud] *adv.* & *adj.*
大声地(的) 10
low [ləu] *adj.* 低的;浅的 5

M

machine [mə'ʃi:n] *n.*
机器 7
medical ['medikəl]
adj. 医学的;医疗的 10
meet [mi:t] (met [met], met) *vt.* & *vi.*
遇见;迎接 3
mirror ['mirə] *n.* 镜子 9
miss [mis] *vt.* 怀念;错过;没看到 1
mistake [mis'teik] *n.*

错误

make a mistake 犯错误 8

modern ['mɔdən] *adj.*

现代的 7

monument ['mɔnjumənt]

n. 纪念碑；纪念物 5

mountain ['mauntin]

n. 山；山脉 5

mummy ['mʌmi] *n.*

木乃伊；干尸 7

N

nearly ['niəli] *adv.*

将近；几乎 7

neck [nek] *n.* 颈，脖子 2

neither ['naiðə]

adj. & *pron.* （两者）

都不

conj. & *adv.* 也不 1

net [net] *n.* 网

cast a net 撒网 11

Never mind. 不要紧。 10

newsreel ['nju:zri:l] *n.*

新闻影片 3

no longer 不再 8

nor [nɔ:] *conj.* 也不

neither ... nor ... 既不……也不…… 1

O

officer ['ɔfisə] *n.* 军官 2

operate ['ɔpəreit]

vi. & *vt.* 动手术；操作

operation [ˌɔpə'reiʃən]

n. 手术；操作 9

operate on 给……动手

术 10

order ['ɔ:də] *vt.* & *n.*

命令

n. 顺序 2

own [əun] *adj.* 自己的 11

P

pair [pɛə] *n.* 一对，一双

a pair of 一对，一双 3

pardon ['pɑ:dn] *n.* & *vt.*

原谅，宽恕 3

Paris ['pæris] *n.* 巴黎

（法国首都） 3

part [pɑ:t] *n.* 部分；角色

take part in 参加 9

past [pɑ:st] *n.* 过去 8

pay [pei] (paid [peid],

paid) *vt.* & *vi.*

给……报酬；付款
n. 工资 2
place [pleis] *vt.* 放置 9
plenty ['plenti] *n.*
充足；大量
plenty of 充足的；
相当多的 2
plough [plau] *n.*,
vt. & *vi.* 犁 3
print [print] *vt.* & *n.*
印刷 9
prison ['prizn] *n.* 监狱 8
promise ['promis] *n.* 诺言
vt. & *vi.* 答应
make a promise
答应，许下诺言 11
pronounce [prə'nauns]
vt. 发音
pronunciation
[prə,nʌnsi'eiʃən] *n.*
发音 3
pull [pul] *vt.* & *vi.*
拉，拖；拔 4
put on 穿上(衣服)；
戴上(帽子等) 3
pyramid ['pirəmid] *n.*
金字塔 7

Q

queen [kwi:n] *n.*
女王；王后 7

R

railway ['reilwei] *n.*
铁路 3
rank [ræŋk] *n.* 军衔 2
recently ['ri:sntli] *adv.*
近来 1
refuse [ri'fju:z] *vt.* & *vi.*
拒绝 1
regret [ri'gret] *vt.*,
vi. & *n.* 遗憾，抱歉；
悔恨 2
repeat [ri'pi:t] *vt.*,
vt. & *n.* 重复；重说(做) 3
reply [ri'plai] *vt.* & *n*
回答；答复 3
ride [raid] (rode
[rəud], ridden
['ridn]) *vt.* & *vi.*
骑(马、自行车等) 10
rise [raiz] (rose [rəuz],
risen ['rizn]) *vi.* & *n.*
升高；增长 8

rope [rəup] *n.* 绳子 2
route [ru:t] *n.* 路;路线
the Eighth Route Army 八路军 10
rush [rʌʃ] *vi.* 冲,奔
rush out 冲出 9

S

safety ['seifti] *n.* 安全;保险 9
salt [so:lt] *n.* 盐
Salt Lake City 盐湖城 5
sand [sænd] *n.* 沙,沙地 11
satisfy ['sætisfai] *vt.* 使满意;使满足
be satisfied with 对……感到满意 4
sea [si:] *n.* 海洋,海 5
seagull ['si:gʌl] *n.* 海鸥 5
search [sə:tʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 搜查;探索 2
seem [si:m] *vi.* 好象 1
sell [sel] (sold [səuld], sold) *vt.* & *vi.* 卖 9
send for 派人去叫(请) 9
sentence ['sentəns] *n.* 句子
make sentences with 用……造句 10
set ... free 释放 11
set out 出发;开始 4
shake [ʃeik] (shook [ʃuk], shaken ['ʃeikən]) *vt.* & *vi.* 摇动,震动 11
show ... around ... 带领(某人)参观…… 8
since [sins] *conj.* 由于;既然 8
sink [siŋk] (sank [sæŋk], sunk [sʌŋk]) *vi.* 下沉;消沉 8
smoke [sməuk] *n.* 烟
vi. & *vt.* 冒烟;吸烟 11
space [speis] *n.* 空地;间隙 4
spend [spend] (spent [spent], spent) *vt.* 度过;花费(金钱,时间等) 7
spend ... on 在……上花费(时间、金钱) 10
spirit ['spirit] *n.* 妖怪;精神 11
spy [spai] *vi.* & *vt.*

侦察;刺探
n. 间谍
spy on 窥探 1
station ['steiʃən] *n.* 站;
所;车站 3
steal [sti:l] (stole
[stəul], stolen
['stəulən]) *vt.* 偷,窃取 4
straight [streit]
adv. & *adj.* 直地(的) 2
strange [streindʒ] *adj.*
奇怪的;陌生的 5
strong [strɔŋ] *adj.*
坚固的;强有力的 7
such [sʌtʃ, sətʃ]
adv. 那么
adj. 这样(种)的
pron. 这样的人(事物) 2

T

take a look 看一看 2
take away 拿走 7
take hold of 握住,抓住 4
take off 脱下(衣、帽、鞋
等);拿掉 2
take (be on) the side
of 支持某人(方) 1
telegraph ['teligrɑ:f] *n.*
电报(指通讯方式);
电报机 9
temple ['templ] *n.*
庙宇;寺院 10
thick [θik] *adj.* 厚的;
浓的 11
thief [θi:f] *n.* 贼
thieves (*pl.*) 7
think over 仔细考虑 3
throughout [θru(:)'aut]
prep. 遍及;在整个……
的期间 10
to one's surprise 使某人
惊奇的是 5
tomb [tu:m] *n.* 坟墓 7
ton [tʌn] *n.* (重量单位)
吨 7
tooth [tu:θ] *n.* 牙齿
teeth [ti:θ] (*pl.*) 1
top [tɔp] *n.* 顶部;
(物的)上面
on top of 在……的上面 5
touch [tʌtʃ] *vt.*
触摸;接触 4
towards [tə'wɔ:dz]
prep. 向,朝;对于 5

track [træk] *n.* 足迹;(火车等的)轨道 4

treasure ['treʒə] *n.* 金银财宝 7

turn into 变成 11

U

until [ən'til] *conj.* & *prep.* 直到……为止 7

untouched ['ʌn'tʌtʃt] *adj.* 原样的;未动过的 4

upon [ə'pɔn] *prep.* 在……上面

once upon a time 从前 11

V

valley ['væli] *n.* 流域;(山)谷 5

vegetable ['vedʒitəbl] *n.* 蔬菜 9

W

war [wɔ:] *n.* 战争 1

Washington ['wɔʃiŋtən] *n.* 华盛顿(地名或人名) 1

wear [wɛə] (wore [wɔ:], worn [wɔ:n]) *vt.* 穿,戴 9

weigh [wei] *vi.* 重(若干)

vt. 称……的重量 7

wheat [wi:t] *n.* 小麦 5

wherever [wɛər'evə] *adv.* 无论在(到)哪里;在(到)任何地方 4

whether ['weðə] *conj.* 是否 2

while [wail] *conj.* 当……的时候;和……同时;然而 2

whom [hu:m, hum] *pron.* 谁(宾格) 1

win [win] (won [wʌn], won) *vi.* 获胜

vt. 赢得 1

wing [wiŋ] *n.* 翅膀 1

winner ['winə] *n.* 获胜者 1

workmate ['wə:kmeit] *n.* 工友;同事 8

works [wə:ks] *n.* 工事;工程

defence works
防御工事 2
workshop ['wə:kʃɔp] *n.*
车间 8
worth [wə:θ] *adj.* 值得……的，有……的价值的
be worth (doing)
值得(做) 9
wound [wu:nd] *vt.*
使受伤
n. 伤口
wounded ['wu:ndid]
adj. 受伤的 10

Supplementary Readings

1. Ben's Paddles

Even when Benjamin Franklin was a boy, he tried to find ways to help people enjoy life more. Later, because of his many inventions, he became one of the greatest of all Americans.

One of his earliest inventions was paddles for swimming.

Ben had wondered for some time if there was some way to swim faster, maybe with something on his hands and feet.

Slowly a picture of swimming shoes, or paddles, grew in his mind. Ben thought a long time. The paddles must be neither too big nor too small. The right kind of wood was important, too. It must be neither too heavy nor too light.

He started to work on the paddles and soon they were finished.

Now Ben was ready to try them out. "Next Saturday afternoon," he said, "at Green's pond."

Saturday came. Near the pond a hundred boys were waiting. They had heard about Ben's idea and

wanted to see whether the paddles would work.

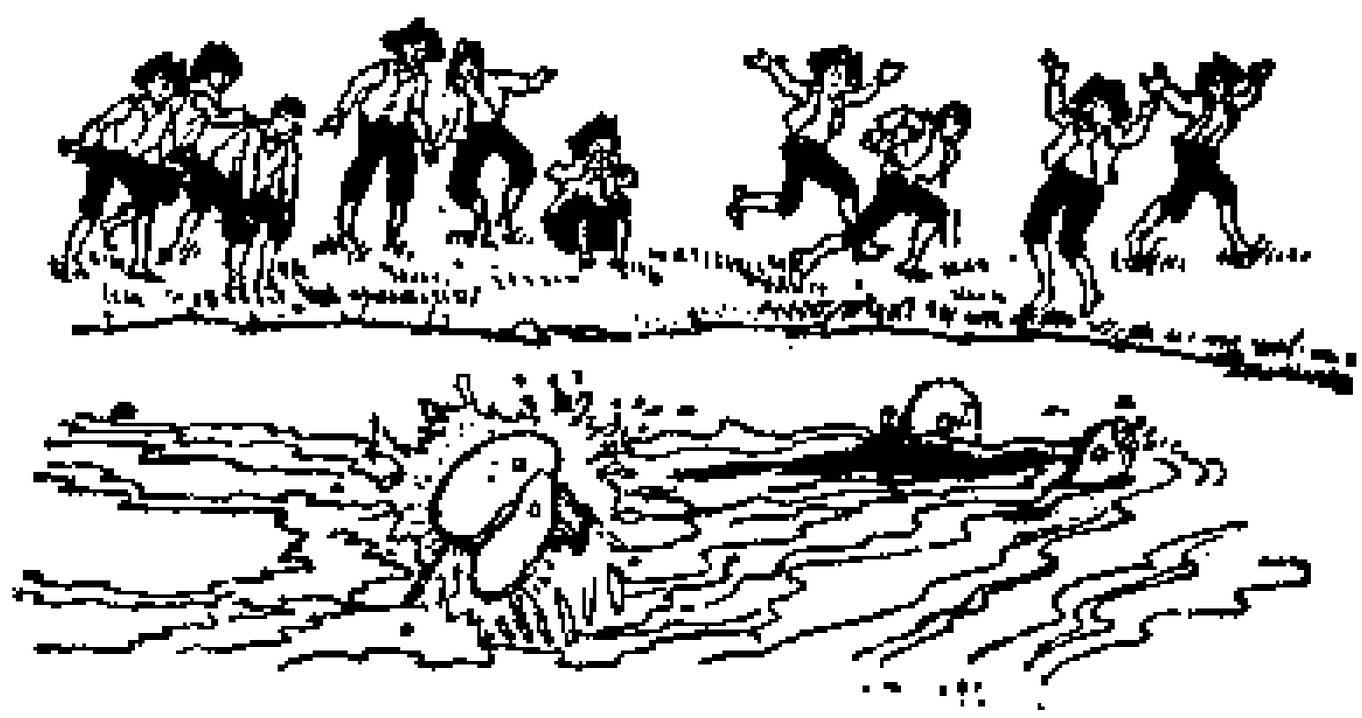
Now Ben was ready.

All around Green's pond the boys were talking to each other.

"What if the paddles don't work?"

"What if he goes down?"

Ben got into the water and began to paddle. He swam slowly at first, then faster and faster until he was going through the water like a fish. The boys had never seen such fast swimming. The paddles did work! The boys near the pond jumped up and down, crying with joy.



Many years after this, when these boys had grown up, they began to read about Benjamin in the newspaper.

"Mr Benjamin Franklin has invented double spectacles. They are for people who need glasses to see both near and far."

Later they would read that Benjamin Franklin had invented a fan, a rocking chair, and a hundred or so other things. As they had known him, they were not surprised. They said, "Ben was that kind of boy. Let's see what he'll invent next."

Benjamin Franklin
['bendʒəmin 'frænklin]
(1706—1790)，美国杰出的科学家和政治家。Ben 是 Benjamin 的昵称。

paddle ['pædl] *n.* 桨形工具

invention [in'venʃən] *n.* 发明
invent [in'vent] *vt.* 发明

wood [wud] *n.* 木；木材

try out 试验

pond *n.* 池塘

What if ...? 如果……怎么办呢？

The paddles did work!桨形工具的确起作用！（did 用于加强语气）

cry with joy 高兴得叫起来

these very boys 正是这些孩子（very 与 these 连用，以加强语气）

double ['dʌbl] *adj.*
双的；双重的

spectacles ['spektəklz] *n.*
(*pl.*) 眼镜
double spectacles 双光眼镜

fan *n.* 扇子；风扇

rocking ['rɔkiŋ] *adj.* 摇动的
rocking chair 摇椅

2. The Pot of Gold

Once a farmer was put in prison. But he hadn't done anything wrong. He just hadn't paid taxes to the king. At that time the king's men were collecting money to fight more wars. The people had to pay one tax after another. Now this farmer was poor and didn't have any money. When the king's men came to his house, he said, "I can't give you any money. I'm such a poor man that I've hardly got enough to live on."

The king's men laughed. "You're trying to fool us, aren't you? We've heard you're so rich that you've got a whole pot of gold." Then they searched every room in the house but found nothing. Even so, they caught hold of the poor farmer and put him in prison. "You will stay in prison until we get the pot of gold from you," they said.

The poor farmer did not know what to do. Also, he was worried about his farm. He knew his wife couldn't do all the farm work by herself.

One day he got a letter from his wife. "I'm so worried about our farm," she wrote. "It's nearly spring. It's time to plant potatoes. But I can't dig up

the fields just by myself." This made the farmer even more worried. "What can I do?" he thought. Suddenly he had an idea. He wrote a letter to his wife. "Don't dig the fields," he wrote. "That's where it is — you know, the pot. Don't plant the potatoes until I tell you to."

The farmer gave the letter to the prison guard, and asked him to send it to his wife. The prison guards, of course, had already read the letter from the farmer's wife. Now they read the farmer's reply. "Aha!" they said. "This sounds very interesting. He talks about a pot. He must mean the pot of gold. It seems this farmer really is a rich man."

"He says the pot is in the fields, but he doesn't say which field," another guard said. "This farmer has got several fields."

"It doesn't matter," the first guard answered. "We know there's gold in his fields. We'll find it."

Two weeks later, the farmer received another letter from his wife. "Something funny happened," his wife wrote. "Two weeks ago, about ten men came to our farm. All of them began to dig. They dug all our fields and now they've gone away. I can't understand it. It seems they were looking for something. What shall I do now?"

The farmer smiled when he read this. He wrote another letter to his wife at once. It was very short. "Since these men have dug up our fields, you can go ahead and plant the potatoes."

pot *n.* 罐子
gold [gəuld] *n.* 金子
be put in prison 被关进监狱
tax *n.* 税
money ['mʌni] *n.* 金钱
live on 靠……生活
potato [pə'teitəu] *n.* 土豆
It doesn't matter. 没有关系。
funny ['fʌni] *adj.* 滑稽的

3. The Broken Lantern (1)

One stormy night, Kate looked out of a window. She had never seen a storm like this. It had been raining for a whole week. The rain-water was rushing down on its way to the river and the creek nearby. Kate wondered whether the water would wash away any of the bridges. The storm kept sweeping down the valley. Both the river and the creek rose higher and higher.

Just then Kate heard a sound. An engine was moving towards the wooden bridge over the creek. It was coming from the next town. Kate knew why the engine was coming at this time of night. The men were testing the bridge to find out if it was still safe. The midnight passenger train would come through soon.

Suddenly there was a loud noise! Kate jumped up. She knew what that meant.

"Mother," Kate cried. "The bridge has broken. The engine has gone down!"

The family rushed to the window and looked out. Kate was the first to speak.

"I'm going out! Somebody down there may still

be alive." She turned to get a lantern.

"All right," said her mother. "Do what you can — but be careful."

Kate got a lantern, put on her coat, and hurried out into the storm. She made her way through the beating rain, and climbed over the tracks. Finally she reached the broken bridge. She looked down.

"Anyone down there?" she shouted. She listened but heard only the wind.

Then a voice called out from below.

"Two of us. We're quite safe here. But the midnight train will soon be coming! You must try to stop it."

"Right! I'll try to stop it before it gets here," she called back. And with these words she left at once.

lantern ['læntən] *n.* 提灯；灯笼

storm *n.* 暴风雨

stormy *adj.* 有暴风雨的

It had been raining for a whole week. 雨已下了整整一星期了。

creek *n.* 小河；支流

wash away 冲走

keep sweeping down the valley (暴雨)不断倾泻而下流入山谷

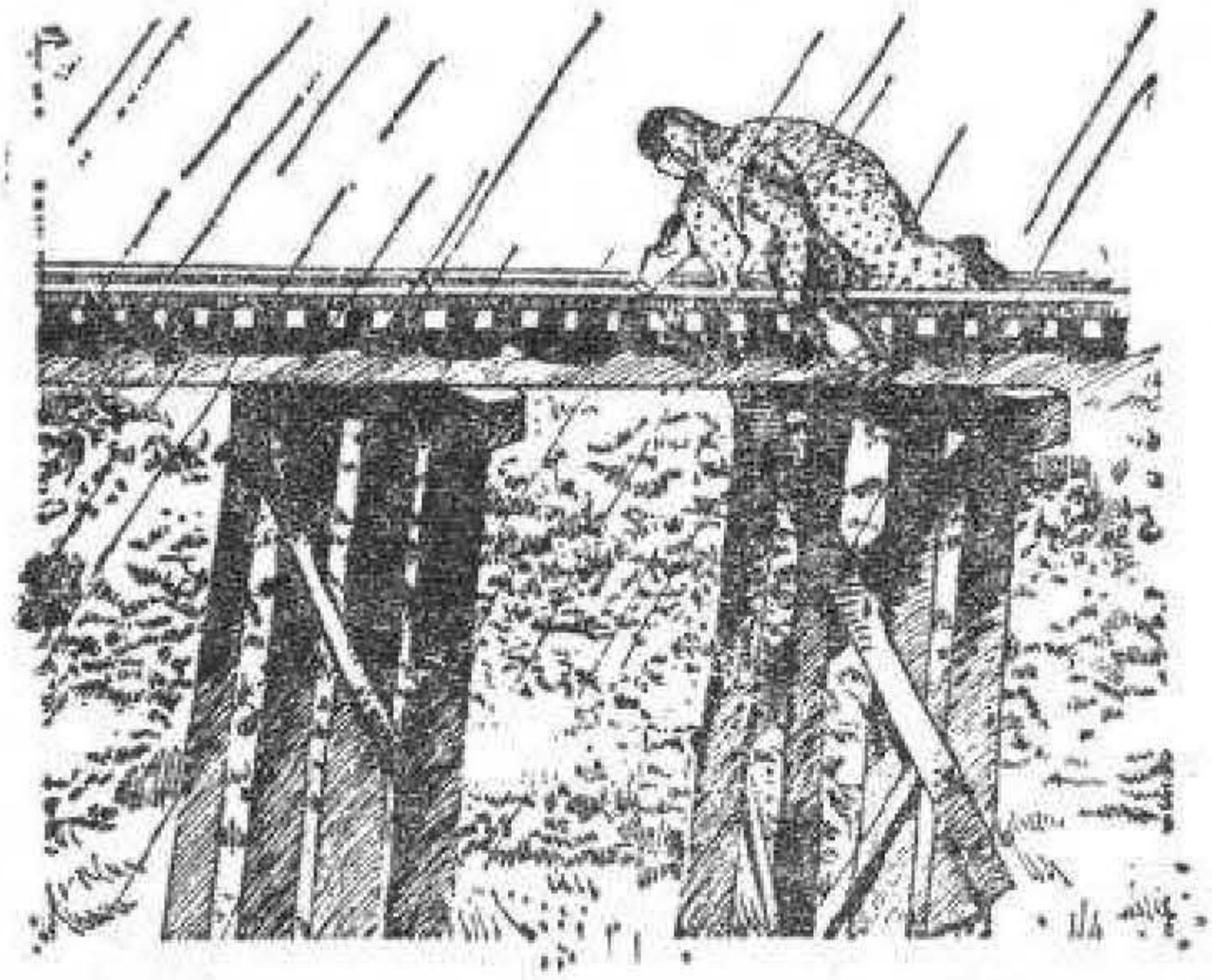
engine ['endʒin] *n.*
发动机；机车
wooden ['wudn] *adj.* 木制的
safe *adj.* 安全的
midnight ['midnait] *n.*
午夜(晚上十二点钟)
passenger ['pæsindʒə] *n.*
乘客，旅客
alive [ə'laiv] *adj.* 活着
She made her way through the beating rain. 她冒着大雨往前走。
wind *n.* 风

4. The Broken Lantern (2)

The railway station was only a mile away. But it was on the other side of the river. To get there, you had to cross a long wooden railway bridge. Even in the daytime, that bridge wasn't safe. There was no place for people to walk on and the sides were open. You almost had to walk right on the railway tracks.

Kate stopped when she came to the bridge. The rain was beating against her face and the wind was blowing hard. She had never seen the river so high. She started across the bridge. But it shook suddenly. She fell and broke her lantern.

"I must get across," she kept thinking to herself.



"I must stop that train. I must!"

She started to crawl on her hands and knees across the bridge. Her broken lantern knocked against her with each move. It seemed like hours before she reached the other side. When she finally opened the door of the one-room station, she was all wet. She was so tired that she could hardly talk.

"Kate? Is that you? What's wrong?" the stationmaster asked in surprise.

"The bridge has broken ... the engine went down ... two men ...."

The stationmaster rushed out with his red lantern. The midnight train was coming — and coming fast!

The train came to a stop. The engineer got off the train and walked over to the stationmaster, "What's the matter?" he asked angrily.

"The bridge over the creek is broken. A girl brought the news."

Suddenly they saw Kate standing before them. The engineer told his men to tell the passengers what had happened.

"But the two men," Kate called. "We must get back to those two men at the bridge."

The engineer ran back to his train and started it moving slowly along the tracks. He stopped at the

river. With a rope, the engineer and his men got the two men up to safety.

So the two men and all the passengers on the train were saved. Soon after that, papers all over the country carried the story. From then on, all trains passing Kate's home would stop right at her front door. They did this to show their thanks. What a brave thing she had done on the night of that terrible storm!

mile *n.* 英里

There was no place for people to walk on and the sides were open. (桥)没有人行道,(轨道)两旁没有扶手。

blow [bləu] (blew [blu:], blown [bləun]) *vi.* 风(吹)

across [ə'krɔs] *prep.* 穿过

crawl [krɔ:l] *vi.* 爬,爬行

Her broken lantern knocked against her with each move. 她每挪动一步,那盏破灯都要撞她一下。

one-room station 一间屋子的车站

stationmaster ['steiʃən,mɑ:stə] *n.* 火车站站长

engineer [,endʒi'niə] *n.* 工程师;火车司机

start ... moving 开动……

carry *vt.* 刊登

5. The "Lady with the Lamp"

"Be a lady, dear." How many times young Florence Nightingale had heard these words from her parents! But for her, to be a lady was not enough. She wanted to do something for others.

Florence's father was a very rich man. Florence took lessons in music and drawing, and read a great deal. She could speak several foreign languages. And she travelled a lot with her parents.

As a child, she liked visiting sick people and enjoyed helping them. She often visited hospitals in other countries. She saw so much suffering that she knew she must help. She decided that she was going to be a nurse. But her father told her that nursing wasn't the right work for a lady.

"Then I will make it so," she smiled. And she went to learn nursing in Germany and France. When she returned to England, Florence started a nursing home for women. Here she did everything — from washing floors to giving the sick new hope.

During the war in 1854, many soldiers were wounded or became ill. The front was in great need of medical care. Florence Nightingale went with thirty-

eight nurses to the hospitals near the front.

When she arrived there, she found things were much worse than she had thought. Florence used her own money and some from friends to buy beds, clothes, medicine and food for the men. Her only pay was the smiles from the sick and wounded soldiers. But they were more than enough for this kind woman.

Florence was weak and ill herself, but she did not stop working. Her thin hands were busy day and night. Often, she worked for twenty-four hours without rest. Every night, she carried a lamp and walked past each bed. To the soldiers she was the "Lady with the Lamp". One of them wrote: "What a joy it was just to see her pass! She would speak to one, smile to many more. She could not speak to all, you know, there were hundreds of us. But we could kiss her shadow as it fell on the wall."

After the war, Florence returned to England. There, the Queen honoured her for her work.

But Florence said that her work had just begun. She got people to give money to build the Nightingale

Home for Nurses in London, and she got young girls to learn nursing there. She also wrote a book on nursing.

On August 13, 1910, Florence Nightingale, at the age of ninety, died quietly in her sleep. To this day, we still remember her when we honour nurses.

lady ['leidi] *n.* 女士；有教养的妇女；贵妇人

Florence Nightingale ['flɔrəns 'naitingeil] 弗洛伦斯·南丁格尔(1820—1910)，英国人，近代护理制度的创始人

take lessons in 跟人学习

a great deal 大量

suffering ['sʌfəriŋ] *n.* 痛苦

nursing ['nə:siŋ] *n.* 护理

make it so = make nursing the right work for a lady

Germany ['dʒə:məni] *n.* 德国

France [frɑ:ns] *n.* 法国

nursing home 疗养所

the war 指 the Crimean [krai'miən] War克里米亚(半岛)之战

But they were more than enough for this kind woman. 但是伤病员的微笑对于这位慈祥的妇女来说已经很够了。

weak *adj.* 弱的；虚弱的

kiss *vt.* 吻

shadow ['ʃædou] *n.* 影子

the Queen (指的是 Queen Victoria [vik'tɔ:riə]) 维多利亚女王

honour ['ɔnə] *vt.* 给……以荣誉

to this day 直到今天

初级中学课本

英　语

第五册

人民教育出版社外语室英语组编

*

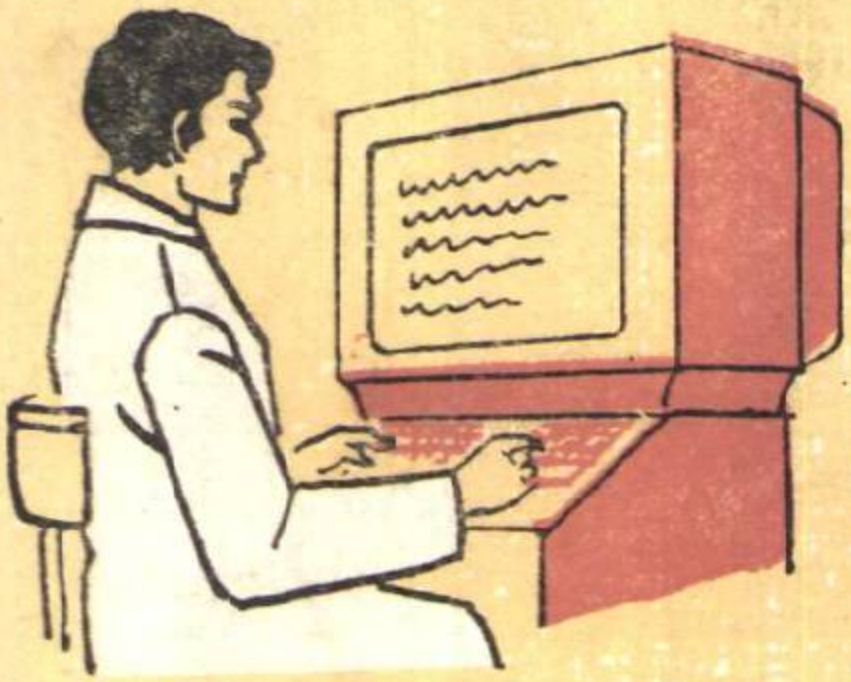
人民教育出版社出版
北京出版社重印
北京市新华书店发行
北京新华印刷厂印刷

*

开本 787×1092　1/32　印张 5.75　插页 1　字数 96,000
1983 年 10 月第 1 版　　1991 年 6 月第 8 次印刷
印数 701,501—801,700

ISBN 7-107-00341-0

G·544（课）　　定价 0.61 元



初级中学课本

英语

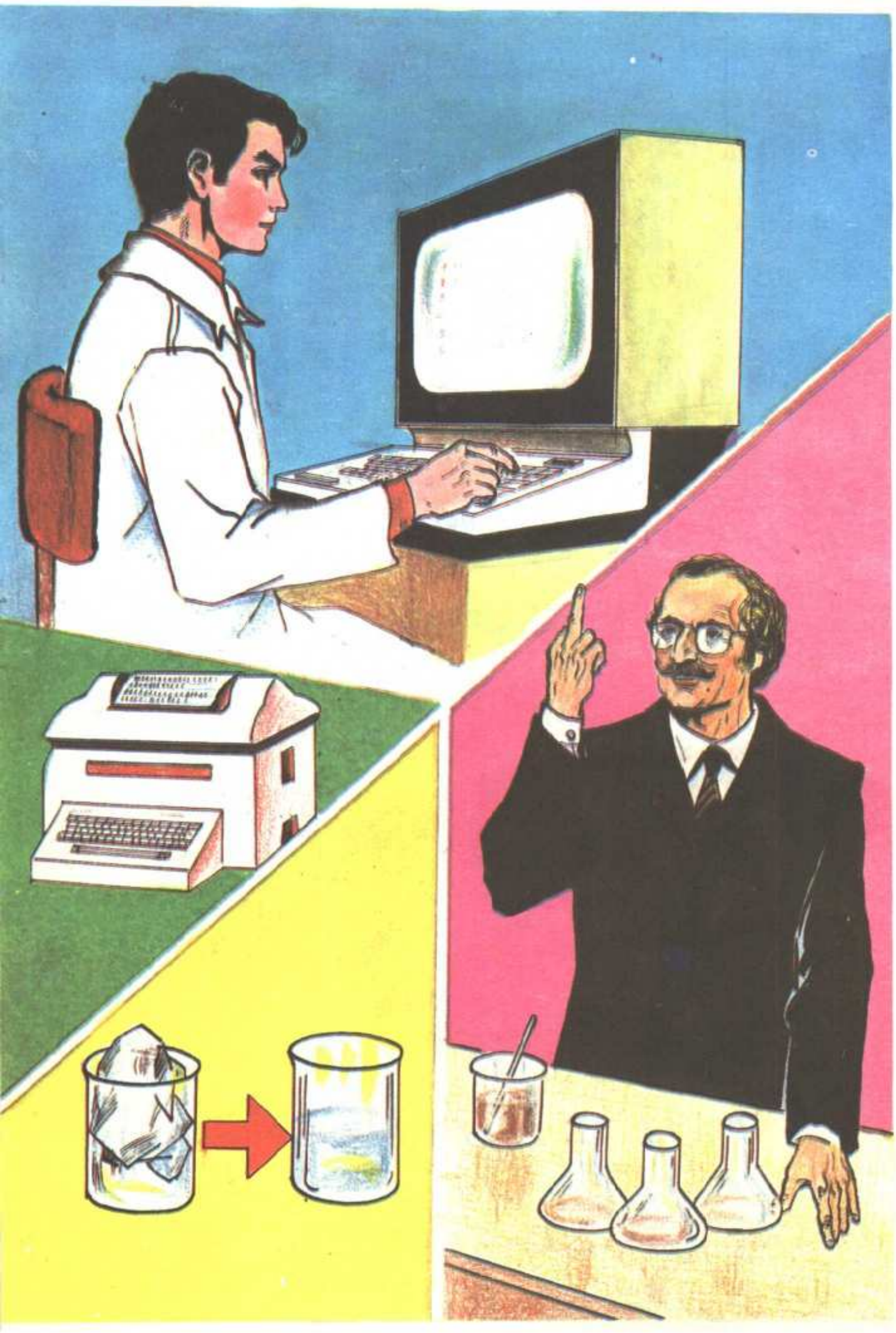
第六册

English 6

人民教育出版社

期限表

教育学
科学资料中心
藏书专用章



说　明

初级中学课本英语是以《全日制十年制初中课本(试用本)英语》为基础，参考各地教师在试用期间提出的意见编订而成的。

本册由唐钧、刘锦芳编订。

北京外国语学院邓炎昌教授审订。

ABG 82/01

CONTENTS

Lesson 1 1

Drills: 1. English is spoken by many people.

2. Is this kind of telephone made in Guangzhou?

Dialogue: English Is Widely Used

Grammar: The Passive Voice (I)

Lesson 2 13

Drills: 1. My home town was liberated in 1949.

2. When was the Chinese Communist Party founded?

Text: Joe Hill

Grammar: The Passive Voice (II)

Lesson 3 26

Drills: 1. A big building has been put up in my home town.

2. Will this programme be shown again?

Text: Dustmen on Strike

Grammar: The Passive Voice (III)

Lesson 4 38

Drills: 1. Can this lock be repaired here?

2. When must the composition be handed in?

Text Water, Steam and Ice

Grammar: The Passive Voice (IV)

Lesson 5 50

Text: Computers

Lesson 6 (Revision) 59

Lesson 7 66

Drills: 1. He told me he had an important meeting to attend.

2. I really don't know what to write about.

Text: A Lesson from Nature

Grammar: The Infinitive (II)*

The Use of "It"

Lesson 8 78

Drills: 1. It's good to have plenty of exercise.

2. It's good manners to wait in line.

Text: Good Manners

Grammar: The Infinitive (III)

Lesson 9 90

Text: Look Carefully and Learn

Lesson 10 (Revision) 99

Vocabulary 106

Irregular Verbs 117

---

* The Infinitive (I) is in Book III.

Supplementary Readings:

1. Peter's Golden Bridge 121
2. A Clever Escape 123
3. Beethoven 125
4. Sports 127
5. The First Postage Stamp in the World 130

LESSON ONE

The First Lesson

DRILLS

I

(1) Many people speak English.
English is spoken by many people.

(2) We often use a recorder in our English class.
A recorder is often used in our English class.

(3) They show slides once a week in their class.
Slides are shown once a week in their class.

(4) They publish English textbooks in that publishing house.
English textbooks are published in that publishing house.

2

A: Is this kind of | telephone / bicycle / TV set / recorder | made in Guangzhou?

B: No, it isn't.

A: Where is it made?

B: It's made in Shanghai.

DIALOGUE

ENGLISH IS WIDELY USED

Ping: Dad, I got a "C" in English again. I tried my best.

Dad: Well, don't give up. English may be

hard, but it's so useful.

Ping: How widely is English used?

Dad: Very widely. English is one of the working languages at international meetings. It's probably the most widely used at those meetings. And do you know most international business letters are written in English?

Ping: Really? Is English understood by people outside England and the United States?

Dad: Yes. I spoke English when I was in Japan. Many people understood me.

Ping: How about other countries?

Dad: Well, I know that in Sweden and France a lot of people understand English.

Ping: Is English the language spoken by the largest number of people in the world?

Dad: No.

Ping: Then Chinese must have the largest number of speakers.

Dad: Right. But Chinese is spoken by few people outside China.

Ping: Dad, did people in China study English

a long time ago?

Dad: Not so very long ago. In China the first English textbooks were published in the late nineteenth century.

Ping: Did many people in China study English at that time?

Dad: No, not many. But by and by, more and more people began to study English. Later, English was required for study in many schools.

Ping: It's required in our school now. But, Dad, English is so hard!

Dad: It is hard, but when you've learned it, you'll find it a bridge to so much knowledge. And you'll find you can enjoy so many more books, if you know English.

Ping: Well, I'll try harder.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

by [bai] *prep.* 被，由

recorder [ri'kɔ:də] *n.* 录音机

slide *n.* 幻灯片

show slides 放映幻灯片

publish ['pʌbliʃ] *vt.* & *vi.*

出版;发行

vt. 公布;发表

publishing house 出版社

textbook ['tekstbuk] *n.*

课本,教科书

bicycle ['baisikl] *n.*

脚踏车,自行车(相当于口语中的 bike)

* * *

wide *adj.* 宽阔的;广泛的

widely *adv.* 广阔地;广泛地

give up 放弃

useful ['ju:sful] *adj.*

有用的;有益的

international

[ˌintə(:)'næʃənl] *adj.*

国际的,世界的

probably ['probəbli] *adv.*

很可能,大概,或许

business ['biznis] *n.* 事务;商业,生意

outside ['aut'said] *prep.*

在……外;向……外

adv. 向外面,在外面;向室外,在室外

unite [ju:'nait] *vt.* & *vi.*

统一;联合;团结

united [ju:'naitid] *adj.*

统一的;联合的

state *n.* 州;国家;政府

the United States 美利坚合众国,美国

Japan [dʒə'pæn] *n.* 日本,日本国

Sweden ['swi:dn] *n.* 瑞典

France [frɑ:ns] *n.* 法兰西,法国

number ['nʌmbə] *n.* 数,数字;数量

speaker *n.* 说话者;讲演者;操某种语言者

century ['sentʃuri] *n.*

世纪;百年

by and by 不久以后

more and more 越来越(多)

later *adv.* 以后,后来

require [ri'kwaiə] *vt.* 需要;要求

knowledge ['nɔlidʒ] *n.*

知识;学问

NOTES

1. I got a "C" in English again. 我英语(考试)又得了个"C"。

   "C"表示考试成绩,相当于五分制的"三分"。

2. How about other countries? 别的国家情况怎么样?

   How about ...? (你以为)……怎么样?又如:

   How about this magazine?

   How about playing football now?

3. Is English the language spoken by the largest number of people in the world? 英语是不是世界上说得最多的一种语言?

   spoken by the largest number of people in the world 是过去分词短语,作定语,修饰 language。

4. Then Chinese must have the largest number of speakers. 那么说汉语的人一定是世界上最多的了。

5. Not so very long ago. = People in China studied English not so very long ago.

6. ... but when you've learned it, you'll find it a bridge to so much knowledge. 但是,当你学会了英语,你就会发现它是通向如此丰富知识的桥梁。

   这个句子中两个"it"都指"English", a bridge 是第二个"it"的宾语补足语。

GRAMMAR

被动语态 (The Passive Voice) (I)

1. 主动语态和被动语态

英语动词有两种语态，即主动语态 (The Active Voice) 和被动语态 (The Passive Voice)。主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者，被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者。例如:

Many people speak English. (主动语态)

English ***is spoken*** by many people. (被动语态)

2. 被动语态的构成

被动语态由"助动词 be+ 及物动词的过去分词"构成。助动词 be 有人称、数和时态的变化，其变化规则与 be 作为连系动词时完全一样。现将动词 ask 的一般现在时被动语态的肯定式、否定式及疑问式列表如下:

肯定式	否定式	疑问式
I am You are He / She } is We / You / They } are } asked	I am You are He / She } is We / You / They } are } not asked	Am I Are you Is { he / she } Are { we / you / they } } asked ...?

3. 被动语态的用法

被动语态常用于下列情况:

1) 当我们不知道谁是动作的执行者，或者没有必要指出谁是动作的执行者时。例如:

a) Letters ***are collected*** from this post-box at 7:30 every morning. (主要说明每天早晨七点半钟开邮筒收集信件,至于是谁来收集信件,没有必要说明。)

b) Colour TVs ***are sold*** in that shop. (主要说明彩色电视机在那个商店出售,至于由谁售货,没有必要说明。)

2) 需要强调动作的承受者而不是执行者时。例如:

a) This kind of bike ***is*** not ***made*** in our factory.

b) Football ***is played*** in most middle schools.

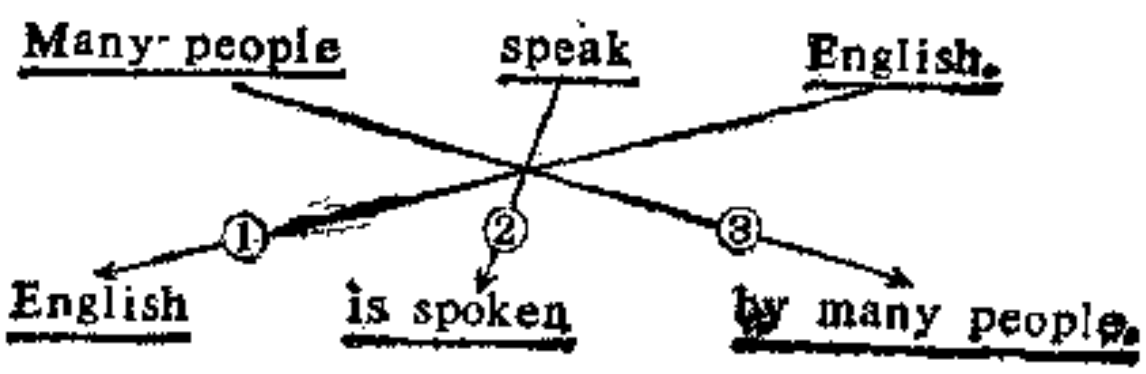
4. 主动语态变为被动语态的方法

把主动结构改为被动结构时,要作如下变动:

1) 主动结构的宾语变为被动结构的主语;

2) 主动结构的谓语动词由主动语态变为被动语态;

3) 主动结构的主语变为介词 by 的宾语，组成介词短语，放在被动结构中谓语动词之后。在动作的执行者无须说明或不必强调时,by 短语可以省略。例如:



b) We often use a recorder in our English class. → A recorder ***is*** often ***used*** (by us) in our English class.

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

   1) are [ɛə] c***are*** d***are*** h***are*** c***are***ful
      air [ɛə] ch***air*** unf***air*** rep***air***

   2) ere [iə] h***ere***
      ere [ɛə] th***ere*** wh***ere***
      ear [iə] d***ear*** f***ear*** h***ear*** n***ear***
      ear [ə:] ***ear***th ***ear***ly l***ear***n s***ear***ch

   3) ire ['aiə] t***ire***d f***ire*** h***ire*** requ***ire***
      igh [ai] h***igh*** f***igh***t n***igh***t br***igh***t
      ind [aind] f***ind*** k***ind*** m***ind*** beh***ind***

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
give up	learning
century	before long; soon
by and by	100 years
knowledge	almost (but not quite) certainly
require	stop trying to do something
probably	need (*vt.*)

3. Put the following into English:

1) 中国　美国　英国　法国　瑞典　日本
澳大利亚　埃及

2) 中国人　美国人　法国人　德国人　匈牙利人
日本人　澳大利亚人　埃及人　阿拉伯人

3) 汉语　英语　俄语　日语　法语　德语

4. Learn the following by heart:

adj.	*adv.*	*n.*	*adj.*
wide	widely	use	useful
brave	bravely	care	careful
immediate	immediately	help	helpful
bad	badly	thank	thankful
loud	loudly	sun	sunny
usual	usually	cloud	cloudy
easy	easily	wind	windy
terrible	terribly	rain	rainy

5. Make the following sentences interrogative, then negative:

Model: Bicycles ***are sold*** in that shop. →
Are bicycles ***sold*** in that shop?
Bicycles ***are not sold*** in that shop.

1) Recorders are used in English classes.
2) This kind of truck is made in Tianjin.
3) This song is often sung by girls in my class.
4) Table tennis is played throughout the world.

5) English is spoken in that country.

6. Fill in each of the blanks with the verb given, using the passive voice:

1) The windows of our house ___ (clean) once a week.

2) Textbooks ___ (require) to be published in time.

3) Chinese ___ (speak) by the largest number of people in the world.

4) A Japanese film ___ often ___ (show) on TV on Sunday afternoon.

5) Most science books ___ (write) in English.

6) English, French, German and Russian ___ (use) in Europe.

7. Put the following into English:

1) 他们学校也教俄语。

2) 全国各地中学都打篮球。

3) 英国、美国、澳大利亚和其他一些国家讲英语。

4) 这种录音机是中国制造的。

5) 我们班时常放映幻灯片。

8. Read the following passage, then put it into Chinese:

Do You Speak English?

Last year after I had left a small village in the

South of France, I drove on to the next town. On the way a young man stopped me and asked me for a lift. As soon as he got into the car, I said "Good morning" to him in French and he replied in the same language. Except for a few words, I do not know any French at all. Neither of us spoke during the travelling. I had nearly reached the town, when the young man suddenly said very slowly: "Do ... you ... speak ... English?" I looked at him in surprise. Here was no Frenchman speaking English. Only then did I understand that he, too, was an Englishman.

ask someone for a lift (在途中)请求某人让搭便车
except for 除……之外
not ... at all 一点也不
Englishman *n.* 英国人

LESSON TWO

The Second Lesson

DRILLS

1

(1) The PLA liberated my home town in 1949.
My home town was liberated in 1949.

(2) The villagers built some new houses themselves.
Some new houses were built by the villagers themselves.

(3) Joe Hill led a strike in Salt Lake City in 1915.
A strike was led by Joe Hill in Salt Lake City in 1915.

(4) The pianist gave the pupils some advice.
The pupils were given some advice by the pianist.

2

A: When was | the Chinese Communist Party / the Chinese People's Liberation Army / the People's Republic of China | founded?

B: It was founded on | July 1, 1921. / August 1, 1927. / October 1, 1949. |

TEXT

JOE HILL

You may know the song about Joe Hill. But do you know that the song was written about a real person?

Here is the story of Joe Hill.

He was born in Sweden in 1879. When he was in his twenties he went to the United States and became a worker. At that time, things were hard for the workers. Joe took an

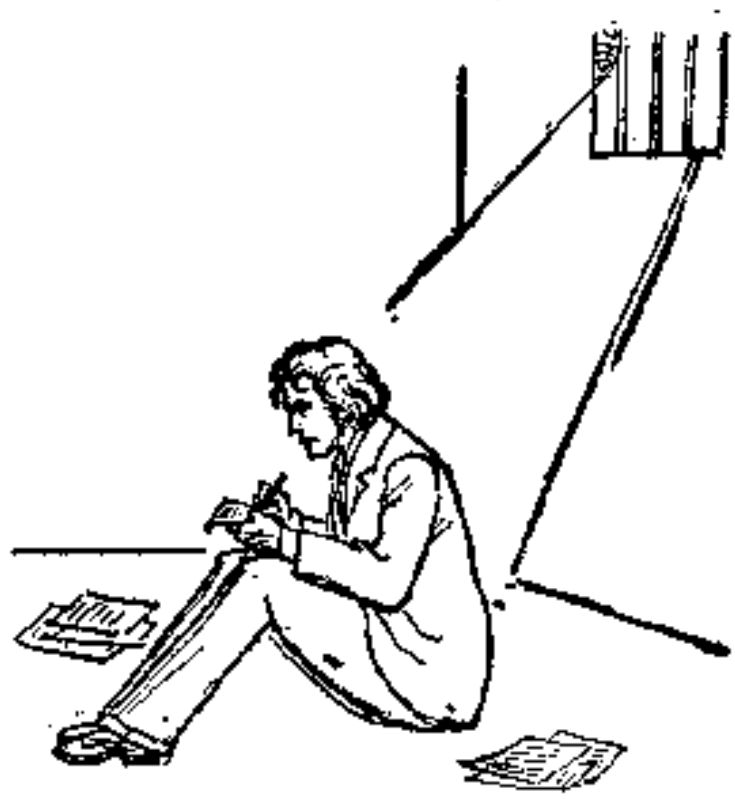
active part in the workers' struggles for better pay and better conditions. He helped to form trade unions. He spoke at meetings and organized strikes.

Joe was a good musician and at the meetings he sang and played the piano. He himself wrote the words and music of the songs. Many of these songs called on the workers to take up the struggle.

Joe Hill was a tall, thin, good-looking man. He had fair hair and blue eyes. His comrades liked him, but the bosses hated him, because they were afraid of his work among the workers and afraid of his songs. He was a fearless fighter for the working class.

In 1915 Joe Hill led a strike in Salt Lake City. The bosses knew that Joe was the soul of the strike and decided to get rid of him. They needed an excuse and they soon found one. One day a man was murdered. The bosses

then brought out a man who said that Joe was the murderer. Joe was tried and sentenced to death. He was shot on November 19, 1915.



Even while he was in prison, Joe Hill went on writing songs to keep up the workers' fight. Just before he was killed, he sent a message to his comrades all over the country. These were his last words: "Don't waste time mourning. Organize."

On the day he was killed, a speaker at a big meeting said: "Joe Hill isn't dead! He will never die!" To this day his name is remembered by fighting workers in the United States.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

the PLA = the People's Liberation Army 人民解放军

liberation [ˌlibəˈreiʃən] *n.* 解放

liberate [ˈlibəreit] *vt.* 解放

villager [ˈvilidʒə] *n.* 村子里的居民

Joe [dʒəu] 乔(男名)
lead [li:d] (led, led) *vt.* 领导
strike *n.* 罢工
communist ['kɔmjunist] *adj.* 共产主义的; 共产党的 *n.* 共产主义者
the Chinese Communist Party 中国共产党
found *vt.* 成立,建立
republic [ri'pʌblik] *n.* 共和国
the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国

* * *

person ['pə:sn] *n.* 人
active ['æktiv] *adj.* 积极的
take an active part in 积极参加
struggle ['strʌgl] *n.* 斗争,奋斗
condition [kən'diʃən] *n.* 条件;状况
form *vt.* (使)组成,建立;形成
n. 形状;形式
trade *n.* 商业,贸易;行业
union ['ju:njən] *n.* 联合;联合会;团结
trade union 工会
organize ['ɔ:gənaiz] *vt.* 组织
vi. 组织起来;建立组织
call on 号召
take up (the struggle) 从事(斗争)
good-looking ['gud'lukiŋ] *adj.* 相貌好看的
fair *adj.* (头发)浅色的;金黄色的
hate *vt.* 憎恨;不愿,不喜欢
fearless ['fiəlis] *adj.* 不怕的,无畏的
fighter *n.* 战士
class *n.* 阶级
the working class 工人阶级
soul [səul] *n.* 灵魂; 精华;中心人物
rid (rid, rid) *vt.* 使摆脱;去掉
get rid of 除掉,去掉
murder ['mə:də] *vt.* & *n.* 谋杀

bring out 提供,推出
murderer [ˈmə:dərə] *n.* 杀人犯,凶手
try *vt.* 审问,审判
sentence *vt.* 判决,宣判
death [deθ] *n.* 死
sentence someone to death 宣判某人死刑
shoot [ʃu:t] (shot [ʃɔt], shot) *vt.* 射击;射中;射死 *vi.* 射击
keep up 坚持;不使(斗志等)低落
all over the country 遍及全国
waste [weist] *vt.* & *n.* 浪费 *adj.* 无用的,废弃的
mourn [mɔ:n] *vi.* & *vt.* 哀痛;哀悼
to this day 直到今天

NOTES

1. Joe Hill (乔·希尔,1879—1915) 出生于瑞典，二十多岁时移居美国,积极参加美国的工人运动，是一名出色的工会组织者和宣传鼓动家。他常在工人集会上演唱自己谱写的歌曲,鼓舞工人的斗志。资产阶级老板既恨他，又怕他,诬告他犯了谋杀罪。乔·希尔被判处死刑，于 1915 年 11 月 19 日遭到杀害。
2. You may know the song about Joe Hill. 你或许知道有关乔·希尔的歌曲吧。
3. At that time, things were hard for the workers. 那时候,工人们的境况很不好。

   things (复数)作"情况,境况,形势"讲。

   hard 是形容词,作"艰难的"讲。
4. The bosses then brought out a man who said that Joe was the murderer. 于是,老板们就领来一个人，这

个人说乔是凶手。

who said that Joe was the murderer 是起定语作用的从句，修饰前面的名词 man。在这个定语从句中，who 指前面的 man，作主语，that 引导的从句做谓语动词 said 的宾语。

5. "Don't waste time mourning. Organize." "不要浪费时间来悼念我。组织起来。"

6. On the day he was killed, a speaker at a big meeting said: "Joe Hill isn't dead! He will never die!" 在他被杀害的那一天，一位演讲者在一个大会上说："乔·希尔没有死！他永远不会死！"he was killed 是起定语作用的从句，修饰前面的名词 day。

GRAMMAR

被动语态 (The Passive Voice) (II)

5. 一般过去时被动语态的肯定式、否定式和疑问式(以动词 ask 为例)

肯定式	否定式	疑问式
I was You were He / She } was We / You / They } were } asked...	I was You were He / She } was We / You / They } were } not asked...	Was I Were you Was { he / she Were { we / you / they } asked ...?

6. 含有直接宾语和间接宾语的主动结构变为被动结构时，可以将其中一个宾语变为主语，另一个不动。一般是主动结构的间接宾语变为被动结构的主语。例如：

The pianist gave the pupils some advice. →
(间接宾语) (直接宾语)

The pupils *were given* some advice (by the pianist).

Some advice *was given* to the pupils (by the pianist).

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

1) ore [ɔ:] m*ore* bef*ore*

oor < [ɔ:] d*oor* fl*oor*
[uə] p*oor*

our ['auə] *our* h*our*

old [əuld] c*old* h*old* *sold* *told*

2) s — [s] stri*s*e waste person class
[z] rise rose busy business
[ʃ] sure

sh [ʃ] *sh*ow *sh*oot wi*sh* publi*sh*

2. For each word in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
active	set free
strike (*n.*)	man, woman, or child
fearless	(be) always ready to do things
person	refusing to go on working to get better pay and better conditions
liberate	without fear
struggle	fight

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) The trade union was formed ***about*** thirty years ago.
2) The story was ***about*** the fearless fight of the workers against the bosses.
3) Joe ***Hill*** was the soul of the strike in Salt Lake City in 1915.
4) The prison stands at the top of a ***hill.***
5) His last words ***called on*** the American working class to organize.
6) The telephone ***call*** from the teachers' office came at four this afternoon.
7) The murderer was caught and ***sentenced*** to death four months later.

8) This ***sentence*** is wrong. You must pay attention to the right use of words.

9) The People's Republic of China was ***founded*** on October 1, 1949.

10) The lost child was ***found*** three days later.

4. Learn the following by heart:

v.	*n.*	*v.*	*n.*
work	worker	speak	speaker
sing	singer	read	reader(读者)
win	winner	lead	leader(领导者)
wait	waiter	found	founder(创建者)
fight	fighter	organize	organizer(组织者)
murder	murderer	write	writer(作者)

5. Turn the following into the passive voice, mentioning the agent where necessary:

1) Children often sing this song.

2) They make slides in that workshop.

3) They repaired Jenny's bicycle last night.

4) The scientist made a speech at the meeting.

5) The policemen caught two thieves last night.

6) The factory gave the Children's Palace a colour TV set as a present.

7) He posted a letter to his friend in Sweden yesterday.

8) They left the baby by herself.

6. Answer the following questions:

1) Do you know the song about Joe Hill?
2) Where and when was Joe Hill born?
3) Where did he go when he was in his twenties?
4) What did he do in the workers' struggles?
5) Was Joe a musician? How did he make use of songs in the workers' struggles?
6) Why did the bosses hate him?
7) In what city did Joe Hill lead a strike in 1915?
8) Why did the bosses decide to get rid of him? What did they do then?
9) What did Joe go on doing even while he was in prison?
10) What were his last words?

7. Put the following into English:

1) 北京是 1949 年 1 月解放的。
2) 中国共产党是 1921 年 7 月 1 日在上海建立的。
3) 人民大会堂 (the Great Hall of the People) 是 1959 年建成的。
4) 我舅舅的收音机是我哥哥修理的。
5) 这些照片是在长城拍摄的。

8. Read the following:

Comrade Li Dazhao was born on October 29,

1889. In 1913 he went to study in Japan. There he learned Marxist theory. He became one of China's earliest Marxists and communists. After the Chinese Communist Party was founded in 1921, he directed Party work in North China. In 1922 he was sent by the Party to hold talks with Dr Sun Yat-sen in Shanghai. He did a lot to help establish the revolutionary united front.

Li Dazhao was put in prison by the enemy on April 6, 1927 and hanged on April 28 at the age of 37.

While he was in prison, he would not give in and fought bravely. Just before he was killed, he made a speech. These were his last words: "You can kill me, but you can't kill all the communists. Communism is sure to win."

Comrade Li Dazhao is not dead! He will never die! His name will be remembered by the Chinese people for ever.

Marxist ['mɑ:ksist] *adj.* 马克思主义的
n. 马克思主义者
theory ['θiəri] *n.* 理论
direct [di'rekt] *vt.* 指导
Dr Sun Yat-sen 孙逸仙博士，即孙中山先生，中国民主革命的先行者

establish [is'tæbliʃ] *vt.* 建立

the revolutionary [ˌrevə'luːʃnəri] **united front** 革命统一战线

communism ['kɔmjunizəm] *n.* 共产主义

LESSON THREE

The Third Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: You're just back from your home town, aren't you?

B: Yes.

A: How are things there?

B: Excellent. Great changes have taken place the last two years.

A new school A big building A new road	has been	opened put up built

in my home town.

2

A: Has	the play this programme this song	been	put on at this theatre? shown on TV? taught on the radio?

B: Yes, it was | put on / shown / taught | last week.

A: Will it be | put on / shown / taught | again?

B: Yes, I think so.
(I'm sorry I don't know.)

TEXT

DUSTMEN ON STRIKE

It is Thursday morning. No dustmen come to the Turners' road. They are still on strike. And the rubbish has not been collected for weeks.

The Turners are sitting at the breakfast table. Mr Turner is reading the newspaper. It is time for Robert to go to school.

Robert: I'd better be going. 'Bye.

Mrs Turner: Oh, Robert, take the bag of rub-

bish out to the dustbin, please.

Robert: But where can I put it? The dustbin is full, Mum.

Mrs Turner: Hasn't it been emptied yet? Well, just put it near the dustbin, then.

Robert: All right. 'Bye.

Mrs Turner: This really is too bad. The dustbins haven't been emptied for three weeks.

Mr Turner: Hm?

Mrs Turner: All the dustbins are full, and there are bags of rubbish everywhere. The whole street has been turned into one big rubbish dump. It smells terrible.

Mr Turner: And it can bring more trouble.

Mrs Turner: More trouble?

Mr Turner: Yes, we've been warned to be careful of rats.

Mrs Turner: Aren't the dustmen going back to work yet?

Mr Turner: No, they aren't. Look, there's a report here in the newspaper,

with pictures. I'll read it to you. (*reads*)

STRIKE GOES ON

Things are getting worse. No rubbish has been collected since the dustmen went on strike three weeks ago. Dustbins are full, and plastic bags full of rubbish have been piled in the streets. The smell is terrible. In some places rats have even been seen, and people have been warned to be careful.

The public wants to know: why hasn't anything been done to end the strike? The dustmen say they are badly paid and they want more money. They are not going back to work until they get it. But that is not all. They want to make it clear to the public that they do an important and necessary job.

Mrs Turner: That's true. Their job is important and necessary to us all.

Mr Turner: Something must be done to end the strike.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

excellent ['eksələnt] *adj.* 极好的,优秀的

take place 发生

the last two years 前两年

building *n.* 建筑物,房屋

put up 建造;搭起

put on 上演(戏剧等)

theatre ['θiətə] *n.* 剧场,戏院

show ... on TV 在电视中放映

* * *

dustman ['dʌstmən] *n.* (*pl.*)dustmen ['dʌstmən] 垃圾清运工

be on strike 在罢工

go on strike 举行罢工

Turner ['tə:nə] 特纳(姓)

rubbish ['rʌbiʃ] *n.* 垃圾;废物

Robert ['rɔbət] 罗伯特(男名)

dustbin ['dʌstbin] *n.* 垃圾箱

empty ['empti] *vt.* 倒空 *adj.* 空的

everywhere ['evriwɛə] *adv.* 到处,无论哪里

dump *n.* 垃圾堆

smell (smelt, smelled; smelt, smelled)

vi. 嗅;散发气味;发出臭气

vt. 闻,嗅

n. 气味;臭味

warn [wɔ:n] *vt.* 警告,告诫

be careful (of) 当心,小心

rat *n.* 鼠

plastic ['plæstik, 'plɑ:stik] *adj.* 塑料的

pile *vt.* 堆积,堆起

public ['pʌblik] *adj.* 公共的，公众的
the public 公众，民众
badly *adv.* 坏；恶劣地
money ['mʌni] *n.* 钱；货币
clear [kliə] *adj.* 清楚的；清晰的
necessary ['nesisəri] *adj.* 必需的，必要的

NOTES

1. How are things there? 那儿情况怎么样？

* * *

2. No dustmen come to the Turners' road. 没有垃圾清运工到特纳家所在的街道上来(清除垃圾)。

the Turners' road 是特纳家所在的那条街道，这条街道并不叫"特纳道"，所以 road 的第一个字母不大写。

3. The Turners are sitting at the breakfast table. 特纳一家正坐在早餐桌旁。

在姓的复数前加定冠词是指一家人，如：the Turners 特纳一家，the Greens 格林一家。

4. I'd better be going. 'Bye. 我该走了，再见。

'Bye. 或 Bye-bye. 是口语，小孩或熟人之间常用。在正式场合和书面语中则用 Good-bye。

5. Hasn't it been emptied yet? 难道垃圾箱还没有倒吗？
6. This really is too bad. 这确实太糟糕了。
7. It smells terrible. 它(整条街道)发出难闻的气味。

smell 在这里用作连系动词，"散发气味"的意思。

8. Aren't he dustmen going back to work yet? 垃圾清

运工还不打算复工吗？

9. The dustmen say they are badly paid. ... 垃圾清运工说，他们的工资太低……

10. But that is not all. They want to make it clear to the public that they do an important and necessary job. 然而，还不止此。他们要向公众表明，他们的工作不但重要，而且是必不可少的。

clear 是宾语 it 的补足语。 it 在句中是形式宾语，真正宾语是由 that 引导的从句。

11. Something must be done to end the strike. 必须采取某种措施来结束这次罢工。

GRAMMAR

被动语态 (The Passive Voice) (III)

7. 一般将来时和现在完成时的被动语态

1) 一般将来时	2) 现在完成时
I will (shall) / You, He } will / She / We will (shall) / You, They } will } be asked....	I, You } have / He, She } has / We / You, They } have } been asked....

8. 短语动词的被动语态

一般说来，只有及物动词才有被动语态，因为只有及

物动词才可能有动作的承受者。但有许多由不及物动词加介词构成的短语动词，相当于及物动词，可以有宾语，因而也可以有被动语态。但应注意：短语动词是一个不可分割的整体，在变为被动语态时，不可丢掉构成短语动词的介词或副词。例如：

a) The workers have put up a big building in my home town. →

A big building ***has been put up*** in my home town.

b) They took good care of the children. →

The children ***were taken good care of***.

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

g [dʒ] **g**eneral **G**erman orange danger
g [g] goat **g**ig struggle programme

gh [-] eig**h**t straig**h**t daug**h**ter plou**gh**
gh [f] lau**gh** cou**gh** enou**gh**

dge [dʒ] ju**dge** bri**dge** knowle**dge**

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
dustman	take care; pay attention to
rubbish	happen

everywhere	waste things
take place	in (at, to) every place
be careful	very good
excellent	man who empties dustbins

3. Put the following into Chinese and tell what part of speech each of the italicized words is:

1) When will the programme ***end***?

2) By the ***end*** of the strike the whole street will be turned into one big rubbish dump.

3) The camels ***smelled*** the water far away.

4) The terrible ***smell*** makes people sick.

5) A ***report*** has been made about that international football match.

6) Mr Black warned Jenny that he would ***report*** her to the headmaster.

7) As the dustmen are not going back to work yet, bags of rubbish have been ***piled*** in the streets.

8) ***Piles*** and ***piles*** of cotton bags have been taken to the town by truck.

9) The dustbins have not been ***emptied***, so there are bags of rubbish everywhere.

10) They have moved to the new building and the old house is ***empty*** now.

4. Turn each of the following sentences into the active voice, using the noun or pronoun in brackets

as the subject:

Model: The rubbish has not been collected. (the dustmen) →

The dustmen have not collected the rubbish.

1) The whole street has been turned into one big rubbish dump. (people)
2) We've been warned to be careful of rats. (they)
3) Plastic bags full of rubbish have been piled in the streets. (people)
4) The public has been asked not to use the streets as rubbish dumps. (they)
5) Why hasn't anything been done to end the strike? (they)
6) The dustbins haven't been emptied. (the dustmen)

5. Turn the following into the passive voice:

1) They will open a new school in the village soon.
2) They will put up a monument in the middle of the park.
3) They will do something to end the strike.
4) They will report the matter in the newspaper.
5) They will give a talk about international trade

next Thursday.

6) We will put on a short play for the English Evening.

6. Answer the following questions:

1) What is the job of a dustman?

2) Why didn't the dustmen come to empty the dustbin on the Turners' road?

3) How long had they been on strike?

4) Where could Robert put the rubbish?

5) What did the street look like? Why?

6) Where had people put their rubbish?

7) Is the dustmen's job important and necessary?

8) Why were they on strike?

7. Put the following into English:

1) 三年来北京建起了许许多多高楼。

2) 公众受到警告要当心火灾(fire)。

3) 塑料袋送来了没有?

4) 蔬菜已放在篮子里了。

5) 物理课明天在实验室上。

6) 明年这里将建造起一座大剧院。

8. Read the following, then fill in each of the blanks with *a*, *an* or *the*:

It was a week-end in summer and all ___ trains were full of people. ___ old man was looking for ___ seat through the windows. Suddenly

he saw one and got on the train. ___ small bag was lying on ___ seat and a well-dressed young man was sitting beside it.

"Can I sit here?" asked ___ old man.

"No, it's taken. The person has gone to buy a newspaper. He'll be back soon."

"Well," said ___ old man, "I'll sit here until he gets back."

Ten minutes passed. The train started.

"Too bad! He's missed ___ train," said ___ old man, "but he shouldn't lose his bag."

With these words he took ___ bag and started to throw it out of ___ window.

___ well-dressed young man jumped up. "Don't!" he cried out. "That's ... that's my bag!"

LESSON FOUR

The Fourth Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: Can	this lock this kind of key this radio	be	repaired made fixed	here?

B: Yes, it can be	repaired made fixed	in	two days. ten minutes. three days.

2

A: When must	the composition the drawing the money for the tickets	be handed in?

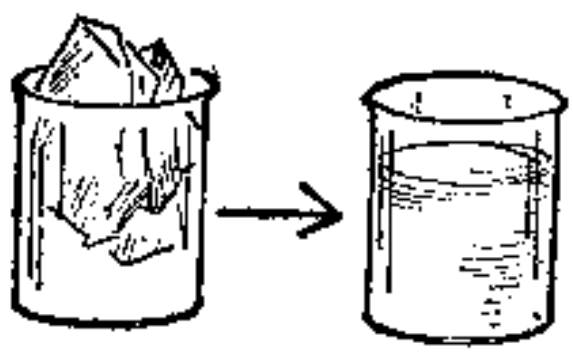
B: It must be handed in

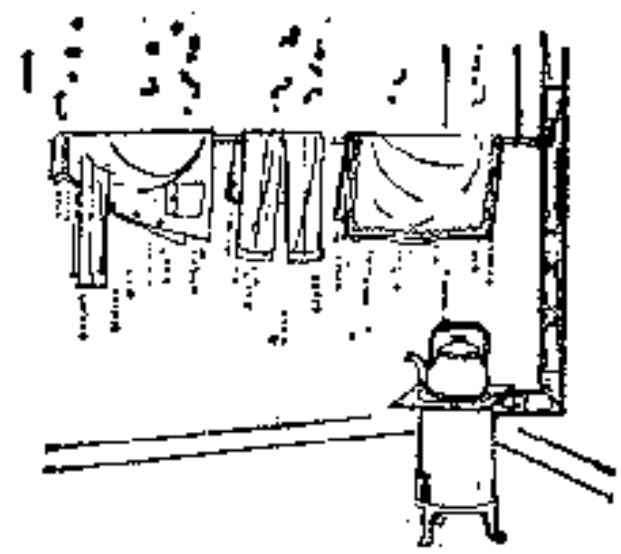
after class.
five days before the exhibition.
sometime before Friday.

TEXT

WATER, STEAM AND ICE

We have all played with snow and ice. When a piece of ice is taken into a warm room, it becomes smaller and smaller, until in the end it disappears completely. Where has it gone? It has been turned into water by the heat.

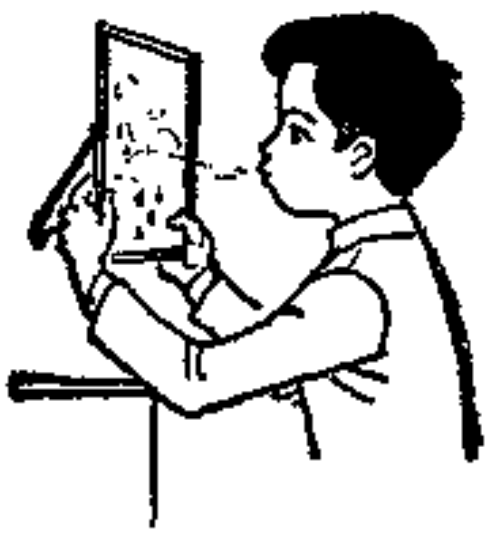


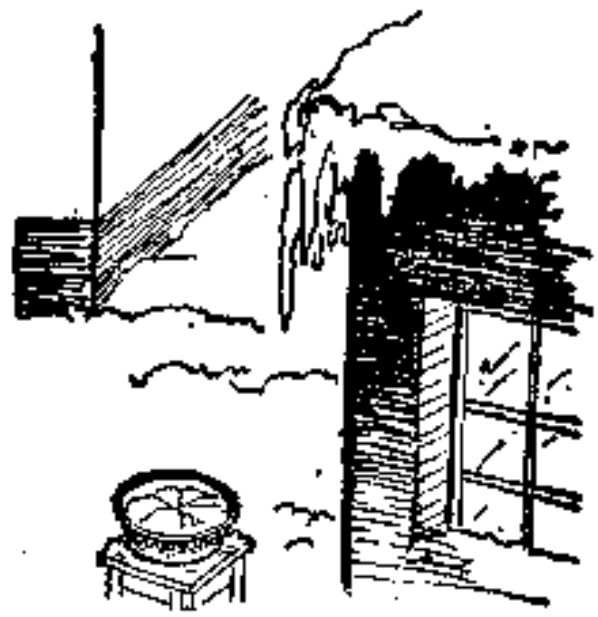


In winter, when clothes are washed, they don't dry easily. They are often hung up near

a fire. Soon steam can be seen rising from the wet clothes. The water in them is being turned into vapour, and they get drier and drier. When no more steam comes out, they must be taken away from the heat of the fire, or they might get burnt.

If you hold a mirror close in front of your mouth and blow on it, you will find the glass covered at once with little drops of water. The warm water vapour in your breath has been changed into water on the cold glass. Now stop blowing, and soon you will find the glass clear again — the little drops of water have disappeared because they have again been turned into vapour by the warm air around them.



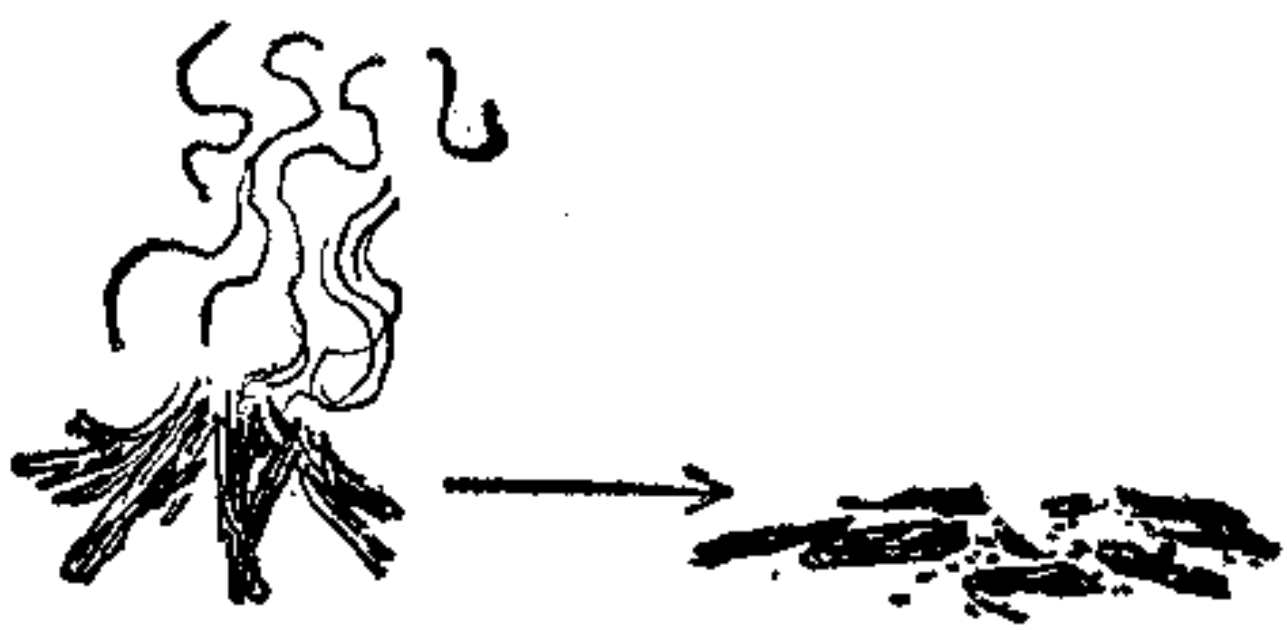


Leave a basin of water outside in freezing weather, and it will soon be covered with ice.

If it is not taken inside the room, sooner or later the whole basin of water may be turned into a block of ice.

Most matter has three states: solid, liquid and gas. Solids can usually be turned into liquids and liquids into gases if we raise their temperatures high enough. On the other hand, gases can often be turned into liquids and liquids into solids if they are made cold enough.

This change of state is a physical change and not a chemical one. If a piece of wood is heated to a high temperature, it begins to burn. Light and heat are sent out, together with heavy smoke, and soon only black charcoal is left. That is called a chemical change.



WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

lock *n.* 锁
　　vt. 锁,锁上
　　vi. 锁得上
key [ki:] *n.* 钥匙
fix *vt.* 修理;安装
composition [ˌkɔmpəˈziʃən] *n.* 作文;写作
hand in 交进来,交纳
exhibition [ˌeksiˈbiʃən] *n.* 展览

*　　*　　*

steam [sti:m] *n.* 水蒸气
in the end 最后;终于
disappear [ˌdisəˈpiə] *vi.* 消失,消散
complete [kəmˈpli:t] *adj.* 完全的,彻底的
　completely [kəmˈpli:tli] *adv.* 完全地,彻底地
heat [hi:t] *n.* 热
　vt. 把……加热
dry *vt.* 使干
　vi. 变干
　adj. 干的,干燥的
hang up 把……挂起来
vapour [ˈveipə] *n.* 汽,蒸气
or *conj.* 否则
might [mait] *v. aux.* 可能,也许
burn (burnt, burned; burnt, burned) *vi.* & *vt.* 燃烧
blow [bləu] (blew [blu:], blown [bləun]) *vt.* & *vi.* 吹
cover [ˈkʌvə] *vt.* 盖,铺
　be covered with 被……覆盖
drop *n.* 滴,点滴
　vt. 使滴下,使落下
　vi. 滴下,落下
　a drop of 一滴……
change ... into 把……变成
basin [ˈbeisn] *n.* 水盆,面盆
　a basin of 一盆……
freeze (froze, frozen [ˈfrəuzn]) *vi.* 结冰;凝固
freezing *adj.* 极冷的,冻结的
sooner or later 迟早
block *n.* 大块
　a block of 一大块……

matter *n.* 物质
state *n.* 状态;状况
solid ['sɔlid] *n.* 固体
adj. 固体的
liquid ['likwid] *n.* 液体
adj. 液体的
gas *n.* 气体;煤气
raise [reiz] *vt.*
使升高;提高,增加
on the other hand 另一方面
physical ['fizikəl] *adj.*
物理的
chemical ['kemikəl] *adj.*
化学的
wood [wud] *n.* 木头;木材
send out 放出,发出
charcoal ['tʃɑ:kəul] *n.*
炭;木炭

NOTES

1. Soon steam can be seen rising from the wet clothes. 不久就会看到水蒸气从湿衣服上冒出来。
2. When no more steam comes out, they must be taken away from the heat of the fire, or they might get burnt. 当衣服上不再冒出水蒸气的时候，就该从炉火边拿走,不然就可能烤糊的。
3. ... you will find the glass covered at once with little drops of water. ……你会发现镜子上立即蒙上一层小水珠。
4. Now stop blowing, and soon you will find the glass clear again ... 现在停止吹气，你很快就会发现镜子又清晰了……
5. Solids can usually be turned into liquids and liquids into gases ... = Solids can usually be turned into

liquids and liquids can usually be turned into gases ....

6. Light and heat are sent out, together with heavy smoke, and soon only black charcoal is left. 光和热，连同浓烟一齐散发出来，不久就只剩下乌黑的木炭。

GRAMMAR

被动语态 (The Passive Voice) (IV)

9. 现在进行时的被动语态

现在进行时的被动语态由"助动词 be + being + 及物动词的过去分词"构成。例如:

The water ***is being turned into*** vapour.

10. 含有情态动词的被动语态

含有情态动词的被动语态是由"情态动词 + be + 及物动词的过去分词"构成。例如:

a) This lock ***can be repaired*** in two days.

b) The composition ***must be handed in*** after class.

c) A basin of water ***may be turned into*** a block of ice in freezing weather.

11. 被动结构小结

I He (She) You (We, They)	+ am + is + are	+p.p.*(+介词或副词) (一般现在时)
I (He, She) We (You, They)	+ was + were	+p.p.(+介词或副词) (一般过去时)
I (We) You(He, She, They)	+ will(shall) + will	+be+p.p.(+介词或副词)(一般将来时)
I(He, She, We, You, They)	+ can / may / must	+be+p.p. (+介词或副词)(含情态动词)
I (We, You, They) He (She)	+have +has	+been+p.p. (+介词或副词) (现在完成时)
I He (She) You(We, They)	+ am + is + are	+being+p.p. (+介词或副词) (现在进行时)

* p. p. = past participle 过去分词

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

c [s] *c*ity *c*entury ne*c*essary medi*c*ine
c [k] *c*lear a*c*tive plasti*c* publi*c*

ch [tʃ] *ch*ange *ch*arcoal lun*ch* rea*ch*
ch [k] *ch*emist *ch*emical *Ch*ristmas head*ach*e

ck [k] quic*k* lo*ck* blo*ck* chic*k*en

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
fix	be so cold that water turns into ice
heat (*n.* & *vt.*)	hotness; make (become) hot
freeze	turn ... into
in the end	become lost
disappear	finally; at last
change ... into	repair

3. Give the opposite of the following:

wet hot better busy same easy clean bad
slow thin full happy ill last left tall

4. Complete these sentences, giving the English for the Chinese:

Model: The water in the wet clothes is being turned into vapour, and they ___ (越来越干). →
The water in the wet clothes is being turned into vapour, and they get drier and drier.

1) When spring comes, ___ (天气越来越暖和).
2) The People's Republic of China ___ (越来越强大).
3) Our life ___(越来越好).
4) No rubbish has been collected for three weeks; ___ (情况越来越不好).

5) When summer comes, ___ (白天越来越长).

6) When a block of ice is taken into a warm room, it ___ (越来越小).

7) ___ (他的个子越来越高).

5. Turn the following into the passive voice, mentioning the agent where necessary:

Model: You can't see the stars in the daytime. →
The stars can't be seen in the daytime.

1) They can do it today.

2) You must take good care of the dictionary.

3) You must not put the bicycle here.

4) You may do the exercises tomorrow.

5) We must send her to a hospital at once.

6) Can you finish it in two hours?

6. Turn each of the following sentences into the active voice, using *we* or *you* as the subject:

Model: If a piece of wood is heated to a high temperature, it begins to burn. →
If we heat a piece of wood to a high temperature, it begins to burn.

1) When a piece of ice is taken into a warm room, it becomes smaller and smaller, until in the end it disappears.

2) When wet clothes are hung up near a fire, steam can soon be seen rising from them.

3) When no more steam comes out, the wet clothes must be taken away from the heat of the fire, or they might get burnt.

4) Solids can usually be turned into liquids and liquids into gases if we raise their temperatures high enough.

5) That is called a chemical change.

7. Answer the following questions:

1) Does it snow in winter in your home town? Have you ever played with snow and ice?

2) What happens to ice when it is placed in your hand?

3) Can steam be changed back into water and water into ice?

4) What happens when you hold a mirror close to your mouth and blow on it?

5) What happens soon after you stop blowing on the mirror?

6) How many states does most matter have?

7) Is it a physical change or a chemical one when a piece of wood burns and becomes a piece of charcoal?

8) Can we change a piece of charcoal back into a piece of wood by cooling it?

9) Glass can be made into a drinking glass. Is that

a chemical change or a physical one?

8. Put the following into English:

1) 你的作文可以在下星期一交。

2) 这几本杂志可以带出阅览室吗？

3) 这项工作必须在星期四以前完成。

4) 如果把一块冰放在炉火上的盆子里，冰很快就会变成水。

5) 北京的冬天天气很冷。如果把一碗水放在室外，水面上很快就会结一层冰。

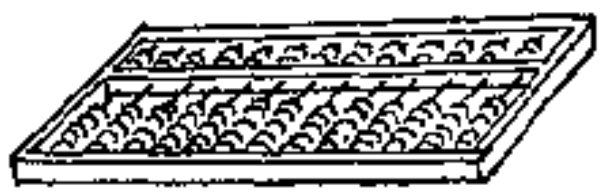
LESSON FIVE

The Fifth Lesson

TEXT

COMPUTERS

The computer is a wonderful machine. It is the most important invention in many years. Today it is used a great deal in many ways. By the year 2,000 the computer will probably touch the lives of everyone, even people in faraway villages.



The oldest kind of computer is the abacus, used in China centuries ago. In the seventeenth century an adding machine was invented, but the first large, modern computer was built in 1946. A computer then could do 5,000 adding problems in one second. Now computers can work millions of times faster.

Today most computers have a memory. That means information can be stored in them

and be taken out anytime needed. Computers are getting smaller and smaller, and computing faster and faster. Even in a large computer, the part that does the computing is now only about as big as the end of a finger.

Computers can do many kinds of work. For example, when someone buys something in a big shop, information about the sale is put into a computer. During the night the computer works on the information from all the sales that day. The next morning, the manager has a report on everything that was sold and also on everything that will soon be sold out.

In research about the moon, a lot of information is put into computers. A scientist can then "ask" the computer questions, and the computer "answers" on the screen. It is almost like talking to another scientist.

Another computer programme has information about different illnesses. A doctor can

talk to the computer and explain what is wrong with a person. The computer will then tell what to do. If the doctor asks why, the computer goes through its memory and gives the reason.

In some large factories there are very few people. Robots do most of the work. For example, in a car factory, when a different type of car comes along the line, the robot changes its work, just as a human would do. How does the robot know this? A computer "tells" it what to do.

In the last few years there have been great changes in computers. They now can do most of the things people can do, though most scientists agree that computers cannot completely take the place of humans. Who knows what the computers of tomorrow will be like? Will they make life better, or will they bring suffering to people? The students of today will have to decide how to use the computers

of tomorrow.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

computer [kəm'pju:tə] *n.*
计算机;电子计算机
invention [in'venʃən] *n.*
发明,创造
a great deal [di:l] (of)
非常多地;大量(的)
faraway ['fɑ:rəwei] *adj.*
遥远的
abacus ['æbəkəs] *n.*
(*pl.*) abaci ['æbəsai] 或 abacuses 算盘
adding machine 加法机
invent [in'vent] *vt.*
发明,创造
memory ['meməri] *n.*
记忆,记忆力;存贮器
information [ˌinfə'meiʃən]
n. 通知;情报;信息
store [stɔ:] *vt.* 存贮,储藏
anytime *adv.* 在任何时候
compute [kəm'pju:t]
vt. & *vi.* 计算
finger ['fiŋgə] *n.* 手指
example [ig'zɑ:mpl] *n.*
例子;榜样
for example 例如
sale *n.* 卖,销售
put into 输入;(使)进入
manager ['mænidʒə] *n.*
经理;管理人
sell out 售完
screen *n.* 幕;荧光屏
programme ['prəugræm] *n.*
程序
illness ['ilnis] *n.* 疾病
go through 通过;仔细查看
reason ['ri:zn] *n.* 理由;原因
robot ['rəubɔt] *n.* 机器人
type *n.* 类型;样式
a type of 一种类型的……
line *n.*
线;生产(装配)线;排;行
human ['hju:mən] *n.* 人
adj. 人的,人类的
though [ðəu] *conj.*
但是;然而;虽然

agree [ə'gri:] *vt.* & *vi.* 同意，赞成

suffer ['sʌfə] *vi.* 受苦

vt. 遭受

suffering ['sʌfəriŋ] *n.* 痛苦；苦难

adj. 受苦的

NOTES

1. The oldest kind of the computer is the abacus, used in China centuries ago. 最老式的一种计算机是算盘，好几个世纪以前就在中国使用了。
2. Now computers can work millions of times faster. 现在计算机能比以前运算快几百万倍。
3. Today most computers have a memory. That means information can be stored in them and be taken out anytime needed. 今天，大多数计算机都有一个存贮器。这意味着信息能存贮在计算机里，在需要的时候，随时都可以取出。
4. Even in a large computer, the part that does the computing is now only about as big as the end of a finger. 即使在大型的计算机里，进行运算的部件现在大约只有手指头那么大。

   that does the computing 是起定语作用的从句，修饰名词 part。
5. During the night the computer works on the information from all the sales that day. 夜间，计算机处理当天全部售货的信息。

6. The next morning, the manager has a report on everything that was sold and also on everything that will soon be sold out. 第二天早晨，经理就得到一份关于已出售的和即将售完的商品的报表。

that was sold 和 that will soon be sold out 是两个起定语作用的从句，各自修饰前面的 everything。

7. If the doctor asks why, the computer goes through its memory and gives the reason. 如果医生问为什么，计算机就从它存贮的信息中查找，并说明理由。

8. They now can do most of the things people can do, though most scientists agree that computers cannot completely take the place of humans. 人们能做的大部分工作，计算机现在都能做。然而，大多数科学家认为，计算机并不能完全代替人。

people can do 是起定语作用的从句，修饰名词 things。

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

x [ks] te*x*t fi*x* e*x*cellent e*x*hibition
x [gz] e*x*ample

ph [f] *ph*oto *ph*ysical ele*ph*ant
telegra*ph*

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
a great deal	man, woman, or child
invention	machine made to do some of the work of a man
sell out	something invented
robot	sell all of (what was for sale)
human	very much
information	news or knowledge given

3. Put the following into English:

A. 1) 头 2) 头发 3) 脸 4) 眼
5) 鼻 6) 耳 7) 口 8) 牙

B. 1) 颈 2) 臂 3) 手 4) 手指
5) 胸 6) 背脊 7) 腿 8) 膝
9) 脚 10) 身体

4. Make up compound words by joining a word from Column I with a word from Column II:

I	II	I	II
any	room	every	book
any	room	every	book
any	way	every	room
far	away	dust	mate
rail	time	dust	one
dining-	body	work	shop
sitting-	thing	work	man
in	out	work	bin

out	side	story-	where
with	side	text	thing

5. Fill in each of the blanks with one of the expressions given, using the proper tense form:

go to the cinema	go over	go swimming
go on working	go through	go to bed

1) My sister ___ not ___ until eleven o'clock last night.
2) Mary made a lot of mistakes in her homework because she ___ not ___ it after she had finished it.
3) Mike's mother told me he ___ in the lake.
4) I did not see Wei Fang this morning. Her mother told me that she ___.
5) When someone asked Dr Bethune to have a rest, he just ___.
6) The policeman ___ the pockets of the thief.

6. Read the following, then fill in each of the blanks with ***to, of, into, with*** or ***out of***:

Give and Take

There was an old man who loved money very much. He never gave anything ___ anybody. After some years he became rich.

One day he was walking near the river ___ his

friends when he fell ___ the river. His friends ran to help him. One ___ them held out his hand and cried: "Give me your hand, and I'll pull you out!" The rich man's head went under the water and then came up again, but he did not give his hand ___ his friend. Again another ___ his friends tried, but again the same thing happened.

Then another friend, Nasreddin, said: "Take my hand and I'll pull you out!" The rich man took his hand and Nasreddin pulled him ___ the water.

"You don't know your friend very well," Nasreddin said ___ the others. "When you say 'Give!' to him, he does nothing, but when you say 'Take!' he always takes."

There was an old man who loved money very much.
从前有个非常爱钱的老头。

Nasreddin [næsri'din] 纳斯雷金(人名)。从希腊到印度广为传布的民间故事中的一个人物。

LESSON SIX

The Sixth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the adverbs of the following adjectives, then put them into Chinese:

   bad real wide loud true

   easy angry clear active careful

   excellent necessary terrible

2. Put the following into Chinese:

   1) a drop of ink 2) a bottle of medicine

   3) a glass of milk 4) a cup of tea

   5) a bowl of rice 6) a basin of water

   7) a basket of tomatoes 8) a bag of corn

   9) a jar of salt 10) a box of food

   11) a piece of bread 12) a block of wood

3. Put the following into English:

   A. 1) 中国共产党 2) 中华人民共和国

   3) 中国人民解放军 4) 八路军

   5) 工人阶级 6) 工会

   B. 1) 公众 2) 出版社

   3) 商业信件 4) 工作语言

5) 加法机　　6) 机器人

C. 1) 例如　　2) 迟早

3) 遍及全国　　4) 前两年

5) 最后(终于)　　6) 不久以后

7) 另一方面　　8) 直到今天

4. Fill in each of the blanks with ***put on***, ***put up***, ***put down*** or ***put ... into***:

1) An English play will be ___ at the Capital Theatre this Saturday evening.

2) I saw Mr Brown ___ his cap and go out.

3) When Miss Evans asked who could answer the question, many students ___ their hands.

4) Will you help me ___ these pictures?

5) A paper factory has been ___ in my home town.

6) Li Ming asked the old woman to ___ her heavy box and let him carry it for her.

7) Physics isn't so hard. If you ___ your heart ___ it, you'll learn well.

8) Computers are a great help in research. We can ___ a lot of information ___ them and they can organize the information and give it back to us when we need it.

5. Fill in each of the blanks with the right word, then put the sentences into Chinese:

A. interesting, interested

1) I'm reading a very ___ book about maths.

2) Isn't that book ___?

3) Mary is ___ in Japanese.

B. easy, easily

1) Can you tell the story in ___ English?

2) Is this exercise ___?

3) He can ___ finish the exercise before lunch.

C. careful, carefully

1) You must drive ___ when it's snowing so hard.

2) You must be ___ not to break the glasses.

3) We must make a ___ study of this problem.

D. terrible, terribly

1) The rubbish gave out a ___ smell.

2) It was ___ cold yesterday.

3) "Oh, I feel ___," cried Tom.

E. angry, angrily

1) "Unfair! How dare you say that!" Mr Black said ___.

2) The boy was ___ because he thought that I had taken his new stamps.

6. Choose the correct answer for each blank:

1) These machines ___ last year by the workers themselves.

(A. are made B. were made C. have made)

2) Plastic basins ___ in this factory.

(A. are made B.were made C.have been made)

3) "___ the letter ___ to Mr White?"

"No. It's still on my desk."

(A. Is ... being given B. Was ... given

C. Has ... been given)

4) There will be a football match next week. Each one on the winning team ___ a pair of sports shoes.

(A. is given B. will be given C. has been given)

5) The work ___ well ___ and Grandma gave a big smile.

(A. is ...done B. was...done C. will be...done)

6) When your homework ___, you may go skating.

(A. is done B. was done C. will be done)

7) You ___ your room in a minute.

(A. are shown B.were shown C. will be shown)

8) We ___ around the chemistry lab by an old man.

(A.are shown B.were shown C.have been shown)

7. Read the following, then fill in each of the blanks

with ***in, on, of, to, about*** or ***with***:

London Bridge

"London Bridge is falling down, falling down, falling down ...."

You may know the song. It's ___ a very old bridge. The bridge was ___ London, but it's not there now.

The bridge did not fall down. Workers took it down. London needed a new bridge. The old one was not very strong. Too many people had gone over it for too many years.

"What shall we do ___ the old bridge?" people asked.

An American said, "I'll buy it." He wanted to move it ___ the United States. But how do you move a bridge?

First someone made a picture ___ the bridge. It showed the exact place ___ each stone. A number was put on each stone in the picture. The same numbers were printed ___ the real stones.

Then the bridge was taken down. The stones were put on ships. They were sent across the sea ___ the United States.

Piece by piece, the bridge was put back together

Each stone was put ___ the right place.

So the old bridge is still standing, but it's not ___ London. Let's hope it does not fall down.

exact [ig'zækt] *adj.* 确切的
across [ə'krɔs] *prep.* 横过

8. Put the following into English:

Model: 现在停止吹气，你就会发现玻璃又明净了。⟶ Now stop blowing, and soon you will find the glass clear again.

1) 动动脑筋，你就会想出更好的办法来。
2) 好好想一想，你就会想出好主意。
3) 再问问她，她就会告诉你的。
4) 明天早点来，你就会见到他。
5) 下午把书带来，我替你还。

9. Read the following:

Mark Twain and the Old Man

Mark Twain, the famous American writer, liked to play jokes on others. But once a joke was played on him.

One day Mark Twain was invited to give a talk in a small town. At lunch he met a young man, one of

his friends.

The young man said that he had an uncle with him. He told Twain that his uncle never laughed or smiled, and that nobody and nothing was able to make his uncle smile or laugh.

"You bring your uncle to my talk tonight," said Mark Twain. "I'm sure I can make him laugh."

That evening the young man and his uncle sat in the front. Mark Twain began to speak. He told several funny stories. This made everyone in the room laugh.

But the old man never even smiled. Mark Twain told more funny stories, but the old man still kept quiet. Mark Twain told his funniest stories. Finally he stopped. He was tired and quite disappointed.

Some days later, Mark Twain told another friend of his about what had happened.

"Oh," said this friend, "I know that old man. He's been deaf for years."

Mark Twain [twein] 马克·吐温(1835—1910),美国作家
play a joke 开玩笑
funny ['fʌni] *adj.* 滑稽可笑的;有趣的
deaf [def] *adj.* 聋的

LESSON SEVEN

The Seventh Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: Have you seen Zhao Hai today?

B: Yes, I have.

A: Do you know why he isn't coming this evening?

B: He told me he had

an important meeting to attend.
some exercises to do.
a composition to write.
several letters to answer.

2

A: Have you started writing your composition yet?

B: No, I really don't know

what to write about.
which topic to choose.
how to begin.

A LESSON FROM NATURE

Not many years ago, some farmers were worried because hawks were taking many of their chickens. The farmers did not know what to do. Finally they went to the officials and asked for help.

"Kill the hawks," the officials said. "We'll even pay you for them." So the farmers began to think of ways to kill hawks.

The farmers killed many hawks. Before long they didn't have to worry about their chickens. But they now had a new worry. Field mice were eating up a lot of the farmers' grain.

How did this happen?

Hawks eat not only chickens but also field mice. They eat more field mice than chickens. But the farmers did not know this. When they

killed a lot of hawks, they changed the balance of nature.

When people move into a new place, they often destroy many wild plants. Many of these plants are food for the animals. If the animals cannot find enough plants to eat, they will starve or have to leave the place.

In one part of the United States, for example, the deer there like to eat a certain kind of wild rose. The mountain lions there eat the deer. The number of deer, mountain lions, and wild roses does not change much if people leave things as they are.

But people killed many mountain lions in order to protect the deer. Soon there were so many deer that they ate up all the wild roses. Then the deer began to eat the green leaves of young trees. These trees were important to the farmers. So the farmers thought of ways to protect their trees. Now the deer had nothing

to eat, and many of them died. This was another lesson from nature.

It is important for us to keep the balance of nature. This is the lesson we should remember.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

attend [ə'tend] *vt.*
出席，参加
topic ['tɔpik] *n.* (文章、讲演的)题目；主题

* * *

lesson *n.* 教训
nature ['neitʃə] *n.*
大自然，自然界
hawk [hɔ:k] *n.* 鹰
official [ə'fiʃəl] *n.* 官员
mouse *n.*
(*pl.*) mice 鼠，耗子
field mouse 田鼠
grain [grein] *n.*
谷物，谷类；谷粒
balance ['bæləns] *n.*
平衡；秤
the balance of nature
自然平衡(生态平衡)
destroy [dis'trɔi] *vt.*
破坏，毁坏
wild [waild] *adj.*
野生的，野的
plant *n.* 植物
starve *vi.* 饿死；挨饿
vt. 使饿死；使挨饿
deer [diə] *n.*
(*pl.*) deer 鹿
certain ['sə:tn] *adj.*
某种；一定的
lion ['laiən] *n.* 狮子
mountain lion 美洲狮
order *n.* 目的，意向
in order to 为了
protect [prə'tekt] *vt.* 保护

NOTES

1. "We'll even pay you for them." "我们甚至会因为它们(指被杀死的鹰)给你们报酬。"(意思是:"我们甚至会因为你们杀死鹰而给你们报酬。")

   pay someone for 为……给某人报酬

2. The number of deer, mountain lions, and wild roses does not change much if people leave things as they are. 如果人们听其自然发展,鹿、美洲狮和野玫瑰的数量不会有很大的变化。

3. It is important for us to keep the balance of nature. 保持生态平衡对我们来说是很重要的。

4. This is the lesson we should remember. 这是我们应当记住的教训。

   we should remember 是起定语作用的从句,修饰前面的名词 lesson。

GRAMMAR

动词不定式 (The Infinitive) (II)

1. 动词不定式(或短语)的用法(续)

   动词不定式(或短语)具有名词、形容词和副词的特征,因此,在句子中可以作主语、表语、宾语、宾语补足语、定语和状语。在第三册第 13 课已归纳过动词不定式作宾语、宾语补足语和状语的用法,本册继续归纳动词不定式

作定语、主语和表语的用法。

1) 作定语

a) He said he had an important meeting ***to attend***.

b) Do you have anything ***to say for yourself***?

c) The fisherman had nothing ***to take home*** that morning.

d) The farmers thought of ways ***to protect their trees***.

e) Dr Bethune had no time ***to think about rest***.

It 的用法 (The Use of "It")

1. 代词 it 可用来指除人以外的一切生物和事物。例如:

a) Where's the dog? ***It***'s in front of the house.

b) Is this jacket yours? Yes, ***it*** is.

2. 代词 it 在某种情况下也可以指人。例如:

a) Who is ***it***? ***It***'s me.

b) "I'm sorry," the guard said to Lenin.

"I didn't know ***it*** was you."

3. 代词 it 有时不特指某件东西，而代表前面提到的整个事情。例如:

Don't read in the sun. It's too bright.

It's bad for your eyes.

4. 代词 it 可以指时间、距离和自然现象，在句子中作主语。例如:

a) What time is ***it***? ***It***'s six o'clock. (指时间)

b) ***It***'s September, and we're back at school. (指时间)

c) ***It***'s not far from here to the bus stop. (指距离)

d) ***It***'s cold today, isn't it? (指自然现象)

e) I hope ***it*** will be fine tomorrow. (指自然现象)

f) ***It*** was raining when I got to school yesterday. (指自然现象)

g) ***It*** did not snow much last winter. (指自然现象)

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

1) w [w] ***w***ide ***w***arn ***w***ood ***w***eather

wh [w] ***wh***y ***wh***ite ***wh***ich ***wh***eat
wh [h] ***wh***o ***wh***om ***wh***ose ***wh***ole

2) aw [ɔ:] dr***aw*** h***aw***k dr***aw***ing dr***aw***n

ew [ju:] f***ew*** n***ew*** n***ew***s ren***ew***

ow [əu] ***ow***n l***ow*** gr***ow*** yell***ow***
ow [au] c***ow*** h***ow*** d***ow***n t***ow***n

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
topic	a wild animal of America
field mouse	a subject to talk or write about
destroy	suffer because of having no food
starve	a small animal with a long tail like a small rat, living in the fields
nature	break into pieces
mountain lion	the whole universe and things in it not made by man, such as animals and plants

3. Put the following into English:

A. 1) 狮 2) 美洲狮 3) 象 4) 鹿 5) 狐狸
6) 熊 7) 猴子 8) 野兔 9) 田鼠 10) 蚂蚁

B. 1) 骆驼 2) 马 3) 母牛 4) 猪 5) 山羊
6) 绵羊 7) 狗 8) 猫 9) 鼠 10) 公鸡
11) 母鸡 12) 小鸡

C. 1) 鸟 2) 鹰 3) 海鸥 4) 蜜蜂 5) 蝗虫

D. 1) 鱼 2) 鳄鱼 3) 乌龟

E. 1) 植物 2) 树 3) 草 4) 叶 5) 花
6) 玫瑰花

F. 1) 农作物 2) 谷物 3) 麦 4) 大米 5) 玉米
6) 棉花

G. 1) 食物 2) 蔬菜 3) 西红柿 4) 苹果 5) 桔子
6) 香蕉 7) 肉 8) 鸡肉 9) 蛋 10) 牛奶

11) 面包　12) 糕

4. Make sentences after the model, using infinitives, then put them into Chinese

Model: I, have, a letter, write →

I have a letter to write, 我有一封信要写。

1) I, have, something important, tell you
2) she, has, a lot of work, do
3) I, have, a few questions, ask
4) we, have got, a new way, kill field mice
5) I, am, hungry, please, give, me, something eat
6) before liberation, my mother, had, no chance, go to school
7) the Young Pioneers, thought of, ways, protect, the young trees

5. Complete the following sentences, using infinitives:

1) The animals could not find ___(足够吃的食物).
2) She has got ___ (一些事要说) in her letter.
3) "I've got no ___ (听你辩解的时间)," Grandpa said angrily.
4) He was ___ (最后到达的人).
5) There are still ___ (许多事要做).
6) I want to get ___ (一些喝的).

6. Rewrite the following sentences after the model:

Model: I don't know what I should read. →

I don't know what to read.

1) The farmers didn't know what they should do.
2) We don't know when we'll start.
3) Will you please tell me how I can get to the station?
4) Please tell me where I can find him.
5) She doesn't know which she'll choose.
6) Please tell us how we can keep the balance of nature.
7) She didn't know where she could find wild roses.
8) Mr Brown told the boys how they could get the sick deer to eat.
9) I've forgotten how I can open the door.
10) Please tell us what we should do in order to protect the wild animals.

7. Tick off the correct answer to each of the following questions according to the text:

1) Why were some of the farmers worried?
They were worried because
a. they hadn't enough food for their chickens.
b. hawks were taking many of their chickens.
c. their chickens were all dead.

2) Where did they go to ask for help?
They went to
a. the policemen and asked for help.

b. their neighbours and asked for help.

c. the officials and asked for help.

3) What was the farmers' new worry?

Their new worry was that

a. field mice were eating up a lot of their grain.

b. hawks ate more field mice than chickens.

c. they could not think of ways to kill the field mice.

4) What will happen if animals cannot find enough plants to eat?

If animals cannot find enough plants to eat, they will

a. kill themselves.

b. starve or leave the place.

c. hide themselves in a hole.

5) What lesson should we remember?

The lesson is that it is important

a. to keep the balance of nature.

b. not to kill the animals.

c. to plant more trees.

8. Read the following:

You probably know that some English words came from French.

One interesting thing is that when we talk about meat on our table, we use French words. But when

we speak about animals, we use English words. For example, a pig is called pig when it is living, but when it is killed and its meat is brought to the table, it is called pork. Cattle are called cattle when they are raised in the field, but at the dinner table, we call the meat beef.

When the Normans ruled England, the English peasants were ordered to raise animals for food, but they themselves could not buy the meat. The meat was sent to the Norman tables. The peasants could only eat rabbits, because rabbits ran all over their fields and rabbit meat was cheap. So the meat of a rabbit was not changed into a French word. It was called rabbit by the English peasants of that time and is still called rabbit today.

pork [pɔ:k] *n.* 猪肉
cattle ['kætl] *n.* (*pl.*) 牛(总称)
beef [bi:f] *n.* 牛肉
Norman ['nɔ:mən] *n.* 诺曼第人
adj. 诺曼第人的
rule [ru:l] *vt.* 统治
rabbit ['ræbit] *n.* 兔

LESSON EIGHT

The Eighth Lesson

DRILLS

1

A: Do you get up early in the morning?

B: Why, yes!

A: What do you usually do after you get up?

B: I do

morning exercises.
some reading aloud.
some cleaning.

It's good

to have plenty of exercise.
to read aloud often.
to help with the housework.

2

A: What are good manners in your country?

B: It's good manners

to wait in line.
to eat quietly.
not to shout in public.

A: I see. But what are bad manners?

B: It's bad manners

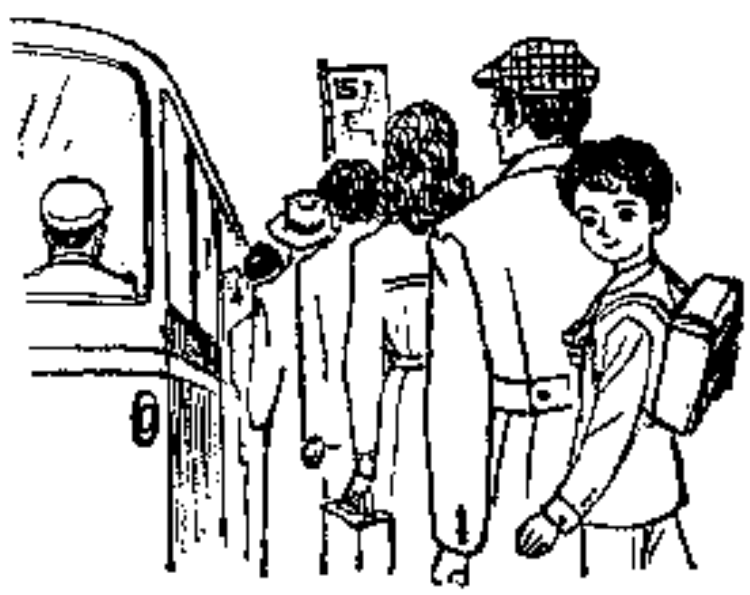
to be rude to people.
to spit in public.
to come late to class or a meeting.

TEXT

GOOD MANNERS

Manners are important to happy relations among people. Everyone likes a person with good manners. No one likes a person with bad manners. But what are good manners? How does one know what to do and what not to do?

Well, here are some examples.



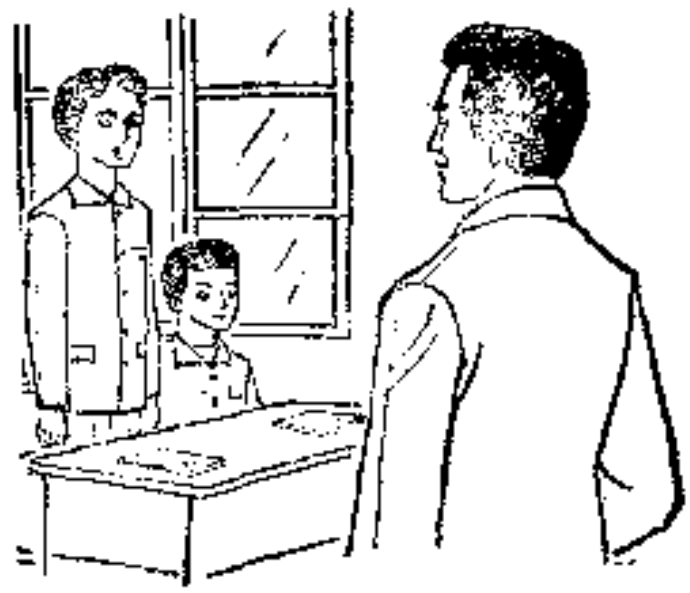
A person with good manners never laughs at people when they are in trouble. Instead, he tries to help them. He is always kind to others. When people are waiting for a bus, he takes

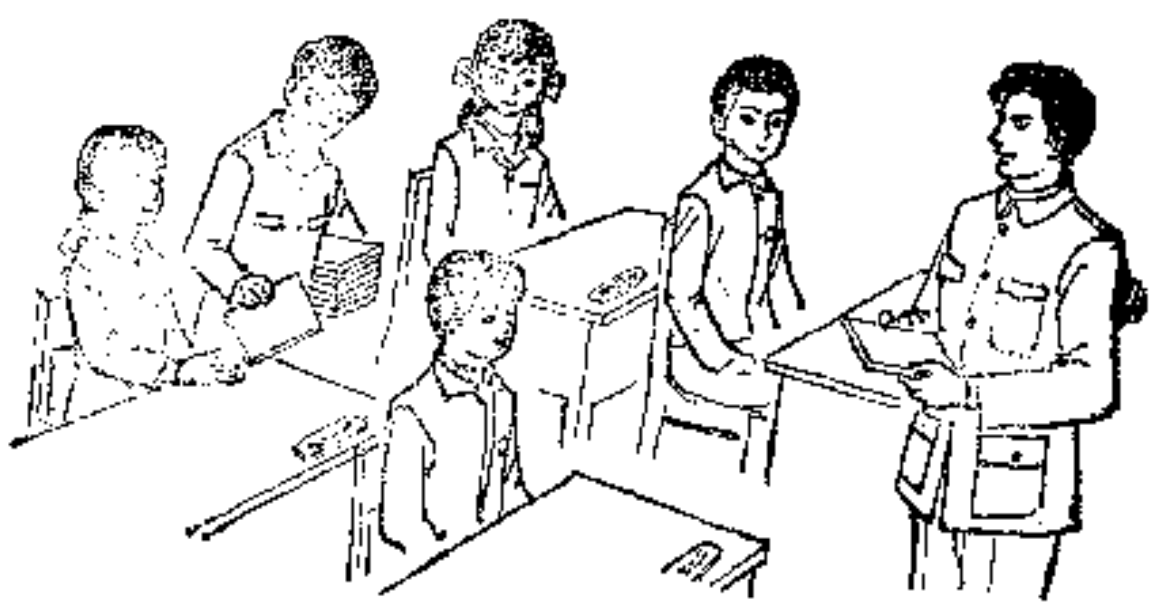
his turn. He does not push to the front of the line. On the bus he gives his seat to an older person or a person with a very young child. If he knocks into someone, or gets in his way, he says "Excuse me" or "I'm sorry".

He says "Please" when he asks for something and "Thank you" when he receives something. He stands up when he is speaking to an older person, and he does not sit down until the other person takes his seat. He does not interrupt other people when they are talking. He does not talk too much. He does not talk loudly or laugh loudly in public. When he is eating he does not speak with his mouth full of food. He uses a handkerchief when he sneezes or coughs. He does not spit in public.

As a student, it is bad manners to come late to class. If you are late you should make an apology to the teacher either at the time or after class. It is also bad manners to keep silent when the teacher asks you a question. If you do not know the answer, say so immediately. If you do know, answer in a loud enough

voice so that all the class may hear. It is polite for the students to help the teacher. Sometimes students can help their teachers to clean the blackboard, to close or open the door or windows. Sometimes there are papers to collect or to hand out. This kind of help is always appreciated.





Ideas of what are good manners are not always the same in different countries. But in all countries it is important to be kind and helpful.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

aloud [ə'laud] *adv.*
出声地，大声地
housework ['hauswə:k] *n.*
家务劳动
manner ['mænə] *n.*
方式；态度，举止
manners *n.* (*pl.*) 礼貌
good manners 很有礼貌
bad manners 没有礼貌
in line 成一直线
wait in line 排队等候
in public 当众，公开地
rude [ru:d] *adj.* 无礼的；粗鲁的
spit (spat, spit; spat, spit) *vi.* & *vt.* 吐痰；吐唾沫

* * *

relation [ri'leiʃən] *n.*
关系，联系
in trouble 处于困境(苦恼)中
kind *adj.* 和蔼的；友爱的
turn *n.* (依次轮流的)顺序
take one's turn 依次，轮流
push [puʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 推
push to the front of the line 挤到队伍的前面去
knock *vi.* 相撞，碰撞
knock into someone 撞在某人身上
get in one's way 挡了某人的去路
interrupt [ˌintə'rʌpt] *vt.*
打断(讲话或讲话的人)；打扰
handkerchief ['hæŋkətʃif] *n.* 手帕，手绢
sneeze *vi.* 打喷嚏
apology [ə'pɔlədʒi] *n.*
道歉，认错
make an apology to someone 向某人道歉
either *conj.* 或者，要么
either ... or ...
或者……或者……
silent ['sailənt] *adj.*
沉默的
keep silent 保持沉默
so that 以便；以致；结果是
paper *n.* 考卷；书面作业；论文；报纸

hand out 分发

appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieit] *vt.* 感激;欣赏

helpful ['helpful] *adj.* 有帮助的;有益的

NOTES

1. It's good to have plenty of exercise. 进行充分的体育锻炼是有益的。
2. to help with the housework 帮助干点家务活。
3. Manners are important to happy relations among people. 礼貌对于人们之间相处得融洽是很重要的。

   happy 在这里作"恰当的,得体的"讲。
4. When people are waiting for a bus he takes his turn. He does not push to the front of the line. 当人们在等公共汽车的时候,他按次序排队。他不挤到队伍的前面去。
5. If he knocks into someone, or gets in his way, he says "Excuse me" or "I'm sorry". 如果他撞在某人身上或挡了某人的去路,他要说"请原谅"或者"对不起"。
6. If you do know, answer in a loud enough voice so that all the class may hear. 如果你的确知道,就用足够大的声音来回答,使全班同学都能听得见。

   If you do know 中的 do 是助动词,用来表示强调。
7. It is polite for the students to help the teacher. 对学生来说,帮助老师是有礼貌的(表现)。

8. Ideas of what are good manners are not always the same in different countries. 什么叫做很有礼貌，不同的国家看法往往不相同。

Ideas of what are good manners 是这个句子的主语部分，其中 what are good manners 是宾语从句，作介词 of 的宾语，合起来作定语修饰 ideas。

GRAMMAR

动词不定式 (The Infinitive) (III)

1. 动词不定式(或短语)的用法(续)

2) 作主语

To learn a foreign language is not easy.

在现代英语中，更为普遍的是用 it 来开始一个句子，作形式主语，而把真正的主语动词不定式(或短语)放在后面。例如:

a) It's not easy ***to learn a foreign language.***

b) It's good ***to see all my teachers and friends again.***

c) It took me more than a year ***to learn to draw a beautiful horse in five minutes.***

3) 作表语

a) His wish was ***to become a scientist.***

b) To the doctor, the most important thing was ***to save lives.***

2. 动词不定式的否定形式

由 not ＋动词不定式构成。

a) Tell him ***not to be late.***

b) I'll try ***not to read in bed.***

c) The policeman told the boys ***not to play in the street.***

3. 动词不定式和疑问词连用

动词不定式可以和疑问词 what, which, how, where, when 等连用，构成动词不定式短语，在句子中作主语、宾语、表语等成份。

a) ***How to use the computer*** is the question. (主语)

b) A computer tells the robot ***what to do.*** (宾语)

c) The question is ***where to get a computer.*** (表语)

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

1)	y [j]	year	yet	young	yesterday	
2)	y [ai]	try	sky	type	dry	
	y [i]	army	really	empty	country	
3)	ay [ei]	May	way	say	pay	play
	oy [oi]	boy	joy	enjoy		

2. For each word or phrase in Column I find a phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
helpful	say that one is sorry to someone
interrupt	say nothing
take one's seat	giving help
make an apology to someone	break in upon a person when he is speaking or doing something
keep silent	sit down in one's place
rude	not at all polite

3. Put the following into English:

1) 很有礼貌　　2) 没有礼貌

3) 排队等候　　4) 挡了某人的道

5) 给某人让座　　6) 撞在某人身上

7) 帮老师收书面作业　　8) 向某人道歉

9) 不嘲笑别人　　10) 不当众吐痰

4. Make sentences after the models, using infinitives:

A. Model: important / be kind and helpful ⟶ It's important to be kind and helpful.

1) nice / see you again

2) wonderful / visit different parts of our country

3) interesting / ride on a camel

4) necessary / make an apology when you knock into someone

5) difficult / catch fish without a net

6) not polite / speak with one's mouth full of food

B. Model: bad manners / come late to school ⟶

It's bad manners to come late to school.

1) good manners / help older people when they're carrying heavy things

2) bad manners / laugh at someone's shortcomings

3) not a bad idea / let Mary go with us

4) a good idea / give the next concert just for blind people

5) a long way / go to the Science Museum from here

6) the wrong way / keep the balance of nature in that place

5. Complete the following sentences, using infinitives:

Model: It's not easy ___ (徒手摸鱼). ⟶

It's not easy to catch fish with your hands only.

1) It's difficult ___ (射中一只鹰).

2) It's important ___ (每天喝大量的水).

3) It's necessary ___ (饭前洗手).

4) It's a good idea ___ (在暑假里做好事).

5) Tom's wish is ___ (到中国各地旅行).

6) The dustman's work is ___ (倒垃圾箱并保持街道清洁).

7) The most important thing for her is ___ (进行充分的体育锻炼).

6. Fill in the blank with proper words and phrases:

Manners are ___ to happy relations ___ people. No one likes a person with ___ manners. A person with ___ manners never laughs at people when they are ___. Instead, he tries to help ___. When he asks for something, he says ___. And when he receives ___, he usually says ___. He does not ___ other people when they are talking. He does not ___ loudly or ___ loudly ___. When he ___ or spits, he uses a ___. As a student, it is ___ manners to come ___ to class. If you are late you should ___ to the teacher either at the time or ___.

7. Put the following into Chinese, paying attention to the use of "so that" or "so ... that":

1) The man spoke in a loud enough voice **so *that*** everybody in the room might hear.

2) They sent him to a hospital **so *that*** his mother would not have to look after him all the time.

3) He has been **so** busy these days ***that*** he has no time to be with us.

4) The two scientists worked **so** hard ***that*** they did not go home even in the holidays.

5) The little monkey was **so** clever ***that*** he made the crocodile turn and swim back to the bank.

6) We piled the snow in one place **so** ***that*** the children could make a snowman.

8. Put the following into English:

1) 教师进教室时，我们应当起立。

2) 如果你上课迟到了，你应当向老师道歉。

3) 当某人处于困境的时候，我们应当尽力帮助。

4) 当我们去商店买东西的时候，我们应当依次排队而不要挤到前面去。

5) 当你撞了某人或挡了他的道的时候，你应当说声"请原谅"或"对不起"。

LESSON NINE

The Ninth Lesson

TEXT

LOOK CAREFULLY AND LEARN

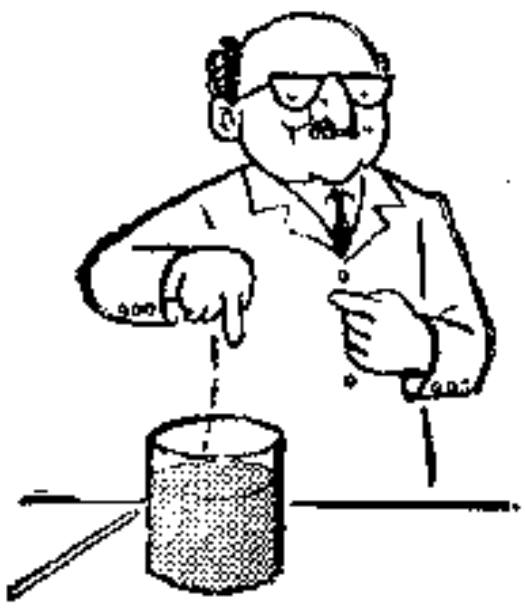
My friend Carl will never forget a certain professor. This professor taught him chemistry at the university. He was an ordinary-looking little man with thick glasses, but he had a strange way of making his classes lively and interesting. And the lessons he taught were not easily forgotten.

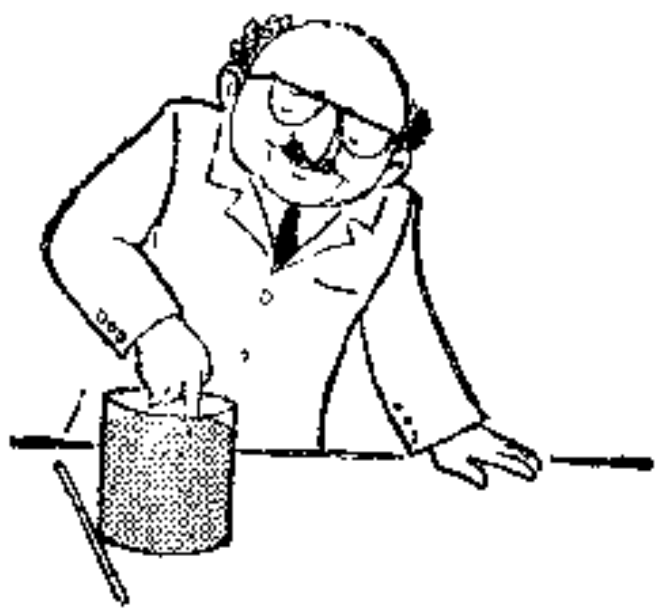
Carl remembers one of his first lessons from this professor. After the students were all in the chemistry lab, the professor brought out three bottles. One was filled with kerosene, one with castor oil, and one with vinegar. "Now watch carefully," said the professor. "Pay attention to everything that I do."

He then filled a cup with some of the kerosene, some of the castor oil and some of

the vinegar. As the students watched with fascination, he mixed the three together. After that, he held up one of his fingers and showed it to the class. He then dipped it into the cup.

After a few seconds he took his finger out. "Now watch," he said. "Remember, you must do everything that I do."





He put a finger in his mouth and sucked it. He nodded with a smile. Then he handed the cup around the class of students. Each student dipped a finger into the mixture and sucked it. Each immediately made a face. The

mixture tasted horrible.

When the cup was at last returned to the professor, he shook his head sadly. "I'm sorry," he said to the class, "but none of you watched carefully enough. Yes, I sucked a finger, but the finger I put into my mouth was not the one I had dipped into the cup."

It was their first important lesson as students of chemistry and they never forgot it.

WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

Carl 卡尔(男名)
professor [prə'fesə] *n.* 教授
university [ˌju:ni'və:siti] *n.* 综合性大学
ordinary ['ɔ:dnəri] *adj.* 普通的

ordinary-looking
['ɔ:dnəri'lukiŋ] *adj.*
相貌平常的
lively ['laivli] *adj.*
生动的，活泼的
fill *vt.* 装满；填充
fill ... with ...
把……装满……
kerosene ['kerəsi:n] *n.* 煤油
castor ['kɑ:stə] *n.* 蓖麻
oil *n.* 油
castor oil 蓖麻油
vinegar ['vinigə] *n.* 醋
fascination [ˌfæsi'neiʃən] *n.*
强烈的爱好；迷惑
mix *vt.* & *vi.* 混合；搅和
hold up 举起
dip *vt.* 浸；蘸；把……放入又取出
dip ... into ... 把……浸入(液体)中
suck *vt.* 吮吸；舐食
nod *n.* & *vi.* 点头
mixture ['mikstʃə] *n.*
混合物
taste [teist] *vi.* & *vt.*
有……味道；尝味
horrible ['hɔrəbl] *adj.*
可怕的；(口语)极讨厌的
sad *adj.* 难过的，悲哀的
sadly *adv.* 难过地，悲哀地
none [nʌn] *pron.* 一个人也没有；没有任何东西

NOTES

1. He was an ordinary-looking little man with thick glasses, but he had a strange way of making his classes lively and interesting. 他是一位相貌平常、个子矮小的人，戴着一副深度眼镜，但是他有一种奇妙的方法，使他的课上得生动有趣。
2. And the lessons he taught were not easily forgotten. 并且他教的课不容易遗忘。

he taught 是起定语作用的从句，修饰 lessons。

3. One was filled with kerosene, one with castor oil, and one with vinegar. 一只瓶子装满煤油，一只瓶子装满蓖麻油，一只瓶子装满醋。

4. Pay attention to everything that I do. 请注意我做的每一件事。

   that I do 是起定语作用的从句，修饰 everything。

5. Remember, you must do everything that I do. 记住，我做的每一件事你们都必须照着做。

6. The mixture tasted horrible. 混合物太难吃了。

   taste 在这里用作连系动词。

7. ...but the finger I put into my mouth was not the one I had dipped into the cup. ……但是我放进嘴里的手指不是我在杯子里蘸了一下的那个手指。

   I put into my mouth 是起定语作用的从句，修饰 finger; I had dipped into the cup 也是起定语作用的从句，修饰 one (指 finger)。

8. It was their first important lesson as students of chemistry ……这是他们这些学化学的学生所上的重要的第一课……

EXERCISES

1. Pronounce these letters, sounds and words:

   t [t] *t*ake cas*t*or *t*as*t*e a*tt*end

th [ð] ***th***at ***th***ese clo***th***es wi***th***

th [θ] ***th***ing ***th***eatre too***th*** dea***th***

tr [tr] ***tr***ip ***tr***avel ***tr***ain s***tr***eet

tion [ʃn] rela***tion*** informa***tion*** libera***tion***

fascina***tion*** compos***ition*** dict***ion***ary

[tʃn] ques***tion***

ture [tʃə] pic***ture*** tempera***ture*** mix***ture***

2. For each word in Column I find a word or phrase of similar meaning in Column II:

I	II
fill (*v.*)	something made by mixing
dip (*v.*)	not any; no one
suck (*v.*)	usual
ordinary	draw liquid into the mouth
none	put something into a liquid (for a very short time and then take it out)
mixture	make (become) full

3. Put the following into Chinese:

1) Professor Zhang is an ordinary-looking little man ***with*** thick glasses.

2) The professor brought out three bottles. One was filled ***with*** kerosene, one ***with*** castor oil, and one ***with*** vinegar.

3) As the students watched ***with*** fascination, he

mixed the three together.

4) He put a finger in his mouth and sucked it He nodded *with* a smile.

5) A person *with* good manners will give his seat to a person *with* a very young child on a bus.

6) It was so funny, but I couldn't laugh *with* my mouth full of food.

7) No one likes a person *with* bad manners.

4. Put the following into Chinese:

1) "I'm sorry," the professor said, "but none of you watched carefully *enough*."

2) Answer the question in a loud *enough* voice so that all the class may hear.

3) Solids can usually be turned into liquids and liquids into gases if we raise their temperatures high *enough*.

4) If Tom feels well *enough* to watch TV by then, he'll be fine after the game.

5) If the wild animals cannot find *enough* plants to eat, they will starve or have to leave the place.

6) Edison placed a big mirror behind the lamps. Now there was *enough* light for the doctor to operate.

7) — Have you had *enough* to eat?

— Thank you. I've had more than ***enough.***

5. Read the text, then say ***Yes*** or ***No*** to the following sentences:

   1) Carl can hardly remember a certain professor. This professor taught him chemistry while he was a schoolboy. ( )
   2) The professor was not tall and always wore a pair of thick glasses. ( )
   3) The professor had a strange way of making his classes lively and interesting. ( )
   4) The professor taught one of Carl's first lessons in a chemistry lab. ( )
   5) The professor filled a cup with some of the kerosene, castor oil, milk and vinegar and mixed them together. ( )
   6) The professor dipped one finger into the cup and sucked another one. ( )
   7) Each student dipped a finger into the mixture and sucked the same finger. ( )
   8) The professor nodded with a smile and said, "I'm very glad that all of you watched carefully." ( )

6. Read the following:

Mr Smith liked to be exact. One day when he was walking in the street, a man came over and

asked him:

"Excuse me, but where's the nearest bookshop?"

"The nearest bookshop? You have to cross a bridge and then turn to the right."

"And is the bridge long?"

"Very. Thirty metres."

The man thanked him and went towards the bridge. Suddenly he heard someone running after him.

"Stop!" Mr Smith was shouting. "I'm sorry. I just remembered: the bridge is forty metres long. If you go thirty metres and then turn to the right, as I told you to do, you'll fall into the river."

exact [ig'zækt] *adj.* 确切的

LESSON TEN

The Tenth Lesson

(Revision)

EXERCISES

1. Give the plural form of each of the following nouns:

tomato	radio	piano	photo	handkerchief
thief	knife	wife	leaf	half
key	valley	dictionary		century
city	university			
woman	dustman	policeman	Frenchman	
foot	tooth	mouse	child	sheep
fish	deer			

2. Turn the following verbs into nouns, then put them into Chinese:

speak	fight	murder	wait	compute
liberate	invent	pronounce		operate
mix	die	suffer		

3. Turn the following nouns into adjectives, then put them into Chinese:

care	thank	use	help	cloud
sun	physics	chemistry		medicine

death *heat* *illness* *wound* *worry*

China America

4. Put the following into English:

1) 许许多多的人 2) 一群孩子

3) 一箱子苹果 4) 一篮子蔬菜

5) 一种野生植物 6) 一滴油

7) 一瓶醋 8) 一块木炭

9) 一副眼镜 10) 一种型号的计算机

11) 一本英汉词典 12) 一摞试卷

5. Fill in each of the blanks with one of the verbs or phrasal verbs in its proper tense form:

A. see, watch, look, look at, have a look

1) Let's go and ___ those pictures over there.

2) ___! How nice these pictures are!

3) He ___ hard ___ the blackboard but could not ___ the words clearly.

4) The light went out; I couldn't ___ anything.

5) I ___ TV when he knocked at the door.

B. find, find out, look for

1) In the old days, it was not easy to ___ a job.

2) Please try to _____ who did it.

3) ___ you ___ the key to your bicycle?

4) Tom lost his work several months ago. He

___ a job ever since, but he ___ not ___ any.

C. hear, hear from, listen, listen to

1) ___ carefully, or you won't be able to ___ anything.

2) I ___ that you're going to spend the summer holidays in the north.

3) I often ___ the news on the radio in the morning.

4) ___ you ___ Joan recently?

D. say, talk, speak, tell, have a word with

1) He ___ me he was leaving for Guangzhou, but he did not ___ when he was leaving.

2) Can she ___ both English and Russian?

3) The other day I met Chen Hong in the street. We ___ for half an hour.

4) I saw Wu Dong in the park last Sunday, but I did not ___ to him because he ___ to an old man.

5) Where's Carl? I want to ___ him.

6. Choose the correct answer for each blank:

1) How ___ you like the film last night?
(A. do B. did)

2) Mr Turner ___ here for two weeks.
(A. has come B. has been)

3) I ___ you were interested in geography.

(A. don't know B. didn't know)

4) ___ I help you with the housework?

(A. Shall B. Will)

5) We ___ about you just now.

(A. are talking B. were talking)

6) I ___ him since he was a boy.

(A. knew B. have known)

7) Every one of us ___ to take part in the game.

(A. want B. wants)

8) My sister ___ earlier today than yesterday.

(A. get up B. got up)

9) Wei Fang said she ___ to my house next Sunday.

(A. will come B. would come)

10) We won't go there if it ___ fine tomorrow.

(A. isn't B. won't be)

11) I really don't know ___.

(A. to choose which one B. which one to choose)

12) He asked me ___.

(A. where was the post office B. where the post office was)

7. Join the following sentences with ***in order to***:

Model: The farmers killed the hawks.

They wanted to protect the chickens. ⟶
The farmers killed the hawks ***in order to*** protect the chickens.

1) People killed many mountain lions.
They wanted to protect the deer.

2) We must keep the balance of nature.
We must not destroy wild plants or kill too many wild animals.

3) Jenny got up even earlier the next morning.
She wanted to get to school on time.

4) The young woman gave piano lessons to rich children.
She wanted to make a living.

5) Liszt told the young woman to add a note to the poster.
He wanted to let people know she was really his pupil.

8. Complete the following sentences with infinitives:

Model: I'm glad ___ (又看到你). →
I'm glad to see you again.

1) I'm sorry ___ (听到你病了).
2) Their football team is sure ___ (赢).
3) We're very happy ___ (有机会参观你们的工厂).
4) We were disappointed ___ (听到你们不能来).
5) I'm pleased ___ (见到你).

6) Be careful not ___ (感冒了).

7) The teacher was surprised ___ (发现高斯的答案是正确的).

8) I'm always ready ___ (帮助别人).

9. Put the following into English:

1) 这座楼房很快就要竣工。

2) 另一座铁路桥现在正在兴建。

3) 夏天食物必须保存在凉快的地方。

4) 有些地方马和骆驼用于运动会上。

5) 为了保持生态平衡，不应破坏野生植物。

6) 这种自行车已经售完了。

7) 这位老年人必须马上送医院。

8) 门锁上了，我没有钥匙。怎么办呢？

10. Read the following:

A young man once asked Albert Einstein,* the great German scientist, what the secret of success is. The scientist told him that the secret of success is hard work. A few days later the young man asked him the same question again. Einstein was very angry. He did not say anything, but wrote a few words on a piece of paper and handed it to the young man. The young man looked at the piece of paper. On it was written: A=X+Y+Z.

"What does this mean?" asked the young man.

"A means success," explained the old scientist.

"X stands for hard work, Y stands for good methods, and Z . . Z means stop talking and get down to work."

Albert Einstein ['ælbət'ainstain] 阿尔伯特·爱因斯坦(1879—1955),物理学家。

secret ['si:krit] *n.* 秘密

success [sək'ses] *n.* 成功

A=X+Y+Z 读作 A equals (或 is) X plus Y plus Z.

stand for 代表

stop talking and get down to work 停止空谈,开始干

Vocabulary

A

a great deal [di·l] (of)
非常多地;大量(的) 5

abacus ['æbəkəs] *n.*
(*pl.*) abaci ['æbəsai] 或 abacuses 算盘 5

active ['æktiv] *adj.* 积极的
take an active part in
积极参加 2

adding machine 加法机 5

agree [ə'gri·] *vt.* & *vi.*
同意,赞成 5

all over the country
遍及全国 2

aloud [ə'laud] *adv.*
出声地,大声地 8

anytime ['enitaim] *adv.*
在任何时候 5

apology [ə'pɔlədʒi] *n.*
道歉,认错
make an apology to someone 向某人道歉 8

appreciate [ə'pri:ʃieit]
vt. 感激;欣赏 8

attend [ə'tend] *vt.*
出席,参加 7

B

badly ['bædli] *adv.*
坏;恶劣地 3

balance ['bæləns] *n.*
平衡;秤
the balance of nature
自然平衡(生态平衡) 7

basin ['beisn] *n.* 水盆,面盆
a basin of 一盆…… 4

be careful(of) 当心,小心 3

be on strike 在罢工 3

bicycle ['baisikl] *n.*
脚踏车,自行车(相当于口语中的 bike) 1

block [blɔk] *n.* 大块
a block of 一大块…… 4

blow [bləu] (blew[blu·], blown [bləun]) *vt.* & *vi.*
吹 4

bring out 提供,推出 2

building ['bildiŋ] *n.* 建筑物，房屋 3

burn [bə:n] (burnt [bə:nt], burned; burnt, burned) *vi.* & *vt.* 燃烧 4

business ['biznis] *n.* 事务；商业，生意 1

by [bai] *prep.* 被，由 1

by and by 不久以后 1

C

call on 号召 2

Carl [kɑ:l] 卡尔（男名） 9

castor ['kɑ:stə] *n.* 蓖麻 9

century ['sentʃuri] *n.* 世纪；百年 1

certain ['sə:tn] *adj.* 某种；一定的 7

change ... into 把……变成 4

charcoal ['tʃɑ:kəul] *n.* 炭；木炭 4

chemical ['kemikəl] *adj.* 化学的 4

class [klɑ:s] *n.* 阶级

the working class 工人阶级 2

clear [kliə] *adj.* 清楚的；清晰的 3

communist ['kɔmjunist] *adj.* 共产主义的；共产党的 *n.* 共产主义者

the Chinese Communist Party 中国共产党 2

complete [kəm'pli:t] *adj.* 完全的，彻底的

completely [kəm'pli:tli] *adv.* 完全地，彻底地 4

composition [ˌkɔmpə'ziʃən] *n.* 作文；写作 4

compute [kəm'pju:t] *vt.* & *vi.* 计算 5

computer [kəm'pju:tə] *n.* 计算机；电子计算机 5

condition [kən'diʃən] *n.* 条件；状况 2

cover ['kʌvə] *vt.* 盖，铺

be covered with 被……覆盖 4

D

death [deθ] *n.* 死

sentence someone to death 宣判某人死刑 2

deer [diə] *n.*
(*pl.*) deer 鹿 7
destroy [dis'trɔi] *vt.*
破坏,毁坏 7
dip [dip] *vt.* 浸;蘸;把……放入又取出
dip ... into 把……浸入(液体)中 9
disappear [ˌdisə'piə] *vi.*
消失,消散 4
drop [drɔp] *n.* 滴,点滴
vt. 使滴下,使落下
vi. 滴下,落下
a drop of 一滴…… 4
dry [drai] *vt.* 使干
vi. 变干
adj. 干的,干燥的 4
dump [dʌmp] *n.* 垃圾堆 3
dustbin ['dʌstbin] *n.*
垃圾箱 3
dustman ['dʌstmən] *n.*
(*pl.*) dustmen ['dʌstmən]
垃圾清运工 3

E

either ['aiðə] *conj.*
或者,要么
either ... or ...
或者……或者…… 8
empty ['empti] *vt.* 倒空
adj. 空的 3
everywhere ['evriwɛə]
adv. 到处,无论哪里 3
example [ig'zɑːmpl] *n.*
例子;榜样
for example 例如 5
excellent ['eksələnt] *adj.*
极好的,优秀的 3
exhibition [ˌeksi'biʃən] *n.*
展览 4

F

fair [fɛə] *adj.*
(头发)浅色的;金黄色的 2
faraway ['fɑːrəwei] *adj.*
遥远的 5
fascination [ˌfæsi'neiʃən]
n. 强烈的爱好;迷惑 9
fearless ['fiəlis] *adj.*
不怕的,无畏的 2
fighter ['faitə] *n.* 战士 2
fill [fil] *vt.* 装满;填充
fill ... with ...
把……装满…… 9

finger ['fiŋgə] *n.* 手指 5
fix [fiks] *vt.* 修理;安装 4
form [fɔ:m] *vt.* (使)组成,建立;形成
n. 形状;形式 2
found [faund] *vt.* 成立,建立 2
France [frɑ:ns] *n.* 法兰西、法国 1
freeze [fri:z] (froze [frəuz], frozen ['frəuzn]) *vi.* 结冰;凝固 4
freezing ['fri:ziŋ] *adj.* 极冷的,冻结的 4

G

gas [gæs] *n.* 气体;煤气 4
get in one's way 挡了某人的去路 8
give up 放弃 1
go on strike 举行罢工 3
go through 通过;仔细查看 5
good-looking ['gud 'lukiŋ] *adj.* 相貌好看的 2
grain [grein] *n.* 谷物,谷类;谷粒 7

H

hand in 交进来,交纳 4
hand out 分发 8
handkerchief ['hæŋkətʃif] *n.* 手帕,手绢 8
hang up 把……挂起来 4
hate [heit] *vt.* 憎恨;不愿,不喜欢 2
hawk [hɔ:k] *n.* 鹰 7
heat [hi:t] *n.* 热
vt. 把……加热 4
helpful ['helpful] *adj.* 有帮助的;有益的 8
hold up 举起 9
horrible ['hɔrəbl] *adj.* 可怕的;(口语)极讨厌的 9
housework ['hauswə:k] *n.* 家务劳动 8
human ['hju:mən] *n.* 人
adj. 人的,人类的 5

I

illness ['ilnis] *n.* 疾病 5

in line 成一直线

wait in line 排队等候 8

in public 当众，公开地 8

in the end 最后；终于 4

in trouble 处于困境（苦恼）中 8

information [ˌinfəˈmeiʃən] *n.* 通知；情报；信息 5

international [ˌintə(:)ˈnæʃənl] *adj.* 国际的，世界的 1

interrupt [ˌintəˈrʌpt] *vt.* 打断（讲话或讲话的人）；打扰 8

invent [inˈvent] *vt.* 发明，创造 5

invention [inˈvenʃən] *n.* 发明，创造 5

J

Japan [dʒəˈpæn] *n.* 日本，日本国 1

Joe [dʒəu] 乔（男名） 2

K

keep up 坚持；不使（斗志等）低落 2

kerosene [ˈkerəsi:n] *n.* 煤油 9

key [ki:] *n.* 钥匙 4

kind [kaind] *adj.* 和蔼的；友爱的 8

knock [nɔk] *vi.* 相撞，碰撞

knock into someone 撞在某人身上 8

knowledge [ˈnɔlidʒ] *n.* 知识；学问 1

L

later [ˈleitə] *adv.* 以后，后来 1

lead [li:d] (led, led) *vt.* 领导 2

lesson [ˈlesn] *n.* 教训 7

liberate [ˈlibəreit] *vt.* 解放 2

liberation [ˌlibəˈreiʃən] *n.* 解放 2

line [lain] *n.* 线；生产（装配）线；排，行 5

lion [ˈlaiən] *n.* 狮子

mountain lion 美洲狮 7

liquid ['likwid] *n.* 液体
adj. 液体的 4
lively ['laivli] *adj.*
生动的,活泼的 9
lock [lɔk] *n.* 锁
vt. 锁,锁上
vi. 锁得上 4

M

manager ['mænidʒə]
n. 经理;管理人 5
manner ['mænə] *n.*
方式;态度,举止
manners ['mænəz]
n. (*pl.*) 礼貌
bad manners
没有礼貌 8
good manners
很有礼貌
matter ['mætə] *n.*
物质 4
memory ['meməri] *n.*
记忆,记忆力;存贮器 5
might [mait] *v. aux.*
可能,也许 4
mix [miks] *vt.* & *vi.*
混合;搅和 9
mixture ['mikstʃə]
n. 混合物 9
money ['mʌni] *n.*
钱;货币 3
more and more
越来越(多) 1
mourn [mɔ:n] *vi.* & *vt.*
哀痛;哀悼 2
mouse [maus] *n.*
(*pl.*) mice 鼠,耗子
field mouse 田鼠 7
murder ['mə:də] *vt.* & *n.*
谋杀 2
murderer ['mə:dərə] *n.*
杀人犯,凶手 2

N

nature ['neitʃə] *n.*
大自然,自然界 7
necessary ['nesisəri]
adj. 必需的,必要的 3
nod [nɔd] *n.* & *vi.*
点头 9
none [nʌn] *pron.*
一个人也没有;没有
任何东西 9
number ['nʌmbə] *n.*

数，数字；数量 1

O

official [ə'fiʃəl] *n.* 官员 7

oil [ɔil] *n.* 油

castor oil 蓖麻油 9

on the other hand

另一方面 4

or [ɔ:] *conj.* 否则 4

order ['ɔ:də] *n.*

目的，意向

in order to 为了 7

ordinary ['ɔ:dnəri]

adj. 普通的

ordinary-looking

['ɔ:dnəri'lukiŋ] *adj.*

相貌平常的 9

organize ['ɔ:gənaiz]

vt. 组织

vi. 组织起来；建立

组织 2

outside ['aut'said]

prep. 在……外；

向……外

adv. 向外面，在外面；

向室外，在室外 1

P

paper ['peipə] *n.*

考卷；书面作业；论文；

报纸 8

person ['pə:sn] *n.* 人 2

physical ['fizikəl]

adj. 物理的 4

pile [pail] *vt.* 堆积，堆起 3

plant [plɑ:nt] *n.* 植物 7

plastic ['plæstik],

['plɑ:stik] *adj.*

塑料的 3

probably ['prɔbəbli]

adv. 很可能，大概，或许 1

professor [prə'fesə]

n. 教授 9

programme ['prəugræm]

n. 程序 5

protect [prə'tekt] *vt.*

保护 7

public ['pʌblik] *adj.*

公共的，公众的

the public 公众，民众 3

publish ['pʌbliʃ] *vt.*

& *vi.* 出版；发行

vt. 公布；发表

publishing house出版社 1
push [puʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 推
push to the front of the line 挤到队伍的前面去 8
put into 输入；(使)进入 5
put on 上演(戏剧等) 3
put up 建造；搭起 3

R

raise [reiz] *vt.* 使升高；提高，增加 4
rat [ræt] *n.* 鼠 3
reason ['riːzn] *n.* 理由；原因 5
recorder [ri'kɔːdə] *n.* 录音机 1
relation [ri'leiʃən] *n.* 关系，联系 8
republic [ri'pʌblik] *n.* 共和国
the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国 2
require [ri'kwaiə] *vt.* 需要；要求 1
rid [rid] (rid, rid) *vt.* 使摆脱；去掉
get rid of 除掉，去掉 2
Robert ['rɔbət] 罗伯特(男名) 3
robot ['rəubɔt] *n.* 机器人 5
rubbish ['rʌbiʃ] *n.* 垃圾；废物 3
rude [ruːd] *adj.* 无礼的；粗鲁的 8

S

sad [sæd] *adj.* 难过的，悲哀的
sadly ['sædli] *adv.* 难过地，悲哀地 9
sale [seil] *n.* 卖，销售 5
screen [skriːn] *n.* 幕；荧光屏 5
sell out 售完 5
send out 放出，发出 4
sentence ['sentəns] *vt.* 判决，宣判 2
shoot [ʃuːt] (shot [ʃɔt], shot) *vt.* 射击；射中；射死
vi. 射击 2
show ... on TV 在电视

中放映 3

silent ['sailənt] *adj.* 沉默的

keep silent 保持沉默 8

slide [slaid] *n.* 幻灯片

show slides 放映幻灯片 1

smell [smel] (smelt, smelled; smelt, smelled) *vi.* 嗅;散发气味;发出臭气

vt. 闻,嗅

n. 气味;臭味 3

sneeze [sni:z] *vi.* 打喷嚏 8

so that 以便;以致;结果是 8

solid ['sɔlid] *n.* 固体

adj. 固体的 4

sooner or later 迟早 4

soul [səul] *n.* 灵魂;精华;中心人物 2

speaker ['spi kə] *n.* 说话者;讲演者;操某种语言者 1

spit [spit] (spat, spit; spat, spit) *vi.* & *vt.* 吐痰;吐唾沫 8

starve [stɑ:v] *vi.* 饿死;挨饿

vt. 使饿死;使挨饿 7

state [steit] *n.* 州;国家;政府

the United States 美利坚合众国,美国 1

n. 状态;状况 4

steam [sti:m] *n.* 水蒸气 4

store [stɔ:] *vt.* 存贮,储藏 5

strike [straik] *n.* 罢工 2

struggle ['strʌgl] *n.* 斗争,奋斗 2

suck [sʌk] *vt.* 吮吸;舐食 9

suffer ['sʌfə] *vi.* 受苦

vt. 遭受

suffering ['sʌfəriŋ] *n.* 痛苦;苦难

adj. 受苦的 5

Sweden ['swi:dn] *n.* 瑞典 1

T

take place 发生 3

take up (the struggle) 从事(斗争) 2

taste [teist] *vi.* & *vt.*
有……味道；尝味 9
textbook ['tekstbuk] *n.*
课本，教科书 1
the last two years 前两年 3
the PLA = the People's Liberation Army 人民解放军 2
theatre ['θiətə] *n.* 剧场，戏院 3
though [ðəu] *conj.*
但是；然而；虽然 5
to this day 直到今天 2
topic ['tɔpik] *n.* (文章、讲演的)题目；主题 7
trade [treid] *n.* 商业，贸易；行业 2
try [trai] *vt.* 审问，审判 2
turn [tə:n] *n.*
(依次轮流的)顺序
take one's turn 依次，轮流 8
Turner ['tə:nə] 特纳(姓) 3
type [taip] *n.* 类型；样式
a type of
一种类型的…… 5

U

union ['ju:njən] *n.* 联合；联合会；团结
trade union 工会 2
unite [ju:'nait] *vt.* & *vi.*
统一；联合；团结
united [ju:'naitid] *adj.*
统一的；联合的 1
university [,ju:ni'və:siti] *n.* 综合性大学 9
useful ['ju:sful] *adj.*
有用的；有益的 1

V

vapour ['veipə] *n.* 汽，蒸气 4
villager ['vilidʒə] *n.*
村子里的居民 2
vinegar ['vinigə] *n.* 醋 9

W

warn [wɔ:n] *vt.* 警告，告诫 3
waste [weist] *vt.* &*n.* 浪费
adj. 无用的，废弃的 2
wide [waid] *adj.*

宽阔的;广泛的

widely ['waidli] *adv.* 广阔地;广泛地 1

wild [waild] *adj.* 野生的,野的 7

wood [wud] *n.* 木头;木材 4

Irregular Verbs (Books I—VI)

Infinitive	Past Tense	Past Participle
be { am, is, are }	was, were	been
beat	beat	beaten ['bi:tn]
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow [bləu]	blew [blu:]	blown [bləun]
break [breik]	broke	broken ['brəukən]
bring	brought [brɔ:t]	brought
build [bild]	built [bilt]	built
burn	burnt, burned	burnt, burned
buy [bai]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought
cast [kɑ:st]	cast	cast
catch [kætʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃəuz]	chosen ['tʃəuzn]
come	came	come
cut	cut	cut
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done [dʌn]
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]

drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven ['drivn]
eat	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tn]
fall	fell	fallen ['folen]
feel	felt	felt
fight [fait]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought
find [faind]	found [faund]	found
fly [flai]	flew [flu:]	flown [fləun]
forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɔt]	forgotten [fə'gɔtn]
freeze	froze	frozen ['frəuzn]
get	got	got
give [giv]	gave	given ['givn]
go	went	gone [gɔn]
grow [grəu]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəun]
hang	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
have (has)	had	had
hear [hiə]	heard [hə:d]	heard
hide	hid [hid]	hidden ['hidn]
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
keep	kept	kept
know [nəu]	knew [nju:]	known [nəun]
lead	led	led
learn	learnt, learned	learnt, learned
leave	left	left

lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie [lai]	lay [lei]	lain [lein]
lose [lu:z]	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid [peid]	paid
put [put]	put	put
read	read [red]	read [red]
rid	rid	rid
ride	rode	ridden ['ridn]
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen ['rizn]
run	ran	run
say	said [sed]	said
see	saw [sɔ:]	seen
sell	sold [səuld]	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew [səu]	sewed [səud]	sewn [səun]
shake	shook [ʃuk]	shaken ['ʃeikən]
shine	shone [ʃɔn], shined	shone, shined
shoot [ʃu:t]	shot	shot
show [ʃəu]	showed	shown, showed

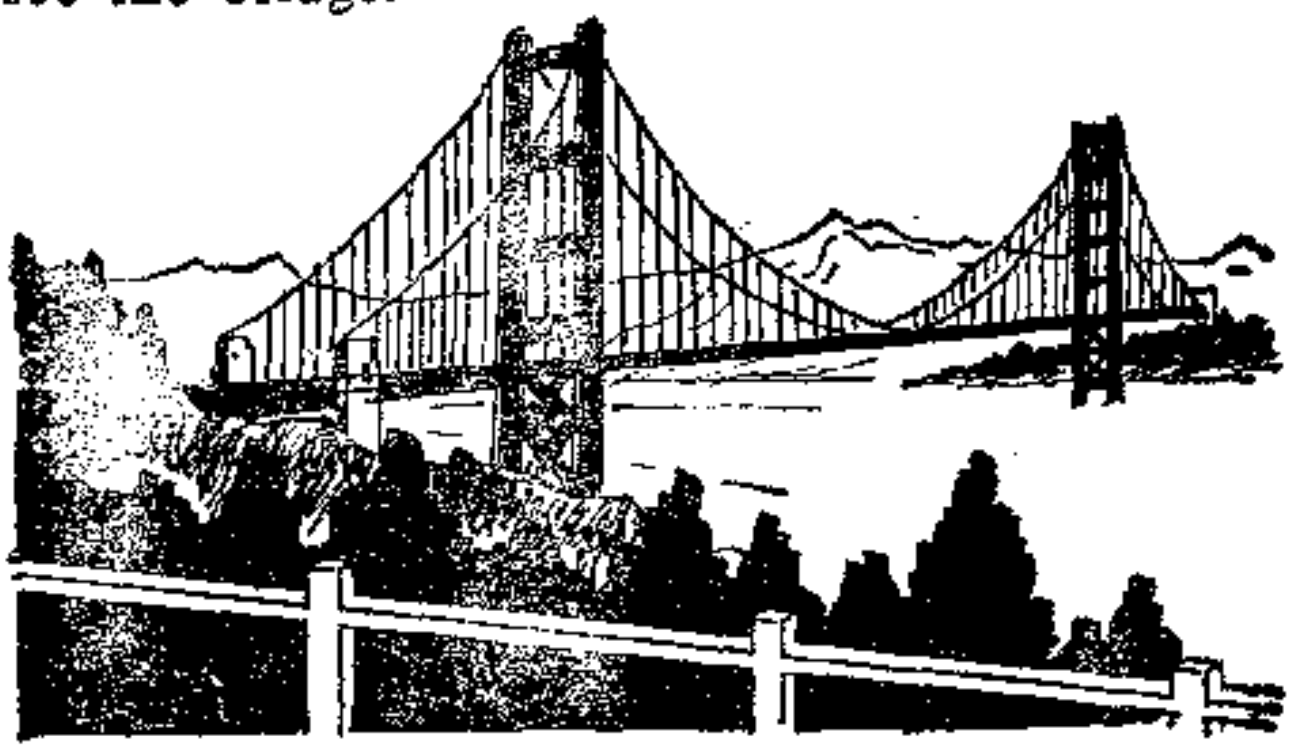
sing	sang	sung
sink [siŋk]	sank [sæŋk]	sunk [sʌŋk]
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelt	smelt
speak	spoke	spoken ['spəukən]
spend	spent	spent
spit	spat, spit	spat, spit
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen ['stəulən]
sweep	swept	swept
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken ['teikən]
teach	taught [tɔ:t]	taught
tell	told [təuld]	told
think	thought [θɔ:t]	thought
throw [θrəu]	threw [θru:]	thrown [θrəun]
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken ['wəukən]
wear [wɛə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]
win	won [wʌn]	won
write [rait]	wrote [rəut]	written ['ritn]

Supplementary Readings

1. Peter's Golden Bridge

"Tomorrow we'll see the Golden Gate Bridge," said Peter. "I've never seen a golden bridge before."

Peter's father smiled, but said nothing. Peter would soon see the bridge.



The next morning, his father took Peter to the bridge. Peter first saw it from far away. How big it looked! But then he saw something else. The bridge was red!

"The bridge isn't golden!" he said. "Why is it called the Golden Gate Bridge?"

"It isn't named for its color," said his father. "It's named for the Golden Gate."

"What's the Golden Gate?" asked Peter.

"A gate is either an opening, or a thing that closes an opening," said his father. "The Golden Gate is an opening in the land. Water from the sea comes through this opening into San Francisco Bay."

"Oh," said Peter. "And the bridge is over the opening. But why is the opening called the *Golden* Gate?"

"Years ago men came to California to look for gold," his father said. "Many came by ship. They came into the bay through that opening. For them it was a gate to gold. So they named it the Golden Gate."

"Well," said Peter, "I still think the bridge should look golden."

When Peter got home, he sent a letter to a California paper. In the letter he said: "Red is not the right color for the Golden Gate Bridge. The bridge should look golden, the way most people think it does."

Peter sent $ 14.78 with his letter. It was all the money he had saved. "This money is to help paint the bridge gold," he wrote.

Many people read Peter's letter in the newspaper. Right away, things began to happen! Some people sent money. A big company gave real gold to make gold paint. A paint company made the paint.

But not all of the people wanted to change the

color of the bridge. Some people still wanted the bridge to be red.

Will the Golden Gate Bridge ever be golden? Perhaps, if enough people feel as Peter does.

golden ['gouldən] *adj.*
金(黄)色的
Golden Gate Bridge 金门桥
color = colour (美国拼法)
opening ['oupniŋ] *n.*
穴,洞;通道
land *n.* 陆地,地面;土地
San Francisco [ˌsænfrən'siskou]
旧金山(或三藩市)(美国港市)
bay *n.* 海湾
San Francisco Bay 旧金山湾
California [ˌkæli'fɔ:njə] *n.*
加利福尼亚(美国州名)
save *vt.* 节省
paint [peint] *vt.*
(用油漆、涂料等)修饰,装饰
n. 涂料;颜料
company ['kʌmpəni] *n.* 公司
ever *adv.* 总是,永远

2. A Clever Escape

Many years ago, a wise judge in a town in Spain was put into a tower. He was put into the tower because the head official of the town was jealous of him. The judge was very popular and was deeply loved by the people.

He was in this tower, which was really a prison for him for some time. It seemed there was no hope of escape. One night as he was looking out of he window, he saw his wife standing at the foot of the tower. She was crying.

"Don't cry," the judge called to her. "Just listen to me. Go and bring back a scarab, a little butter, some silk thread, a heavy cord, and a rope. If you do this, you'll be able to save me."

The woman left at once and returned quickly with the things.

The judge said: "Put a little butter on the head of the scarab, then tie the silk thread around its body and put it on the wall with its head upwards."

The woman did this. The scarab, thinking that the butter was somewhere above him, began to climb the wall.

The judge watched and waited. When at last the scarab was near him, he picked it up and removed the silk thread from its body. Then his wife tied the cord to the other end of the silk thread. When the judge pulled the cord up, his wife had already tied the rope to one end.

The judge now tied one end of the rope to something strong within the tower. Then he slid down the rope as his wife watched. Would the rope break? Would he fall down? Would something happen?

Slowly, slowly he came down.

It was only a few minutes, but it seemed like hours. But at last he was on the ground. He was free now!

How happy she was! And how simple it was!

escape [is'keip] *n.* & *vi.* 逃跑
wise [waiz] *adj.*
有智慧的，聪明的
Spain [spein] *n.* 西班牙
tower ['tauə] *n.* 塔
jealous ['dʒeləs] *adj.* 妒忌
popular ['pɔpjulə] *adj.*
大家喜爱的
scarab ['skærəb] *n.* 甲虫
butter ['bʌtə] *n.* 黄油
silk [silk] *n.* 丝
thread [θred] *n.* 线
cord *n.* 细绳
tie [tai] *vt.* (用绳、线等)系，拴
upwards ['ʌpwədz] *adv.* 向上
somewhere ['sʌmwɛə] *n.* 某地
remove [ri'mu:v] *vt.* 取去
within [wi'ðin] *prep.*
在……里面
slide (slid, slid) *vi.* 滑动
simple ['simpl] *adj.* 简单的

3. Beethoven

About 150 years ago a German musician sat quietly at a concert in Vienna. A new symphony was being played for the first time. It was a symphony he had composed. At the end he turned to face the people at the concert. They were clapping wildly. He smiled and the clapping grew louder. But he could hear nothing, for he was deaf.

The musician was Beethoven, one of the greatest composers in the history of music.

All deaf people have a hard time. But it is even worse for a composer than for anyone else.

Even as a child Beethoven did not have a happy

life. His father was a singer, but he was lazy and drank a great deal. When the boy was only four, his father decided to make a musician of him. So Beethoven had to practise hour after hour on different musical instruments. Whenever he did not put his heart into his practice, his father would beat him or make it hard on him.

It is a wonder that the boy did not hate music. But no. He learned so fast that he was able to go around and give concerts when he was only eleven. When he was seventeen, he won high praise from Mozart, the great Austrian composer.

A few years later Beethoven went to Vienna to study under Haydn, another great Austrian composer. Soon he was writing a great deal of music himself.

Beethoven had an ugly face and a very bad temper. But he also had a great deal of charm and people liked to invite him to their homes. When he lost his temper they forgave him. He was often poor and ill during his life. But after one illness, he suddenly found himself deaf. At that time he was only thirty-one. What a blow it was to him!

This did not stop Beethoven, however. He went on composing. He wrote long pieces and short pieces, happy ones and sad ones, gentle music and powerful music. During his life, he composed about three hundred pieces.

The surprising thing is that he wrote some of his best, his most beautiful pieces after he became deaf. Many of them are known and loved all over the world.

Bethoven ['beithəuvn] 贝多芬
(1770—1827, 德国大作曲家)
Vienna [vi'enə] *n.* 维也纳
symphony ['simfəni] *n.* 交响乐
compose [kəm'pəuz]
vt. 创作(乐曲)等
vi. 作曲
composer [kəm'pəuzə] *n.*
作曲家
clap *vi.* 拍手喝采
wildly ['waildli] *adv.*
暴风雨般地
deaf [def] *adj.* 聋的
lazy ['leizi] *adj.* 懒惰的
practise ['præktis] *vt.* & *vi.*
练习,实践
musical ['mju:zikəl] *adj.*
音乐的
instrument ['instrumənt] *n.*
器具
musical instrument 乐器
whenever [wen'evə] *conj.* 每当
practice ['præktis] *n.* 练习,实习
wonder *n.* 奇迹
praise [preiz] *n.* & *vt.* 赞扬
Mozart ['məutsɑ:t] 莫扎特
(1756—1791,奥地利作曲家)
Austrian ['ɔstriən] *adj.*
奥地利的
Haydn ['haidn] 海顿(1732—
1809,奥地利作曲家)
ugly ['ʌgli] *adj.* 难看的
temper ['tempə] *n.* 脾气
charm [tʃɑ:m] *n.* 魅力
lose one's temper 发脾气
forgive [fə'giv] (forgave. forgiven) *vt.* 原谅,宽恕
blow [bləu] *n.* 打击
however [hau'evə] *adv.*
可是,不过
gentle ['dʒentl] *adj.* 柔和的
powerful ['pauəful] *adj.*
强有力的

4. Sports

All over the world people enjoy sports. Sports help

to keep people healthy, happy and help them to live longer.

Many people like to watch others play sports games. They buy tickets or turn on their TVs to watch the games. Often they get very excited when "their" player or team wins.

Sports change with the season. People play different games in winter and summer. Swimming is fun in warm weather, but skating is good in winter.

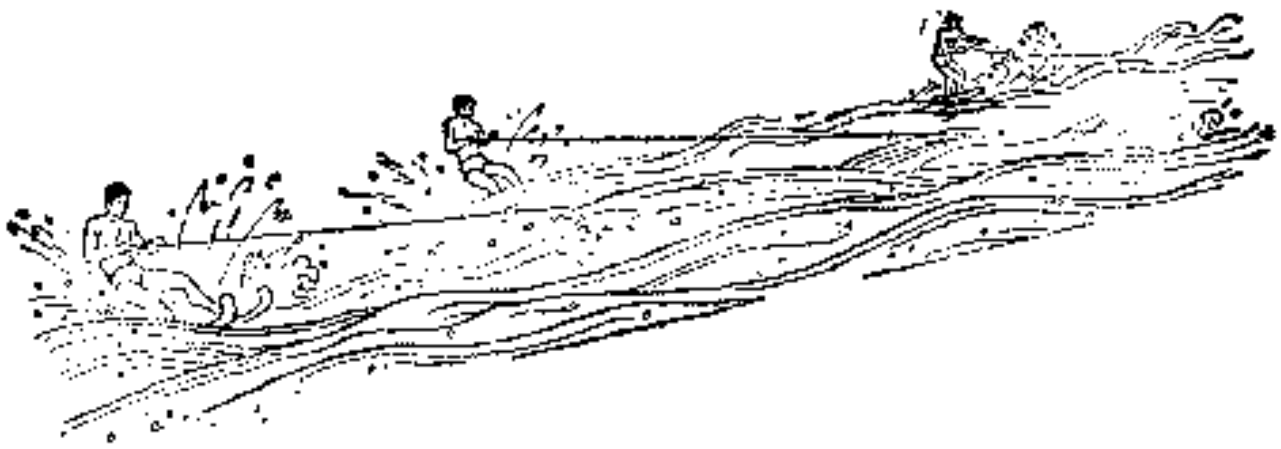
Games and sports often grow out of people's work and everyday activities. The Arabs use horses or camels in much of their everyday life; they use them in their sports, too. It is the same with people in Xinjiang and Nei Monggol. Millions of people hunt and fish for a living, but hunting and fishing are very good sports too.

Some sports are so interesting that people everywhere go in for them. Football, for example, has spread around the world. Swimming is popular in all countries

near the sea or in those with many rivers. What fun

it is to jump into a pool or lake, whether in China, Egypt or Italy! And think of people in cold countries. Think how many love to skate or ski in Japan, Norway or Canada.

Some sports or games go back thousands of years, like running or jumping. Chinese boxing, for example, has a very long history. But basket-ball and volleyball are rather new. Neither one is a hundred years old yet. People are inventing new sports or games all the time. Water-skiing is one of the newest in the family of sports.



People from different countries may not be able to understand each other, but after a game they often become good friends. Sports help to train a person's character. One learns to fight hard but fight fair, to win without pride and to lose with grace.

healthy ['helθi] *adj.* 健康的
excited [ik'saitid] *adj.* 兴奋的
player ['pleiə] *n.* 比赛者，选手
activity [æk'tiviti] *n.* 活动
hunt [hʌnt] *vi.* 打猎
  hunting ['hʌntiŋ] *n.* 打猎
go in for 爱好；从事于
spread [spred] (spread, spread)
  vi. 传开，传播
popular ['pɔpjulə] *adj.*
  大家喜爱的
whether ... or ...
  或者……或者……
Italy ['itəli] *n.* 意大利
ski [ski:] *vi.* 滑雪
Norway ['nɔ:wei] *n.* 挪威
Canada ['kænədə] *n.* 加拿大
boxing ['bɔksiŋ] *n.* 拳击
Chinese boxing 太极拳
rather ['rɑ:ðə] *adv.*
  相当地，颇
all the time 一直
water-skiing ['wɔ:tə'ski:iŋ]
  n. 滑水运动
train [trein] *vt.* 培养；训练
character ['kæriktə] *n.* 性格
fair *adv.* 公平地
pride *n.* 骄傲
grace *n.* 体面；文雅

5. The First Postage Stamp in the World

In a small village in England about 150 years ago, a mail coach was standing on the street. Around the coach many people were talking to one another about it.

Mail coaches did not come to that village so often in those days. People had to pay a lot of money to get a letter. The person who sent the letter did not have to pay. The person who got the letter had to pay the postage.

"Here's a letter for Miss Alice Brown," said the

mailman. Everyone turned to a girl of about eighteen who was standing by the coach. "I'm Alice Brown," she said in a low voice. The mailman gave her the letter.

Alice looked at the envelope for a minute, then handed it back to the mailman.

"I'm sorry I can't take it," she said. "I don't have enough money to pay the postage."

The people standing around were very sorry for the girl. They were silent for a while. Then, a gentleman came up to the mailman and pand the postage on Alice's letter.

When the gentleman gave her the letter, she said with a smile, "Oh, thank you very much, sir. This letter is from the young man I'm going to marry. His name is Tom. He went to London to look for work. He has to get enough money for our marriage. I've waited a long time for this letter, but now I don't need it. I don't have to open the envelope because there is nothing inside."

"Really?" the gentleman said in surprise. "How do you know that?"

"Tom knew that I couldn't pay the postage," the girl answered. "He told me that he would put some signs on the envelope. Look, sir, this cross in the corner

means that he is well, and this circle means that he has found work. That's very good news."

The gentleman was Sir Rowland Hill. He did not forget Alice and her letter.

"This system has to be changed," he said to himself. He thought and thought for many years. At last he hit on a good plan.

"The postage has to be much lower," he said. "What about a penny for a letter? And the person who sends the letter pays the postage. He has to buy a stamp and put it on the envelope."

"A good idea!" people said when they heard of his plan.

The Government decided to adopt the plan. The first postage stamp was put out in 1840. It was called the "Penny Black." It had a picture of the Queen on it.

Today, only a few people have a "Penny Black." Those who have one are very proud of it.

postage ['pəustidʒ] *n.* 邮费
mail [meil] *n.* 邮件
mailman ['meilmən] *n.* 邮递员
coach *n.* 四轮大马车
mail coach 邮车
one another 互相
envelope ['enviləup] *n.* 信封
gentleman ['dʒentlmən] *n.* 绅士
marriage ['mæridʒ] *n.* 结婚
sign [sain] *n.* 记号
cross *n.* 十字形

Sir Rowland ['rəulənd] Hill
罗兰·希尔爵士
system ['sistim] *n.* 制度
hit on 想出
plan *n.* 计划
penny ['peni] *n.*
便士(英国辅币单位)
government ['gʌvənmənt] *n.*
政府
the Government
(此处指)英国政府
adopt [ə'dɔpt] *vt.* 采纳
put out 发行
Penny Black 黑色便士
the Queen(此处指)英国女王
proud [praud] *adj.* 骄傲的
be proud of 以……为荣

（京）新登字113号

初级中学课本

英　语

第六册

人民教育出版社外语室英语组编

人民教育出版社出版
北京出版社重印
北京市新华书店发行
北京印刷三厂印刷

开本787×1092 1/32 印张4.25 插页1 字数72 000
1984年5月第1版　1995年1月第11次印刷
印数 1—141 000
ISBN 7—107—00120—5
G·177（课）定价1.70元